PREFACE.

ALTHOUGH two or three very fair Latin "First Books"
are already in existence, yet the present results of Latin
teaching are not so satisfactory as to necessitate an apology
for a new attempt. For a very long time the Author (in
the course of a weekly entrance-examination of a most
elementary kind) has been in the habit of asking those
boys who profess to have learned Latin—almost all of
whom are over thirteen years of age, and have learned
Latin two, three, four, or five years—to construe the
sentence "Oppida magna boni agricolae habent": and not
one in five has been able to construe these few simple
words correctly. The Examiner would have been well
content with the translation "They have the great towns
of the good husbandman": but almost all have succumbed
to the temptation of treating "oppida" as Nominative,
and have then "plunged" to the rendering "Great towns
have good husbandmen"—or something worse.

One reason for these miserable results is probably that,
at present (1880), a private school may be "kept" by any

one with or without any degree, or other proof of the possession either of knowledge or of the power to impart knowledge: but it is also possible that many of our elementary Latin books are to some extent responsible for these failures, because they lay scarcely sufficient stress on *parsing before construing*. The Latin sentences placed before beginners are so easy that the pupil soon finds he can *construe* without the trouble of *parsing*; and he thus early contracts the fatal habit of "plunging" at the meaning instead of reasoning it out. To provide against this evil is one of the principal objects of the *Via Latina*. From the very first page the pupil is taught to parse as well as to construe, and not to construe till he has parsed; and throughout the book, parsing questions are put bearing on the Latin Exercises, and the answers are suggested by paragraph references.

In the preparation of the Exercises the *dictum* of Lord Bacon has been borne in mind that in all kinds of training we should imitate dancers, who practise at one time in heavy boots, at another in light shoes. A considerable experience of teaching has led the Author to the conclusion that a First Latin Book requires a great diversity of Exercises, some to illustrate special rules, others of a more general nature; some on points of Accidence, the Irregular Nouns and Verbs, and the like, others on difficulties of Syntax; and again, some difficult and accompanied with helps, others easy to be done without help; some to be written with preparation, others to be answered *vivâ voce*. This want he has

attempted to supply in the present volume, and at the same time to combine the Exercises with an outline of the Accidence, and the principal Rules of Syntax.

As regards the arrangement of the Exercises, some departures from the usual order have been introduced, especially in the earlier introduction of the simpler uses of the Subjunctive Mood. It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that, during all this while, they remain under the impression that "amemus" means *we may love*, and "amaremus" *we might love*—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses.

The Author has also aimed at introducing a little more variety into the examples by teaching somewhat more of *idiom* than is usually taught in First Latin Books; and some hints on the particles have not been thought out of place. In Greek a boy is taught to pay attention to particles almost from the beginning, but in Latin they are too much neglected; and, for want of them, the language too often strikes beginners as uninteresting and lifeless.

Most of the longer sentences in the Latin Exercises have been selected from classical authors, occasionally

modified: and here, as well as in the statement and explanation of several of the Rules, ample acknowledgments are due to the *Public School Grammar*. Several of them may appear at first sight somewhat difficult for beginners; but it will generally be found that the Vocabularies and the paragraph references supply all the help that is needed for a pupil who will honestly *parse before construing*. The Author has worked through most of them with a pupil ten years old, whose questions and difficulties have suggested many of the footnotes bearing on the Exercises.

The Irregular Verbs are arranged in two lists; first according to their formation, and then in alphabetical order. This repetition may appear superfluous; but the object of it is to enable the pupil to learn the Verbs according to their logical order in the first list, but afterwards to test his knowledge by repeating them when presented to him miscellaneously in the second list, which also includes a large number of the more important Compound Verbs in which boys frequently go wrong.

The Hints on Construing are intended not only as a preparation for translating a Latin author, but also as a summary of Rules for parsing the sentences in the Latin Exercises, and for translating English into Latin.

It is hoped that the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, while escaping the necessity of breaking the thread of the Accidence and Syntax by interposing continual explanations of terms, will on the other hand avoid the greater

evil of suffering the pupil to use words of the meaning of which he knows nothing.

In the Public Schools and in the better class of Preparatory Schools (to the excellence of which the Author bears willing testimony) such portentous failures as were mentioned in the beginning of this Preface are (no doubt) unknown: but even there it sometimes appears as though it were very difficult to ground boys well in Latin Grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a mechanical and monotonous word-drill. Good teachers will succeed-without any books in avoiding the evil and attaining the good; but even good teachers may occasionally be helped by a book, and to them this book is offered, not as a substitute, but as a help, for good teaching.

I gratefully acknowledge much valuable help for which I am indebted to Mr. J. S. Reid, Fellow and Tutor of Caius College, Cambridge, and one of the Classical Examiners for the University of London.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THIS Edition contains many corrections and modifications suggested by the use of the book in teaching. All the Exercises have been worked through with the view of detecting omissions in the Vocabulary, or difficulties that required additional help. The Exercises themselves have received very few alterations, but many references to Rules have been inserted, and the deficiencies in the Vocabularies have been supplied.

My thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Phillpotts, Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, for many useful suggestions incorporated in the present Edition.

CONTENTS.

SCHEME OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION.[1]

Based on the nearest English Approximations.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā[2]	=	English	*a* in father.
,,	ă	=	,,	*first a* in away, or *a* in villa
,,	ē	=	,,	*ai* in pain.
,,	ae	=	,,	*ai* in pain.
.,	oe	=	,,	*ai* in pain.
,,	ĕ	=	,,	*e* in men.
,,	ī	=	,,	*i* in machine.
.,	ĭ	=	,,	*i* in pity.
,,	ō	=	,,	*o* in home.
,,	ŏ	=	,,	*o* in top.
,,	ū	=	,,	*u* in rule.
,,	ŭ	=	,,	*u* in full.
,,	au	=	,,	*ow* in power.
,,	ui	=	,,	*we*, e.g. in Lat. qui, oui.
,,	eu	=	,,	{ Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin ŭ (differs little from present pronunciation).
..ei		=	,,	{ Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin ĭ (differs little from *ai* in pain).

CONSONANTS.

Latin c, ch	=	English	*k*.
,, g	=	,,	*g* in get.
,, s	=	,,	*s* in sin.
,, t (rătĭo)	=	,,	*t* in cat, not *sh*, as in nation.
,, j	=	,,	*y* in yard.
., v	=	,,	*v*.
,, z, ph, th	=	,,	*z, ph, th*.

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in rose, *e.g.* "rosa."

---

[1] Taken from the *Syllabus of Latin Pronunciation*, issued by the Professors of Latin at the Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. Some modifications have been made by the suppression of all Italian standards, and of all the English standards of pronunciation that contain a vowel followed by *r*. Consequently the Latin o is represented by the English o. The Professors give the option of pronouncing v as *v* or as *w*.

[2] Syllables in Latin are either long or short. A short syllable is denoted by this mark (‿), a long one by this (–). A few elementary rules about the *quantity*, i.e. the length or shortness of syllables, are given in Appendix VII. on Prosody.

VIA LATINA.

THE CASES OF NOUNS.[1]

THE FIRST OR -A DECLENSION.

Ăquĭl-ă, (*an*) *eagle.* Fēmĭn-ă, (*a*) *woman.* Fīlĭ-ă, (*a*) *daughter.*
Ăqu-ă, *water.* Dextr-ă, (*a*) *right hand.* Pĕcūnĭ-ă, *money.*
Ămă-t, (*he*) *loves.* Dă-t, (*he*) *gives.* Lăvă-t, (*he*) *washes.*
Lībĕră-t, (*he*) *frees.* Monstră-t, (*he*) *points out.*
Sŭpĕră-t, (*he*) *overcomes.* .·. Vŏră-t, (*he*) *devours.*[2]

1   English Nouns have (now) only two Cases, of which the
Possessive is indicated by 'the affix 's: "*John's* book;"
"the *sun's* light;" "*men's* clothes."
   Latin Nouns have six Cases.

2   1. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the
question *Who?* or *What?* before a Verb (i.e. when it is the
Subject of a Verb), it is put in the Nominative Case,
which, in Nouns of the First Declension, is expressed by
the termination -a short, -ă :

The woman loves.	Fēmĭn-ă ămăt.
The eagle devours.	Ăquĭl-ă vŏrĭt.

---

[1] For an explanation of the terms Case, Noun, &c., see the Glossary of
Grammatical Terms, Appendix VIII. p. 232.
[2] A vowel before -t final is always short: the *quantity* of a-t (˘) will
therefore not be marked for the future.

B

Who loves ?—Ans., tho *woman*, fēmĭn-ă.   *What* devours ?
—Ans., the *eagle*, ăquĭl-ă.

In parsing Latin, the question is generally asked as
follows: Why is fēmĭnă Nominative ?—Ans., *because it is
the Subject of* (or *Nominative to*) ămăt.

3   2. THE VOCATIVE CASE.—When a person or thing is
addressed, the Noun expressing the person or thing is put
in the Vocative Case, which, in the First Declension, is tho
same as the Nominative:

     O woman, Fēmĭn-ă.   *O eagle*, Ăquĭl-ă.

Why is fēmĭnă (or ăquĭla) Vocative ?—Ans., *because it is
a person* (or *thing*) *addressed.*

4   3. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the
question *Whom ?* or *What ? after a Verb* (i.e. when it is the
Direct Object of a Verb), it is put in the Accusative Case,
which is expressed, in the First Declension, by the termi-
nation -am :

The daughter loves the woman.   Fĭlĭ-ă fēmĭn-am ămă-t.
The woman points out the eagle.   Fēmĭn-ă ăquĭl-am monstră-t.

Loves *whom ?*—Ans., the *woman.*   Points out *what ?*—
Ans., the *eagle.*

Why is fēmĭnam the Accusative ?—Ans., *because it is the
Direct Object of* (or *Accusative governed by*) ămăt.

5   *N.B.* Note here that the order of the words is not the
same in a Latin and in an English sentence.

In English the Object generally follows the Verb, and
the Subject generally precedes the Verb, so that the order
of the words shows which is Subject and which is Object.

5a But in Latin the Verb generally comes at the end of the
sentence; and the Nominative and Accusative must be
discovered, not by the order, *but by examining the Case.*

Thus, in the last example, -am is the Accusative termi-
nation, and -ă is the Nominative termination.   Therefore

fēmĭn-ă is the Nominative, and the Subject of monstrăt; and ăquĭl-am is the Accusative, and the Object of monstrăt.

6 4. THE GENITIVE CASE.—The Latin Genitive (besides other uses) expresses the English Possessive Case, and, in the First Declension, terminates in -ae:

The woman's daughter.   Fēmĭn-ae fīlĭĭ, *or (less com-monly)* fīlĭĭ fēmĭn-ae.

As the Latin Gen. expresses many other relations be-sides possession, it is usual, in parsing a Gen. Noun qualifying another Noun, to say that the former is *governed by* the latter.

Why is fēmĭnae Genitive ?—Ans., *Because it is governed by the Noun* fīlĭĭ.

In English the Possessive Case *always* precedes the Noun which it qualifies.[1] In Latin the Genitive gener-ally precedes, but *not always*.

7 5. THE DATIVE CASE.—When a Noun expresses the person (or thing) (1) *to whom* a thing is *given*, or (2) *for whom* a thing is done, the Noun is put in the Dative (i.e. *Giving*) Case, which, in the First Declension, is ex-pressed by the termination -ae:

(1) *The daughter gives an eagle*   Fīlĭ-a ăquĭl-am fēmĭn-ae dă-t.
    to the woman.
(2) *The woman points out the*   Fēmĭn-ă ăquĭl-am fīlĭ-ae mon-
    eagle to, or for, (her) daughter.   stra-t.

(1) Why is fēmĭnae Dative ?—Ans., *After a verb of Giving, or, Indirect Object of* dat.

In answer to the question (2) Why is fīlĭae Dative ? it is usual to say *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.

---

[1] Distinguish the English Possessive Case "sun's" from "of the sun,' which is not a Case at all, but a Phrase used instead of a Case.

8   6. THE ABLATIVE CASE, besides (1) *sometimes* expressing *separation*, or *motion from*, i.e. *ablation*, also (2) *always* expresses the *instrument with* or *by* which an action is performed. In the First Declension, the Ablative is denoted by -a long, -ā :

(1) *The woman frees the daughter from blame.*	Fēmĭn-a fĭlĭ-am culpā lībĕra-t.
He hastens from Capua.	Prŏpĕră-t Căpŭ-ā.
(2) *The woman washes the daughter with water.*	Fēmĭn-ă fĭlĭ-am ăqu-ā lăva-t.
The daughter gives money with (her) right hand.	Fĭlĭ-ă pĕcūnĭ-am dextr-ā du-t.

(1) Why is culp-ā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of Separation*.[1]

(2) Why is ăquā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of the Means* or *Instrument*.

<div align="center">FIRST DECLENSION, SINGULAR NUMBER.</div>

Nom. Insŭl-ă, *(an* or *the) island* (Subject).
Voc. Insŭl-ă, *O island.*
Acc. Insŭl-am, *(an* or *the) island* (Object).
Gen. Insŭl-ae, *(an* or *the) island's*, or *of (an* or *the) island.*
Dat. Insŭl-ae, *to* or *for (an* or *the) island.*
Abl. Insŭl-ā, *from, with,* or *by (an* or *the) island.*[1]

9   THE ARTICLE.—From the above form it will be seen that what is sometimes called "the Article" in English (i.e. *a* or *the*) does not exist in Latin. Insŭl-ă must be rendered "*an* island" or "*the* island," according to the sense.

<div align="center">EXERCISE I.</div>

<div align="center">(*Learn Vocabulary I.*)</div>

1. [2]Fili-ae. 2. Aquil-ā. 3. Pecuni-am. 4. [3]Femin-ă. 5. Reginam. 6. Aqu-ā. 7. [2]Puell-ae. 8. Naut-ă.[2]

---

[1] The Ablative is only *sometimes* used to express *separation*. Most frequently it cannot be so used *without a Preposition*. The particular Verbs and Adjectives of Separation, which are followed by an Ablative without a Preposition, will be given later on. But the pupil must remember that insŭlā, *without an accompanying Preposition*, very seldom means *from an island.*

9a   [2] These words are capable of more than one translation. Each translation should be written down, both here and for the future.

1. *Of a sailor.* 2. *To a sailor.* 3. *Money* (object). 4. *Water* (subject). 5. *For a girl.* 6. *By water.* 7. *With money.* 8. *O sailor.*

EXERCISE II.

Parse the Nouns in the following Exercise, stating in what Case each is, and why.

1. Femină naut-am aqu-ā lava-t. 2. Naut-ae sapienti-ă procell-am supera-t. 3. Naut-ae sapienti-ā procell-ae violenti-am supera-t. 4. Reginā insul-am fili-ae da-t. 5. Fili-ă pecuni-am dextr-ā dat. 6. Femin-ă pecuni-am naut-ae dextr-ā da-t. 7. Femin-ae patienti-ă naut-ae violenti-am supera-t. 8. Femin-ă patienti-ā naut-am supera-t. 9. Patienti-ă, O femin-ă, violenti-am supera-t. 10. Experienti-ă sapienti-am regin-ae dat. 11. Naut-ae dextr-ă fēmĭn-am violenti-ă (9a) lĭbĕr-a-t.[1]

[Words in brackets, thus (*her*), are not to be translated.]

1. *The queen gives an island to* (her) *daughter.*[2] 2. *The woman's daughter gives money to the sailor.* 3. *The sailor washes* (his) *daughter with* (his) *right hand* (5a). 4. *The sailor's violence overcomes the patience of the queen.* 5. *The woman by* (her) *patience overcomes the sailor's violence.* 6. *The daughter gives the queen's money to the sailor.* 7. (Thy) *daughter's patience, O woman, overcomes the violence of the queen.* 8. *Experience gives* (to) *the sailor wisdom.* 9. *The sailor's prudence delivers the daughter from the storm.*

(When this Exercise is turned into Latin, parse the Latin; and do the same with future Exercises.)

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

There are six similar cases for the Plural of each Noun, so that the Singular and Plural of insŭl-ă are thus declined:

---

[1] The Pupil should parse this Exercise *before construing it.* He should then commit the Latin to memory so as to be able to repeat the Latin of this Exercise from his own English, or from the English when read aloud to him, before he translates the next Exercise into Latin.

10 [2] The Pupil should note the order of the words in the Latin Exercise above, and imitate it by putting the Verb (for the present) *at the end.*

Words that are bracketed in the English Exercises are not to be translated into Latin, e.g. *her* in the first sentence of the English Exercise II.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	Insŭl-ă, *an island.*	Insŭl-ae, *islands.*
Vŏc.	Insŭl-ă, *O island.*	Insŭl-ae, *O islands.*
Acc.	Insŭl-am, *an island.*	Insŭl-ās, *islands.*
Gen.	Insŭl-ae, *of an island.*	Insŭl-ārum, *of islands.*
Dat.	Insŭl-ae, *to* or *for an island.*	Insŭl-ĭs, *to* or *for islands.*
Abl.	Insŭl-ă, *from, with,* or *by an island.*	Insŭl-īs, *from, with,* or *by islands.*

EXERCISE III.

1. Puell-īs.[1] 2. Femin-ārum. 3. Femin-ă.[1] 4. Naut-ae.[1]
5. Violenti-ā. 6. Aquil-ae.[1] 7. Aquil-īs.[1] 8. Aquil-ās.
9. Patienti-am. 10. Naut-ārum.

1. *To women.* 2. *From blame.* 3. *Eagles* (object). 4. *By patience.* 5. *Of eagles.* 6. *O women.* 7. *To eagles.*
8. *Women* (subject). 9. *From an eagle.* 10. *To sailors.*

If a Nominative is changed from the Singular to the Plural Number, the Verb changes also:

The woman loves.	Fēmĭn-ă ămă-t.
The women love.	Fēmĭn-ae ăma-nt.
The eagle devours.	Ăquĭl-a vŏră-t.
The eagles devour.	Ăquĭl-ae vŏra-nt.

The Plural of all Verbs ending in -ă-t is formed by inserting n between a and t:

Sŭpĕra-nt, *they overcome,* monstra-nt, *they point out,*
da-nt, *they give.*

EXERCISE IV.

A.—Change the Singular into the Plural in the Nouns and Verbs of the following:

1. Naut-ă ama-t. 2. Regin-ă monstra-t. 3. Fili-ă lava-t.
4. Femin-ă da-t. 5. Naut-ă supera-t. 6. Puell-ă libera-t.

B.—Change the Plural into the Singular in the following:

1. Nautae da-nt. 2. Regin-ae supera-nt. 3. Aquil-ae vora-nt.
4. Fili-ae ama-nt. 5. Dextr-ae libera-nt. 6. Stell-ae monstra-nt.

---

[1] The words or sentences thus marked are capable of different renderings; all of which should be given.

Exercise V.

1. Naut-ă procell-am supera-t.   2. Naut-ae procell-am supera-nt.
3. Regin-ă pecuni-am puell-ae da-t.   4. Reginae pecuni-am
puell-ae dant (9a).   5. Naut-arum patienti-ă procell-as supera-t.[1]
6. Naut-ae patienti-ā procellam supera-nt.   7. Femin-ă naut-
ārum fili-ās lavat.   8. Femin-ă naut-ārum fili-ās aqu-ā lava-t.
9. Patienti-ā, O naut-ae, violenti-am super-at.   10. Naut-ae, O
regin-ă, patienti-ā procell-ārum violenti-am supera-nt.   11.
Naut-arum dextr-ae regin-am procell-ae violenti-ā libera-nt.[2]

1. The sailor overcomes the storm.   2. The sailors overcome the
storm.   3. The women love the girl.   4. The woman loves the
girl.   5. The queen gives money to the sailors.   6. The eagles
devour the sailor.   7. By patience the sailor overcomes the
storms.   8. The sailor's daughter points out the eagle.   9. The
sailor's daughters point out the eagle to the queen with (their)
right hands.   10. The queen's wisdom frees the woman from
blame.   11. The daughters of the sailors wash the women with
water (5a).

Exercise VI.

11   After the verb "give," *to* is often not used in English,
but the Dative must be retained in Latin:

> The queen gives the sailors   Rēgīna pĕcūnĭam nautīs
>   money.   dăt.

12   Et, (which means *both* or *and*,) is sometimes repeated to
couple together two Nouns *in the same case:*

> Experience gives both   Expĕrĭentĭă et pătĭentĭam
>   patience and wisdom.   et săpĭentĭam dat.

> Sometimes the former et (*both*) is omitted:
> The stars point out the way   Stollae vĭam (et) nautīs et
>   for (both) the sailors and   fēmīnīs monstrant.
>   the women.

---

[1] Sŭpĕrat is Sing. agreeing with its Nom. pătĭentĭ-a, and is not
affected by the Plural Number of the Genitive nautārum.   What
overcomes?—Ans., *patience.*
[2] This and all the following Latin Exercises should be carefully parsed
before being construed, and then learned, so that the pupil can readily
repeat them when the English is given.
   For fīliābus, dĕābus, &c., see Exercise LXXXIV., p. 153, and foll.

1. Fīlĭ-ă aqu-am naut-ae dat. 2. Sapienti-ā, o nautae, regin-ă violenti-am supera-t. 3. Regin-ā fili-ae pecuni-am dextr-ā dat. 4. Stell-ae vi-am naut-is monstra-nt. 5. Experienti-ă naut-is sapienti-am da-t. 6. Stell-ā naut-ae fili-ae vi-am monstra-t. 7. Regin-ae fili-ae naut-as aqu-ā lava-nt. 8. Experienti-ā et sapienti-ā naut-ae procell-as supera-nt. 9. Regin-ă nautis et aquam et pecuni-am da-t. 10. Sapientiǔ regin-am īr-ā et intemperanti-ā libera-t.

1. By experience and (by) patience the sailor overcomes the storm. 2. The queen gives water both to the sailors and to the women. 3. The women give to the sailors water and money. 4. Wisdom, O sailors, gives patience to the queen. 5. The stars point out the way for the daughter of the sailor. 6. The queen's daughter washes the woman with water. 7. The patience of sailors, O daughter, overcomes the storm. 8. The sailors, by (their) patience, overcome the violence of the storm. 9. The queen's daughters give the (11) sailor water. 10. By money the woman frees (her) daughter from the violence of the sailors.

THE SECOND OR O- DECLENSION.

This Declension is divided into three groups, in which the Nominative ends in:

(1)	(2)	(3)
-ŭs	-r	-um

1.—NOUNS IN -ŭs.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Dŏmĭn-ŭs, a lord.[1]	Dŏmĭn-ī, lords.
Voc. Dŏmĭn-ĕ, O lord.	Dŏmĭn-ī, O lords.
Acc. Dŏmĭn-um, a lord.	Dŏmĭn-ōs, lords.
Gen. Dŏmĭn-ī, of a lord.[2]	Dŏmĭn-ōrum, of lords.
Dat. Dŏmĭn-ō, to or for a lord.	Dŏmĭn-īs, to or for lords.
Abl. Dŏmĭn-ō, by, with, or from a lord.[2]	Dŏmĭn-īs, by, with, or from lords.

13   The Voc. Sing. of fīlĭ-ŭs, a son, and of proper names in -ĭŭs, contracts -ĭĕ into -ī: fīlī, O son; Mercŭrī, O

---

[1] Dŏmĭnŭs means lord in the sense of owner, master.

[2] The Gen. Sing. of nouns in -ĭŭs, -ĭum, was generally contracted into -ī; but most English books retain -ii.

13a   [3] N.B. A noun denoting a living thing is never used with by without the Latin Preposition ā or ăb. The pupil should remember that by a spear may be translated hastā, but by a lord is ā dŏmĭnō.

Mercury. The termination -ĭe was avoided even in common nouns in -ĭus, *e.g.* nuntĭ-us, *a messenger.* The Vocatives of these words were not used at all. The Voc. of Deus, *God*, is the same as the Nominative.

2.—*a.* Nouns in -ĕr (gen. -rī).[1]

Nom.	Măgistĕr, *a master.*	Măgistr-ī, *masters.*
Voc.	Măgistĕr, *O master.*	Măgistr-ī, *O masters.*
Acc.	Măgistr-um, *a master.*	Măgistr-ōs, *masters.*
Gen.	Măgistr-ī, *of a master.*	Măgistr-ōrum, *of masters.*
Dat.	Măgistr-ō, *to or for a master.*	Măgistr-īs, *to or for masters.*
Abl.	Măgistr-ō, *by* (13a),*with, or from a master.*	Măgistr-īs, *by, with, or from masters.*

2.—*b.* Nouns in -ĕr (gen. -ĕrī).[2]

Nom.	Pŭĕr, *a boy.*	Pŭĕr-ī, *boys.*
Voc.	Pŭĕr, *O boy.*	Pŭĕr-ī, *O boys.*
Acc.	Pŭĕr-um, *a boy.*	Pŭĕr-ōs, *boys.*
Gen.	Pŭĕr-ī, *of a boy.*	Pŭĕr-ōrum, *of boys.*
Dat.	Pŭĕr-o, *to or for a boy.*	Pŭĕr-īs, *to or for boys.*
Abl.	Pŭĕr-o, *by* (13a), *with,or from a boy.*	Pŭĕr-īs, *by, with, or from boys.*[3]

Vĭr, *a man*, is declined like pŭĕr, except that ĭ is written for ĕ: vĭr-um, vĭr-i, vĭr-o, and vĭr-i, vĭr-os, vĭr-ōrum, vĭr-is.

Nouns in -rī and -ĕrī. The best way to remember which Nouns make -rī and which make -erī, is to remember that

14   1. The *only* Nouns declined like pŭĕr are vĭr, *man;* gĕnĕr, *son-in-law;* sŏcĕr, *father-in-law;* vespĕr, *evening;* Lībĕr, *the god of wine* (called by the Greeks *Bacchus*); also lībĕr-i, *children* (used only in the plural).[3]

15   [1] Nouns in -er once ended in -ĕrus, like nŭmĕr-us, *a number.* The Voc. pŭĕr-ŏ is found in Old Latin.
  [2] Final -i, -o are always long. Also final -is, in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Second Declension, is always long, and final -us in the Nom. Sing. is always short. These syllables will not therefore be always marked long or short for the future.

16   [3] The Adjective ădultĕr (used as a Noun to mean *an adulterer*) may also be included in this list; and so may Adjectives in -fer and -ger used as Nouns, *e.g.* sĭgnĭfĕr, *standard-bearer*, armĭger, *armour-bearer* or *squire.*

2. All other Nouns in **ĕr** are declined like **măgister**
e.g. **ăger, căper,** &c.

3.—Nouns in -um.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	**Regn-um,** *a kingdom*	**Regn-ă,** *kingdoms.*
Voc.	**Regn-um,** *O kingdom.*	**Regn-ă,** *O kingdoms.*
Acc.	**Regn-um,** *a kingdom.*	**Regn-ă,** *kingdoms.*
Gen.	**Regn-ī,** *of a kingdom.*	**Regn-ōrum,** *of kingdoms.*
Dat.	**Regn-ō,** *to or for a king-dom.*	**Regn-īs,** *to or for kingdoms.*
Abl.	**Regn-ō,** *by, with, or from a kingdom.*	**Regn-īs,** *by, with, or from king-doms.*

Exercise VII.

Hăbĕ-t, *(he) has.*	**Hăbe-nt,** *(they) have.*
Terrĕ-t, *(he) terrifies.*	**Terre-nt,** *(they) terrify.*
Tĭmĕ-t, *(he) fears.*	**Time-nt,** *(they) fear.*

1. Hortos habent.[1] 2. Dominus filio hortum dat. 3. Domino-rum filii hortum habent. 4. Filii dominus servo dat. 5. Servo equum dat. 6. Filii servorum equos habent. 7. Domini equum gladio terret. 8. Nauta servos expe-rientiā superat. 9. Servorum patientiā dominum superat. 10. Fluvius aquam habet. 11. Servi, domine, minas timent. 12. Minae, O fili (13), servos terrent.

1. *The lord has a garden.* 2. *The lord's son has gardens.* 3. *The lord's sons have gardens.* 4. *The lord gives a garden to* (*his*) *son.* 5. *The master gives the slave a horse.*[2] 6. *The slave has a sword.* 7. *The lord's sword terrifies the slave.* 8. *The slaves fear the master's sword.* 9. *The master terrifies the men with* (*his*) *sword.* 10. *The slaves overcome the man by patience.* 11. *Experience, O son, gives men patience.* 12. *The slave's patience overcomes the master's violence* (5*a*).

Exercise VIII.—Nouns like măgistĕr.

An Active Verb in **-at, -ant,** or **-et, -ent,** can be made
Passive by adding **-ur;** but the **ā** or **ē** of the Verb, which
was shortened before **t** (**supĕră-t, terrĕ-t**), is long before
-ur.

   [1] Where there is no Subject to the Verb expressed, *he* or *they* must be supplied. Here **hăbent** must be translated *they have.*
   [2] "The slave" here stands for "to the slave," and must be placed in the Dative Case. The pupil must be prepared for this in similar sentences where "to" is omitted after the word "give."

sŭpĕrā-tur, *he is (being) overcome;* sŭpĕrant-ur, *they are (being) overcome.*

terrē-tur, *he is (being) terrified;* terrent-ur, *they are (being) terrified.*

17 RULE.—(1) The *instrument* is expressed by the Ablative alone; but (2) the *agent* (whether a *man* or *other animal*) requires, before the Ablative, the Preposition ā (ăb, before a vowel or h).

The girl is terrified (1) *with* (or *by*) *a spear* (2) *by the sailor.*	Puella (1) hastā (2) ā nautā terrōtur.

1 Minister librum habet. 2. Magister agros fabris dat. 3. Aper caprum terret. 4. Minister caprum cultro terret. 5. Ager colubros habet. 6. Cancer colubros timet. 7. Cancri colubrorum violentiam timent. 8. Fabri minister Austrum timet. 9. Domini ministros arbiter sapientiâ superant. 10. Pueri a colubris et ab apris terrentur. 11. Apri servorum hastis et gladiis supĕrantur. 12. Feminas (16a) terrent.

EXERCISE IX.

CAUTION.—Distinguish between :

Lĭbr-os, *books.*	Lĭbĕr-os, *children.*
Lĭbr-um, *a book.*	Lĭbĕr-um, Liber, *the god of wine.*

A. 1. *Of snakes.* 2. *To a son-in-law.* 3. *To a crab.* 4. *To Liber.* 5. *By* (17) *goats.* 6. *Children* (Abl.). 7. *Of boys.* 8. *Of wild-boars.* 9. *Artificers* (Abl.). 10. *To books.* 11. *To children.* 12. *Attendants* (Abl.). 13. *For sons-in-law.* 14. *Of a father-in-law.* 15. *Of the South Wind.* 16. *To a field.* 17. *To a man.* 18. *To crabs.* 19. *To Liber.* 20. *Of children.* 21. *By* (17) *children.* 22. *By books.* 23. *By goats.* 24. *By wild-boars.*

B. 1. *The master terrifies the servants.* 2. *The servant fears the master's violence.* 3. *The crab fears the snakes of the field.* 4. *The goat fears the servant's knife.* 5. *The umpire overcomes the lord's violence by* (his) *patience.* 6. *The artificer gives the servant a field.* 7. *The servant gives* (his) *master a knife.* 8. *The servants are terrified by the lord's threats.* 9. *The lord is overcome by the slaves.*

EXERCISE X.—NOUNS LIKE pŭĕr.

1. Hortum puero dant. 2. Vesperum puer timet. 3. Agricolae Liberum amant. 4. Vesper virum terret. 5. Viri socer

feminam terret. 6. Virorum soceri feminae generum terrent.
7. Puerorum violentiā virorum patientiam superat.   8. Gener
a socero gladio terrotur.   9. Regina procollae violentiā
nautarum experientiā liberatur.

1. *The boy loves Liber.   2. The woman's son-in-law fears the
   father-in-law.   3. The women fear the man's son-in-law.
   4. The men's father-in-law terrifies the boys.   5. The woman's
   patience overcomes the violence of the children.   6. Experience
   gives men wisdom.   7. By patience children overcome the
   father-in-law's violence.   8. The wild-boars are overcome by the
   spears of the lords.   9. The queen is delivered (8) from the
   enry of the servants (5a).*

EXERCISE XI.—NOUNS LIKE măgistĕr AND pŭĕr.

18

Nōn, *not.*[1]   Nĕquĕ, *and not.*
Lauda-t, *praises.*   Culpa-t, *blames.*

1. *The lord does not blame the*   1. Dŏmĭnus fēmĭnam nōn cul-
   woman.   pat.
2. *The lord praises the man,*   2. Dŏmĭnus vĭrum laudat nĕ-
   and does not blame the   quĕ fēmĭnam culpat.
   woman.

1. Capri puerum timent.   2. Caper puerorum cultros timet.
   3. Liberi minister librum non laudat.   4. Puer virum timet
   neque feminam amat.   5. Feminae generos culpant neque
   soceros laudant.   6. Colubri fabri ministros terrent.   7. Fa-
   brorum generi arbitri patientiam culpant neque sapientiam
   laudant.   8. Liberi ministris caprum agricola dat.   9. Aper
   servos non timet neque domini hastā superatur.   10. Puella
   a capris non terretur.

1. *The book praises Liber.   2. The servants of Liber do not praise
   books.   3. The boys terrify the goats and do not fear the
   snakes.   4. The boy terrifies the goat with a knife.   5. The
   man praises (his) father-in-law's field.   6. The snakes terrify
   the artificer's son-in-law.   7. The man fears (his) father-in-
   law, and does not love (his) son-in-law.   8. The husbandmen
   give Liber a goat.   9. The queen is not delivered from the
   storm by the sailors (5a).*

---

19   [1] Nōn always means *not;* but *not* is not always to be translated nōn. In
commands and some other sentences, nē is used, see Exercise XXXVI. But
not may always be translated by nōn in *statements and direct questions;*
and these are the only sentences with which the pupil will have to do for
the present.

<center>Exercise XII.—Nouns in -um and -ĕr.</center>

20   Rule.—Two Nominatives coupled by -et take the Verb in the Plural :

Patience and constancy overcome violence.	Pătĭentĭa et constantĭa vīolentĭam sŭpĕrant.

1. Agricola Liberi dona laudat neque libros amat. 2. Magister argentum ministro dat. 3. Argentum, non aurum, dominus servis dat. 4. Pueri diligentiae praemiis delectantur. 5. Puerorum praemia viri non amant. 6. Templa Liber et Neptunus habent. 7. Liberi templa argentum habent. 8. Liberi templa argentum, non libros, habent. 9. Liberi templis agricolae aurum dant. 10. Diligentiā et constantiā praemia habent. 11. Oppida muros et templa habent. 12. Horti et arva ab agricolis laudantur.

1. *The master gives the attendants gold.* 2. *The master's gifts are not praised by the boys.* 3. *The boy and the girl love rewards.* 4. *The master gives the boy the reward of diligence.* 5. *The husbandmen are delighted by the walls and temples of the town.* 6. *The temples of the town have silver and gold.* 7. *The husbandman and the sailor give gifts to the temples of the towns.* 8. *The man by (his) gifts overcomes the sailor's constancy.* 9. *The sailors praise the husbandmen's cornfields.* 10. *The lord is terrified by the storm, and does not love water.*

<center>ADJECTIVES</center>

<center>FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.</center>

<center>Adjectives in -ŭs, -ă, -um.</center>

Adjectives in Latin *agree in Number and Case* with the Nouns which they qualify :

Nom. Sing. Bŏnus dŏmĭnus.	*The good lord.*
Gen. Sing. Bŏni dŏmĭni.	*Of the good lord.*
Nom. Plur. Bŏni dŏmĭni.	*The good lords.*
Gen. Plur. Bŏnōrum dŏmĭnōrum.	*Of the good lords.*

But besides agreeing in number and case, most Latin Adjectives also have three forms to suit the three kinds of Noun-terminations represented by (1) dŏmĭnus, (2) fēmĭna, (3) regnum.

Nom. Sing. Bŏnus dŏmĭnus, bŏna fēmĭna, bŏnum regnum.
Gen. Sing. Bŏnī dŏmĭnī, bŏnae fēmĭnae, bŏnī regnī.
Nom. Plur. Bŏnī dŏmĭnī, bŏnae fēmĭnae, bŏna regna.
Gen. Plur. Bŏnōrum dŏmĭnōrum, bŏnārum fēmĭnārum, bŏ-
          nōrum regnōrum.

These three forms of the Adjective are called its *Genders.*
(1) The form in -ŭs is called the Masculine Gender, (2)
the form in -ă the Feminine, (3) the form in -um the
Neuter.

21   RULE.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender,
Number, and Case.

		Singular.		**1.**		*Plural.*	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Bŏn-us	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Voc.	Bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Acc.	Bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Gen.	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Abl.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

2.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.V.	Nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

22   GENDER OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.—Nouns of the First
Declension are Feminine.

Exceptions : nauta, *a sailor,* aurīga, *a charioteer,* and
other words denoting the occupations of men, are Mascu-
line.

23   GENDER OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.—(1) Nouns in -ŭs
and ĕr are Masculine, (2) Nouns in -um are Neuter.

Exceptions.—Dŏmus, *house,* and hŭmus, *ground,* are
Feminine ; pĕlăgus, *the sea,* vīrus, *poison,* and vulgus, *the
common folk,* are Neuter.[1]

---

[1] The exceptional Masculine use of vulgus is not to be imitated.
For the other exceptions, see the Table of Genders, p. 226.
A few Nouns (together with all those which may denote either males or

SINGULAR NUMBER.

	Feminine.		Masculine.		Neuter.	
	A good woman.		*A good lord.*		*A good gift.*	
Nom.	Bŏn-ă fēmĭn-ă		Bŏn-us dŏmĭn-us		Bŏn-um dōn-um	
Voc.	„ -ă	„ -ă	„ -ĕ	„ -ĕ	„ -um	„ -um
Acc.	„ -am	„ -am	„ -um	„ -um	„ -um	„ -um
Gen.	„ -ae	„ -ae	„ -ī	„ -ī	„ -ī	„ -ī
Dat.	„ -ae	„ -ae	„ -o	„ -o	„ -o	„ -o
Abl.	„ -ā	„ -ā	„ -o	„ -o	„ -o	„ -o

PLURAL NUMBER.

	Good women.		Good lords.		Good gifts.	
Nom.	Bŏn-ae fēmĭn-ae		Bŏn-ī domĭn-ī		Bŏn-a dōn-a	
Voc.	„ -ae	„ -ae	„ -ī	„ -ī	„ -ă	„ -ă
Acc.	„ -as	„ -as	„ -os	„ -os	„ -ă	„ -ă
Gen.	„ -ārum	„ -ārum	„ -ōrum	„ -ōrum	„ -ōrum	„ -ōrum
Dat.	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs
Abl.	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs	„ -īs

Hitherto the terminations of the Noun and Adjective have been the same. But this is not always the case, as may be seen from the following instances:

SINGULAR.

	A great man.		A great charioteer (m).	A great sea (n).	
Nom.	Magn-us vir		Magn-us aurĭg-ă	Magn-um pĕlăg-us	
Voc.	Magn-ĕ vir		Magn-ĕ aurĭg-a	Magn-um pĕlăg-us	
Acc.	„ -um vĭr -um		Magn-um aurĭg-am	Magn-um pĕlăg-us	
Gen.	„ -ī	„ -ī	Magn-ī aurĭg-ae	„ -ī	„ -ī
Dat.	„ -o	„ -o	Magn-o aurĭg-ae	„ -o	„ -o
Abl.	„ -o	„ -o	Magn-o aurĭg-ā	„ -o	„ -o

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Vir magnus a nautā strenuo laudatur. 2. Dona parva improbi pueri culpant. 3. Naută impavidus pelagus non timet. 4. Pelagus vastum et procella magna nautas pavidos terrent. 5. Scribă strennus docti magistri jussa non timet. 6. Aurigam probum pericula magna non terrent. 7. Nautae improbo regina dona splendida dat. 8. Nautarum proborum filii praemia magna habent. 9. Aurigae strenui patientiā nauta improbus superatur. 10. Feminam probam et nautam strenuum regina bona laudat. 11. Pericula, parve fili, viros justos non terrent. 12. Via aurigae strenuo a puellā monstratur.

---

females, *e.g.* pŏēta, *poet*, incŏla, *inhabitant*) vary between the Masc. and Fem.; these are said to be *of common Gender*, and are indicated in the Vocabularies by *c.* But incŏla, pŏēta, and the like, are so much more frequently Masc. than Fem., that they are marked *m.*

(The Adjective in Latin generally, but not always, follows its Noun.)

1. *The rigorous charioteer is not terrified by dangers.*   2. *The danger of the way, and the violence of the storm, do not terrify the fearless charioteers.*   3. *The learned master gives a long letter to the honest scribe.*   4. *The daughters of the dishonest clerk fear the commands of the good queen.*   5. *The sailor's daughter fears the vast sea.*   6. *The dangers of the long way overcome the constancy of the good charioteer.*   7. *The queen by splendid gifts overcomes the constancy of the worthy sailors.*   8. *The unworthy charioteers terrify with threats the sailor's daughter.*   9. *Storms, O fearful sailor, do not terrify fearless men.*   10. *The man points out the way with (his) right hand for the honest sailor.*

Exercise XIV.

Est, *(he, she, it) is.*   **Sunt,** *(they) are.*

After the Verb est or sunt the question *who?* or *what?* is answered by the Nominative.

Britain is an island.   Brĭtannĭa est insŭla.
Wars are the causes of evils.   Bella sunt mălōrum caus-ae.

24   Rule.—The Verb *to be* takes the same Case after it as before it.

Why are insŭla and causae Nom.?—*Ans.,* Because the Verb est takes the same Case after it as before it.

The horses are great (horses).   Ĕqui sunt magni (ĕqui).
The woman is (a) good (woman).   Fēmĭna est bŏna (fēmĭna).

24a   From the last examples we see that an Adjective still agrees with its Noun in Number, Gender, and Case, even when separated from the Noun by the Verb *to be.*

1. Britanniae incolae sunt nautae.   2. Nautae non sunt timidi.   3. Agri sunt lati.   4. Oppidum est magnum.   5. Puer est validus.   6. Pueri patientia magna est.   7. Aquila est alba.   8. Aquilarum alae sunt albae.   9. Oppida parva sunt.   10. Oppidorum templa sunt alta.   11. Dominus ab equis albis delectatur.   12. Femina proborum generorum filias amat.

1. *The sailor is timid.*   2. *The walls of the town are high.*   3. *The field is broad.*   4. *The towns are not great.*   5. *The experience*

of the boy is small. 6. *The wings of the eagle are great.*
7. *The walls of the temple are white.* 8. *The master has
black horses and white goats.* 9. *The master's horses are
black.* 10. *The eagle has white wings.* 11. *The timid sailor
is terrified both by the unjust queen and by the vast sea.*

EXERCISE XV.

ADJECTIVES IN -ĕr.[1]

Like the Nouns in -er, so also the Adjectives in -er are
declined (1) some like **puer**, (2) others like **măgister**.

The pupil will find it the best course to commit to
memory the former class, as being the fewer.

25 1. Declined like **puer**: asper, *rough,* lĭber, *free* (whence
lĭberi, *children*), miser, *wretched,* prosper, *prosperous,* tĕner,
tender.[2]

2. Declined like **măgister**: all Adjectives in -er not
contained in the above list.

1 Impigrum agricolam poeta piger timet. 2. Regina pulchra
ab improbis incolis terretur. 3. Agricolae vafri tenerum
puerum verbis falsis laudant. 4 Domini prosperi macros
capros habent. 5. Reginae liberis libros sacros poëtae dant.
6. Et nauta miser et auriga strenuus filios negros habent.
7. Templorum sacrorum portis rubris et muris nigris
viri delectantur. 8. Morbi agricolas miseros superant. 9.
Agricolae vafri filius parvae puellae caprum macrum dat.
10 Morbum taetrum nautae pavidi timent.

1. *The beautiful woman is overcome by the foul disease.* 2. *The
slothful sailors fear the active husbandman.* 3. *The cunning
boys give a lean goat to the miserable sailor.* 4. *The wretched
sons of the sick husbandman fear the foul disease.* 5. *The foul
disease terrifies the wretched sailors.* 6. *The sick women
praise the sacred books with foolish words.* 7. *The vigorous
husbandmen overcome by (their) wisdom the foul diseases (5a).*
8. *The cunning lord gives lean goats to the sick women.*

---

[1] As final -er is always short, it will not be marked short for the
future.

26 [2] Besides these, there are (though not contained in the following Ex-
ercises), (1) lăcer, *torn,* and (2) Adjectives derived from the Verbs fer-o
and ger-o, *I bear,* viz. frūgĭ-fer, *fruit-bearing ;* corn-ĭger, *horn-bearing.*
In the nom. sing. prospĕrus is more common than prosper.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. The Consonant Branch.

In the Third Declension some Nouns have a Stem (see Glossary, Appendix VIII.) ending in a consonant, *e.g.* c in judĭc-is, judĭc-i, *of a judge, to a judge,* or m in hiĕm-is, hiĕm-i, *of winter, to winter.* This class of Nouns is called the Consonant Branch.

In the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension the Nom. Sing. endings are numerous, but -s (sometimes disguised in the shape of -x, which represents -gs, and -cs) is the most common.

A.—MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom. } *Voc.* }	[-s]	-ēs
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Gen.	-ĭs	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ĭbus
Abl.	-ĕ, rarely -ī	-ĭbus

I. Nouns in which the Stem ends in a guttural (throat) letter, *i.e.* -c hard, or -g :

Singular.

	Leader (m).	Judge (c).[1]	Law (f)	Citadel (f)
N.V.	Dux (Duc-s)	Judex (Judĭc-s)	Lex (Leg-s)	Arx (Arc-s)
Acc.	Dŭc-em	Judĭc-em	Lēg-em	Arc-em
Gen.	Dŭc-is	Judĭc-is	Lēg-is	Arc-is
Dat.	Dŭc-i	Judĭc-i	Lēg-i	Arc-i
Abl.	Dŭc-ĕ	Judĭc-ĕ	Lēg-ĕ	Arc-ĕ

Plural.

N.V.	Dŭc-ēs	Judĭc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
Acc.	Dŭc-ēs	Judĭc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
Gen.	Dŭc-um	Judĭc-um	Lēg-um	Arc-ium
Dat.	Dŭc-ĭbus	Judĭc-ĭbus	Lēg-ĭbus	Arc-ĭbus
Abl.	Dŭc-ĭbus	Judĭc-ĭbus	Lēg-ĭbus	Arc-ĭbus

---

[1] The abbreviation *c.* means that jŭdex is of *common* gender, being mostly masculine, but sometimes feminine.

II. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a dental (tooth) letter, *i.e.* -t or -d :

Singular.

	Soldier (m).	Foot (m).	Summer (f.).
N.V.	Miles (Milet-s)[1]	Pēs (Ped-s)	Æstās (Æstat-s)
Acc.	Milit-em	Pĕd-em	Æstāt-em
Gen.	Milit-is	Pĕd-is	Æstāt-is
Dat.	Milit-i	Pĕd-i	Æstāt-i
Abl.	Milit-ĕ	Pĕd-ĕ	Æstāt-ĕ

Plural.

N.V.	Milit-ēs	Pĕd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Acc.	Milit-ēs	Pĕd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Gen.	Milit-um	Pĕd-um	Æstāt-um
Dat.	Milit-ĭbus	Pĕd-ĭbus	Æstāt-ĭbus
Abl.	Milit-ĭbus	Pĕd-ĭbus	Æstāt-ĭbus

Nox, *f.* (for noct-s) Gĕn. noct-is, *night*, is declined like Æstās ; but the Gen. Plur. (see Par. 40) is noct-ĭum.

27   RULE.—The Dative is used after Adjectives signifying *pleasing, displeasing, troublesome, easy, difficult,* and the like :

Laws are not troublesome to a just judge.	Lēges jūdĭci justo non mŏlestae sunt.

28   RULE.—Dignus and indignus (*worthy* and *unworthy*) govern the Ablative :

Impatience is unworthy of a leader.	Impătientia dŭcĕ indigna est.

Exercise XVI.

Laed-ĭt, (*he*) hurts.	Laed-unt, (*they*) hurt.
Laedĭt-ur, (*he*) is (*being*) hurt.	Laedunt-ur, (*they*) are (*being*) hurt.

1. Leges justae regibus bonis non sunt molestae.   2. Bella militibus jucunda sunt.   3. Militum ignavia ducibus claris ingrata

---

29   [1] The e of the true Stem (milēt-) is changed into -ĭ in all except the Nom. and Voc. Cases. Similarly, the true Stem of virgo (virgon-) is changed into virgin-. But sometimes, as in jūdex above, the true Stem (jūdic-) is lost in the Nom. but preserved in the other Cases.

est. 4. Lapides militum miserorum pedes laedunt. 5. Comitis validi constantiā fessus (i)pse delectatur. 6. Equites peditem acutis gladiis terrent. 7. Rege bono leves malae indignae sunt. 8. Judicum verba injusta dominis justi mokesta sunt. 9. Noctis obscuras pueri parvi timent. 10. Domini arx ab agricolā laudatur. 11. Aetatis memoria militibus grata est. 12. Aurigae pes sinister spinā acutā laeditur. 13. Agricolae equi validi (24a) sunt.

1. *The constancy of the strong soldiers is pleasing to the good king. 2. Slothfulness is unworthy of a great leader. 3. The low landmen point out the citadel of the lord to (their) companions. 4. A dark night terrifies the timid boy. 5. The memory of the pleasant summer is agreeable to the miserable husbandmen. 6. The anger of the horsemen is displeasing to the foot-soldiers. 7. The companions of the horse-soldiers hurt the good husbandman with many stones. 8. Good laws are worthy of a just king. 9. The feet of the weary companions are hurt by the sharp stones. 10. The queen gives just laws to the renowned leader and to the good judges.*

III. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a labial (lip) letter, *i.e.* -m, -p, -b:

Singular.

	Chief (m.).	*Beam (f.).*	*Winter (f.).*
N. V.	Princep-s	Trab-s	Hiem(p)-s[1]
	(Princip-s)		
Acc.	Princip-em	Trăb-em	Hiĕm-em
Gen.	Princip-is	Trăb-is	Hiĕm-is
Dat.	Princip-i	Trăb-i	Hiĕm-i
Abl.	Princip-ĕ	Trăb-ĕ	Hiĕm-ĕ

Plural.

N. V.	Princĭp-ēs	Trăb-ēs	Hiĕm-ēs
Acc.	Princĭp-ēs	Trăb-ēs	Hiĕm-ēs
Gen.	Princĭp-um	Trăb-um	Hiĕm-um
Dat.	Princĭp-ĭbus	Trăb-ĭbus	Hiĕm-ĭbus
Abl.	Princĭp-ĭbus	Trăb-ĭbus	Hiĕm-ĭbus

IV. Nouns in which the stem ends with (1) a nasal (nose) letter, *i.e.* -n, or (2) -u:

---

[1] P is inserted for euphony, between m and s in the Nominative of this word, so that the right spelling is hiemps.

Singular.

	Lion (m.).	*Maiden (f.).*	*Crane (c.).*
N.V.	Leo (Leŏ-n)	Virgo (Virgŏ-n) [1]	Gru-s
Acc	Leon-em	Virgin-em	Grŭ-em
Gen.	Leōn-is	Virgin-is	Grŭ-is
Dat.	Leōn-i	Virgin-i	Grŭ-i
Abl.	Leōn-ĕ	Virgin-ĕ	Grŭ-ĕ

Plural.

N.V.	Leōn-ēs	Virgin-ēs	Grŭ-ēs
Acc.	Leon-ēs	Virgin-ēs	Grŭ-ēs
Gen.	Leōn-um	Virgin-um	Grŭ-um
Dat.	Leōn-ĭbus	Virgin-ĭbus	Grŭ-ĭbus
Abl.	Leōn-ĭbus	Virgin-ĭbus	Grŭ-ĭbus

EXERCISE XVII.

30   RULE.—The question *When?* or *Within what time?* is answered by the Ablative, as hĭĕme, *in winter*, nocte, *by night.*

31   RULE.—The question *How long?* or *During what time?* is answered by the Accusative, as multos annos, *for,* or *during, many years.*

Vīvit, (*he*) *lives.*   **Vīvunt,** (*they*) *live.*

1. Multi homines aestatem hieme laudant. 2. Virgines aestate hiemem, hieme aestatem laudant. 3 Leones multas aestates et multas hiemes vivunt. 4. Principibus pavidis mo- lestus est. 5. Nautae nocte magnam gruum multitudinem puellae monstrant. 6. Virgines tenerae ab improbis prin- cipum filiis minis terrentur. 7. Papiliones paucas horas, elephantes multos annos vivunt.[2] 8. Leoni fero equitis comes caprum macrum dat. 9. Templum longas trabes, portas magnas, habet.[3] 10. Templi trabs longitudinem. miram habet. 11 Comites pavidi principe indigni sunt. 12. Multa poma aestate terra habet.

1. *The sailor praises land in winter,* (*but*) *blames* (*it*) *in summer.* 2. *For many hours the lion devours the tender goats.* 3. *The sailor by night points out a multitude of cranes to the maiden.* 4. *The daughters of the chief fear the savage lion.* 5. *A*

---

[1] Virgo and hŏmo originally kept the o throughout, and hŏmŏnes, for hŏmĭnes, is actually preserved, though, of course, not to be used.

[2] Repeat vivunt after pāpĭliŏnēs, "paucas horas (vivunt)."

32   [3] In enumerations, and in other sentences, ĕt, or some other conjunction, is often omitted where the English must insert *and, but,* &c.

butterfly does not live for-many hours. 6. Unjust words are unworthy of a chief. 7. By the companions of the beautiful maidens the lion is frightened with a sword. 8. The winter is troublesome to the maidens and not agreeable to the chief. 9. The queen gives praise to chiefs and gold to poets. 10. In the night the lion devours a multitude of tender goats.

V. Nouns in which the Stem ends with (1) a liquid, *i.e.* -l, -r, or (2) a sibilant, *i.e.* -s :[1]

Singular.

Consul (m.).	*Love* (m.).	*Tree* (f.).	*Flower* (m.).
N.V. Consul	Ămor[2]	Arbor(-ōs)[2]	Flōs[1]
Acc. Consŭl-em	Amōr-em	Arbŏr-em	Flōr-em
Gen. Consŭl-is	Amōr-is	Arbŏr-is	Flōr-is
Dat. Consŭl-i	Amōr-i	Arbŏr-i	Flōr-i
Abl. Consŭl-ĕ	Amor-ĕ	Arbŏr-ĕ	Flōr-ĕ

Plural.

N.V. Consŭl-ēs	Ămōr-ēs	Arbŏr-ēs	Flōr-ēs
Acc. Consŭl-ēs	Amōr-ēs	Arbŏr-ēs	Flōr-ĕs
Gen. Consŭl-um	Amōr-um	Arbŏr-um	Flōr-um
Dat. Consŭl-ĭbus	Amōr-ĭbus	Arbŏr-ĭbus	Flōr-ĭbus
Abl. Consŭl-ĭbus	Amōr-ĭbus	Arbŏr-ĭbus	Flōr-ĭbus

Cĭnĭs *c.*, makes cĭnĕr-em, cĭnĕr-is, cĭnĕr-i, &c.

33   Note that anser differs from păter, as pŭer from mă: gister; the former retains, the latter rejects, in the other Cases, the -e of the Nom.

Singular.

Goose (m.).	*Father* (m.).	*Mother* (f.).
N.V. Anser	Păter(Păter-)	Măter (Măter-)
Acc. Ansĕr-em	Patr-em	Matr-em
Gen. Ansĕr-is	Patr-is	Matr-is
Dat. Ansĕr-i	Patr-i	Matr-i
Abl. Ansĕr-ĕ	Patr-ĕ	Matr-ĕ

---

[1] (1) Many sibilant stems retain -s in the Nom. Sing , but change it to -r in the other cases: flōs, Gen. flōr-is (for flōs-is), rōs, Gen. rōr-is (for rōs-is) *of dew* (2) Others have two forms of the Nom.: labōs or labor, Gen. labōr-is, *of labour;* and so arbōs or arbor, Gen. arbŏr-is, *of a tree.*

[2] Final -or is short, and therefore its quantity is not marked in ămor, arbor, &c.

Plural.

N.V. Ansĕr-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
Acc. Ansĕr-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
Gen. Ansĕr-um	Patr-um	Matr-um
Dat. Ansĕr-ĭbus	Patr-ĭbus	Matr-ĭbus
Abl. Ansĕr-ĭbus	Patr-ĭbus	Matr-ĭbus [1]

<center>EXERCISE XVIII.</center>

34 RULE.—An 'Adjective *is* sometimes used (1) in the Masculine to agree with *men* understood; (2) in the Neuter to agree with *thing* or *things* understood.

Many (men) praise the king.	**Multi** rēgem laudant.
The father gives (his) son many (things).	Păter filĭo **multa** dat.
To err is (a) dangerous (thing).	Errāre est pĕrīcŭlōsum.[2]

Sŭpĕrā-re, *to overcome.*   Culpā-re, *to blame.*
Laudā-re, *to praise.*   Ĕrat, *(he) was,* ĕrant, *(they) were.*

35 N.B.—The Adj. is often separated from its Noun by a Gen. belonging to the Noun, *e.g., the consul's clear voice,* clāra consŭlis vox; and sometimes by other words: flōrĭbus sē pulchris dēlectat, *he delights himself with beautiful flowers.*

1. Multi regem laudant neque reginam culpant. 2. Jucundum est laudāre, culpare injucundum (est). 3. Rex pauca filio dat, filiae multa (dat). 4. Puer anserem timet, patrem et matrem non timet. 5. Sepulcrum pulchrum multorum amicorum cineres habet. 6. Hiemps frigida arbores magnas et parvos flores laedit. 7. Milites magno clamore claram consulis vocem superant. 8. Pulchri florum colores virginum oculis grati sunt. 9. Anserem stultum multa terrent. 10. Femina a virgine amore magno amatur. 11. Militum clamor timoris causa est agricolis.[3] 12. Consulum jussa timoris causae erant militibus. 13. Timidos nocte (30) multa terrent.

---

36 [1] The pupil should note that in the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension, he can form the cases of any Noun without committing them to memory, if he remembers the Nom. and Gen. Singular.

All the other cases can be formed by striking off the -is from the Gen., *e.g.* anser-, patr-, and adding -em, -i, -ē, -es, -um, -ĭbus. See p. 18.

36a [2] Here, part of a Verb is treated as a Noun, and is the Subject of est. See further, Exercise XXXV.

[3] Agricŏlis may be parsed as the "Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage." See par. 7.

1. *To overcome is pleasant for soldiers.* 2. *The consul gives many things¹ to the rigorous soldier.* 3. *Many praise the king, few blame (him).* 4. *A goose fears many-things, (and) terrifies few-men.¹* 5. *The companions of the soldiers overpower the king's voice by (their) clamour.* 6. *The colour of the flowers is agreeable to the eyes of the beautiful maidens.* 7. *The broad sepulchres have the ashes of many soldiers.* 8. *The flower by (its) colour and pleasant odour delights the maidens.* 9. *The cold winters were troublesome to the timid sons of the husbandmen.* 10. *To praise the bad is unpleasing and-not just.* 11. *For-a-few hours (31) the soldiers overcome the sailors.*

B.—NEUTER NOUNS OF THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

Singular.

	Head (n.).	Name (n.).	Right or Law (n.).	Work (n.).
N.V. Acc.	Căput	Nōmen	Jūs	Ŏpus
Gen.	Căpĭt-is	Nōmĭn-is	Jūr-is	Ŏpĕr-ĭs
Dat.	Căpĭt-i	Nōmĭn-i	Jūr-i	Ŏpĕr-i
Abl.	Căpĭt-ĕ	Nōmĭn-ĕ	Jūr-ĕ	Ŏpĕr-ĕ

Plural

	Head (n.).	Name (n.).	Right or Law (n.).	Work (n.).
N.V. Acc.	Căpĭt-ă	Nōmĭn-ă	Jūr-ă	Ŏpĕr-ă
Gen.	Căpĭt-um	Nōmĭn-um	Jūr-um	Ŏpĕr-um
Dat.	Căpĭt-ĭbus	Nōmĭn-ĭbus	Jūr-ĭbus	Ŏpĕr-ĭbus
Abl.	Căpĭt-ĭbus	Nōmĭn-ĭbus	Jūr-ĭbus	Ŏpĕr-ĭbus

Note also corpus, corpŏr-is, corpŏr-i, &c., *a body.*

EXERCISE XIX.

37 When two Nouns of kindred meaning are connected together in one phrase, instead of et between the two Nouns, -quĕ is added *as an extra syllable* to the *latter* of the two Nouns : *flowers and trees,* flōres arbŏresquĕ.

1. Fulmen arbores fruticesque et corpora hominum laedit. 2. Carmina sunt poetarum opera. 3. Jura belli agricolae timent. 4. Pueri nomen pulchrum erat. 5. Verbera judicibus consulibusque indigna sunt. 6. Equitum peditumque multitudinem vastam mercatores jure² timent. 7. Militum opera oppidorum incolis ingrata erant. 8. Capri capita parva,

---

¹ The words *things* and *men* (here and in other passages where they are used with *many* or *few*) should not be translated. See the Rule above.
38 ² Jure is the Abl. used as an Adverb, *ly right,* i.e. *rightly, naturally.*

corpora macra, pedes longos habent. 9. Multis hominibus multorum scelerum causa est aurum.[1] 10. Sidera nautis hieme grata erant. 11. Injusti judicis verba bona (erant), facta mala erant. 12. Corpori cibum, doctrinam menti Deus dat. 13. Miles ab injusto judice cu.pa (8) liberatur.

[2]1. *The leader's head (was) small, his body was lean. 2. The multitude of the merchants fears the horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers. 3. The works of soldiers are displeasing to husband-men. 4. Flowers and shrubs are agreeable to the inhabitants of towns. 5. Boys give food and sleep (use -que) to (their) bodies, learning to (their) minds. 6. The names of the boys and girls are beautiful. 7. Unjust laws are unworthy of kings and queens. 8. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers are not terrified by the crimes of (their) leaders. 9. The poet's work delights the queen with (its) beautiful name. 10. It was (a) renowned (thing) to overcome a multitude of horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers in-war* (Abl. of instr.)

THIRD DECLENSION.

2.—NOUNS WHOSE STEM ENDS IN i.

39   These Nouns differ from the Consonant Branch in this respect, that they make the Gen. Plur. in -ium; whereas, in the Consonant Branch, the Gen. Plur. mostly ends in -um.[3] But the Stem i (being very variable, often dropped, and often changed into e,) frequently disappears.

---

[1] What case is hŏmĭnĭbus, and why? See Par 7.

[2] For the Genders of Nouns of the Third Declension see page 226; and for Exercises on the Exceptions see Exercises LXXXIV to XCII.

40   [3] The more advanced pupil will find that several Nouns of the Consonant Branch take -ium in the Gen. Pl. The following rules will be found useful:—

1. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is ˘ ˘ (as dŭc-ĭs), take -um (dŭc-um).
   Examples: pătr-um, sĕn-um, pĕd-um, grĕg-um, ăp-um, &c.

2. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is ˉ ˘ (as ārc-ĭs) take -ium.
   Examples: falc-ium, urb-ium, art-ium, lĭt-ium, font-ium, pont-ium, mont-ium, noct-ium, &c.

   Exceptions are vōc-um, lēg-um, rēg-um, jūr-um, and a few others.

B.—1. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

Singular.

	Ship (f.).	Shower (m.).	Cloud (f.).
N.V.	Nāv-is	Imber (Imbri-)	Nūb-ēs (Nubi-)
Acc.	Nāv-em	Imbr-em	Nūb-em
Gen.	Nāv-is	Imbr-is	Nūb-is
Dat.	Nāv-i	Imbr-i	Nūb-i
Abl.	Nāv-i or -ĕ	Imbr-i (-ĕ) [1]	Nūb-ĕ

Plural.

N.V.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Acc.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Gen.	Nāv-ium	Imbr-ium	Nūb-ium
Dat.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus
Abl.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus

2.—Neuter Nouns.

Singular.

	Sea (n.).	Animal (n.).	Spur (n.).	Bone (n.).
N.V. Acc.	Mǎr-ĕ	Ănĭmăl	Calcar	Ŏs [2]
Gen.	Mǎr-is	Ănĭmāl-is	Calcār-is	Oss-is
Dat.	Mǎr-i	Ănĭmāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-i
Abl.	Mǎr-i	Ănĭmāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-ĕ

Plural.

	Marĭ-ă	Ănĭmāl-ĭă	Calcār-ĭă	Oss-ă
N.V. Acc.	Marĭ-ă	Ănĭmāl-ĭă	Calcār-ĭă	Oss-ă
Gen.	Marĭ-um	Ănĭmāl-ium	Calcār-ium	Oss-ium
Dat.	Marĭ-bus	Ănĭmāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus
Abl.	Marĭ-bus	Ănĭmāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus

41 Nĕque or nĕc, when repeated, means *neither . . . nor*.

Consūm-it, (*he*) *consumes*.   Consūm-unt, (*they*) *consume*.

Exercise XX.

1. Nautae validi neque imbres crebros neque maria saeva timent. 2. Imbri longo et fulmine crebro pastores terrentur. 3. Hominum sapientiā et animalium robur et maris furor superantur. 4. Navem rapidam mare avidum vorat. 5. Naves

---

42 [1] A few Nouns in -is take only -im in the Acc., and only -i in the Abl.: sĭtis, *thirst*; tussis, *cough*; vīs, *violence*; and names of towns and rivers, *e.g.,* Tĭbĕris, *the Tiber*. The following commonly take -im. febris, *fever*; pelvis, *basin*; puppis, *poop*: restis, *rope*; turris, *tower*; sĕcūris, *axe*.

43 Ignis makes Abl. in -i, except in poetry: and Abl. -i is always found in those Nouns that always make Acc. -im.

[2] Distinguish this word from ōs, ōris, n., *mouth*, or *countenance*. Ănĭmal, calcar, and almost all other Neuters with Abl in -i, are derived from Adjectives.

validas maris furor et tempestatis vio'entia superant. 6. Duces
aurea calcaria et decora magna equitibus dant. 7. Hostium
urbem dux igni ferroque consumit. 8. Nauta navi valida
pelagi furorem superat. 9. Britannorum naves multis
urbibus multisque gentibus notae sunt. 10. Ducum certa-
mina prosperis civitatibus saepe causa exitii sunt. 11. Equus
ignavus calcar timet. 12. Multa genera et animalium et
lapidum mare habet. 13. Morbus capros totam aestatem
(31) consumit.

1. *Strong horses often fear the spur.* 2. *The soldiers consume the
cities with fire and sword.* 3. *Repeated lightning and a great
storm terrify the merchants.* 4. *The animals of the sea are
many and wonderful.* 5. *Men by (their) wisdom overcome the
threats of seas and the madness of savage animals.* 6. *Both
to leaders and to states strife is often the cause of destruction.*
7. *Golden spurs give great honour to horse-soldiers.* 8. *The
strength of the ships overcomes both the madness of the sea and
the violence of the storms.* 9. *The bones of small animals are
small.* 10. *The tempest terrifies the citizens with a great
cloud.* 11. *By wisdom and experience men are freed from the
violence of savage animals.* 12. *He lives a few hours.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

44　　These are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension;
except that in almost all of them the Abl. Sing. is -i and
not -e; and the Gen. Plur. -ĭum and not -um.

A.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -i, and Gen. Plur. in
-ĭum.

1.—ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

Ācer, *sharp.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
	M.	**F.**	**N.**	**M. and F.**	**N.**
N.V.	Ācer	ācr-ĭs	ācr-ĕ	Ācr-ēs	ācr-ĭă
Acc.	Ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ĕ	Ācr-ēs	ācr-ĭă
Gen.	Ācr-ĭs	ācr-ĭs	ācr-ĭs	Ācr-ĭum	ācr-ĭum
Dat.	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Ācr-ĭbus	ācr-ĭbus
Abl.	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Ācr-ĭbus	ācr-ĭbus [1]

45　　[1] Other similar Adjectives are sălūb-er, *healthy,* ălăc-er, *brisk,* ĕquest-
er, *equestrian.* In the Nom. Masc. Sing., the forms ācr-is, sălūbr-is,
ălăcr-is &c. are sometimes used, but more often in poetry than in
prose. Cĕl-er retains the ĕ in the Fem. cĕlĕr-is and in the Neut. cĕlĕr-e.

2.—Adjectives of Two Terminations.

Tristis, *sad.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĭs	Trist-ĭum	trist-ĭum
Dat.	Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ĭbus	trist-ĭbus
Abl.	Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ĭbus	trist-ĭbus

3.—Adjectives of One Termination.

Felix, *happy.*

	Singular.	Plural.	
	M., F., and N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Fēlīx	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Acc.	Fēlīc-em	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Gen.	Fēlīc-is	Fēlīc-ĭum	fēlīc-ĭum
Dat.	Fēlīc-ī	Fēlīc-ĭbŭs	fēlīc-ĭbŭs
Abl.	Fēlīc-ī	Fēlīc-ĭbŭs	fēlīc-ĭbŭs

46   *B.*—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -ĕ, and Gen. Plur. in -um.

These are mostly Comparatives ending in -ĭor (*m.* and *f.*), -ĭus (*n.*): trist-ĭor, *sadder,* fēlīc-ĭor, *happier.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Tristĭor	tristĭŭs	Tristĭor-ēs	tristĭor-ă
Acc.	Tristĭor-em	tristĭŭs	Tristĭor-ēs	tristĭor-ă
Gen.	Tristĭor-ĭs	tristĭor-ĭs	Tristĭor-um	tristĭor-um
Dat.	Tristĭor-ī	tristĭor-ī	Tristĭor-ĭbŭs	tristĭor-ĭbus
Abl.	Tristĭor-ĕ	tristĭor-ĕ	Tristĭor-ĭbŭs	tristĭor-ĭbus

47   Besides Comparatives, a few other words make the Abl. Sing. in -ĕ and the Gen. Plur. in -um. Most of them are capable of being used as Nouns: dīvĕs, (*a*) *rich (man),* supplex, *a suppliant,* vĭgĭl, *a watchman,* princeps *a chief,* pauper, *a poor man,* superstēs. *a survivor.*[1]

---

48   [1] A useful Rule is given (*Public School Grammar*) that:—

i. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. short, make -um in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* supplex, Gen. Sing. supplĭcis, Gen. Pl. supplĭcum.

ii. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. long, make -ium in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* fēlix, Gen. Sing. fēlĭcis, Gen. Pl. fēlĭcĭum.

1.—Cĕlĕr ĕquus, *the swift horse.*

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Cĕlĕr ĕqu-us	Cĕlĕr-ēs ĕqu-ī
Voc. Cĕlĕr ĕqu-e	Cĕlĕr-ēs ĕqu-ī
Acc. Cĕlĕr-em ĕqu-um	Cĕlĕr-ēs ĕqu-ōs
Gen. Cĕlĕr-ĭs ĕqu-ī	Cĕlĕr-ĭum ĕqu-ōrum [1]
Dat. Cĕlĕr-ī ĕqu-o	Cĕlĕr-ĭbus ĕqu-īs
Abl. Cĕlĕr-ī ĕqu-o	Cĕlĕr-ĭbus ĕqu-īs

2.—Mĕlĭus dōnum, *the better gift.*

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. Acc. Mĕlĭŭs dōn-um	Mĕlĭor-ă dōn-ă
Gen. Mĕlĭōr-ĭs dōn-ī	Mĕlĭōr-um dōn-ōrum
Dat. Mĕlĭōr-ī dōn-ō	Mĕlĭōr-ĭbus dōn-īs
Abl. Mĕlĭōr-ĕ dōn-ō	Mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs dōn-īs

3.—Fēlix jŭdex, *a happy judge.*

49 Note the two points of difference in the Noun and Adjective (1) Noun -ĕ, -um ; Adj. -ī, -ĭum :

(1) Fēlīc-ī jŭdĭc-ĕ, *by* (13a), *with,* or *from the happy judge.*

(2) Fēlīc-ĭum jŭdĭc-um, *of happy judges.*

Exercise XXI.

1. Mater bona meliore filio digna est. 2. Celerium equorum terga ab aurigis verberibus laeduntur. 3. Patres lacti meliora dona filiis dant. 4. Poeta sapiens regem insignem tristiore carmine delectat. 5. Rex insignis infelici morte indignus est. 6. Agricolarum vita salubris est ; scribae diligentis labor non est saluber. 7. Equus acer certamen equestre amat. 8. Mercatorum divitum vitam miles fortis non amat. 9. Ira acri ducum tristium cives timidi terrentur. 10. Dulce carmen poeta insigni dignum est. 11. Puer tristis donum melius amat. 12. Principes justi fortibus militibus agros feraces dant. 13. Regina prudenti animo et audacibus consiliis seditionem superat. 14. Eques comitem culpa (8) liberat.

1. *The joyful father gives a better gift to* (his) *son.* 2. *The life of a soldier is not agreeable to the son of the rich merchant.*

---

[1] The Gen. Pl. Cĕlĕr-um is only used when the word is used as a Noun, to signify the ancient body-guard in Rome ; just as we speak of the "Blues," the "Scots Greys."

3. *By (his) sweet poem the good poet delights the great king.*
4. *A keen contest is pleasant to strong soldiers.* 5. *The labours of the unhappy judges were displeasing to the just king.*
6. *The keen anger of the citizens terrifies the companions of the sad leaders.* 7. *The diligent husbandman is worthy of a fruitful field.* 8. *The just judges give rewards to the chariot-eers of the swift horses.* 9. *The healthy life of the happy sailors was pleasing to the brave boy.* 10. *The good king is delighted by the songs of the sad poets and (17) by the brave boy.*[1] 11. *The master frees the boys from blame.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION WITH NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Saevus hostis, *a cruel enemy.*

	Singular	Plural.
Nom.	Saevus hostĭs	Saevi hostēs
Voc.	Saevĕ hostĭs	Saevi hostēs
Acc.	Saevum hostem	Saevos hostēs
Gen.	Saevi hostĭs	Saevōrum hostĭum
Dat.	Saevo hostī	Saevīs hostĭbŭs
Abl.	Saevo hostĕ	Saevīs hostĭbŭs

Almă māter, *loving mother.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	Almă māter	Almae mātrēs
Acc.	Almam mātrem	Almās mātrēs
Gen.	Almae mātrĭs	Almārum mātrum
Dat.	Almae mātrī	Almīs mātrĭbŭs
Abl.	Almā mātrĕ	Almīs mātrĭbŭs

Magnum ŏpus, *a great work.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. Acc.	Magnum ŏpŭs	Magnă ŏpĕra
Gen.	Magnī ŏpĕris	Magnōrum ŏpĕrum
Dat.	Magno ŏpĕrī	Magnīs ŏpĕrĭbŭs
Abl.	Magno ŏpĕrĕ	Magnīs ŏpĕrĭbŭs

EXERCISE XXII.

Quĭs? *What (man)?* Whŏ (Nom.)? Quem? *What (man)?*
Whom (Acc.)? Quĭd? *What (thing)?* *What (Nom. and Acc.)?*

1. Bonorum operum memoria forti viro dulcis erat. 2. Virgines pulchrae ducis iracundi minas timent. 3. Milites primae

---

[1] Numbers bracketed thus (17) in the Exercises refer to the Para-graphs indicated by the figures in the margin.

cohortis hostibus iracundis terga dant.[1] 4. Quis vinum vetus puero, quis seni verbera dat? 5. Benigno patri acris filiorum ira molesta erat. 6. Gladios breves, (32) longas hastas milites habent. 7. Mater alma filiarum tristium poenitentiam laudat. 8. Hostium saevorum feritas atrox cives timidos terret. 9. Senes infirmi regum minis atrocibus terrentur. 10. Tempestas atris nubibus et crebro fulmine virgines teneras terret. 11. Quis non virtutem amat? Quem non bonorum operum memoria delectat? 12. Senex probus inhonesta morte et turpi fama indignus est.

1. *Brave men fear a dishonourable reputation.* 2. *A disgraceful death terrifies strong soldiers.* 3. *Who loves vice? Who is not delighted by* (trans. *Whom delights not*) *the memory of virtue?* 4. *Who (gives) swords to weak old-men? who gives wine to boys?* 5. *The enemy* (use pl.), *by (their) savageness and cruel threats, terrify the timid hostages.* 6 *The tender maidens fear the dark-black clouds and the frequent lightning.* 7. *The memory of a good work is pleasing to all (men).* 8. *The citizens flee before the strong cohort* (trans. *give their backs to the strong cohort*). 9. *The loving mothers are delighted by the brave deeds of the bold boys.* 10. *The sad woman is worthy of a better death.* 11. *(He) is-terrified in the night.*

THE FOURTH OR :-U DECLENSION.

Singular.

	Step (m.).	*Hand (f.).*	*Knee (n.).*
N.V.	Grăd-ŭs	Măn-ŭs	Gĕn-ū
Acc.	Grăd-um	Măn-um	Gĕn-ū
Gen.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gĕn-ūs
Dat.	Grăd-ŭi	Măn-ŭi	Gĕn-ŭi
Abl.	Grăd-ū	Măn-ū	Gĕn-ū

Plural.

N.V.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gĕn-ŭă
Acc.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gĕn-ŭă
Gen.	Grăd-ŭum	Măn-ŭum	Gĕn-ŭum
Dat.	Grăd-ĭbus	Măn-ĭbus	Gĕn-ĭbus
Abl.	Grăd-ĭbus	Măn-ĭbus	Gĕn-ĭbus

1. The Dat. Sing. in -ŭi is sometimes contracted into -ū.

---

[1] "To *give backs* to an enemy" means "to *flee from* an enemy."

52   2. Some names of trees, e.g. pīnus, *pine-tree*, vary between the 2nd and 4th Decl. in Gen. and Abl. Singular, and in Nom. and Acc. Plural.

53   3. The Dat. Plur. is formed in -ŭbus (not -ĭbus) by arcus, m., *bow*, artus, m., *limb*, and partus, m., *birth*, so as not to be confounded with the Dat. Plur. of arx, f., *citadel*, ars, f., *art*, and pars, f., *part*. The Dat. in -ŭbus is also formed by ăcus, f., *needle*, portus, m., *harbour*, and trĭb-us, f., *tribe*. (See also Par. 311.)

54   All nouns of the Fourth Declension that have nom. -us, are masculine, except the names of trees, and five others (see Appendix V. p. 226); those in -ū are neuter.

Exercise XXIII.

55   Carefully distinguish the different constructions of the Preposition Ĭn :

Ĭn (foll. by Abl.) *in* :   Ĭn (foll. by Acc.) *into, to, towards* :

(*My*) *father is in the garden.*   Pāter ĭn horto est.
The leader leads the soldiers into   Dux mīlites ĭn urbem dūcit.
the city.

1. Pinus altae fructum non habent; glandes sunt quercuum fructus. 2. Hostes magnam copiam arcuum et sagittarum comparant. 3. Imbres quercui dant aquam. 4. Scythae arcu dux vulneratur. 5. Equi albi sinistrum genu durum est. 6. Acus longa digitum mulieris vulnerat. 7. Naves longae in tuto portu ventos secundos expectant. 8. Naves longas in portus diversos tempestas agit. 9. Nautae, in portu pelagus, in pelago portum laudant. 10. Auditus visusque utilitatem quis non intelligit? 11. Romanae plebis tribubus frumentum a Caesare datur. 12. Hiemis gelu myrto perniciosum erat; pinui et quercui non erat (perniciosum). 13. Multa (34) totam noctem (31) timet (16a).

1. *The Scythian overcomes* (*his*) *enemy with* (*his*) *strong bow.* 2. *The diligent women have sharp needles.* 3. *Adverse winds drive the ships into safe harbours.* 4. *The frost of winter is not destructive to pines.* 5. *The ships of-war are awaiting favourable winds in the safe harbour.* 6. *Stags by their running, foxes by* (*their*) *subtlety, overcome the hunter.* 7. *The branches of the tall oaks have many acorns.* 8. *By*

hearing and by sight men avoid destructive (things), (and)
obtain useful (things).   9. The stag (has) long horns, the bull[4]
has short (horns).   10. The bull with his left horn wounds
the shepherd.   11. He was sick for-the-whole winter (31).

THE FIFTH OR -E DECLENSION.

	Day (m.).			*Thing (f.).*	
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.V.	Dĭ-ēs	Dĭ-ēs		R-ēs[1]	R-ēs
Acc.	Dĭ-em	Dĭ-ēs		R-em	R-ēs
Gen.	Dĭ-ēī	Dĭ-ērum		R-eī[2]	R-ērum
Dat.	Dĭ-ēī	Dĭ-ēbus		R-ei	R-ēbus
Abl.	Dĭ-ē	Dĭ-ēbus		R-ē	R-ēbus

56 In the Gen. and Dat., final -ei is sometimes contracted
into -ē; diē, fidē.

57 All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except
dĭes, *day*, and mĕrīdĭēs, *midday*, which are Masculine.[3]

Exercise XXIV.

Ăg-it, (*he*) *drives, or leads.*   Ăg-ĭtur, (*he*) *is (being) driven.*

1. Agricola spē fructuum in laborem agitur.   2. Acies densa ab
hostibus in fugam agitur.   3. Magna pars exercitūs in
planitiē erat.   4. Tanta vitia tam pulchra facie indigna sunt.
5. Memoria pulchrae faciēi hominibus jucunda est.   6. Mora
spei inimica est.   7. Rex justus melioribus rebus dignus est.
8. Rebus adversis vir fortis in dolorem agitur.   9. Exercitus
omnis in spem novam a forti duce agitur.   10. In Britanniā
apricorum dierum numerus non magnus est.   11. Fluminis
rapidi cursus interdum glacie superatur.   12. Rerum adver-
sarum memoria in rebus secundis interdum jucunda est.

1. *In summer the hours of the day are many, in winter (the hours)*
of the night (30).   2. There-were many horse-soldiers and foot-
soldiers (use -quĕ) in the line of the enemy.   3. The light of
mid-day is (being) overcome by a dark-black cloud.   4. The

---

[1] This Noun is printed thus (as also in the *Public School Grammar*)
to exhibit the Case Terminations more clearly. But the true Stem of
rēs is not r- but re-.   See p. 239, '*Stem.*'

[2] The quantity of r-ei varies.

[3] Dĭes should not be used by the beginner in the Feminine, except
poetically; to signify, not a literal *day*, but a *season*, e.g. *The evil day has
come.* Atra dĭes vēnit.

Dĭes and rēs are the only Nouns in the Fifth Declension that are fully
declined; and all (but nine) *have no Plural.*

long line of the enemy (trans. *enemies*) *is being overcome by
the fearless soldiers.* 5. *The memory of prosperity is some-
times unpleasing to the wretched.* 6. *The heat of the sun was
destructive to the thin ice.* 7. *The memory of joyful days was
pleasing to the just judge.* 8. *Great is the utility of hope.*
9. *The hostage is being driven into the citadel by the bold
leader.* 10. *The queen shews* (her) *grief by* (her) *sad face.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I.—REGULAR.

58 1. The Comparative Degree, if regular, is formed from the
Gen. Sing. by taking away -i, (alt-i, alt-) or -is (ferac-is,
ferac-), and adding -ĭor: alt-ĭor, *higher,* ferāc-ĭor, *more
fruitful.*

59 2. The Superlative Degree is formed by taking away
-i or -is and adding -issĭmus: alt-issĭmus, fĕrāc-issĭmus.

Gen. Sing.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Trist-ĭs,	trist-ĭor, *sadder,*	trist-issĭmŭs, *sad-dest.*
Rĕcent-ĭs,	rĕcent-ĭor, *more re-cent,*	rĕcent-issĭmŭs, *most recent.*

II.—IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.

1. -lĭmus.

60 1. Six Adj. in -ĭlis, form the Compar. regularly, but
the Superl. by adding -lĭmus instead of -issĭmus.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Făcil-ĭs, *easy*	facil-ĭor	facil-lĭmus
Difficil-ĭs, *difficult*	difficil-ĭor	difficil-lĭmus
Sĭmil-ĭs, *like*	sĭmil-ĭor	sĭmil-lĭmus
Dissĭmil-ĭs, *unlike*	dissĭmil-ĭor	dissĭmil-lĭmus
Grăcil-ĭs, *thin*	grăcil-ĭor	grăcil-lĭmus
Hŭmil-ĭs, *low*	hŭmil-ĭor	hŭmil-lĭmus

The rest, fertĭl-ĭs, ūtĭl-ĭs &c., have either no Super-
lative or -issĭmus; fertĭl-issĭmus, ūtil-issĭmus, &c.

2. -rimus.

61   2. All Adj. ending in -er form the Compar. regularly,
but the Superl. by *adding* -rimus *to the Nominative:*

Positive. Nom. Gen.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Līber, lǐbĕr-ī, *free*	lībĕr-ĭor	līber-rǐmus
Cĕler, cĕlĕr-is, *swift*	cĕlĕr-ĭor	cĕler-rǐmus
Pulcher, pulchr-ī, *beautiful*	pulchr-ĭor	pulcher-rǐmus
Ācer, acr-is, *sharp*	acr-ĭor	ācer-rǐmus

The Adjective vĕtŭs, Gen. vĕtĕr-is, *old,* has Comp.
vĕtust-ĭor, Superl. veter-rǐmus.[1]

Quam, *than.*

62   RULE.—Nouns coupled by quam (*than*) and a Compara-
tive Adj. or Adv., are in the same case:

1. *Nom.* { Ĕqui ūtiliōres sunt **quam capri** (sunt).
           { *Horses are more useful than goats (are).*

2. *Gen.* { Pŭdor flāgĭtii, mǎgis quam **errōris,** hŏmĭnem complet.
           { *Shame for the crime, rather than for the error, possesses*
           {   *the man:* lit. *of the crime, of the error.*

3. *Dat.* { Pŭĕro dat mĕliōra dona **quam pŭellae** (dat).
           { *To the boy he gives better gifts than (he gives) to the*
           {   *girl.*

4. *Acc.* { Mā̆lus fŏlia, hǎbet densiōra **quam māla** (hǎbet).[2]
           { *The apple-tree has leaves thicker than (it has) apples.*

63   RULE.—When the first Noun is in the Nominative or
Accusative, the second Noun is generally put in the
Ablative without quam:

Nothing is more lovable than   Nĭhil est **virtūte** ămābĭlius.
virtue.

---

[1] The Comparative vĕtĕrior is rare and archaic.
[2] Distinguish between māla, *apples,* and māla, *evils.*

N.B. Superlatives and Comparatives have each more
meanings than one :

64   I. Tard-issĭmus means (1) *slowest*, (2) *very slow*.

65   II. Tard-ĭor means (1) *slower*, (2) *rather*, or *somewhat,
slow*, or (3) *too slow*.

EXERCISE XXV.

66   RULE.—Sĭmĭlis, *like*, takes a (1) Gen. or (2) Dat. : [1]—

(1) *The boys are like* (i.e., *the*   Pŭĕri patris sĭmĭles sunt.
likenesses of) (*their*) *father.*

(2) *All things were more like*   Omnĭa castris quam urbi
(*to*) *a camp than* (*to*) *a city.*   sĭmĭlĭŏra ĕrant.

67   Quĭdem, *on the one hand; indeed.* Autem, *on the other
hand ; however ; but.* Neither of these words can stand
first in a clause. They must be placed after some
emphatic word. See Sentence 9 below.

1. Vallis humilior erat campo. 2. Nihil est virtute pulchrius,
   nihil amicitiā dulcius. 3. Puer omnibus praeceptoris disci-
   pulis procerior erat. 4. Uxori vir melius donum quam
   sorori dat. 5. Amor patriae magis quam filiorum ducem
   acerrimum complet. 6. Corvus animal est celerrimum,
   et testudini dissimillimum.[2] 7. Hieme dies breviores sunt
   noctibus. 8. Iter puellae difficilius est quam puero. 9.
   Turdus quidem avis tardior (65) est, aquila autem velo-
   cissima. 10. In regione aspera itinera hieme difficiliora
   quam aestate sunt. 11. Puer aegerrimus crura et brachia
   graciliora habet. 12. Puellae patris quam matris similiores
   erant. 13. Puellam quidem totum diem (31) culpat (16a),
   puerum autem laudat.

1. *Nothing is more useful to men than sight and hearing.* 2. *The
   husbandman's garden is more fertile than the rich king's fields.*
   3. *Who is bolder than a soldier? who (is) juster than a judge?*
   4. *The ass is a somewhat-foolish (65) animal ; the dog is very
   sagacious.* 5. *The boy's sisters were more like (their) mother
   than (their) father.* 6. *The anger of the king was keener
   than the madness of the soldiers.* 7. *By very swift journeys*

---

[1] The Dative is rare in Cicero, but very common in later writers.
[2] Two Adjectives coupled by ĕt can agree with the same Noun.

the general leads (his) soldiers into a most rugged region.
8. *Very beautiful trees fill the very low[1] valleys of (the) most[1]
fertile region.* 9. *The very brave soldiers are being driven into
the city by (a) very keen and bold leader.*[1] 10. *The very*[1]
ailing boy has very thin legs in winter.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

68

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bŏnus, *good*	mēlior	optĭmus
mălus, *bad*	pējor	pessĭmus
magnus, *great*	mājor	maxĭmus
parvus, *small*	mĭnor	minĭmus
multi, (pl.), *many*	plūres	plūrĭmi [2]
nēquam, (indecl.) *worthless*	nēquior	nēquissĭmus

68a　　Adjectives ending in -dĭcus, -*speaking*, -fĭcus, -*doing*,
-vŏlus, *wishing*, form the Comp. in -entĭor, the Superl.
in -entissĭmus :

　　mălĕ-dĭcus, *ill-speaking*, -dĭcentĭor, -dĭcentissĭmus.
　　mūnĭ-fĭcus, *gift-making*, -fĭcentĭor, -fĭcentissĭmus.
　　bĕnĕ-vŏlus, *well-wishing*, -vŏlentĭor, -vŏlentissĭmus.

(These forms are really derived from Verbal forms in
-ens, which will be recognised when the Verbs are
mastered.)

68b　　Adjectives ending in -ĕus, -ĭus, -ŭus, seldom have a Com-
par. or Superl. form of their own, but are compared by
appending the adverbs măgis, *more*, maxĭmē, *most*: pĭus,
dutiful, măgis pĭus, *more dutiful*, maxĭmē pĭus, *most dutiful*.

69　　In the following the Positive is defective, and is repre-
sented by a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition :

70　　[1] In Latin the Superlative is more frequently used than in English.
We should say "*the brave* soldiers," "*a bold* leader." But in Latin the
Superlatives must be expressed.

71　　[2] Multum, plūs, and plūrĭmum are also used in the Neut. Sing. as
Nouns governing a Genitive Case.

They have much			Multum	
more	}(of) *money.*		Plūs	}pĕcūnĭae hăbent.
very much			Plūrĭmum	

[Sĕnex], *an old man*	sĕnior[1]	nātu maxĭmus, *oldest.*
[Jŭvĕnis], *a young man*	jūnior[1]	nātu mĭnĭmus, *youngest.*
[Sŭpĕrus], *upper*	sŭpĕrior	suprēmus, summus, *highest.*
[Infĕrus], *lower*	infĕrior	infĭmus, īmus, *lowest.*
[Extĕrus], *outside*	extĕrior	extrēmus, (*outermost or last*).
[prep. Intrā], *inside*	intĕrior	intĭmus, *inmost.*
[Postĕrus], *after, behind*	postĕrior	postrēmus, (*hindmost or last*).
[prep. Prae], *before*	prĭor	prīmus, (*foremost or first*).
[prep. Prŏpē], *near*	prŏpior[1]	proxĭmus, (*nearest or next*).
[prep. Ultrā], *beyond*	ultĕrior	ultĭmus, (*furthest or last*).

72   Plūs, *more*, is thus declined :

	Singular : a Noun.	*Plural : an Adjective.*	
	Neuter.	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom. and Acc.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūră
Gen.	Plūrĭs	Plūrĭum	Plūrĭum
Dat.	Plūrī	Plūrĭbus	Plūrĭbus
Abl.	Plūrĕ	Plūrĭbus	Plūrĭbus

Măgis means *more in degree* and is used with Adjectives ;
plūs, *more in quantity*, and is used with Verbs.

Balbus is more dutiful, but Tullius delights (his) father more.	Balbus măgis pius est, sed Tullius patrem plūs dēlectat.

<div align="center">EXERCISE XXVI.</div>

73   RULE.—A Superlative, in agreement with a Noun under-
stood, is followed by the Genitive :

The horse is the most useful (animal) of animals.	Ĕquus ūtilissĭmum (anĭmal) anĭmalĭum est.

1. Alexander erat ducum praestantissĭmus.[2] 2. Optimorum
virorum filii interdum pessĭmi sunt. 3. Quid pejus erat
Balbi contione ! Quid optĭmae (35) Tullii contioni (66) simĭle
habet ?[3] 4. Majores natu ratio, non spes, agit. 5. Junioribus

---

[1] Nātu mājor and nātu mĭnor are also used. Nātu means *by birth*,
and is not declined.
[2] Why is ŭcum Gen.? Ans. *governed by* ŭux *understood.*
[3] An Adj. *e.g.* optĭmae, is often separated from its Noun by an inter-
vening Genitive *e.g.* Tullii. (Par. 35.) Quid (Exercise XXII) is Acc.
gov. by hăbet.
The Nom. to hăbet is *it*, i.e. *the speech of Balbus*, understood.

seniores dona dant. 6. Ducis optimi dies ultimus erat felicissi-
mus. 7. Socrates optimus Graecorum erat. 8. Castrorum pars
exterior parte intimâ major erat. 9. Plus erat (71) modestiae
quam sapientiae in viro benevolentissimo.[1] 10. Plurimorum
facta nequissima, optima verba sunt. 11. Minima pars
propioris regionis maximâ parte regionis ulterioris major
erat. 12. Senes priora (94) laudant, juniorum facta culpant.
13. Proximo die imperator maximam partem hostium
superat. 14. Virgo a milite hasta totum diem terretur.

1. *The king, (who was) worse than (his) father, has a (still) more
worthless son.* **2. Very old men praise former times.* 3. The
greater part of the outermost wall was nearest to the citadel.
4. The most benevolent of the younger (men) were inferior
to (trans. as if to were than) the worst of the elder (men).
5. He gives more gifts to the worst of the sisters than to the
most dutiful of the brothers. 6. The lowest part of the moun-
tain was higher (comp. and superl. of superus) than the highest
part of the citadel. 7. The younger rightly give reverence to
(their) elders. 8. The younger of the brothers was very like
the elder sister. 9. Very many praise what is best (trans. best-
things). 10. On the last (80) day of (his) life the old-man
was most happy. 11. He is-blamed the whole day (long).*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

74 Numeral Adjectives are either (1) Cardinal, denoting
how many, or (2) Ordinal, denoting *in what order.*[2] All
the Ordinal Adjectives are declined like bŏnus; but of
the Cardinal Adjectives only a few are declined.

1. Ūnus, *one.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Gen. Sing.	Ūn-ĭus	un-ĭus	un-ĭus
Dat. Sing.	Un-i	un-i	un-i

In the other cases, Sing. and Plur., it is like bonus.

---

75 [1] Why is mōdestiae Gen? Ans. *governed by* plūs, Adj. used as Noun.
Why is săpientiae Gen.? *Because* quam (Par. 62) *takes the same Case after
it as before it.* In translating bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmo add *the or that.*

76 [2] The Gen. after pars, plūs, multum, &c., is often called the *Partitive
Genitive.*

77 [2] For the Distributive Numeral Adjectives see Exercise LXXXV. They
are all declined like bŏni, -ae, -a: (1) singŭli, *one a-piece;* (2) bīni, *two
a-piece;* (3) terni or trīni; (4) quăterni; (5) quīni; (6) sēni; (7) septēni;
(8) octōni; (9) nŏvēni; (10) dēni; (11) undēni; (100) centēni; (101)
centēni singŭli; (200) dŭcēni; (300) trěcēni; (400) quadringēni; (600)
sescēni; (1,000) singŭla mīlia.

78   2. Dŭo, *two.*   3. Trēs, *three.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc & Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.V	Dŭ-ŏ	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ŏ	Trēs	trĭă
Acc.	Dŭ-os¹	dŭ-as	dŭ-ŏ	Trēs²	trĭă
Gen.	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum	Trĭum	trĭum
Dat.	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus	Trĭbus	trĭbus
Abl.	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus	Trĭbus	trĭbus

Ambo, *both,* is declined like dŭo.

79   The Cardinal Numbers, from *four* to a *hundred,* are
indeclinable.

The compounds of a *hundred* are declined like bŏnus:
Of two hundred men, Dŭcentōrum hŏmĭnum.

4. Millĕ, *thousand.*

80   The two uses of millĕ (*a*) Sing. (*b*) Plural, must be care-
fully distinguished:

a. Singular, an indeclinable *Adjective :*

> Millĕ passŭs, *a thousand paces.*
> Millĕ passĭbus, *to a thousand paces, &c.*

b. Plural, a *Noun* of the Third Declension, having an
Adjective *agreeing with it in Number and Case,* and
governing another Noun in the Genitive :

N.V. and Acc.	Multa mīlĭa passuum, *many thousands of paces.*
Gen.	Multōrum mīlium passuum, *of many thousands of paces.*
Dat.	Multis mīlĭbus passuum, *to many thousands of paces.*
Abl.	Multis mīlĭbus passuum, *by many thousands of paces.*

---

¹ Less commonly, dŭ-o.
² Less commonly, trīs.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus
2	II	dŭŏ, -æ, -o	sēcundus *or* altĕr
3	III	trēs, -trĭa	tertĭus
4	IV	quattŭŏr (quātŭŏr)	quartus
5	V	quīnquĕ	quīntus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septĭmus
8	VIII	octŏ	octāvus
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus
11	XI	undĕcĭm	undĕcĭmus
12	XII	dŭŏdĕcĭm	dŭŏdĕcĭmus
13	XIII	trēdĕcĭm	tertĭus dĕcĭmus
14	XIV	quattuordĕcĭm	quartus dĕcĭmus
15	XV	quīndĕcĭm	quīntus dĕcĭmus
16	XVI	sēdĕcĭm	sextus dĕcĭmus
17	XVII	septemdĕcĭm	septĭmus dĕcĭmus
18	XVIII	dŭŏdēvīgintī	dŭŏdēvīcēsĭmus
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsĭmus
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī-ūnus	unus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus
22	XXII	dŭŏ et vīgintī *or* vīgintī duo	altĕr et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus altĕr
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs	tertĭus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus tertĭus
28	XXVIII	dŭŏdētrīgintā	dŭŏdētrīcēsĭmus
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsĭmus
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsĭmus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus
50	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsĭmus
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēs'mus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus
101	CI	centum et unus *or* centum unus	centēsĭmus prīmus
136	CXXXVI	centum et trīginta sex *or* centum, trīginta sex	centēsĭmus trīcēsĭmus sextus
200	CC	dŭcentī, -æ, -ă	dŭcentēsĭmus
300	CCC	trēcentī, -æ, -ă	trēcentēsĭmus

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -ă	quadringentēsĭmus
500	IƆ or D	quingentī, -ae, -ă	quingentēsĭmus
600	DC	sescentī, -ae, -ă	sexcentēsĭmus
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -ă	septingentēsĭmus
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ă	octingentēsĭmus
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ă	nongentēsĭmus
1,000	CIƆ or M	mille	millēsĭmus
2,000	MM	duŏ miliă	bis millēsĭmus
100,000	CCCIƆƆƆ	centum miliă	centiēs millēsĭmus [1]

EXERCISE XXVII.

82   RULE.—The Possessor is often expressed by the Dative Case with the Verb est, (sunt, ĕrat, ĕrant, &c.):

> *Balbus has, or had a book*, i.e.   Balbo   est,   or   ĕrat,
> *there was a book for Balbus.*   līber.

1. Duos consules decem tribunorum constantia superat.   2. Militi veterrimo unus solum oculus et novem digiti erant.[2]   3. In legione Romana decem cohortes erant.   4. Mensis September quondam septimus (erat), nunc nonus anni mensis est.[3]   5. Juvenis alteram et vicesimam partem patrimonii pauperibus dat.   6. Arbori centum et triginta sex poma tunc erant.   7. Agricola sedecim nuces, (32) nonaginta octo cerasa mulieri dat.   8. Centuria erat altera pars manipuli, sexta pars cohortis, legionis sexagesima (pars).   9. Legio trecentos equites habet.   10. In hostium exercitu sunt mille nongenti equites,

---

83   [1] The number 500, IƆ, is multiplied by 10 as often as Ɔ is subjoined:—
$$IƆƆ = 10 \times 500 = 5,000.$$
$$IƆƆƆ = 10 \times 5,000 = 50,000.$$
In order to double IƆ, or IƆƆ, you must prefix C as many times as it is suffixed:—
$$CIƆ = 2 \times 500 = 1,000.$$
$$CCIƆƆ = 2 \times 5,000 = 10,000.$$

84   [2] Why is mīlĭti Dat? Ans., *Dat of the Possessive after* est.

[3] Jānŭārĭus and September are Adjectives agreeing with mensis. The adjectival names of the months are sometimes used as Nouns, mensis being understood, e.g. Febrŭārĭi in sentence 11. See p. 229.

peditum tria millia.   11. Januarii mensis unus dies est pars
una   et tricesima ; Februarii, duodetricesima.¹   12. Un-
detriginta verberibus miles a centurione castigatur.

*The general had (erant) three hundred and seven foot-soldiers.
2. The enemy had six hundred foot-soldiers, (and) two thousand
horse-soldiers.   3. The husbandman gives twenty-five eggs to
the wretched sailor.   4. There were on (in) the oak many
thousand acorns.   5. On the sixth month of the year, in the
seventh hour, there were in the city three thousand Germans.
6. The general leads into the city the twentieth legion and the
third part of the thirtieth legion.   7. A century was the sixth
part of a cohort; a cohort (was) the tenth part of a legion.
8. Once a legion had three thousand soldiers.   9. There were
then in the legion six thousand foot-soldiers (and) three hundred
horse-soldiers.   10. Once March was the first month of the
year, November (was) the ninth, (and) December the tenth.
11. The old soldier had thirty-three wounds.*

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

85   The following adjectives (most of them capable of being
used as Pronouns) are declined regularly (like bŏnus) in
the Plural, and in all cases of the Singular, except the
Gen. and Dat. ; but (like the Pronouns) they make the
Gen. Sing in -īus (-ĭus) or -rĭus, and the Dat. Sing. in -i :

1. -īus (-ĭus).	2. -rĭus.
Ūnus, *one, one only.*	**Alter,** Gen. altĕrĭus, *one*
Ullus, *any.*²	*(of two), the other (of two).*
Nullus, *no, not any, none.*	**Ūter?** utr-ĭus ? *which (of*
Sŏlus, *alone.*	*the two)?*
Tōtus, *whole.*	**Neuter,** neutr-ĭus, *neither.*

86   **Ālius,** *other,* makes the Neut. Sing. in -ud.   When *twice*
used co-ordinately (*i.e.* so that *and, but,* &c., might be
inserted), it means, in the Sing., *one . . . another,* or, in
the Plur., *some . . . others;* and alter . . . alter mean,
similarly, *one of the two . . . the other of the two.*

---

¹ Why is Febrŭārĭi (mensis) Gen.? Ans. *governed by* pars *understood.*
You must repeat "unus dies est pars" with dŭŏdĕtrĭcĕsĭma.
The pupil may henceforth (with the aid of Appendix VI.) write the
Latin day of the month on his exercise.

87   ² Ullus is only used in (1) *negative* and (2) *comparative sentences, or in*
(3) *questions that expect a negative answer.*

(1) *He blames one thing, (and)*   Ălĭud culpat, ălĭud laudat.
   praises another.

(2) *Some overcome, (but) others*   Ălĭi supĕrant, ălĭi supĕrantur.
   are overcome.

(3) *He gives one of the two sisters* Altĕri sŏrŏrum pĭrum, altĕri
   a pear, the other an apple.   pŏmum dat.

	Ălĭus, *other.*				**Nullus,** *no.*	
	Singular.				Singular.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ălĭus	ălĭă	ălĭud	Nullus	nullă	nullum
Voc.	Wanting			[Nulle	nulla	nullum]
Acc.	Alĭum	ălĭam	ălĭud	Nullum	nullam	nullum
Gen.	Alĭus	ălĭus	ălĭus	Nullīus	nullīus	nullīus
Dat.	Alĭi	ălĭi	ălĭi	Nulli	nulli	nulli
Abl.	Alĭo	ălĭa	ălĭo	Nullo	nullă	nullo

88   When ălĭus is repeated *not co-ordinately* (see Par. 86), it
is sometimes construed as follows :—

Some women praise some things,   Mŭlĭĕres ălĭae ălĭa laudant.
   others praise others.

The Nom. of ălĭus has Ĭ, the Gen. has Ī:

One man praises one man's con-   Ălĭus ălĭus mōrēs laudat.
   duct, another man another's.

89   Note alt-ĕrīus, but ut-rīus; so asp-ĕri, but pulch-ri.

Exercise XXVIII.

90   Adjectives signifying *nearness, dearness pleasantness,
fitness, likeness, equality,* &c., and their opposites, govern
the Dative.

1. Utri senum filia viam monstrat?[1]   2. Neutrius exercitus
   dux timidus erat.   3. Uni soli tot militum dux coronam dat.[2]
   4. Fratrum optimorum alter alterius filium valde amat.
   5. Pater alteri filiorum equum validissimum, alteri ensem
   dat. 6. Mulieres aliae alia clamant. 7. Milites (88) alius agros,
   alius armenta et equos laudant.   8. Mater puellis dona
   diversa dat; alii dat aurum, alii argentum.   9. Nemini

91   [1] Sĕnum is *Gen., governed by* utri. But the Gen. after ŭter, neuter,
ūnus, &c. and also after the Numerals generally, is often called a *Partitive
Genitive,* because it implies a *part* belonging to a larger number or whole.
   [2] What sort of a Gen. is mīlĭtum ? Sŏli agrees with ūni, which (85) is
used as a Pronoun.

molestus erat; nullius mores culpat.[1] 10. Pater majora
donna filiae quam ulli filiorum dat.[2] 11. Homo avarus est,
neque (18) ulli carus.[2] 12. Utrique genti facile (84) erat
belli mala vitare (86a).

1. *Which of the (two) brothers is the dearer to (their) mother?*
   2. The man is very worthless (68), and not dear to any of the
   citizens. 3. To one of the (two) brothers he gives blame; to
   the other praise. 4. To neither of the leaders was the coward-
   ice of the armies pleasing. 5. Virtue is agreeable to one,
   pleasure (is agreeable) to another. 6. One (man's) constancy,
   another (man's) prudence, is praised by the leader. 7. To one
   alone of the women does the queen give praise. 8. He gives
   to (his) brother a better gift than to any (87) of his sisters.
   9. Some had (82) shields, others had swords; (but) no one had
   horses. 10. The woman was very worthless, and (18) not
   dear to any of (her) sisters. 11. The butterfly lives one day.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

	1. First Person.		2. Second Person.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
	I, me, &c.	We, us, &c.	Thou, thee, &c.	Ye, you, &c.
Nom.	Egŏ	Nōs	*N. and V.* Tū	Vōs
Acc.	Mē	Nōs	Tē	Vōs
Gen.	Mēī	Nostrī[3] (-trum)	Tūī	Vestrī[3] (-trum)
Dat.	Mĭhī	Nōbīs	Tĭbī	Vōbīs
Abl.	Mē	Nōbīs	Tē	Vōbīs

3. Third Person.

To express *he, she, it*, use is made of the Adjective (1)
Ĭs, m., *that (man)*, (2) ea, f., *that (woman)*, (3) Ĭd, n., *that*
(thing).

---

92 [1] Nullius, nullo are used for nēmĭnis and nēmĭne:
From nēmo let me never see
Nēmĭnis and nēmĭne.
   [2] In what sort of sentences is ullus used? Why is it used (87) here?
93 [3] The Genitives Plural nostrum and vestrum, are used only in such
phrases as "nēmo nostrum, vestrum, *no one of us, of you*; the wisest
of us; *some of us*, &c. It is then called a Partitive Genitive: see above,
Par. 70, 91. Nostri, vestri are really Adjectives in Gen. Sing. agreeing
with a Noun understood: mĕmŏr est nostri, *He is mindful of our (business)*
i.e. *of us.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	He	*She*	*It*	*They*	*They*	*Those*
Nom.	Is	ĕă	ĭd	Ei (ii)	eae	ĕă
Acc.	Eum	ĕam	id	Eos	ĕas	ĕă
Gen.	Eius	eius	eius	Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Ei	ei	ei	Eis (iis)	eis (iis)	eis (iis)
Abl.	Eo	ĕā	ĕo	Eis (iis)	eis (iis)	eis (iis) [1]

94 The Gen. eius, eōrum, is often used for *his, her, their*: "liber eius," *his,* or *her book*; "eōrum liber," *their book.*

4. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

This Pronoun has no Nominative nor Vocative, and the Plural is the same as the Singular.

		Singular.			*Plural.*
Acc.	Sō	*himself, herself, itself* [2]	*themselves*
Gen.	Suī	*of* „ „ „	„
Dat.	Sĭbĭ	*to* or *for* „ „ „	„
Abl.	Sē [2]	*by* (17), *with, from* „	„

EXERCISE XXIX.

I (or *we*), *thou* (or *ye*), *he* (or *they*) are said to be respectively the First, Second, and Third *Persons.* All ordinary Nouns are said to be in the Third Person (see page 237).

The form of the Verb in Latin must be altered to suit the *Person* as well as the Number of its Subject:

Person.	*Singular.*			*Plural.*		
1st	*I love,*	(ĕgŏ) ăm-o	We		(nōs) ămā-mus
2nd	*Thou lovest,*	(tū) ămā-s	Ye	*love,*	(vōs) ămā-tis
3rd	*He loves,*	(ĭs) ăma-t	They		(ei) ăma-nt

95 RULE.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person.

All the Verbs that make the 3rd Pers. Sing. in -at (such as sŭpĕra-t, lauda-t, &c.), are changed in the same way as ămo above: but da-t has the a short, dămus, dătis.

---

[1] The quantity of the e in ei, eis is doubtful.

[2] Instead of sē there is sometimes used the emphatic form sēsē. The pupil must be prepared hereafter to find that sē is used in some instances for *he, him.* But, for the present, it will be only used for *himself, herself &c.* (never for *thyself, yourself*).

96   Ūnus is sometimes used in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun to mean *alone* or *only* :—

Only Tullius loves me.   Ūnus Tullius mē āmat.

1. Ego eum amo. 2. Tu eius fratrem amas. ·3. Nos eorum fratrem amamus. 4. Vos eius sorores amatis. 5. Dona eius mihi uni (96) grata sunt. 6. Agri agricolarum eis grati sunt. 7. Mater filium amat, ego eam laudo. 8. Matri filius poma dat, ego eum laudo. 9 Poma talia mihi grata non sunt; ego porcis eā do. 10. Tu mihi et ei dona meliora quam eis das. 11. Vos eorum dona laudatis, earum (dona) culpatis. 12. Omnes sese amant. 13. Nemo non sibi benignus est.

1. *I love her, she loves me.* 2. *Thou lovest her[1] father.* 3. *Ye love their (94) gifts.* 4. *We love them, ye love us.* 5. *They give us better gifts than (they give) to him.* 6. *His patience is pleasing to me.* 7. *Their patience is pleasing to him.* 8. *Her constancy is pleasing to them.* 9. *No one blames himself.* 10. *His folly is pleasing to thee (96) alone.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

97   The Genitives ēius, ēōrum, are used for *his, her, their* ; but the Genitives mēī, tūī, nostri, vestrī, &c., are hardly ever used for *my, thy, our, your, &c.* For this purpose the following Pronominal Adjectives are used :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Mĕus	mĕā	mĕum	*my, mine*
Tŭus	tŭā	tŭum	*thy, thine*
Noster	nostrā	nostrum	*our, ours*
Vester	vestrā	vestrum	*your, yours*
Sŭus	sŭa	sŭum	*his own, her own, its own, their own*

98   Eius and Sŭus. Note the difference. Suus may be used (for the present) where you can insert *own* in the English.

(1) *The mother loves her (own) son.*   Māter filium sŭum āmat.

(2) *Gaius and his brother love me.* (See page 328.)   Gaius et frāter ēius mē āmant.

(3) *I love her son.*   Āmo ēius filium.

---

[1] Note the ambiguity in Latin : eius is used both for *her* and for *his*. In practice, of course, the ambiguity would be generally removed by the context. On the other hand, the ambiguity of the English *their* is removed by the Latin use of ēōrum and ēārum.

99   Ĕgo, tū, ĭs, nōs, &c., are generally omitted as the Subjects of a Verb : ămās, *thou lovest*, ămāmus, *we love, &c.*

99a   But if emphasis is intended to be laid on the Pronouns, they are inserted : "ĕgo tō ămo, tū mō nōn ămās."

Exercise XXX.

100   A question is asked by nōnne, num or -nē ; -nē is added to, and emphasizes, *the first word in the Sentence.*

Do you *blame me ?*	**Tūnĕ** mē culpās ?
Do you blame ME ?	**Mēnĕ** culpās ?

101   Nōnnĕ ? (i e. nōn-nē ?) expects *yes* ; num ? expects *no.*[1]

Does he not blame me ?	**Nōnnĕ** mē culpat ?
He does not blame me, does he ?	**Num** mē culpat ?

102   Rule.—Adjectives signifying *mindfulness, knowledge,* or *forgetfulness* and *ignorance,* take the Genitive.

1. Mercator sua laudat (32), aliena culpat.   2. Puer vobis carus est ; nonne sororem eius amatis ?   3 Non omnes semper sui memores sunt.   4. Puellae patrem non habent : omnes eis benigni sunt.   5 Nonne omnes sibi benigni sunt, aliorum immemores ?   6. Amici mei Tullium valde amant, et semper eius memores sunt.   7. Soror tua, O amice, patrem suum non amat.   8. Nos sumus vestri memores ; sed nemo vestrum nostri memor est.[2]   9 Mater tua non est tibi carior quam meus pater mihi.[3]   10. Laudamus aliena (34), nostra non curamus.   11. Cur non agros vestros curatis, agricolae ignavissimi ?   12. Tune, O filiarum pessima, patris tui virtutem culpas ?   13. Num tu, vino ignarus, vinum aliis monstras ?   14. Interdum sui immemor (16a) est.

1. [4] *Bulbus is not mindful of us ; but (67) we love him.*   2. *No one of us praises his folly.*   3. *The girl is dear to us ; we love her*

---

[1] With cūr ? *why?* quis ? *who?* and other interrogatives, -nē, nōnne, num, are omitted : *Why does he not blame?* Cūr nōn culpat ?   When nonne and num are used in direct questions, they generally stand at the beginning of the Sentence.

[2] What case is vestrum, and why?   Why not vestri ?   What case is nostri, and why?   Why not nostrum ?   See Par. 95.

[3] Mihi is Dat., *generally* "cārus *est*" *understood.*

[4] Before doing this exercise, the pupil should read through all the sentences and ask which of the Pronominal Adjectives of the 3rd Pers. his, her, their, &c., can have own added to it. Wherever own can be added, sūus is the word to be used. But of course this does not apply to Pronouns not of the 3rd Pers. (*my own, your own*), which are to be rendered mēus, &c.

*exceedingly. 4. Thy sister does not love her father. 5. His
brothers do not love their father. 6. Ye praise the fields of
others, ye do not take care of your (own) (fields). 7. Our sisters
are dearer to us, O most cruel (men), than your brothers to you.
8. Do ye, (being) ignorant of the way, point-out the way
to us, O most foolish (men)? 9. Why dost thou blame thy
father, and dost not (18) praise his virtue? 10. The
generals overcome the anger of the soldiers by their wisdom.*

103

DEMONSTRATIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

1. Illĕ, *that (yonder)*; pl. *those.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Illĕ	illă	illŭd	Illi	illae	illă
Acc.	Illum	illam	illŭd	Illos	illas	illă
Gen.	Illīus	illīus	illīus	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illi	illi	illi	Illīs	illīs	illīs
Abl.	Illo	illā	illō	Illīs	illīs	illīs

2. Istĕ, *that (near you, or of yours)*, often used contemptuously; declined like illĕ.

3. Hic (-ĭ or -ī), *this (near me)*; pl. *these.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hōc	Hi	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hos	has	haec
Gen.	Huius	huius	huius	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic	Hīs	hīs	hīs
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs	hīs	hīs

4. Ipsĕ, *-self, himself, herself, itself*; pl. *themselves.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum[1]	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsă
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsă
Gen.	Ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	Ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Abl.	Ipso	ipsā	ipso	Ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Note that ipsĕ differs from illŏ only in the Neut. Nom. Singular.

E

5. **Idem**, *the same* (declined like **Is**; but **is-dem** is written **Idem**,
id-dem is written **Idem**, and m before -dem is changed into n).

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | | |
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Idem	ĕādem	ĭdem	Iidem	ĕaedem	ĕādem
Acc.	Eŭndem	ĕandem	dem	Eosdem	ĕasdem	ĕādem
Gen.	Eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	Eorundem	ĕarundem	ĕorunde:
Dat.	Eidem	eidem	eidem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
Abl.	Eodem	ĕādem	ĕodem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem [1]

Exercise XXXI.

104 [Do not, for the future, use *thou* or *ye* in translating the
Exercises, unless the language is poetical. *You* in English
is commonly used of the Singular Number, and will be
so used in future Exercises; it should therefore be rendered
by tu, not by vos, *unless the context shows that it is Plural*].

105 Ipsĕ is an Adj., agreeing in Gender, Number and Case
with (1) a Noun or Pronoun understood; or (2) a Noun or
Pronoun expressed.

(1) (*She*) *herself loves me.*   **Ipsa mē ămat.**
(2) *I give this to you yourself,*   **Tibĭ ipsi, O filia, hŭc do.**
    O daughter.
(3) *The queen herself loves.*   **Rēgīna ipsa ămat.**

1. Non ĭdem labor eisdem semper jucundus est. 2. Amicus iste
fratrem suum non amat. 3. Huic equum, illi canem, ;isti
asinum pigrum agricola dat. 4. In te ipso fons est laetitiae.
5. Non ĭdem donum agricolis et nautis gratum est. 6. Viti-
osi vitium ipsum amant. 7. Homeri et Vergilii opera vobis
nota sunt; ille[2] Graecus erat, hic Romanus. 8. Eorun-
dem agricolarum agri non semper pariter fertiles sunt.
9. Num amicorum ipsorum mores culpatis? 10. Cur huic
mulieri dona meliora quam ipsi matri tuae das? 11. Vestis
eadem eidem mulieri non semper grata est. 12. Alexandri
et Darii nomina nota sunt omnibus: illi laudem, huic miseri-
cordiam dāmus.[2] 13. Quis centum (31) annos vivit?

1. *That gift of-yours is more pleasing to you yourself than to
Balbus. 2. We all love the same native-land. 3. You, O
friends, love the same (things), the same danger terrifies*

106 ──────────
[1] For eisdem there is sometimes used **Isdem**.
[2] (1) Ille... (2) hic, when thus used together, mean (1) *that which is
furthest, first-mentioned*...(2) *that which is nearest, last-mentioned:* hence
(1) *the former*...(2) *the latter*.

no. 4. *This man we love, this man's conduct we praise.*
5. *The same-things are not always pleasing to the same-persons*
(31). 6. *Why do you give larger gifts to this woman than to your*
own mother (trans. *to your mother herself)*? 7. *The children*
of the same parents are not always equally beautiful. 8. *The*
same vice is worse in a learned man than in an unlearned.
9. *Do you blame us, O foolish (man)? In you yourself is*
the cause of these evils. 10. *Do you give to yourself the best*
gifts? 11. *Do you blame us the whole* (85) *day* (long) (31)?

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107 1. Quī, *which* (man, woman, thing); *who; that.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masc.	**Fem.**	**Neut.**	**Masc.**	**Fem.**	**Neut.**
Nom.	Quī	quae	quŏd	Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quŏd	Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cuius	cuius	cuius	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī	cui	cui	Quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus[1]
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus[1]

The Relative in Latin often (1) precedes its Antecedent,
and sometimes (2) is placed with it like an Adjective.

(1) *He whom all love is praised*   Quem omnes ămant ĭs ab om-
by all.   nĭbus laudātur.
(1) *What,* or *that which, some*   Quŏd ălĭi laudant ĭd ălĭi cul-
praise, others blame.   pant.
(2) *The friends whom* (or *what*   Quōs ămīcos hăbet, laudat.[2]
friends) he has, he praises.

108 RULE.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antece-
dent in Gender, Number, and Person.[3]

You yourself, sister, who love   Tū ipsa, sŏror, quae ălĭos ămās,
others, do not love me.   mē nōn ămās.
You, brothers, who blame me,   Vōs, frātres, quī mē culpātis,
praise Tullius, who himself   Tullĭum laudātis, quī ipse
praises me.   mē laudat.

---

109 [1] Quĭbus is sometimes contracted into quīs.
[2] Here the Antecedent is repeated, "quos amicos habet (eos amicos)
laudat": and it may be said that quos agrees (like an Adj.) with the
repeated Antecedent, but has for its Antecedent "eos amicos" *understood.*
09a [3] N.B In Gender, Number, and Person—*but not necessarily in Case.*

E 2

110   2. The Interrogative Pronoun **quĭs** differs in form from the Relative Pronoun merely in the Nom. Sing. Masc. and Neuter: **quĭs?** *who?* **quĭd?** *what?* The rest of its cases are the same as those of the Relative Pronoun:

| *Who gives you this?* | **Quĭs tĭbī hŏc dat?** |
| *What do you give me?* | **Quĭd mĭhī dās?** |

111   The Interrogative Adjective **quī** is the same as the Relative in every case:[1]

| *What has he done? What misdeed has he committed?* | **Quĭd fēcit? Quŏd făcĭnus commĭsit?** |

Exercise XXXII.

112   Rule.—Adjectives signifying *nearness*, e.g. **vīcīnus,** *near* (to), **fīnĭtĭmus,** *bordering on,* **proxĭmus,** *nearest,* or *next* (to), are followed by the Dative.

1. Qui aliis viam monstrat hunc alii jure (38) laudant. 2. Qui sibi benigniores (65) sunt, ei non semper ab amicis laudantur. 3 Te, O soror, quae haec dona' mihi das, maxime laudo. 4. Quis hos milites ducit? Quod periculum eos terret? 5. Ego, O fratres, qui vobis dona optima do, nonne sum vobis carissimus? 6. Cuius verba me culpant eum non laudo. 7. Quibus rex dona dat, eos non semper amat. · 8. Quae pericula patrem terrent, ea nonne filii timent? 9. Agricola arbores serit quarum fructum ipse non gustat.[2] 10. ¿Cui patria cara est is bonus civis est. 11. Minae istae quibus agricolae timidi terrentur, militem non terrent. 12. In urbe, quae mari proximaˆerat, nautae plurimi erant: huc imperator suos (34) ducit. 13. Belgae, quorum agri Gallis finitimi sunt, a Caesare bello superantur.[2]

1. *You, O women, who* (108) *praise injustice (i.e. unjust-things) are paying* (trans. *giving*) *the penalty of your folly.* 2. *To you, O sister, who blame your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift.* 3. *Those whose* (113a) *conduct is depraved, you do right not to praise* (trans. *you rightly do not praise*). 4. *His mother, who loves you exceedingly, praises you too much.* 5. *Why do you err, (you) who point out the way to them?* 6. *What are you tasting, O boys? What fruit delights you?* 7. *We who overcome the nations bordering-on us, are overcome by the*

[1] Quĭs is sometimes an Adj., chiefly with persons: quĭs rex? *what king?*
[2] Note that the Relative in the Genit. precedes the Noun that governs it: "quārum fructum," *not* "fructum quārum."

*ration next-to the Belgians. 8. The general leads his (men)
into a plain which was nearer and larger. 9. You, O soldiers,
ore entering this city, which the enemy (pl.) at the same (30)
time enter. 10. Friends love those who love (their) friends.
11. Who is this (man) whose blame terrifies you ?* [1]

THE VERB.

114   Latin Verbs are divided into Four Classes called Conju-
gations.   In the third Conjugation the Active Infinitive
Present ends in -ĕre, in the rest in -re.   That part of the
word which comes before -re or -ĕre is called the Stem, and
the last letter of the Stem distinguishes the Conjugation.

				Act., Inf., Pres.
1.	First,	or **A**	Conjugation	ămā-re, *to love*
2.	Second,	„ **E**	„	mŏnē-re, *to advise*
3. (a)	Third,	„ Consonant	„	rĕg-ĕre, *to rule*
(b)	„	„ **U**	„	mĭnŭ-ĕre, *to diminish*
4.	Fourth,	„ **I**	„	audī-re, *to hear*

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Ămo, ămāvī, ămātum, ămārĕ,—*to love.* Stem´: ămā-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. 1. **Amo,** *I love,* or *am
          loving*
        2. **Am-ās,** *thou lovest,* or
           art loving
        3. **Am-ăt,** *he loves,* or *is
           loving.*

Plur. 1. **Am-āmŭs,** *We love,* or
          are loving
        2. **Am-ătĭs,** *ye love,* or
           are loving
        3. **Am-ant,** *they love,* or
           are loving.

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Sing. **Am-ābo,** *I shall love*
        Am-ābĭs, *thou will love*
        Am-ābĭt, *he will love.*

Pl. **Am-ābĭmŭs,** *We shall love*
      Am-ābĭtĭs, *ye will love*
      Am-ābunt, *they will love.*

3. Imperfect Tense.[2]

Sing. **Am-ābam,** *I was loving*
        Am-ābās, *thou wast lov-
          ing*
        Am-ābăt, *he was loving.*

Pl. **Am-ābāmŭs,** *We were loving*
      Am-ābātĭs, *ye were loving*
      Am-ābant, *they were loving.*

---

[1] For additional elementary exercises on the Relative, see p. 186.

115   [2] The Imperf. also means *I used-to-love, thou wast-wont-to-love, he used-
to-love, &c.* It has other meanings, which must be learned by practice.

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing. **Am-āvī,**	*I have loved,* *or I loved*	*Pl.* **Am-āvĭmŭs,**	*We have loved.* *or we loved*
Am-āvistī,	*thou hast loved,* *or thou lovedst*	**Am-āvistĭs,**	*ye have loved.* *or ye loved*
Am-āvĭt,	*he has loved,* *or he loved.*	**Am-āvērunt,** *or* **ăm-āvērĕ¹**	*they have* *loved,* or *they loved.*

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Am-āvēro,**	*I shall* ⎫	**Am-āvērĭmŭs,**	*We shall* ⎫
Am-āvērĭs,	*thou wilt* ⎬ *have*	**Am-āvērĭtĭs,**	*ye will* ⎬ *have*
Am-āvērĭt,	*he will* ⎭ *loved.*	**Am-āvērint,²**	*they will* ⎭ *loved*

6 Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Am-āvĕram,**	*I had loved*	**Am-āvērāmŭs,**	*We had loved.*
Am-āvērās,	*thou hadst loved*	**Am-āvērātĭs,**	*ye had loved*
Am-āvĕrăt,	*he had loved.*	**Am-āvĕrant,**	*they had loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. **Am-ā,**	*Love thou.*	*P.* **Am-ātĕ,**	*Love ye.*

Future Tense.³

S. **Am-āto,**	*Thou must love*	*P.* **Am-ātōtĕ,**	*Ye must love*
Am-āto,	*he must love.*	**Am-anto,**	*they must love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.⁴

1. Present Tense.

Am-em,	*I may love*	**Am-ēmŭs,⁵**	*We may love*
Am-ēs,	*thou mayst love*	**Am-ētĭs,**	*ye may love*
Am-ĕt,	*he may love.*	**Am-ent,**	*they may love.*

116   ¹ As in English *v* is omitted in *o'er*, *ne'er*, so in Latin -vi- and -ve- are sometimes omitted *where no ambiguity would be eaused*. Thus ămāvistī, ămāvērunt, &c. become ămasti, ămārunt, &c; but ămāvimus, ămāvīre, cannot be contracted into ămāmus, ămāre, because these contractions would be liable to be confused with the Pres. Indic. and Pres. Infin.

² The usual pronunciation is ămāverĭs, ămīverīmus; but the *i* is sometimes long.

117   ³ The Tense distinction between the Forms of the Imperative is very doubtful. The forms in -o are generally reserved for legal language; see Par. 129. *Must* is seldom expressed by the Imperative, see Par. 163, 168.

118   ⁴ This Mood is sometimes called the Conjunctive. The meanings *I may love* and *I might love* are seldom attached to the Subjunctive without the accompanying conjunction ŭt (*that*).

118a   ⁵ Amēmŭs, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us love*.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Am-ārem,	*I might love*	Am-ārēmŭs,	*We might love*
Am-ārēs,	*thou mightst love*	Am-ārētĭs,	*ye might love*
Am-ārĕt,	*he might love.*	Am-ārent,	*they might love.*

3. Perfect Tense.

Am-āvĕrim,	*I may*	} *have loved.*	Am-āvĕrimŭs,	*We may*	} *have loved.*
Am-āvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst*		Am-āvĕritĭs,	*ye may*	
Am-āvĕrĭt,	*he may*		Am-āvĕrint,	*they may*	

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Am-āvissem,	*I should*	} *have loved.*	Am-āvissēmŭs	*We should*	} *have loved*
Am-āvissēs,	*thou wouldst*		Am-āvissētĭs,	*ye would*	
Am-āvissĕt,	*he would*		Am-āvissent,	*they would*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.[1]

INFINITIVES.			GERUND.		
Pres. and Imperf. }	Am-ārĕ,	*to love.*	*Gen.* Am-andī,	*of loving*	
			Dat. Am-andō,	*for loving*	
Perf. and Pluperf. }	Am-āvissĕ,	{ *to have loved.*	*Acc.* Am-andum,	*the loving*	
			Abl. Am-andō,	*by loving.*	
Future. {	Am-ātūrŭs essĕ,	{ *to be about to love.*			

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Am-ātum,[2]	*to love.*	Present. Am-ans, -antis, &c., [*loving.*	
Am-ātū,[2]	*in loving.*	Future. Am-ātūrŭs (ā, um), [*about to love.*	

[1] This part of the Verb is sometimes spoken of as the *Verb Infinite*, and not as the *Infinitive Mood.*

119 [2] The Supines are really Nouns used *only in the Acc. and Abl.;* (1) the Supine in -um after Verbs of Motion, (2) the Supine in -u with a few Adjectives, Exercise LXXIV.

Hence ămātum can never be used (as amāre is, Par. 34) for the Subject of a Verb.

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mŏneo, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtum, mŏnērĕ,—*to advise.*   Stem: mŏnē-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mŏn-eo,[1]	*I advise, or am advising*	Mŏn-ēmŭs,	*We advise, or are advising*
Mŏn-ēs,	*thou advisest, or art advising*	Mŏn-ētĭs,	*ye advise, or are advising*
Mŏn-ĕt,	*he advises, or is advising.*	Mŏn-ent,	*they advise, or are advising.*

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mŏn-ēbo,	*I shall advise*	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,	*We shall advise*
Mŏn-ēbĭs,	*thou wilt advise*	Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,	*ye will advise*
Mŏn-ēbĭt,	*he will advise.*	Mŏn-ēbunt,	*they will advise.*

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-ēbam,	*I was advising*	Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,	*We were advising*
Mŏn-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*	Mŏn-ēbātĭs,	*ye were advising*
Mŏn-ēbăt,	*he was advising.*	Mŏn-ēbant,	*they were advising.*[2]

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-uī,	*I have advised, or I advised*	Mŏn-uĭmŭs,	*We have advised, or we advised*
Mŏn-uistī,	*thou hast advised, or advisedst*	Mŏn-uistĭs,	*ye have advised, or ye advised*
Mŏn-uĭt,	*he has advised, or he advised.*	Mŏn-uērunt, or -uērĕ,	*they have advised, or they advised.*

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-uēro, *I shall*		Mŏn-uērĭmŭs, *We shall*	
Mŏn-uērĭs, *thou wilt* } *have advised.*		Mŏn-uērĭtĭs, *ye will* } *have advised.*	
Mŏn-uērĭt, *he will*		Mŏn-uērint, *they will*	

---

[1] The quantity of the e before o, and of u before i is not marked, because it is an invariable rule in Latin that *a vowel before another vowel is short:* see Appendix VII., p. 230.

[2] The Imperf. also means *I used-to-advise, thou wast-wont-to-advise, he used-to-advise, &c.*

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-uĕram,	*I had advised*	Mŏn-uĕrāmŭs,	*We had advised*
Mŏn-uĕrās,	*thou hadst advised*	Mŏn-uĕrātĭs,	*ye had advised*
Mŏn-uĕrăt,	*he had advised.*	Mŏn-uĕrant,	*they had advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mŏn-ē,	*Advise thou.*	Mŏn-ētĕ,	*Advise ye.*

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mŏn-ēto,	*Thou must advise*	Mŏn-ētōtĕ,	*Ye must advise*
Mŏn-ēto,	*he must advise.*	Mŏn-ento,	*they must advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mŏn-eam,	*I may advise*	Mŏn-eāmŭs,	*We may advise*[1]
Mŏn-eās,	*thou mayst advise*	Mŏn-eātĭs,	*ye may advise*
Mŏn-eăt,	*he may advise.*	Mŏn-eant,	*they may advise.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-ērem,	*I might advise*	Mŏn-ērēmŭs,	*We might advise*
Mŏn-ērēs,	*thou mightst advise*	Mŏn-ērētĭs,	*ye might advise*
Mŏn-ērĕt,	*he might advise.*	Mŏn-ērent,	*they might advise.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-uĕrim,	*I may*	Mŏn-uĕrĭmŭs,	*We may*
Mŏn-uĕrĭs,	*thou mayst*	have advised.	Mŏn-uĕrĭtĭs,	*ye may*	have advised.
Mŏn-uĕrĭt,	*he may*	Mŏn-uĕrint,	*they may*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-uissem,	*I should*	Mŏn-uissēmŭs,	*We should*
Mŏn-uissēs,	*thou wouldst*	have advised.	Mŏn-uissētĭs,	*ye would*	have advised
Mŏn-uissĕt,	*he would*	Mŏn-uissent,	*they would*

---

[1] Mŏneāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us advise*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.		GERUND.
Pres. and Imperf. } Mŏn-ērĕ, *to advise.*		Gen. Mŏn-endī, *of advising*
		Dat. Mŏn-endō, *for advising*
Perf. and Pluperf. } Mŏn-uissĕ, { *to have advised.*		Acc. Mŏn-endum, *the advising*
		Abl. Mŏn-endō, *by advising.*
Future. { Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs essĕ, { *to be about to advise.*		

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.
Mŏn-ĭtum,	*to advise.*	Present Mŏn-ens, -entis, &c., *advising.*
Mŏn-ĭtū,	*in advising.*	Future. Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs (ă, um), *about to advise.*

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rĕgo, rexī, rectum, rĕgĕrĕ,—*to rule.*   Stem : rĕg-.

INDICATIVE MOOD

1. Present Tense.

Rĕg-o, *I rule,* or am	} *ruling.*	Rĕg-ĭmŭs, *We rule,* or are	} *ruling.*
Rĕg-ĭs, *thou rulest,* or art		Rĕg-ĭtĭs, *ye rule,* or are	
Rĕg-ĭt, *he rules,* or is		Rĕg-unt, *they rule,* or are	

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Rĕg-am,	*I shall rule*	Rĕg-ēmŭs,	*We shall rule*
Rĕg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule*	Rĕg-ētĭs,	*ye will rule*
Rĕg-ĕt,	*he will rule.*	Rĕg-ent,	*they will rule.*

3. Imperfect Tense.

Rĕg-ēbam,	*I was ruling*	Rĕg-ēbāmŭs,	*We were ruling*
Rĕg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*	Rĕg-ēbātĭs,	*ye were ruling*
Rĕg-ēbăt,	*he was ruling.*	Rĕg-ēbant,	*they were ruling.*[1]

---

[1] The Imperf. also means *I used-to-rule, thou wast-wont-to-rule, he used-to-rule,* &c

4 PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ĭ,	*I have ruled, or I ruled*	**Rex-ĭmŭs,**	*We have ruled, or we ruled*
Rex-istī,	*thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst*	**Rex-istĭs,**	*ye have ruled, or ye ruled*
Rex-ĭt,	*he has ruled, or he ruled.*	**Rex-ērunt,** or **rex-ērĕ,**	*they have ruled, or they ruled.*

5 FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ĕro,	*I shall have ruled*	**Rex-ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall have ruled*
Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have ruled*	**Rex-ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have ruled*
Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he will have ruled.*	**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they will have ruled.*

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ĕram,	*I had ruled*	**Rex-ĕrāmŭs,**	*We had ruled*
Rex-ĕrās,	*thou hadst ruled*	**Rex-ĕrātĭs,**	*ye had ruled*
Rex-ĕrăt,	*he had ruled.*	**Rex-ĕrant,**	*they had ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-ĕ,	*Rule thou.*	**Rĕg-ĭtĕ,**	*Rule ye.*

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rĕg-ĭto,	*Thou shalt or must rule*	**Rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,**	*Ye shall or must rule*
Rĕg-ĭto,	*he shall or must rule.*	**Rĕg-unto,**	*they shall or must [rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-am,	*I may rule*	**Rĕg-āmŭs,**	*We may rule*[1]
Rĕg-ās,	*thou mayst rule*	**Rĕg-ātĭs,**	*ye may rule*
Rĕg-ăt,	*he may rule.*	**Rĕg-ant,**	*they may rule.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ĕrem,	*I might rule*	**Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,**	*We might rule*
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	*thou mightst rule*	**Rĕg-ĕrētĭs,**	*ye might rule*
Rĕg-ĕrĕt,	*he might rule.*	**Rĕg-ĕrent,**	*they might rule.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ĕrim,	*I may* ⎱ *have*	**Rex-ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We may* ⎱ *have*
Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou mayst* ⎰ *ruled.*	**Rex-ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye may* ⎰ *ruled.*
Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he may*	**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they may*

---

[1] **Rĕgāmus,** without a Conjunction, generally means *let us rule.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-issem, *I should*		Rex-issēmŭs, *We should*	
Rex-issēs, *thou wouldst*	*have ruled.*	Rex-issētĭs, *ye would*	*have ruled.*
Rex-issĕt, *he would*		Rex-issent, *they would*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. and Imperf.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*to rule.*
Perf. and Pluperf.	Rex-issĕ,	*to have ruled.*
Future.	Rec-tūrŭs essĕ,	*to be about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Rĕg-endī,	*of ruling*
Dat.	Rĕg-endō,	*for ruling*
Acc.	Rĕg-endum,	*the ruling*
Abl.	Rĕg-endō,	*by ruling.*

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	*to rule.*
Rec-tū,	*in ruling.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	Rĕg-ens, -entis, &c., *[ruling.*
FUTURE.	Rec-tūrŭs (ă, um), *[about to rule.*

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvī, audītum, audīrĕ,—*to hear.* Stem: audī-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-io, *I hear,* or am		Aud-īmŭs, *We hear,* or are	
Aud-īs, *thou hearest,* or art	*hearing.*	Aud-ītĭs, *ye hear,* or are	*hearing*
Aud-ĭt, *he hears,* or is		Aud-iunt, *they hear,* or are	

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iam,	*I shall hear*	Aud-iēmŭs,	*We shall hear*
Aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear*	Aud-iētĭs,	*ye will hear*
Aud-iĕt,	*he will hear.*	Aud-ient,	*they will hear*

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing*	Aud-iēbāmŭs,	*We were hearing*
Aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing*	Aud-iēbātĭs,	*ye were hearing*
Aud-iēbăt,	*he was hearing.*	Aud-iēbant,	*they were hearing.*[1]

---

[1] The Imperf. also means, *I used-to-hear, thou wast-wont-to-hear, he used-to-hear,* &c.

4. Perfect Tense.

Aud-īvī,	*I have heard*, or *I heard*	Aud-īvīmŭs,	*We have heard, or we heard*
Aud-īvistī,	*thou hast heard, or thou heardst*	Aud-īvistĭs,	*ye have heard, or ye heard*
Aud-īvĭt,	*he has heard*, or *he heard.*	Aud-īvērunt, or -īvērē,	*they have heard, or they heard.*

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Aud-īvĕro,	*I shall* } *have heard.*	Aud-īvĕrĭmŭs,	*We shall* } *have heard.*
Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	Aud-īvĕritĭs,	*ye will*
Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he will*	Aud-īvĕrint,	*they will*

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Aud-īvĕram,	*I had heard*	Aud-īvĕrāmŭs,	*We had heard*
Aud-īvĕrās,	*thou hadst heard*	Aud-īvĕrātĭs,	*ye had heard*
Aud-īvĕrăt,	*he had heard.*	Aud-īvĕrant,	*they had heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-ī,	*Hear thou.*	Aud-ītĕ,	*Hear ye.*

Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

Aud-īto,	*Thou must hear*	Aud-ītōtĕ,	*Ye must hear*
Aud-īto,	*he must hear.*	Aud-iunto,	*they must hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Aud-iam,	*I may hear*	Aud-iāmŭs,	*We may hear* [1]
Aud-iās,	*thou mayst hear*	Aud-iātĭs,	*ye may hear*
Aud-iăt,	*he may hear.*	Aud-iant,	*they may hear.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Aud-īrem,	*I might hear*	Aud-īrēmŭs,	*We might hear*
Aud-īrēs,	*thou mightst hear*	Aud-īrētĭs,	*ye might hear*
Aud-īrĕt,	*he might hear*	Aud-īrent,	*they might hear.*

3 Perfect Tense.

Aud-īvĕrim,	*I may* } *have heard.*	Aud-īvĕrimus,	*We may* } *have heard.*
Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst*	Aud-īvĕritĭs,	*ye may*
Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he may*	Aud-īvĕrint,	*they may*

---

[1] Audiāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us hear.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Audīvissem, *I should*	*have*	Aud-īvissēmŭs, *We should*	*have*
Aud-īvissēs, *thou wouldst*	*heard.*	Aud-īvissētĭs, *ye would*	*heard.*
Aud-īvissĕt, *he would*		Aud-īvissent, *they would*	

INFINITIVE MOOD

INFINITIVES.

Pres. and Imperf.	Aud-īrĕ,	*to hear.*
Perf. and Pluperf.	Aud-īvissĕ,	{ *to have* *heard.*
Future.	{ Aud-ītūrŭs essĕ,	{ *to be* *about* *to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Aud-iendī,	*of hearing*
Dat.	Aud-iendō,	*for hearing*
Acc.	Aud-iendum,	*the hearing*
Abl.	Aud-iendō,	*by hearing.*

SUPINES.

Aud-ītum,	*to hear.*
Aud-ītū,	*in hearing.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Aud-iens,	-entis, [&c., *hearing.*
Future.	Aud-ītūrŭs (ă, um),	[*about to hear.*

121   In the Fourth, (as in the First) Conjugation, the omission of v causes the following

CONTRACTED FORMS.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT
Audii	Audiimus	Audiero	Audieram
Audiisti (audisti)	Audiistis (audistis)	Audieris, &c.	Audieras
Audiit	Audiērunt	Audierit, &c.	Audierat,&c

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.		PERFECT.
Audiissem (audissem)	Audiissemus (audissemus)	Audierim
Audiisses (audisses)	Audiissetis (audissetis)	Audieris
Audiisset (audisset)	Audiissent (audissent)	Audierit, &c.

INFINITIVE-PERFECT.

Audiisse (audisse).

THE LATIN PERFECT.

The Latin Tenses are inferior to the English in fulness as will be seen from the following Table:

Capto, *I catch.*

	Simple or Indefinite.	Incomplete.	Complete.
Present.	*I catch* capto	*I am catching* capto	*I have caught* CAPTĀVI [1]
Future.	*I shall catch* captābo	*I shall be catching* captābo	*I shall have caught* captāvero
Past.	*I caught* CAPTĀVI	*I was catching* captābam	*I had caught* captāveram [2]

122 The Latin Perfect, captāvi, has to express two English Tenses, and though it is always called "Perfect," *i.e. complete*, it is really not always Perfect or Complete, but:

1. Sometimes *Complete Present*, captāvi, *I have caught.*
2. Sometimes *Simple Past*, captāvi, *I caught.*

---

[1] That this Present Complete Tense, *I have caught*, is really a Present (though the result of a past action) may be seen from such a sentence as "*I have caught* this fish," which means "*I have* (present) this fish—in my pocket, basket," &c. Until the pupil clearly understands that the English Complete Present is *a Present* and *not a Past* Tense, he will never intelligently master the rule for the Latin Sequence of Tenses.

[2] Besides these, other columns might have been added by substituting "been catching" for "caught" in the third column: *I have been catching, I shall have been catching, I had been catching,* and by substituting "about to catch" for "catching" in the second column.

These two meanings of the Latin Perf. are called (1) "the Perfect with *have*," (2) "the Perfect without *have*."

Exercise XXXIII.

123   APPOSITION.—When two Nouns (or a Noun and Pronoun) are *placed together* without a Conjunction, so that one describes the other, they are said to be *in Apposition*, and both are in the same case.

124   When a *Noun* is in Apposition to a *Name*, the Name stands *second in English*, but *first in Latin*.

The renowned general Balbus overcomes the enemy.	Balbus, impĕrātor clārissĭmus (70), hostem sŭpĕrat.
I will give a book to the industrious boy Tullius.	Tullĭo, pŭĕro dĭlĭgentissĭmo, librum dōnābo.

125   "If" with English Present often refers to *Future time*, and must then be translated by Latin Fut. Simple or Fut. Perfect:

I will give it if he asks.	Dābo sĭ rŏgābit (or -āvĕrit).

1. Sidera iter nautis monstrabant. 2. Hieme nautae aestatem laudabunt. 3. Dābo librum ei, si rogabit.[1] 4. Nonne puellam diligentem laudabitis? 5. Qui nos culpatis, nonne vos ipsos emendatis? 6. Cur me vituperabatis (32), vos ipsos laudabatis? 7. Agricolae agrum, equum militi donabimus. 8. Judici, viro justissimo,[2] rex injustus inimicus erat. 9. Tulliae, puellae optimae, cur non praemium donas? 10. Nemo Germanorum, gentis fortissimae, tam pravos mores laudat.[3]

1. *You, O women, who praised* (108) *injustice* (34), *will rightly pay the penalty.* 2. *To you, O sister, who blamed your brother, (your brother himself gives this gift.* 3. *Those whose morals are depraved, you were right in not praising* (trans. *you rightly did not praise*). 4. *His excellent mother* (trans. *his mother, a most excellent woman*), *who loved you exceedingly, praised you too-much.* 5. *Will you point out the way to us, (you) who your-*

125a
126   [1] The Latin Future, after sī, must be translated by English Present.
    [2] Lit. *the judge, a very just man*, but in English we say *the very just judge*, or, more commonly (70), *the just judge*. Why is vīro Dat.? Ans. *Dat. in Apposition with* jŭdĭci. Why is gentis (Sent. 10) Genitive?

126a   [3] In Apposition, write the literal English first and the idiomatic English afterwards: *e.g.* "Germanis, genti fortissimae" lit. *to the Germans, a very brave race*, i.e., *to the brave race of the Germans*. N.B.—Two Nouns in Apposition need not be of the same Number.

tel ee often err? 6. *We used to praise the conduct of the* (126) *i eee centurion Tullius.* 7. *I shall not punish the boy if he in proves* (125) *his conduct.* 8. *They will not err if the leader points out the way to them.*

Exercise XXXIV.[1]

127   If the Subject consists of two Nouns or Pronouns, the Verb is in the Plural ; but the Verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third.

1. Si tu et frater tuus peccaveritis (125*a*), leges vos castigabunt. 2. Judicem, quia male judicaverat, ego et frater meus graviter culpavimus. 3. Piscator et nauta, qui iter militibus antea mone traverant, jam ipsi erraverunt. 4. Milites ferro ignique agros regis sui vastaverunt. 5. Hieme, si venti flaverint, n utae mare formidabunt. 6. Cur Tullium, hominem innocentissimum, castigavistis? 7. Agricolae stultissimi aestate calorem, hieme frigus culpaverunt. 8. Rex militibus, indignis dono (28), equos pulcherrimos donaverat. 9. Nonne vobis haec dona ego et Tullius donavimus? 10. Graeci Trojanos equo ligneo, dono pernicioso (126*a*) superaverunt. 11. Qui virtutem maxime simulavere, ei jam maxime erravere. 12. Quos quondam castigâstis, ei iterum peccârunt.

[1] 1. *You and I have presented - excellent gifts to his mother.*[2] 2. *Why did the unjust judge Tullius* (126) *chastise the innocent Balbus* (trans. *Balbus, a most innocent man*)*?*[3] 3. *In winter, O husbandmen, you had blamed the cold, in summer the heat.* 4. *The king had given a horse to the same soldier whom he had before blamed.* 5. *If you overcome* (trans *shall have overcome*) *the enemy, O soldiers, all will praise you.* 6. *Did* (127*b*) *not you and Tullius blame the kind Balbus?* 7. *The women dreaded the sea because the winds had blown violently* 8. *Did not you, O Greeks, present to the Trojans the destructive gift of a wooden horse* (trans. *a wooden horse, a most destructive gift*)*?* 9. *Why did you, who pointed out the road to others, yourselves err?* 10. *You and Balbus blamed Alexander, the most illustrious of generals.*

---

[1] For this and future Exercises the pupil must look out the words in the Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies at the end of the book.

[2] In English we say " you and I," in Latin the order is reversed, " Ego et tu."

[3] The English Simple Past inserts *did*, when used negatively or interrogatively: "you blamed"; but "*did* you blame?" "you *did* not blame." But all three are expressed by the Latin Perfect.

THE INFINITIVE.

128. The Infinitive (though not declinable like a Noun) is nevertheless used as the Subject or Direct Object of a Verb:

To err is human.	Errāre (nom.) humānum est.
Boys like to jump.	Pŭĕri saltāre (acc.) ămant.

The Infinitive, although used as Subject or Object, may itself have an Object, and may be modified by an Adverb.

The woman desires to get wealth.	Mŭlĭer dīvĭtĭas părāre optat.
To have gained fame honourably is sweet.	Fāmam honestē părāvisse dulcĕ (84) est.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Peccare facile est, mores emendare difficillimum (est). 2. Quis non divitias comparare optat? 3. Saltare dulce est puellis, senibus autem molestissimum. 4. Aestate omnes nare amamus.[1] 5. Melius est virtutem quam aurum parare. 6. Amicum amare praesentem dulce est; desiderare absentem est tristissimum.[1] 7. Peccare leve est plerisque pueris; senibus peccavisse est acerbissimum. 8. Pericula superare saepe durum est; superasse semper dulcissimum est.

1. *It is easier to blame than to praise.* 2. *To whom is it not pleasant to swim in summer?* 3. *It is sad for an old man to have sinned.* 4. *To all it is most pleasant to have overcome dangers by wise counsels.* 5. *Most men desire to get gold and silver.* 6. *You and I love to walk by night; Tullius and his (98, 2) brother love to walk by day.* 7. *It is very easy to swim; it is very difficult to swim well.* 8. *To have erred is sad; to err is sadder.*

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, PROHIBITIONS.

129. The word for *not* in commands is nē. But this is seldom used with the Present Imperative except in Poetry, and seldom with (what is sometimes called) the Future Imperative, *except in legal forms.* Consequently, for the negative Imperative—

---

[1] Omnes agrees with "nos" *understood.*
[2] Absentem agrees with "āmĭcum" *understood.*

Rule.—Use nē with the Perfect Subjunctive of the Second Person, and with the Present Subjunctive of other Persons.[1]

Singular.	
Do not love.	Nē ămāvĕris.
Let him not love.	Nē ămet.
Plural.	
Do not love.	Nē ămāvĕrĭtis
Let them not love.	Nē ăment.

The First and Third Persons Plural of the Subjunctive can be used, with or without nē, in an Imperative sense:

Let us (not) love.	(Nē) ămēmus.
Let him amend his conduct.	Ēmendet mōres.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. Emendate mores vestros. 2. Obtempera, O puer, patri. 3. Ne sontes poenam vitent. 4. Ne castigaveritis insontem; ne mortuum culpaveritis. 5. Huic magistratui omnes cives obtemperanto. 6. Amemus amicos, inimicos ne vituperemus. 7. Praeceptor discipulos verberibus paucis castigato. 8. Regem, si injustus est, ne tu laudaveris. 9. Virgines Vestales ignem curanto. 10 Judicem justum laudā; injustum culpā, sed ne vituperaveris.

1. *Let us love absent friends.* 2. *Let us prepare arms; let not the enemy overcome us.* 3. *Take-care-of his children, O friends; do not blame the dead.* 4. *Do not appease the gods, O foolish (men), with victims; appease them with pious deeds.* 5. *Let (legal) ten maidens carry the image of Diana.* 6. *Let us praise virtue, let us not punish the good.* 7. *Tullius is guilty; let him not avoid punishment.* 8. *Let us not blame those-who-are-worthy* (i.e. *the worthy*) *of* (28) *praise* (5a).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—I.

(*Expressing purpose.*)

The Subjunctive Mood (besides other uses which will be hereafter mentioned) is used when a Verb is *subjoined* to another Verb, in order to express purpose.

---

[1] The Subjunctive, when not subjoined to some principal Verb, is sometimes called the Conjunctive; and some use the term Conjunctive in all instances instead of Subjunctive. For the method of expressing a prohibition by nōli with the Infinitive, see Par. 160.

131   In such cases, *that* or *in order that* is expressed by ŭt; *that . . . not*, by nē

132   The Tenses of the Subjunctive are:

(1) *Present, after* (a) *Pres. (whether Simple or Complete)*; *after* (b) *Future Indic.* , *and after* (c) *Imperative.*

(2) *Past, after Past Tenses* :

1. (a) *I punish*, or *have punished*	the boy that he may amend his conduct.	(a) **Castīgo**, or **Castīgāvi**
(b) *I shall punish*		(b) **Castīgābo**
(c) *Punish*		(c) **Castīgā**

puĕrum ŭt mōres ēmendet.

2. (a) *I punished*	the boy that he might amend his conduct.	(a) **Castīgāvi**
(b) *I was punishing*		(b) **Castīgābam**
(c) *I had punished*		(c) **Castīgāvĕram**

puĕrum ut mōres ēmendāret.

133   ˙˙ CAUTION.—The precise meaning of the ambiguous word castīgāvi cannot be ascertained until we see whether. it is followed by the Present or Imperf. Subj.   If it is followed by the Present, it must be rendered *I have punished* ; if by the Imperf., *I punished.*

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Nauta sidera servabit ne ex itinere erret. 2. Urbem rex aedificabat ut in eā quattuor millia civium habitarent. 3. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocent. 3a. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocarent. 4. Agricola agros araverat ut segetem sibi pararet. 5. Parate arma, cives, ut hostem propulsetis. 6. Cives arma celeriter paraverant ne milites urbem expugnarent. 7. Castigavi te ut mores emendes. 8. Senex in horto ambulavit ut floribus se (35) pulcherrimis delectaret. 9. Rex judicem injustum capite multavit ut ceteri judices rectē judicent.[2] 10. Balbum praemio decoravi ut litteras amet , Tullium heri (*adv.*) casti-

---

[1] *I have punished* is really a (completo) Present Tense: Par. 122, note.
[2] See căput in Vocab.: căpĭte may be parsed as *Abl. of Instr.*, as it is here used to denote *the punishment of death.*

gavi ne iterum peccaret. 11. Germanos, gentem ferocissimam (126a). armis propulsate, ne fines vestros vastent. 12. Aliis equos aliis arma donemus (118), ne viam hostibus monstrent.

1. *Let us lay-waste the lands of the enemy that they may not fight a second time. 2. The citizens will point out the way for us that we may not err. 3. We pointed out the way for the beautiful maiden (124) Tullia that she might not err. 4. Our (men) will build for you, O Tullius (13), a great house, that your friends may dwell in it. 5. Let us build a temple and prepare victims that we appease Jupiter. 6. We have prepared arms that we may repulse the enemy. 7. We chastised the boy that he might improve his (98) conduct. 8. He had preserved the letter of (his) sister that you might not blame her. 9. Why do you not walk in the garden that you may delight yourselves with the scent of the beautiful flowers (5a)? 10. He was hastening into the garden that he might show the flowers to his friends.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—II.

(*Expressing a Dependent Question.*)

Hitherto the Subjunctive in Latin has been expressed by the English *may* or *might;* we now come to idioms where the ordinary English *Indicative* has to be expressed by the Latin Subjunctive.

134   1. A DIRECT OR INDEPENDENT QUESTION is a question in the words of the speaker:

<blockquote>
Does he love me ?   Num me amat ?
Does he not love me?   Nonne me amat ?
</blockquote>

135   2. AN INDIRECT OR DEPENDENT QUESTION is one that is the Subject or Object of a Verb (called the Principal Verb):

I will ask {*whether he loves me.* / *whether he does not love me.*} Interrogabo {num me amet. / nonne me amet.}

136   RULE.—An Indirect or Dependent Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive.

The Tense, in an Indirect Question, depends on the Tense of the Principal Verb; and the rule is, as above

(132), that *Present Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Present Tenses of the Indicative, and Past Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Past Tenses of the Indicative.*

1. *Ask:*	(a) *whether they love,* Interrŏgā	(a) num mē āment.
I ask.	or *are loving* me. Interrŏgo	
I will ask	(b) *whether they loved* Interrŏgabo	(b) num mē āmāvĕrint.[2]
I have asked)	me [1] Interrŏgāvi)	
	(a) *whether they loved,* or	
2. *I was asking*	*were lov-* Interrŏgābam	(a) num mē āmārent.
I asked	*ing* me. Interrŏgāvi	
I had asked	(b) *whether they had loved* me. Interrŏgāveram	(b) num mē āmāvissent [2]

137   (1) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is either Imperative, or Indic. Pres., Fut., or "Perf. with *have*"—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Pres. Subj., or Perf. Subjunctive.

138   (2) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is Indic. Imperf., Pluperf., or "Perf. without *have*" (*i.e.* Simple Past)—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Imperf. Subj., or Pluperf Subjunctive.

Exercise XXXVIII.

139   Quĭdem (67) *on the one hand*, is often followed by the
and enclitic vēro, *however, but yet* (to be distinguished from
139a vērē, *truthfully*). Ĕquĭdem, a form of quĭdem, is often used with the First Person in the Nom. to mean *I on the one hand*, i.e. *I at all events, I for my part.*

A. 1. Hodie quidem paremus (118a) arma ; cras vero hostem propulsemus.   2. Tu quidem me interrogas quid fecerim ; ego vero nihil respondeo.   3. Balbo quidem omnia monstravi ; tibi autem nihil.   4. Quaero cur fratrum alterum quidem laudes, alterum autem culpes.   5. Equidem hoc affirmo, tu vero unus (96) negas.   6. Interrogat cur mihi quidem multa des, Tullio autem nihil.

---

[1] A common error is to write "āmārent," in 1. *b.*, "because the English is not *have loved*, but *loved:*" but the Latin Perf. Subj. (like the Latin Perf. Indic.) represents *loved*, as well as *have loved.*
139b [2] Do not translate the Latin Subjunctive in a Dependent *Question* by *may, might, could, should, &c.* ; in a Dependent *Question*, it must be translated by the English Indicative.

140 Quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quodquĕ (*pron. form* quicquĕ), *each*,
often follows a Superl. (with a Sing. Verb) to denote *all* :

All the worst men deny this.	Pessĭmus quisquĕ hōc nĕgat.
This is denied by all the best citizens.	Hōc ab optĭmō quōquĕ cĭvium nĕgātur.

B. 1. Interrogabimus num miles fidem servaverit.[1] 2. Equidem
rogo nonne puer vera narraverit ; tu vero nihil affirmas.
3. Regina interrogavit num fabri aedes aedificavissent (*or*
aedificāssent). 4. Renuntiate mihi, O exploratores, num
hostis in eo loco insidias paret. 5. Miles centurionibus non
renuntiavit num hostes proelium pararent (*were preparing*).
6. Valde dubito num nuntius vera narraverit. 7 Sapien-
tissimus quisque nostrum (93) dubitabat num milites vera
narrarent. 8. Nonne rogabis puerum num ita peccaverit ?
9. Explorabamus num hostes huc properarent. 10. Ne
dubitemus, O amici, num hostes arma parent. 11 Si nobis
renuntiabitis quo in loco hostes insidias parent, fortissimum
quemque civium convocabimus ut eos propulsemus. 12.
Rogavit patrem num domum (139*b*) pararet ut nos in ea
habitaremus.

1. *I for my part will ask whether the enemy laid-waste our
territories ; but the messenger will not relate the truth (i.e. true
things). 2. He asked whether the enemy took the city by
storm.*[2] *3. Bring-back-word to me, O friend, whether the
enemy is hastening hither. 4. Will you not ask all (140) the
bravest of our-men whether they prepared arms ? 5. Call-
together the citizens that the enemy may not lay-waste
our lands. 6. I had asked your father whether he had
built a home that your brothers might dwell in it. 7. I
doubt whether the enemy has laid waste these lands. 8. Let us
explore whether the enemy is hastening hither. 9. You were
asking the boy whether he had thus sinned. 10. They asked
whether he had not (135) called-together the citizens.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

141   *Not even* is nē...quĭdem: but nē *must be separated from*
quĭdem *by the word which even modifies:*

(1) *Not even you will deny this.*   Nĕ tŭ quĭdem hōc nĕgābis.[1]
(2) *Not even the smallest tree.*   Nĕ mĭnĭma quĭdem arbor.[1]

141*a*   The Latin for *even* (without a negative) is vĕl, or ĕtĭam,
coming before the word emphasized.

This is clear even to the blind,   Haec ĕtĭam caecis ăpertŭ;
easy even for boys.   haec vĕl pŭeris făcĭlĭa.[2]

142   RULE.—Some Verbs signifying (1) *pleasing, obeying,
helping,* (2) *displeasing, disobeying,* and *harming,* take the
Dative.

1. Dolere inutile est. 2. Graviter dolebam quod (*conj.*) tu, O fili,
pārentibus tuis non pāres. 3. Pueri patribus pārento.
4. Leges justae bonis cīvĭbus placebunt. 5. Milites ducem
timebant, qui plurimos eorum (91) minis et suppliciis
crudelissimis terruerat. 6. Nunc quidem monemus; mox
vero, verberibus nisi pārebis, te coercebimus. 7. Ne tu,
senex benevolentissime, pessimum exemplum pueris (129)
praebueris. 8. Epaminondas exemplum optimum omnibus
imperatoribus praebuit. 9. Cui non avium cantus placet,
eum ne cithara quidem movebit. 10. Cur puellam eam minis
terretis, quam nemo docuit, cui nemo exemplum bonum
praebuit? 11. Senioribus ne displicueris; patri matrique
obtempera. 12. Alexander, victor clarissimus, Poro, Indorum
regi, veniam dedit.[3]

1. *To teach is more useful than to weep.* 2. *Why did you not set
a better example to your son?* 3. *Do not terrify this girl with
threats.* 4. *If you obey your parents, your children will obey
you.* 5. *Not even the most costly banquets will please the sick
(men).* 6. *Do not displease your mother, O boys; obey (your)
elders, who advise you well.* 7. *You, who terrify others, your-
self fear all things.* 8. *He does not obey even his own (141, 2)*

---

142   [1] N.B.—(*a*) In this phrase alone it is allowable to use nē with the
Indicative Mood. (*b*) Quĭdem, without nē, never means *even*. (*c*) In
translating nē ... quĭdem, be careful to put *even* before the word that
precedes quĭdem: *not even you, not even the smallest.*

142*d*   [2] Sunt, (or est), is often omitted where the omission causes no
ambiguity.
    [3] Why is Pŏro Dat.? Why is rēgi? See Par. 123.

father. 9. *Those whom you were advising were wiser and better than those whom you had not advised.* 10. *You are destroying, O soldiers, a most prosperous city with fire and sword.*

EXERCISE XL.

The Perfects of some Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -vi instead of -ui: but the parts of Verb *after* u and i are always the same, e.g. dēleo, dēlēvi:

Perf. mŏnu- | dēlēv- } -i, -isti, -it, &c.

Pluperf. mŏnu- | dēlēv- } -ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat, &c.

2nd. Fut. mŏnu- | dēlēv- } -ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit, &c.

1. Interrogabo civem nonne legibus pareat. 2. Interrogavi regis filium cur non melius exemplum ceteris militibus praeberet. 3. Coerce linguam istam ne forte tibi noceat. 4. Sapientes corpus exercebunt ut mentem sanam habeant. 5. Renuntia ei num milites ..jus agricolas nostros terruerint. 6. Interrogavi fortissimum quemque (140) militum nonne hostes urbem jam delevissent. 7 Num dulce est olim multa habuisse, nunc habere nihil? 8. Qui legibus parebit eum leges non torrebunt. 9. Ne tu invidiam timueris; sed virtute malevolos, invidos modestia coerce. 10 Plurimum pecuniae eidem mulieri donavit quam antea minis terruerat.[1] 11. Barbari tantam urbem habent quantam ipsi non habemus.[2] 12. Dux tantum pecuniae donabat militibus quantum rogaverunt. 13. Interrogabo adulescentem cur hesterna nocte tam crudelibus minis fratrem meum terruerit.

1. *Do not restrain a young-man too much lest he obey you, (but) not virtue.* 2. *Why did you not restrain the young-men (127b) that they might obey their parents?* 3. *Since not even punishment terrified him, certainly threats will not terrify him.* 4. *Why do you not obey him to whom you once so-much?* 5. *Ask whether the young-man whose (113a) death is now known to us was older than my brother.* 6. *I did not terrify the boy with threats, lest (the) work should become-distasteful to him.* 7. *I asked the brave centurion Tullius whether the arrow had hurt him.* 8. *Let us give rewards to all (140) the bravest (trans. each most*

---

[1] Why is pĕcūniae Gen.? See Par. 71, and add tantum and quantum as taking Partitive Genitives.

[2] *So great a city as we ourselves have not,* i.e. *a greater city than we have.*

brave) of the soldiers that they may set an example to the rest.
9. Do you now terrify with threats her to whom you gave so
large a sum (trans. *so-much*) *of money ?   10. The unjust king*
Balbus had (86) *one* (*man's*) *silver, another* (*man's*) *lands,*
another (*man's*) *cattle.*

EXERCISE XLI.

Several Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in
English may be regarded as implying a purpose, and
hence :

143.   RULE.—Verbs of *asking, commanding, advising,* and
striving, are followed by ŭt or nē with the Subjunctive.[1]

Take care to teach him, i.e. *in order that you may teach him.*	Cūrā ŭt eum dŏcĕās.
He asked me not to hasten.	Rŏgāvit mē nē prŏpĕrārem.

143a

N.B.—As the translation of English *to* by the Latin
Inf. is one of the commonest errors of beginners, it is well
to recollect that the English Infinitive is *never to be
rendered by the Latin Infinitive except where* (128) *it is the
Subject or Object of a Verb.*

1. Imperavit agricolis imperator ut frumentum compararent.
   2. Curate ut prima vigilia adventum hostium expectetis.
   3. Admonuit nos senex ut parentibus nostris semper parere-
   mus. 4. Rogabo adulescentem ut junioribus exemplum
   melius praebeat. 5. Ne optimus quidem praeceptorum omnia
   docebit.   6. Sapientissimus quisque curabit ut linguam
   coerceat. 7. Quotiens imperavi tibi ut mores emendes !
   8. Cave ne viam aliis monstres, ipse tamen erres. 9. Orabat
   explorator, homo mendacissimus (126a), ut sibi veniam
   darem. 10. Quantum cuique debetis, tantum curate ut detis.
   11. Imperavit dux militibus ne mercatorem detinerent.

1. *Give-orders to the soldiers to prepare their arms. 2. He gave-
   orders to the spies not to show these-things to the king. 3. Our
   parents advised us to await the arrival of friends. 4. Tullius
   asked me to teach his* (98) *children. 5. I beg you to grant*

---

[1] This Rule is sometimes remembered by the following rhyme:
" With *ask, command, advise,* and *strive,*
  By ut translate Infinitive."

pardon to the wicked Balbus. 6. *Have you not again and
again advised that fellow* (iste) *to restrain his tongue?* 7. *If
you teach* (125) *take care to teach well.* 8. *Take care that
you do not displease those whom you are bound* (debeo) *to
please.*[1] 9. *On the fourth day we gave-orders to him to call-
together three thousand* (80b) *soldiers.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

144   Verbs of *preventing* are followed by quo-mĭnus (*by-which-
the-less*) and the Subjunctive.

I have hindered the man from   Hŏmĭnem prŏhĭbŭi quōmĭnus
speaking, lit. *by-which-the-*   dīcat.
less he may speak.

145   The words nōn est dŭbĭum quīn, *it is not doubtful but
that,* i.e. *there is no doubt that,* are followed by the
Latin Subjunctive, (though the English is Indicative):

There is no doubt that he said   Nōn dŭbĭum est quīn haec
this (N.B. not *may have said*).   dīxĕrit.

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of
the Sequence of Tenses must be observed. *Like follows
like:* (see Par. 137).

There was no doubt that he   Nōn dŭbĭum ĕrat quīn timeret.[2]
feared (N.B. not *would fear*).

Exercise XLII.

146   Et sometimes means *even* or *also:*

·   "*Good morning.*"   "*Good*   "*Salvē,*" (lit. "*Be well.*")
    morning to you too."   "*Salvē et tu.*"

1. Aut discite aut discedito : sors tertia hīc nulla est. 2. Nostri,
si urbem fortiter defendent, hostem facile vincent. 3. Si tu
scribes, ego legam. 4. Prohibui istum quominus vincat.
5. Multa dicere facilius est quam multa discere. 6. Non

145a   [1] What is the government of *whom?*
     [2] Probably the *doubt* is regarded as a kind of *prevention;* but instead of
quōmĭnus, there is used an old form of quo, viz. quī, followed by ne, the
two words quī-ne being contracted into quīn.

145b   As regards the Tense to be used after "nōn dŭbĭum ĕrat quīn," the
Pluperf. should be used when (but only when) *had is,* or could be,
inserted in the English: *there was no doubt that the woman* (had) *killed
him,* "nōn ĕrat dŭbĭum quīn mŭlĭer eum interfēcisset."

dubium est quin hostes aciem jam instruant : instruito et (146)
vestram, centuriones. 7. Liberi Deos quotidie orabant ut pater
tuto (adv.) viveret.[1] 8. Caesar materiam parabat ut Rhenum
ponte jungeret. 9. Num vera dicis? Matremne terruisti?
Nonne igitur rubes? 10. Scribamus diligenter, ne nos prae-
ceptor culpet. 11. Hastas in terra figite, milites. 12. Non
dubium erat quin cives urbem fortiter defenderent.

1. *I advise you to depart.* 2. *There is no doubt that the wise learn
daily.* 3. *They asked us to fix our spears in the earth.* 4. *If
you read* (125), (*my*) *friends,* (99a) *I will write.* 5. *It is often
more useful to learn than to speak.* 6. *We shall conquer the
enemy, if you* (99), *O citizens, defend your city.* 7. *The leader
will take care to draw up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Say what-is-true*
(trans. *true-things*), *my friends; let us not feign what-is-false*
(i.e. *false-things*). 9. *There was no doubt that the boys wrote
carefully.* 10. *I will hinder that-fellow from conquering.*

EXERCISE XLIII.

(Vinco, vincio, fingo, figo.)

147   Almost all Superlatives, and many Positives, in -us, -a,
-um, make Adverbs in -ē, e.g. cĕlerrimē, difficillimē, tardē.

148   Almost all Comparatives in -ior use the Neut. in -ius as
an Adverb: tardĭus, *more (rather, too) slowly;* dīligentĭus,
more (rather, too) diligently.

149   The Adverbs, like the Adjectives (64), have more than
one meaning: thus, tardĭus, besides meaning (1) *more
slowly,* may also mean (2) *rather slowly,* or (3) *too slowly.*

1. Mettum, Albanum imperatorem, equi distraxerunt. 2. Non
dubium est quin Caesar multa milia Gallorum vicerit. 3. Quis
dubitabat quin centurio, homo crudelissimus, captivos vinx-
isset? 4. Caesar Rhenum ponte junxit, (32) aciem summa
celeritate instruxit. 5. Si celerrime scribes, amici tui fortasse
difficillime legent. 6. Interrogabo hominem num has litteras
scripserit. 7. Interrogavi patrem nonne dilexisset duos
liberorum, ceteros neglexisset. 8. Nonne commeatus
collegisti? Nonne equites peditesque contraxisti? 9. Non
dubium erat quin errores alios correxisset, alios neg-
lexisset. 10. Falsane finxistis, o perfidissimorum ob-
sidum filii? 11. Centurio militem interrogabat cur hastam in
terra fixisset. 12. Mene interrogas, mi fili, cur hoc dixerim?[2]

150

[1] Quŏtĭdĭē is more correctly spelt cottĭdĭē or cōtĭdĭē.
[2] Mi is the irregular Vocative Masc. Sing. of mĕus.

1. *Do not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things), my son. 2 I will ask him whether (his) leader bridged the river. 3. Do not write the letter too-quickly (149) lest your friends read it with-very-great-difficulty (use adverb). 4. There is no doubt that he wrote this letter. 5. There was no doubt that the general had collected supplies, (and) had drawn (his) army together. 6. Take care, my friend, to correct those errors of-yours; do not (5a) neglect even (141) one (error). 7. Have you asked the centurion why the soldiers fixed their spears in the earth? 8. There was no doubt that the hostages had feigned what-was-false. 9. Ask the centurion why he bound the captives. 10. I hindered the boy from exulting; but there was no doubt that he had conquered.*

<div align="center">EXERCISE XLIV.</div>

151   **RULE.—Cum, *when*, if followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect, generally requires the Subjunctive Mood.**[1]

1. Interrogabo num puer versus heri didicerit. 2. Hostes, cum tuba cecinisset,—in campum descenderunt. 3. Statui puerum corrigere ut diligenter disceret. 4. Dux, cum exercitum collegisset, in Galliam contendit. 5. Orabunt imperatorem milites ut aciem instruat. 6. Non dubium est quin hostes jam in urbem irruperint, aedificia igni absumant, omnia clamore et caede turbent. 7. Quod (*trans. as if* quod *were* hoc) cum intelligerem; statim interrogabam nuntium cur haec non antea dixisset. 8. Correxi errores eius ne amicis suis temeritate sua graviter noceret. 9. Interrogabat imperator nonne jussa sua neglexissem, num murum fortiter defendissem?

1. *When I heard this (i.e. which things when I had understood), I determined to obey (142) the general. 2. Correct these errors, my (151) son, lest they injure your friends. 3. When he had collected supplies, the general closed the gates of the city. 4. What do you say, (my) friends? Do you ask me why I neglected this task? 5. There was no doubt that traitors had closed the gates of the two citadels. 6. Who hindered the citizens from defending the wall? 7. When the trumpet sounded (i.e. had sounded), not even the most cowardly of the soldiers neglected the signal. 8. At-the-time-when my friend (152) was hastening into the city, I was walking in the garden.*

151a   [1] With these Tenses, cum generally implies not simply *at-the-time-when*, but *because* (or at least some logical connection), and "**Cum** *causal* is followed by the Subjunctive."

152   But when cum simply means *at-the-time-when*, it may be followed by the Indicative Imperfect or Pluperfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLV.

Dum vos dormitis, hostes castra muniunt.   2. Audistisne
clamorem hostium qui, jam vino pleni, captivum male
custodiunt?[1] 3. Qui bene servit patriae, ei (*dat.*) cives libenter
servient.   4. Non dubium est quin te pater optime erudiverit
(9a). 5. Qui (107, 1) bene corpus tuum vestiisti, bene nutriisti,
nonne tu etiam mentem tuam simili cura erudies?[2]   6.
Cives legibus obediunto.   7. Mors mihi spiritum, non
vitam finiet.   8. Interroga te cur hesterna nocte captivum
tam male custodiveris.   9. Non dubium erat quin hostes
castra diligenter munissent.   10. Audite alios (*others*) ut
alii te audiant.   11. Ne tu punieris puellam: patrem eius
puniamus, qui poena dignus est.   12. Mater rogavit me ne
puellam punirem

1. Do *you sleep*, *O foolish* (*men*), *while the enemy are bursting into
the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the soldiers guarded the
captive badly.* 3. *Why did you not train the boy better that
he might obey* (*his*) *elders.* 4. *I ask you why you punished the
innocent child Tulliola* (124). 5. *Let us ask the judge not to
punish the boy, who is undeserving of punishment.* 6. *You who
nourished your children's bodies with so great care, will you
not, O my friends, train also their minds?* 7. *We who had
never obeyed our parents* (108), *punished our children because
they did not obey us.* 8. *Train your mind that you may learn
very many* (*things*). 9. *When we had fortified our camp, the
enemy descended into the plain* (5a). 10. *Have you asked the
boy whether* [1] *he has lost his books?*

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Vĕnio, rĕpĕrio.)

1. Imperator cum tandem nostros vicisset, plurimos gravissima
catena vinxit. 2. Serius (149) venistis : comites enim vestri
hesterna nocte venerunt. 3. Interrogas cur aurum non
reppereris : non repperisti, quia in hac terra aurum non
est. 4. Non dubium erat quin serius venissent ; sed rex
eis veniam dedit. 5. Si forte cras venies, fortasse quod
amisisti reperies. 6. Quamdiu dux ille vixit, nostri (34)
vicerunt. 7. Archimedes multa et mira invenit.[3] 8. Inter-

---

[1] Vino may be parsed, for the present, as *Abl. of Instr.*: but see Par. 275.
         [2] Though nōnne and num generally stand first in a Direct Question,
they are sometimes preceded by the Clause containing the Relative
Pronoun: see Exercise XXXIII, Sentence 5.

[3] In English we do not translate ĕt coming between multus and another
co-ordinate Adjective, *e.g.* "multa et pulchra," *many beautiful things.*

rogavi centurionem cur captivos tam gravi catena vinxisset
9. Jam omnia parabam ut venirem.   10. Ne tu huc veneris :
nam, si venies, non facile discedes.

1. *Why, O most cruel of men, did you bind with so heavy a chain
the innocent (126) Balbus? 2. The woman came rather-late, but
the king granted her pardon. 3. We conquered those who lived
in that plain. 4. There is no doubt that they did not find gold
in this land. 5. I asked why they came (145b), but no-one
heard me. 6. I found yesterday night (30) what (i.e. that
which) I had lost. 7. Will he not tell me why he came here?
8. Hast thou come at-length, O best of sons?*

THE VERB Sum, *I am.*

Sum, fŭī, fŭtūrŭs, essĕ,—*to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	**Sŭm,**	*I am*	*Plur.*	**Sŭmŭs,**	*We are*
	Ĕs,	*thou art*		**Estĭs,**	*ye are*
	Est,	*he is.*		**Sŭnt,**	*they are.*

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Sing.	**Ĕrŏ,**	*I shall be*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall be*
	Ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt be*		**Ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will be*
	Ĕrĭt,	*he will be.*		**Ĕrunt,**	*they will be.*

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	**Ĕrăm,**	*I was*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrāmŭs,**	*We were*
	Ĕrās,	*thou wast*		**Ĕrātĭs,**	*ye were*
	Ĕrăt,	*he was.*		**Ĕrant,**	*they were.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	**Fŭī,**	*I have been, or I was*	*P.*	**Fŭĭmŭs,**	*We have been, or we were*
	Fŭistī,	*thou hast been, or thou wast*		**Fŭistĭs,**	*ye have been, or ye were*
	Fŭĭt,	*he has been, or he was.*		**Fŭērunt** or **fŭērĕ**	*they have been, or they were.*

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. Fŭĕro,	*I shall have been*	*P.* Fŭĕrĭmŭs,	*We shall have been*
Fŭĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been*	Fŭĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have been*
Fŭĕrĭt,	*he will have been.*	Fŭĕrint,	*they will have been.*

6. Pluperfect Tense.

S. Fŭĕram,	*I had been*	*P.* Fŭĕrāmŭs,	*We had been*
Fŭĕrās,	*thou hadst been*	Fŭĕrātĭs,	*ye had been*
Fŭĕrăt,	*he had been.*	Fŭĕrant,	*they had been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Ĕs,	*Be thou.*	*Plur.* Estĕ,	*Be ye.*

2. Future Tense.

Sing. Estō,	*Thou shalt* or *must be*	*Plur.* Estōtĕ,	*Ye shall* or *must be*
Estō,	*he shall* or *must be, or let him be.*	Sunto,	*they shall* or *must be, or let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Sim,	*I may be*	*Plur.* Sīmŭs,	*We may be*[1]
Sīs,	*thou mayst be*	Sītĭs,	*ye may be*
Sĭt,	*he may be.*	Sint,	*they may be.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. Essem or fŏrem, }	*I might be*	*P.* Essēmŭs or fŏrēmŭs, }	*We might be*
Essēs or fŏrēs, }	*thou mightst be*	Essētĭs or fŏrētĭs, }	*ye might be*
Essĕt or fŏrĕt, }	*he might be.*	Essent or fŏrent, }	*they might be.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. Fŭĕrim,	*I may have been*	Fŭĕrĭmŭs,	*We may have been*
Fŭĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been*	Fŭĕrĭtĭs,	*ye may have been*
Fŭĕrĭt,	*he may have been.*	Fŭĕrint,	*they may have been.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. Fuissem,	*I should* } *have been*	Fuissēmŭs,	*We should* } *have been*
Fuissēs,	*thou wouldst* }	Fuissētĭs,	*ye would* }
Fuissĕt,	*he would* }	Fuissent,	*they would* }

---

[1] Sīmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	Essĕ,	*to be.*
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,	Fuissĕ,	*to have been.*
INFINITIVE FUTURE,	Fŭtūrŭs essĕ, *or* fŏrĕ,	*to be about to be.*
PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	Fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um,	*about to be.*

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nos Angli sumus, vos estis Galli, ille Germanus est.   2. Fuit Troja ; fuere Mycenae ; tu, Roma, etiam nunc ·es.   3. Nisi ego dux vester (125) ero, victores non eritis.   4. Amici eius quondam divites fuerant : tum vero erant pauperrimi.   5. Dictorum eius, O pueri, este semper memores.   6. Judices justi sunto.   7. Gratus esto, puer, si amicos benignos habere optas.   8. Ne fueris, O soror, eis molesta qui tibi benevolentissimi semper fuerunt.   9. Contentus ero, O judices, si vos justi fueritis.¹   10. Interrogavit num judices justi essent.   11. Cura, rex magne, ut sis munificentior (68a).   12. Ego et tu laetissimi sumus.   13. Prudentes este ut benefici sitis.

1. *You and I have been* (127) *very poor.*   2. *We* (99a) *were in the city ; he and his brother were in the field.*   3. *Had you not been ungrateful, sister, to those who were formerly most benevolent to you?*   4. *If you are* (i.e. *shall have been*) *joyful, I shall be most joyful.*   5. *Take care not to be troublesome to the benevolent.*   6. *I asked the boy whether he was younger than his* [own] *brother.*   7. *There is no doubt that Tullius was very ungrateful.*   8. *Be brave, O soldiers, that ye may be fortunate.*   9. *You will be happy,* (my) *friends, if you are* (125) *always contented.*   10. *There was no doubt that Tullius had formerly been very rich, but was now very poor.*

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

§154   The Participle is partly like an Adjective, in that it agrees with a Noun or Pronoun, and partly like a Verb, in that it may govern an Object.²

The citizen slew the king (*when he was,* or *who was*) *about to destroy the city with fire.*	Cīvis rēgem urbem jam igni **absumptūrum** interfēcit.
The darts were troublesome to our men (*while they were,* or *who were*) *waiting for help.*	Tēla nostris mŏlesta ĕrant auxĭlium **expectantĭbus.**

---

¹ Not *if you shall have been just* (125).   But **optas** (Sent. 7) is Present, because it refers to Present time.

154a   ² The Participle must often be translated by a Conjunction *when, while,* &c., or by the Relative Pronoun.

G

THE DEPENDENT FUTURE INTERROGATIVE.

155   It has been shown above (Par. 136) how to turn a
Direct Question in the Past or Present Tenses into an In-
direct Question, by changing the Indicative Tenses into
corresponding Subjunctive Tenses.   But, as there is no
Subjunctive Future, we cannot thus turn a Direct Ques-
tion in the Future, *Will he come ?* "Num veniet?" into an
Indirect Question, *I ask whether he will come.*

For this purpose we employ a form compounded of the
Verb sum, and the Participle in -rus: ventūrus sum, *I am
about to come ;* ventūrae sunt, *they* (fem.) *are about to come ;*
ventūrus fuerās, *you had been about to come, &c.*

Hence *Will she come ?* or *Is she about to come ?* becomes,
when changed into an Indirect Question :

Ask	*whether the*	**Interrŏgā**	
I ask	*woman is*	**Interrŏgo**	**num mŭlier**
I will ask	*about to*	**Interrŏgābo**	**ventūra sit.**
I have asked	*come.*	**Interrŏgāvi**	
I was asking	*whether the*	**Interrŏgābam**	
I asked	*woman*	**Interrŏgāvi**	**num mŭlier**
I had asked	*was about*	**Interrŏgāvĕram**	**ventūra**
	to come		**esset.**

EXERCISE XLVIII.

156   The Latin for *when* in *questions*, whether dependent or
independent, is not cum but quando.

When will he come ?   **Quando vĕniet ?**
Let us inquire when he will   Quaerāmus **quando** ventūrus
come.   sit.

1. Interrogavi puellam num matri obeditura esset. 2. Filium,
parentes nutriturum (154a), cur culpas ? 3. Obsidibus, haec
audientibus, non placuit in urbem venire.[1] 4. Interrogate
sorores vestras quando patri obediturae sint. 5. Hostibus, jam
urbem intrantibus, nox molesta erat. 6 Tibi, O puella, gra-
viter erraturae, pauca dicam. 7. Arbori, fructum jam praebi-
turae, frigus nocuit. 8. Praeceptori, optime docenti, discipu-
lorum stultitia multum displicuit. 9. Nonne audis patris tui

---

[1] Tho Subj. of plăcuit is venīre, see Par. 128. Parse obsĭdĭbus; see
Par. 142

verba, te culpantis, te in meliora revocantis ?   10. Ecce,
veniunt gladiatores, principem salutaturi.   11. Non erat
dubium quin pauca dictura esset.   12. Vitione potius quam
virtuti obtemperaturus es ?

1. *The speech of the general was troublesome to our men, (since
they were) not then expecting an attack. 2. You, (being)
yourself about-to-err, blame your brother (who is) erring.
3. You, who are destined soon to ask help (trans. you, soon
about-to-ask help) in-vain, now despise your friends (who are)
affording help. 4. You ought to hear the voice of your friends
(who are) chiding you (and) recalling you to the path of virtue.
5. There was no doubt that his daughter was on the point of
coming, i.e. about-to-come. 6. Why, O pupils, did you displease
your teacher, (though he was) teaching you most-excellently ?
7. When we heard this, we resolved to obey the general (trans.
(it) pleased us, hearing these things, to obey, &c.). 8. When will
you obey your friends (who are) giving you many gifts and
about-to-give you more (gifts) ? 9. Let us ask his sisters whether
they are going to obey (i.e. about-to-obey) (their) father. 10. The
frost destroyed very many vines (when they were) just (jam)
about-to-put-forth (their) fruit.*

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Ămŏr, ămātŭs sum, ămārī,—*to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Am-ŏr,	*I am loved*	Am-āmŭr,	*We are loved*
Am-ārĭs *or* ăm-ārĕ,	*thou art loved*	Am-āmĭnī,	*ye are loved*
Am-ātŭr,	*he is loved.*	Am-antŭr,	*they are loved.*[1]

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Am-ābŏr,	*I shall be loved*	Am-ābĭmŭr,	*We shall be loved*
Am-ābĕrĭs *or* ămābĕrĕ,	*thou wilt be loved*	Am-ābĭmĭnī,	*ye will be loved*
Am-ābĭtŭr,	*he will be loved.*	Am-ābuntŭr,	*they will be loved.*

---

[1] Cicero rarely uses ămāre for ămāris. It is liable to be confused with
the Imper. Passive, as well as with the Pres. Inf. Active.

3. Imperfect Tense.

Am-ābăr,	{ I was being loved (115)	**Am-ābāmŭr,**	{ We were being loved
Am-ābārĭs or ăm-ābārĕ	{ thou wast being loved	**Am-ābāmĭnī,**	{ ye were being loved
Am-ābātŭr,	{ he was being loved.	**Am-ābantŭr,**	{ they were being loved.

4. Perfect Tense.

Am-ātŭs sum **or fuī,**	{ I have been loved, or was loved	**Am-ātī sŭmŭs** **or fuĭmŭs,**	{ We have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātŭs ĕs **or fuistī,**	{ thou hast been loved, or wast loved	**Am-ātī estĭs or** **fuistĭs,**	{ ye have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātŭs est **or fuĭt,**	{ he has been loved, or was loved.	**Am-ātī sunt,** **fuĕrunt, or** **fuĕrē,**	{ they have been loved, or were loved[1]

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Am-ātŭs ĕro **or fuĕro,**	} I shall have been loved	**Am-ātī ĕrĭmŭs** **or fuĕrĭmŭs,**	{ We shall have been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrĭs **or fuĕrĭs,**	} thou wilt have been loved	**Am-ātī ĕrĭtĭs or** **fuĕrĭtĭs,**	{ ye will have been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrĭt **or fuĕrit,**	} he will have been loved.	**Am-ātī ĕrunt** **or fuĕrint,**	{ they will have been loved.

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Am-ātŭsĕram **or fuĕram,**	} I had been loved	**Am-ātī ĕrāmŭs** **or fuĕrāmŭs,**	} We had been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrās **or fuĕrās,**	} thou hadst been loved	**Am-ātī ĕrātĭs** **or fuĕrātĭs,**	} ye had been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrăt **or fuĕrăt,**	} he had been loved.	**Am-ātī ĕrant** **or fuĕrant,**	} they had been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Am-ārĕ,	Be thou loved.	**Am-āmĭnī,**	Be ye loved.

---

157 [1] The Latin Perfect Passive may sometimes be translated by *is, are:* *The man is slain,* hŏmo interfectus est. Hence, when *is, are* imply that an action is completed, translate by the Latin Perfect.

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Am-ātŏr,	*Thou must be loved*	**Am-antŏr,**	{ *They must be loved.*
Am-ātŏr,	*he must be loved.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ĕr,	*I may be loved*	**Am-ēmŭr,**	*We may be loved*
Am-ēris *or*	} *thou mayst be*	**Am-ēmĭnī,**	*ye may be loved*
ăm-ērĕ,	*loved*		
Am-ētŭr,	*he may be loved.*	**Am-entŭr,**	*they may be loved*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ārĕr,	*I might be loved*	**Am-ārēmŭr,**	*We might be loved*
Am-ārēris *or*	{ *thou mightst be*	**Am-ārēmĭnī,**	*ye might be loved*
ăm-ārērĕ,	*loved*		
Am-ārētŭr,	{ *he might be loved.*	**Am-ārentŭr,**	*they might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātŭs sim	} *I may have been loved*	**Am-ātī sīmŭs**	} *We may have been loved*
or fuĕrim,		*or* fuĕrimŭs,	
Am-ātŭs sīs	} *thou mayst have been loved*	**Am-ātī sītĭs**	} *ye may have been loved*
or fuĕrīs,		*or* fuĕritĭs,	
Am-ātŭs sīt	} *he may have been loved.*	**Am-ātī sint**	} *they may have been loved.*
or fuĕrĭt,		*or* fuĕrint,	

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātŭs essem	{ *I should have been loved*	**Am-ātī essēmŭs**	{ *We should have been loved*
or fuissem,		*or* fuissēmŭs,	
Am-ātŭs essēs	{ *thou wouldst have been loved*	**Am-ātī essētĭs**	{ *ye would have been loved*
or fuissēs,		*or* fuissētĭs,	
Am-ātŭs essĕt	{ *he would have been loved.*	**Am-ātī essent**	{ *they would have been loved.*
or fuissĕt,		*or* fuissent,	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	**Am-ārĭ,**	*to be loved*
PERF. and PLUP.	**Am-ātŭs (-a, -um) essĕ** *or* **fuissĕ,**	{ *to have been loved*
FUTURE.	**Am-ātum īrī** (not declined),	{ *to be about to be loved.*[1]

---

[1] For an explanation of ămātum īrī, see Exercise LXXIV.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	**Am-ātŭs (-a, -um),**	*loved or having been loved.*
GERUNDIVE.	**Am-andŭs (-a, -um),**	*meet to be loved.*

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mŏneŏr, mŏnĭtŭs sum, mŏnērī—*to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mŏn-eŏr,	*I am advised*	**Mŏn-ēmŭr,**	*We are advised*
Mŏn-ērĭs,	*thou art advised*	**Mŏn-ēmĭnī,**	*ye are advised*
Mŏn-ētŭr,	*he is advised.*	**Mŏn-entŭr,**	*they are advised.*

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mŏn-ēbŏr,	*I shall be advised*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,**	*We shall be advised*
Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or mŏn-ēbĕrĕ,	*thou wilt be advised*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,**	*ye will be advised*
Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr,	*he will be advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbuntŭr,**	*they will be advised.*

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-ēbăr,	*I was being advised* (115)	**Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being advised*
Mŏn-ēbārĭs or mŏn-ēbārĕ,	*thou wast being advised*	**Mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,**	*ye were being advised*
Mŏn-ēbātŭr,	*he was being advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being advised.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mŏn-ĭtŭs sum or fuī,	*I have been advised, or was advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been advised, or were advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been advised, or wast advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī estĭs or fuistĭs,**	*ye have been advised, or were advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been advised, or was advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,**	*they have been advised, or were advised.*

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Mŏn-ītŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	{ *I shall have* *been advised*	Mŏn-ītī ĕrimŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	} *We shall have* *been advised*
Mŏn-ītŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs.	{ *thou wilt have* *been advised*	Mŏn-ītī ĕrĭtĭs, or fuĕritĭs,	} *ye will have been* *advised*
Mŏn-ītŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	} *he will have* *been advised.*	Mŏn-ītī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	} *they will have* *been advised.*

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Mŏn-ītŭsĕram or fuĕram,	{ *I had been* *advised*	Mŏn-ītī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	} *We had been* *advised*
Mŏn-ītŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	{ *thou hadst* *been ad-* *vised*	Mŏn-ītī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	} *ye had been ad-* *vised*
Mŏn-ītŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	{ *he had been* *advised.*	Mŏn-ītī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	} *they had been* *advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mŏn-ērĕ,	*Be thou advised.*	Mŏn-ēmĭnī,	*Be ye advised*

Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

Mŏn-ētŏr,	*Thou must be advised*		
Mŏn-ētŏr,	*he must be advised.*	Mŏn-entŏr,	{ *They must be ad-* *vised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Mŏn-eăr,	{ *I may be ad-* *vised*	Mŏn-eāmŭr,	{ *We may be ad-* *vised*
Mŏn-eārĭs or mŏn-eārĕ,	{ *thou mayst* *be advised*	Mŏn-eāmĭnī,	{ *ye may be ad-* *vised.*
Mŏn-eātŭr,	{ *he may be* *advised.*	Mŏn-eantŭr,	{ *they may be ad-* *vised.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Mŏn-ērĕr,	{ *I might be* *advised*	Mŏn-ērēmŭr,	{ *We might be* *advised*
Mŏn-ērērĭs or mŏn-ērērĕ,	{ *thou mightst* *be advised*	Mŏn-ērēmĭnī,	{ *ye might be ad-* *vised*
Mŏn-ērētŭr,	{ *he might be* *advised*	Mŏn-ērentŭr,	{ *they might be* *advised.*

3. Perfect Tense.

Mŏn-ĭtŭs sim or fuĕrim,	*I may have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs or fuĕrīs,	*thou mayst have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs,	*ye may have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī sint or fuĕrint,	*they may have been advised.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Mŏn-ĭtŭs essem or fuissem,	*I should have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs,	*We should have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs, or fuissēs,	*thou wouldst have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī essētĭs or fuissētĭs,	*ye would have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*he . would have been advised.*	Mŏn-ĭtī essent or fuissent,	*they would have been advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. and Imp.	Mŏn-ērī,	*to be advised.*
Perf. and Plup.	Mŏn-ĭtŭs (-a, -um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been ad-[vised.*
Future.	Mŏn-ĭtum īrī (not declined),	*to be about to [be advised.*

Perfect.	Mŏn-ĭtŭs (-a, -um),	*advised,* or *having been advised.*
Gerundive.	Mŏn-endŭs (-a, -um),	*meet to be advised.*

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rĕgŏr, rectŭs sum, rĕgī,—*to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Rĕg-ŏr,	*I am ruled*	Rĕg-ĭmŭr,	*We are ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrĭs,	*thou art ruled*	Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,	*ye are ruled*
Rĕg-ĭtŭr,	*he is ruled.*	Rĕg-untŭr,	*they are ruled.*

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Rĕg-ăr,	*I shall be ruled*	Rĕg-ēmŭr,	*We shall be ruled*
Rĕg-ērĭs *or*	{ *thou wilt be*	Rĕg-ēmĭnĭ,	*ye will be ruled*
rĕg-ērĕ,	*ruled*		
Rĕg-ētŭr,	*he will be ruled.*	Rĕg-entŭr,	*they will be ruled.*

3. Imperfect Tense.

Rĕg-ēbăr,	{ *I was being ruled* (115)	Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,	{ *We were being ruled*
Rĕg-ēbārĭs *or* rĕg-ēbārĕ,	*thou wast being ruled*	Rĕg-ēbāmĭnĭ,	{ *ye were being ruled*
Rĕg-ēbātŭr,	{ *he was being ruled.*	Rĕg-ēbantŭr,	{ *they were being ruled.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Rec-tŭs sum *or* fuī,	{ *I have been ruled, or was ruled*	Rec-tī sŭmŭs *or* fuīmŭs,	{ *We have been ruled, or were ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕs *or* fuistī,	{ *thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled*	Rec-tī estĭs *or* fuistĭs,	{ *ye have been ruled, or were ruled*
Rec-tŭs est *or* fuĭt,	{ *he has been ruled, or was ruled.*	Rec-tī sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuērĕ,	{ *they have been ruled, or were ruled.*

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Rec-tŭs ĕro *or* fuĕro,	} *I shall have been ruled*	Rec-tī ĕrĭmŭs *or* fuĕrĭmŭs,	} *We shall have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭs *or* fuĕrĭs,	} *thou wilt have been ruled*	Rec-tī ĕrĭtĭs *or* fuĕritĭs,	} *ye will have been*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭt *or* fuĕrĭt,	} *he will have been ruled.*	Rec-tī ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint,	} *they will have been ruled.*

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Rec-tŭs ĕram *or* fuĕram,	} *I had been ruled*	Rec-tī ĕrāmŭs *or* fuĕrāmŭs,	} *We had been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrās *or* fuĕrās,	} *thou hadst been ruled*	Rec-tī ĕrātĭs *or* fuĕrātĭs,	} *ye had been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrăt *or* fuĕrăt,	} *he had been ruled.*	Rec-tī ĕrant *or* fuĕrant,	} *they had been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*Be thou ruled.*	Rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ,	*Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*Thou must be ruled*	Rĕg-untŏr,	*They must be ruled.*
Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*he must be ruled.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-ăr,	*I may be ruled*	Rĕg-āmŭr,	*We may be ruled*
Rĕg-āris or } rĕg-ārĕ,	*thou mayst be ruled*	Rĕg-āmĭnī,	*ye may be ruled*
Rĕg-ātŭr,	*he may be ruled.*	Rĕg-antŭr,	*they may be ruled.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ĕrĕr,	*I might be ruled*	Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,	*We might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrēris or } rĕg-ĕrērĕ,	*thou mightst be ruled*	Rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī,	*ye might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrētŭr,	*he might be ruled.*	Rĕg-ĕrentŭr,	*they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tŭs sim or fuĕrim,	*I may have been ruled*	Rec-tī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs sīs or fuĕrīs,	*thou mayst have been ruled*	Rec-tī sītīs or fuĕrītīs,	*ye may have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs sit or fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been ruled.*	Rec-tī sint or fuĕrint,	*they may have been ruled.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tŭs essem or fuissem,	*I should have been ruled*	Rec-tī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs,	*We should have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs essēs or fuissēs,	*thou wouldst have been ruled*	Rec-tī essētīs or fuissētīs,	*ye would have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*he would have been ruled.*	Rec-tī essent or fuissent,	*they would have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Rĕg-ī,	*to be ruled.*
PERF and PLUP.	Rec-tŭs (-a, -um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been ruled*
FUTURE.	Rec-tum īrī (not declined),	*to be about to be [ruled.*

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	Rec-tŭs (-a, -um),	*ruled* or *having been ruled.*
GERUNDIVE.	Rĕg-endŭs (-a, -um),	*meet to be ruled.*

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiŏr, audītŭs sum, audīrī,—*to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iŏr,	*I am heard*	Aud-imŭr,	*We are heard*
Aud-īrĭs,	*thou art heard.*	Aud-īmĭnī,	*ye are heard*
Aud-ītŭr,	*he is heard*	Aud-iuntŭr,	*they are heard.*

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iăr,	{ *I shall be heard*	Aud-iēmŭr,	*We shall be heard*
Aud-iērĭs or aud-iērĕ,	{ *thou wilt be heard*	Aud-iēmĭnī,	*ye will be heard*
Aud-iētŭr,	*he will be heard.*	Aud-ientŭr,	*they will be heard.*

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbăr,	{ *I was being heard* (115)	Aud-iēbāmŭr,	{ *We were being heard*
Aud-iēbārĭs or aud-iēbārĕ,	{ *thou wast being heard*	Aud-iēbāmĭnī,	{ *ye were being heard*
Aud-iēbātŭr,	{ *he was being heard.*	Aud-iēbantŭr,	{ *they were being heard.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītŭs sum or fuī,	{ *I have been heard, or was heard*	Aud-ītī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	{ *We have been heard, or were heard*
Aud-ītŭs es or fuistī,	{ *thou hast been heard, or wast heard*	Aud-ītī estĭs or fuistĭs,	{ *ye have been heard, or were heard*
Aud-ītŭs est or fuĭt,	{ *he has been heard, or was heard.*	Aud-ītī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,	{ *they have been heard, or were heard.*

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Aud-ītŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrĭmŭs.	*We shall have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕrĭtĭs.	*ye will have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	*they will have been heard.*

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Aud-ītŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	*I had been heard*	Aud-ītī-ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	*We had been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been heard.*	Aud-ītī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	*they had been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-īrĕ,	*Be thou heard.*	Aud-īmĭnī,	*Be ye heard.*

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-ītŏr,	*Thou must be heard*	Aud-iuntŏr,	*They must be heard.*
Aud-ītŏr,	*he must be heard.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iăr	*I may be heard*	Aud-iāmŭr,	*We may be heard*
Aud-iārĭs or aud-iārĕ,	*thou mayst be heard*	Aud-iāmĭnī,	*ye may be heard*
Aud-iātŭr,	*he may be heard.*	Aud-iantŭr,	*they may be heard.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-īrĕr,	*I might be heard*	Aud-īrēmŭr,	*We might be heard*
Aud-īrērĭs or aud-īrērĕ,	*thou mightst be heard*	Aud-īrēmĭnī,	*ye might be heard*
Aud-īrētŭr,	*he might be heard.*	Aud-īrentŭr,	*they might be heard.*

3. Perfect Tense.

Aud-ītŭs sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard*	Aud-ītī sīmŭs *or* fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs sīs *or* fuĕrīs,	*thou mayst have been heard*	Aud-ītī sītīs *or* fuĕritīs,	*ye may have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs sīt *or* fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been heard.*	Aud-ītī sint *or* fuĕrint,	*they may have been heard.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Aud-ītŭs essem *or* fuissem,	*I should have been heard*	Aud-ītī essēmŭs *or* fuissēmŭs,	*We should have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs essēs *or* fuissēs,	*thou wouldst have been heard*	Aud-ītī essētīs *or* fuissētīs,	*ye would have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs essĕt *or* fuissĕt,	*he would have been heard*	Aud-ītī essent *or* fuissent.	*they would have been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. and Imp.	Aud-īrī,	*to be heard.*
Perf. and Plup.	Aud-ītŭs (-a, -um) essĕ *or* fuissĕ,	*to have been heard.*
Future.	Aud-ītum īrī (not declined),	*to be about to be [heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Aud-ītŭs (-a, -um),	*heard or having been heard.*
Gerundive.	Aud-iendŭs (-a; -um),	*meet to be heard.*

Exercise XLIX.

157*a*   If two Subjects are connected by Disjunctive Conjunctions, *e.g.* vĕl, *or* (*if you please*), *or* (*rather*), aut *or* (*else*), the Verb generally agrees with the latter of the two.

What man or what monster committed this crime?	Qui hŏmo, vĕl quae bēlŭa hōc fācinus commīsit?
Either you or Tullius said this.	Aut tū aut Tullius haec dīxit.

1. Equus ab aurīga domābitur (32), mox aurīgam dorso portābit.
2. Cura ut Tullia, puella pulcherrima, floribus a matre ornetur. 3. Si urbem incendent, quomodo in tanto incendio servabimini? 4. Interrogavi civem quomodo urbs servaretur.
5. Curavit sacerdos ut hae divitiae in aedem Jovis portarentur.
6. Si animum recreabis, nihil obstabit quominus saneris.
7. Cura ut a medico saneris, qui te facillime sanabit, si

tu ei obtemperabis.   8. Agri tui qui nunquam antea vas-
tabantur, jam vastabuntur, nisi nobis iter monstraveris.
9. Curabit dux ut a me servemini nisi jussa mea neglexeritis.
10. Portae urbis omni cura firmantor ne ab hostibus subito[1]
superemur.   11. Curato ne, impetum non expectantes, ab
hoste superemini.   12. Nisi a medico sanabere (125), num
tibi aurum argentumque utilia erunt ?

1. *The land of the Germans, which was never (115) wont-to-be laid-
waste before, was laid waste by our men. 2. While we are being
overcome by disease, our allies are being overcome by the enemy.
3. The leader took care that the citizens should be preserved.
4. Take care that the gates of the city are strongly-guarded,
(trans. strengthened with a guard), that our men may not be
overcome by the enemy. 5. What enemy, or (rather) what danger
(111) prevented this wealth from being carried (use quōmĭnus,
see Par. 144) into the temple ?   6. Our men, not expecting an
attack, were being overcome by the enemy. 7. We shall be
cured (17) by this medicine if we obey the physician's precepts.
8. How will you be preserved, (my) friends, in this great (trans.
so-great) conflagration ?   9. The priests were-taking-pains that
the temple should be adorned by the servants with very-many
flowers. 10. Let us take-care that the gates of the city are
(143) strongly-guarded*

PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL TENSES.

158   The Participle Passive agrees with its Noun in Number
and Gender.

The enemy, having been over-come, are fleeing, i.e. *have been overcome and are fleeing.*	Hostes sŭpĕrāti fŭgiŭnt.
They burn the city (when it had been) taken, i.e. *they take and burn the city.*	Urbem captam incendunt.

159   *N.B.*—Note how the English *and* can be expressed by
the Latin Passive Participle.

159a   The Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of
ămor, both in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, are
not really independent Tenses of ămor, but rather Tenses

160   [1] Sŭbĭto is an Adv. Adj. in -us, -a, -um, and -er, -a, -um, mostly make
Adv. in -ē; but there are exceptions: tūto, *safely;* cĭto, *quickly;* &c.

of the Verb **sum** joined to forms of the Passive Participle ămātus *which must agree with some Noun or Pronoun:*

The town is taken. Oppĭdum **captum** est.

The girls will have been adorned. Puellae **ornātae** fuĕrint.

Exercise L.

161 If two or more Subjects are (1) animate beings of different genders, their Adjective or Participle is Masculine; (2) if inanimate, generally Neuter Plural.

(1) *His father and mother have been slain.* Păter eius et māter **interfecti** sunt.

(2) *Anger and avarice were more powerful than authority.* Īra et ăvārĭtĭa impĕrio **potentĭōra** ĕrant.

1. Interroga num pater meus et mater a Tullio servati sint (9a). 2. Imperator, cum hostium equites jam turbati fuissent, pedites facile fugavit. 3. Oppidum ipsum ab hoste expugnatum est, sed arx virtute ducis nostri est servata. 4. Si equites superati fuerint (125a), quomodo pedites servabuntur? 5. Cur tanto auri pondere ornatae estis, mulieres stultissimae? 6. Murus et porta a sacerdote centum aureis statuis, ducentis argenteis, ornata fuerant. 7. Hostis, tandem superatus, ab imperatore nostro fugatus est. 8. Agri pauperrimorum agricolarum a crudelissimis hostibus ferro atque igni vastati sunt. 9. Hostes superati sunt, urbes quinquaginta expugnatae, segetes omnes vastatae (32). 10. Non dubium erat quin iter hostibus a proditore monstratum fuisset.

1. *Have the wall and the gate been stormed by the enemy* (101)? 2. *Ask whether the wall and the gate have been preserved by the citizens.* 3. *The town is stormed* (i.e. *has been stormed*): *our men are overcome.* 4. *The bridge, having been preserved by the husbandmen, had been pointed out to us by the spy.* 5. *There was no doubt that two hundred ships of war had been preserved by the enemy.* 6. *The shower was troublesome to the enemy (who were) now put-to-flight.* 7. *Did you not owe everything* (trans. *all things*) *to Tullius, by whom your very life had been preserved?* 8. *Having been praised by all the best citizens* (140), *will you and your sister,* (150) *my (dear) Tullius, commit this great* (i.e. *so great*) *crime* (101)?

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Exercise LI.

162 The Passive is sometimes used impersonally in Latin where we use the Active:

All laughed, lit. *it was laughed by all.*	**Rīdēbātur** ăb omnĭbus.
The enemy had fought bravely, lit. *it had been fought bravely by the enemy*	**Pugnātum** ĕrat ācrĭter ăb hostĭbus.

163 The Neuter of the Passive Participle in -ndus (commonly called the Gerundive) is very frequently used in this impersonal way, *the Agent being expressed by the Dative:*

I must fight, lit. *it is meet to be fought to,* or *for, me.*	**Pugnandum est mĭhi.**[1]
Ought you not to remain?	**Nōnne tĭbi mănendum est?**

1. Cura ne periculo terrearis. 2. Justorum judicum animi neque minis neque a rege ipso movebuntur. 3. Cives, ab imperatore territi, in sua quisque domo manserunt.[2] 4. Quid obstabat vobis quominus a praeceptore doceremini ? 5. Magister curavit ut omnia vere a servis suis responderentur. 6. Non dubium est quin puer optime doceatur. 7. Curate ut corpora puerorum bene exerceantur. 8. Agricola fluctibus terrebatur, quos nauta ridebat. 9. Cum haec tanta (trans. *this great*) tempestas impenderet, flebatur ab agricolis, a nautis ridebatur. 10. Imperatori, captivos interroganti nonne cruciatus timerent, a regina nostra fortissime responsum est. 11. Nobis flendum est, vobis et hostibus exultandum. 12. Hostes jam superatos, et in urbem fugientes, equitatus noster paene delevit.

1. *There is no doubt that two-hundred cities were utterly-destroyed by the cruel general Balbus* (124). 2. *We must fight bravely that the enemy may not* (131) *take the city by-storm.* 3. *Fighting*

  [1] If the Verb *e.g.* pāreo governs a Dat., "pārendum est nōbīs" would be ambiguous, meaning either *obedience must be paid to us,* or *by us.* This ambiguity is avoided by using ā with the Abl. to express the Agent:
    We must obey the magistrate. Mgistrātūī ā nōbīs pārendum est.

  [2] Quisquĕ is Nom. Sing. in Apposition to cīves. Note that in this phrase, *they came, returned, each to his &c.,* sŭus *always precedes* quisquĕ.

was kept up briskly (trans. *it-was-fought briskly*) *by the
Germans, that our men, terrified by the multitude of the darts,
might retire into the city.*   4. *There is no doubt that the master
will exercise* (155) *the bodies of the slaves.*   5. *Why must you
weep?   Ought* (163) *not you* (101) *rather to fight that your
fields may not be laid-waste by the enemy?*   6. *There is no doubt
that answer-was-made most-bravely by our leader.*   7. *I took
care that the city might be filled with-soldiers that you might
not be terrified by the danger.*   8. *We ought not to be terrified
in this great danger* (trans. *this so-great danger*).   9. *Our
men, when-they-could scarcely sustain the charge of the enemy*
(trans. *scarcely sustaining*) *and* (*were*) *almost fleeing, were
recalled by the voice of* (*their*) *brave* (70) *leader.*   10. *What
tyrant, or* (157a) *what* (111) *danger, will prevent* (144) *us
from remaining in our city?*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LII.

166 *I am on the point of conquering.*   In ĕo sum ŭt vincam.
   I was on the point of conquering.   In ĕo ĕram ŭt vincĕrem.

RŪLE.—When an Active Verb governing a Dative is
turned into the Passive, it retains the Dative but is used
impersonally.   Thus, *all obey you*, omnes tĭbĭ pārēbunt;
but:

167 *You will be obeyed by all*, i.e.   **Tĭbĭ** ăb omnĭbus **pārēbĭtur**
   it will be obeyed to you by all.   (*not* tū pārēbĕris).

1. Qui non, puer, regitur, is, senex, non bene reget.[1]   2. Nisi te
ipsum (125a) viceris, hostes a te inutiliter vincentur.   3. Cura
ne falsa a te fingantur.   4. Curabant senes ut a filiis suis
recte viveretur.   5. Cum nostri in eo essent ut urbem intra-
rent, subito portae clausae sunt.   6. Non dubium est quin
exercitus, fortiter pugnans, ab hostibus oppressus sit.   7.
Cavendum est ne ab hostibus contemnamini.   8. Inter-
rogavisti nonne conjuratio alteri consuli a tribus testibus
detecta esset.   9. Rhenus fluvius a Cæsare ponte eo tempore
jungebatur.   10. Castra a duobus milibus militum, viris
acerrimis, defendentur.   11. Liber ille a liberis meis summa
diligentia scribitur.   12. Quid obstat quominus agri colantur,
quoniam mox hostes in fugam vertentur?   13. Tune agros
colis qui, quotiens colentur, totiens ab hostibus vastabuntur?

---

[1] Puer is Nom., in Apposition with **qui**, *he who, when* (*or as*) *a boy*, &c.

1. *The town will be defended bravely by the citizens.* 2. *Take care that the gates are shut and that the city is guarded* (trans. *strengthened with a guard*). 3. *If the river* (125) *is bridged by the enemy, you will be in great danger, citizens.* 4. *Do you* (tu), *the partner* [1] *of our plans, give-orders that the conspiracy shall be disclosed* (pres. subjunct.)? 5. *I asked my children whether the books were being written by them.* 6. *There was no doubt that the fields, formerly laid-waste by the enemy, were now being cultivated.* 7. *If you, (when) a boy, obey your parents, you will be obeyed, when old, by your children* (trans. *it-will-be-obeyed to you (when) an old-man*). 8. *Our men are on the point of putting the enemy to flight.* 9. *The enemy were on the point of being put to flight by our men.* 10. *If the conspiracy is disclosed* (125) *to-morrow, the city will be preserved by you.*

Exercise LIII.

1. Cur non auxilium mittere statuitis? 2. Interrogandum est nobis num epistola a puero scripta sit. 3. Interrogandum erat mulieri quando epistolae a pueris scriptae essent. 4. Non erat dubium quin duci (142) nostro placuisset legatos mittere. 5. Cum jam agri diligentissime culti fuissent, subito segetes omnes imbribus absumptae sunt. 6. Quid obstabat quominus oppidum defenderetur? 7. Urbem hanc, a duobus millibus civium defensam, decem milia hostium obsederunt. 8. Quare vos, quingenti viri, ab hostibus ducentis victi estis? 9. Interrogavi nonne a sene pueri semper dilecti essent, nonne memoria eius ab illis etiam tum coleretur. 10. Fabula, si a poeta docte scripta fuerit, omnibus placebit. 11. Cum jam naves plurimae ab imperatore collectae essent, exploratores ad Britanniam quinto die missi sunt. 12. Jam acies instructa erat, jam pedites ad proelium parati (142 *d*); cum subito legati ab hostibus pacem petituri missi sunt.

1. *There is no doubt that the letter was written by his sister.* 2. *What prevented the fields from being cultivated?* 3. *When the enemy had now been conquered, the husbandmen determined to cultivate the fields.* 4. *There was no doubt that the old man's memory had been cherished* (lit. *cultivated*) *by those whom he had taught.* 5. *Let us ask the poet why he did not compose* (lit. *write*) *a better story.* 6. *The king asked the general why he had not himself drawn up the line-of-battle with greater care* (lit. *more-diligently*). 7. *Our ambassadors were sent a-second-time into the city to seek for peace* (lit. *about-to-*

seek). 8. *The spears of the soldiers, fixed in the earth, shewed the camp of the enemy.* 9. *Which of the two* (85) *daughters was especially loved* (dīlĭgo) *by* (*her*) *father?* 10. *If he violates* (125) *this law, let him* (129a) *be driven into exile.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

168 When the Gerundive is used as an Adjective, it still takes the Dative of the Agent; (if (164) there is no ambiguity :)

The boys } *are (fit) to be punish-*	Pŭěri }	suntmĭhĭ pūniend } -i.
girls } *ed by me.*	Puellae }	} -ae.
I must learn this.	Haec mĭhi discenda sunt.	

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Audiendi sunt nobis exploratores ; nam hostium urbes clam muniuntur. 2. Quid obstat quominus extra urbem corpus sepeliatur? 3. Curandum erat legatis ut bellum pace finiretur. 4. Interrogabo Numidam num leones in Africa reperiantur. 5. Puniēris, nisi cito veneris. 6. Cur tam deformibus vestibus vestiebamini? 7. Patri a quo nutrimini, vestimiri, educamini, nonne parebitis ? 8. Mortui extra (*see Vocab.* extrā) urbem sepeliuntur. 9. Tertia nocte a nostris dormiebatur, ab hostibus castra muniebantur. 10. Ab eo vincire qui nuper a te ipso vinciebatur.

1. *There is no doubt that lions are found in Africa.* 2. *Will you not obey, O most ungrateful boy, the father by whom you were clothed, nourished, (and) educated?* 3. *Let us take care that war may be terminated by peace.* 4. *The spies of the enemy must be punished by us.* 5. *What prevents the camp from being fortified by our men* (144)? 6. *The dead used-to-be-buried ly the ancients outside the city.* 7. *On the fourth day, my son, you will be heard by the judges.* 8. *You were being patiently heard by all : why did* (127b) *you not yourself* (105) *hear me?*

EXERCISE LV.

1. Hae urbes nobis muniendae sunt. 2. Cum corpora mortuorum sepulta essent, arcem optime munitam hostes nobis tradiderunt. 3. Reperti sunt leones quinque ; de (*about*) tigribus nihil auditum (est). 4. Nisi melius vestita fuerit (125a); mulier frigus vix tolerabit. 5. Nutriendus est nobis pauperrimus ille puer qui a patre ipso non nutritus est. 6. Cur tandem, O puellae, matris immemores estis ? Nonne estis ab illa nutritae ? Nonne (142d) vestitae ? Nonne summa diligentia[1] educatae ? 7. Ego, si finitum fuerit bellum, in

---

[1] Dīlĭgentiā is *Abl. of Manner:* see Exercise LXXIX.

Italiam veniam. 8. Tria milia captivorum, a nostris vincti,[1] olam evaserunt. 9. Qui a patre tuo nutritus es, nonne tu patrem, jam senem, ipse nutries? 10. Non dubium erat quin castra hostium clam diligentissime munita essent.

1. *I asked whether the bodies of the dead had been buried.* 2. *Will (it) not please you to nourish those by whom you yourselves have been nourished?* 3. *There is no doubt that very many lions have been found in Africa.* 4. *These who have been bound by you, O soldiers, have secretly escaped.* 5. *The story which had been beautifully written by the poet did not please the king.* 6. *Take-care that you are clothed with a thick garment, that the cold may not* (131) *hurt you.* 7. *She was heard by the same judges by whom his sisters had already been heard.* 8. *What have you found, my friend, which has not already been found out by others (ea)?*[2]

THIRD CONJUGATION IN I.

Căpĭo, cēpi, captum, căpĕrĕ,—*to take.*
(stem : căp-, or căpĭ-.)

When the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. of the Third Conjugation ends in -ĭo, it (1) drops the ĭ before ĭ and ĕ,[3] but (2) retains it otherwise, *e.g.* before a, o, ē, and u.

Thus (1) căp-ĭmus, căp-ĕre, căp-ĕ.

But (2) căpi-am, căpi-o, căpi-ēs, căpi-unt.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpi-o, căp-ĭs, căp-ĭt, căp-ĭmus, căp-ĭtis, căpĭ-unt.

Fut. Căpi-am, căpi-ēs, căpi-et, căpi-ēmus, căpi-etis, căpi-ent.

Imperf. Căpi-ēbam, căpi-ēbas, căpi-ēbat, căpi-ēbamus, căpi-ēbatis, căpi-ēbant

Regular Tenses.
{ *Perf.* Cēp-i, Cēp-isti, &c.
{ *Pluperf.* Cēp-ĕram, Cēp-ĕras, &c.
{ *Future Perf.* Cēp-ĕro, Cēp-ĕris, &c.

168a　　[1] Vincti is Masc. Nom. agreeing with a Masc. Nom., *men* or *captives*, implied in milia.

[2] For easy Exercises on the Regular Verbs, see pp. 173—175.

[3] The only exception is the 3rd Pers. Sing. of the Fut. Indic. căpi-et, which follows the form of the other persons, căpi-ēs, căpi-ēmus, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. căp-ĕ,   căp-ĭte,
Fut. căp-ĭto, căp-ĭto, căp-ĭtōte, căpĭ-unto,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpĭ-am, căpĭ-as, căpĭ-at, căpĭ-amus, căpĭ-atis,
         căpĭ-ant,
Imperf. Căp-ĕrem, căp-ĕres, căp-ĕret, căp-ĕremus, căp-
         ĕretis, căp-ĕrent,

Regular Tenses. { *Perf.* Cēp-ĕrim, cēp-ĕris, &c.
                    { *Pluperf.* Cēp-issem, cēp-isses, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.   PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-ĕre,   *Perf.* Cēp-isse   *Pres.* Căpiens,   *Fut*
                                                Capturus.

          GERUND.   SUPINES.
          Capi-endi.   Captum, captu.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

(Only the Present and Present-Derived Tenses are given below.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpĭ-or, căp-ĕris, căp-ĭtur, căp-ĭmur, căp-ĭmini, căpi-
         untur.
Fut. Căpĭ-ar, căpĭ-ēris (-ĕrĕ), căpĭ-ētur, căpĭ-ēmur, căpĭ-
         ēmini, căpĭ-entur.
Imperf. Căpĭ-ēbar, căpĭ-ēbaris (-bārĕ), căpĭ-ēbatur, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căp-ĕre, căp-ĭmini.
Fut. Căpĭ-tor, căpĭ-untor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpĭ-ar, căpĭ-āris, căpĭ-ātur, &c.
Imperf. Căp-ĕrer, căpĕr-ēris, căpĕr-ētur, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD
                    Căp-i.

<div align="center">EXERCISE LVI.</div>

169   A prohibition is often expressed by the Imperative Sing.
nōlī or Plur. nōlīte, *be unwilling :*

Do not flee, i.e. *be unwilling to flee.*   Nōlī, *or* nōlīte, fŭgĕre.

170   The Ablative of the Gerund is used instrumentally:

Water hollows the rock by fall-   Aqua saxum căvat cădendo.
ing.

1. Cape pira quoniam cupis, sed noli piro meae quatiendo nocere.
2. Si haec scripseris, mox cupies non scripsisse. 3. Inter-
rogavit num, haec facientes, recte et sapienter faceremus.
4. Accipe trecentos denarios, si dederit ; ducentos ne acceperis.
5. Curate ut versus vestri Nasonem sapiant. 6. Nolite
fugere, O milites ; fodiendum est, non fugiendum, ut
castra muniamus. 7. Si quaeris monumentum, circumspice.[1]
8. Noli, O judex, injusta facere : nonne tu oravit rex ut
justitiam semper respiceres ? 9. Miles, jam telum con-
jecturus, hostem jacentem aspexit. 10. Interrogavi qualia
animalia multiplices fetus parerent.[2]

1. *Have-regard-to virtue ; do not have-regard-to the commands of
a tyrant.*[3] 2. *There was no doubt that he received five
hundred denarii, and was* (155) *about-to-receive two thousand
denarii.* 3. *When the youth beheld his father, he cast away
his dart.* 4. *Flee, O friends ; do not look round.* 5. *The
leaders asked what we desired to do.* 6. *What prevents his
verses from savouring-of Maro* (see *Maro* in Vocabulary)?
7. *What (i.e. that which) they did, they took care* (143) *to do
well.* 8. *You will make your discourse accurate by writing,
learned by reading.*

<div align="center">EXERCISE LVII.</div>

171   *Whether . . . or,* in (*a*) Independent, as well as in (*b*)
Dependent Questions, can be expressed by (1) utrum . . .
ăn ; (2) -nĕ . . . ăn :

(*a* 1) *Is this true or false ?*   Utrum haec vēra ăn falsa sunt ?
(*a* 2). *Was he white or black ?*   Albusnĕ ăn āter ĕrat ?

---

[1] These words are inscribed on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in
St. Paul's ; quaeris refers to present, not (125) to future time.
[2] From what two Verbs may parerent come, the quantity being left
unmarked? What Case does each govern ?
[3] Note that *have-regard-to* is one Verb in Latin governing an *Accusative*
Case.

(b1) *We must enquire whether*   Quaerendum est **utrum** haec
    this is true or false.   vēra sint **ăn** falsa.
(b2) *It is uncertain whether*   Incertum est albusně **ăn** āter
    he was black or white.   fuěrit.[1]

172   *Or not* in Interrogatives may be rendered by **annōn** or
necně:

Ask: whether he will come or not.   Quaerě utrum ventūrus sit
                       necně (or annōn).

173   N.B. (1) Aut and věl (157a) are not to be used in
Dependent or Independent Questions.

174   (2) When *whether* is not followed by *or*, num (135) is
generally used instead of utrum.

175   (3) The Rule (136) for Sequence of Tenses *always holds.*

1. Praeceptor dubitabat tunc an Tullius rem melius gereret.[2]
2. Dux, cum jam proelii, vel potius caedis, finem fecisset,
urbem incenderat. 3. Aut pugnandum est aut cedendum,
milites. 4. Hunc vicum barbari oppidum vel urbem
appellavere. 5. Milites cum jam spolia vel praedam
rapuissent cupierunt urbem incendere. 6. Latona dicitur
uno partu Apollinem et Dianam peperisse.[3] 7. Quaerendum
est utrum regina an filius eius bellum acrius gesturus sit.
8. Arma nobis capienda sunt ně (*not* -ně) tyrannus, vel
tyranni milites, bona nostra diripiant. 9. Haec cum impera-
tor aspexit, constituit aut aciem statim instruere aut clam
nocte discedere. 10. Cum pedites nostri fugissent, naves
tempestate quassae fuissent, urbes ab hostibus direptae,
statim magna pars nostrorum pacem petere cupiebat. 11.
Quaerendum est per (*by means of*) exploratores utrum urbs
ab hostibus incensa sit necne.

---

176   [1] Both in Independent and Dependent Questions (c) ăn is sometimes
used without utrum or -ně preceding ; and in Dependent Questions (d) -ně
is sometimes used for *or*, without a preceding particle.
It is uncertain whether he was the son   Filius nēpōsne fuerit Tullii in-
  or grandson of Tullius.   certum est.
176a   [2] The disjunctive ăn disjoins tū from Tullius and causes gěrěret to
agree with Tullius; tū may be parsed as "the subject of gěrěres under-
stood:" see Par. 157a.
177   [3] Dicītur, with a Personal Subject, should generally be rendered in
English impersonally, *it is said that Latona,* &c.

1. *Who doubted whether you or your brother had made these verses?*
2. *We must either depart or learn.* 3. *Let us make an end of this war or (rather) insurrection.* 4. *The general ordered the soldiers to hurl their darts against (in gov. acc.) the enemy.* 5. *Either we shall carry on this war prosperously or we shall be driven into exile.* 6. *There was no doubt that the queen, or (rather) her son, had waged that war very-prosperously.* 7. *It was doubtful whether the general had seen the horse-soldiers, or (whether) ignorant of their arrival, he had drawn up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Let us ask whether the men will come on the third or fourth day.* 9. *It is uncertain whether the city has been stormed or not.* 10. *Who doubts whether the queen will (155) carry on the war in winter (5a)?*

PREPOSITIONS.

178 1. The following Prepositions take the Ablative, and no other Case :

A, ăb (before a vowel), *by, from.*	**Ē,** (ex before a vowel), *out of.*
Absquĕ (rare), *without.*	**Pălam,** *openly, in the presence of.*[2]
Clam, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*[1]	**Prae,** *before, in comparison with,* (with a negative *because of.*)[3]
Cōram, *in the presence of.*	**Prō,** *before, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for.*
Cum, *with.*	**Sĭne,** *without.*
Dē, *down from, from, concerning.*	**Tĕnŭs** (after its Case), *as far as.*[4]

These Prepositions are sometimes committed to memory in the following rhyme :

> Ā, or ăb, and ex or ē
> Cum, pălam, cōram, clam and dē
> Tĕnŭs, sĭne, prō, and prae
> Always govern the Ablative.

---

[1] Clam is used by the Comic Authors with the Accusative.
[2] Pălam is used as a Preposition only after Cicero, and mostly by poets.
[3] Prae is rarely used by Cicero to mean *because of* except with **non, vix,** &c.: *I am not able to speak for sorrow,* Prae maerōre lŏqui nōn possum.
[4] Tĕnŭs governs the Abl. Sing.; but with a Plural Noun, more often takes the Genitive, Alpĭum tĕnŭs, *as far as the Alps :* but the Gen. Pl. construction is not found in the prose of Cicero.

Exercise LVIII.

RULE.—Cum is affixed to tē, mē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quĭbus : mēcum, (not cum mē) nōbīscum, quōcum, &c.

1. Puer inde a pueritia cum matre vixerat, quae ab Italia ad Graeciam se receperat.   2. Pecuniam mihi reddidit quam ipse a fratre meo, proximo anno, coram patre meo acceperat.   3. Irruperunt clam imperatore milites cum gladiis, cum scutis ; qui (see 'qui') me vehementissime increpuissent, equidem cum constantia respondi.   4. Tu quidem Rheno tenus regnabis, filius autem tecum regnabit.   5. Alpium tenus omnes gentes vicerat.   6. Verbo tenus te adjuvabit, re ipsa nihil faciet.[1]   7. Ira sine viribus inutilissima est.   8. Pro obsidibus causam egit Tullius ; cui (i.e. et ei, see Par. 298, I) pro tantis eius laboribus gratias Allobroges egerunt.   9. Palam populo sine misericordia jugulatus est.   10. Tibi, O amice, prae omnibus amicis beate, ego, hominum miserrimus, prae lacrimis vix scribo.   11. Nos pro patria pugnantes dejecistis de Capitolio (32), jam ex urbe ejicitis.   12. Multis de[2] causis cupio tecum de hac re deliberare.

1. In-the-presence-of his father the youth deliberated with me concerning this matter.   2. Let us return thanks to the worthy Balbus, who pleaded our cause with (181) zeal before the king.   3. There was no doubt that he had conquered all Asia as-far-as Taurus.   4. From a boy he had lived in Greece.   5. Since the general forbids (us), let us fight for (our) country without his knowledge.   6. He was slain by the soldiers in-the-sight-of the people.   7. From Italy I shall retire to Greece, and my son will travel with me.   8. Tullius, who pleaded for us, replied to these charges with indignation.   9. I scarcely write for tears: having been driven out-of (my) native-land into exile.   10. What will anger without wisdom effect for us ?

PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

ABLATIVE.		ACCUSATIVE.	
In,	meaning *rest in*	In,	meaning *into, to, towards*
Sŭb,	„ *rest under*	Sŭb,	„ *motion from below,*[3]
Sŭper,	„ *concerning.*	Sŭper,	„ *above, over, upon.*[4]

[1] Rē is Adverbial Abl.; see Par. 182.

[2] '*From many reasons,*' i.e. '*for* many reasons.'

[3] The form subter (hardly, if at all, found, except in poets and late prose writers), meaning *extension under,* generally takes the Acc. but sometimes the Abl. in poetry.

[4] Sŭper, meaning *above,* also takes the Abl. in poetry, and in Caesar.

EXERCISE LIX.

181   RULE.—The *Manner* of an action may be expressed (1) by the Abl. of a Noun, *with an Adjective attached to it;* (2) by the Abl. following *cum.*

| *He spoke with,* or *in, anger; I replied with the greatest firmness.* | Ille quĭdem cum Irā lŏcūtus est; ĕgŏ vēro summā constantiā respondi. |

N.B. The Abl. *without an Adj. or Prep.* is used to denote *Instrument,* but not *Manner.*

182   Some exceptional Ablatives of Nouns are used (without Adjectives) adverbially, *e.g.* jūre, *rightly;* ordĭne, *in order;* spĕcĭē, *in appearance;* rē or rē ipsā, in *fact,* &c. They may be parsed as *Adverbial Ablatives.*

1. In Italia paulisper manserat, mox in Galliam contendit. 2. In eo loco a Samnitium imperatore Romani sub jugum missi sunt. 3. Sub oculis patris ipsius filii ambo interfecti sunt. 4. Sub oculos nobis [1] duae columbae venerunt. 5. Equites sub jactu teli nondum erant; pedites jam sub ictum venerant. 6. Super navem turrem exstruxeramus. 7. Super hac re cupieram vobiscum deliberare. 8. Vulnus super vulnus centurio fortissimus acceperat. 9. Judaea, provincia turbulenta, sub Pontio Pilato tum erat. 10. In ore omnium Persarum tunc erat Alexandri humanitas. 11. Nioba dicitur a Sophocle, poeta Atheniensi, in saxum ab Apolline mutata esse. 12. Dux aliquid de stipendio equitum dempsit.

1. *The wisdom of Socrates was the talk* (trans. *was in the mouth*) *of all the Athenians.* 2. *There is no doubt that he will deliberate with you about this matter.* 3. *Why, O foolish man, did you send the Romans under the yoke, (since you were) soon about-to-pay the penalty of (your) deed by death?* 4. *If this comes under your notice* (trans. *eyes*), *do not neglect (it).* 5. *Above the wall let us erect a very high tower, that our men may not be under fire.* 6. *By-this-time two cohorts of our men had come under the fire of the enemy.* 7. *It is said that Daphne was changed* (trans. *Daphne is said to have been changed) into a laurel by Apollo.* 8. *How-long did you remain in Italy, and what do you say of (i.e. concerning) that country?* 9. *The Romans, who subtracted a part from his*

---

[1] Lit. *for us under eyes,* i.e. *under our eyes.* Why is nōbis Dat.? See Par. 7.

kingdom, presented to him, (in return) for this (part), a new
province. 10. *There is no doubt that the brave centurion Balbus*
received wound on wound.

183 **PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE ALONE.**

Ăd,	to.	Juxtă,	{ near, hard by, next to.
Adversŭs,	towards, against.		
Antĕ,	before.	Ŏb,	{ in front of (rare), on account of.
Ăpŭd,	{ at, near, among, in the house of, in the presence of, in the pages of.	Pĕnĕs,	in the hands of.
		Pĕr,	through.
		Post,	after.¹
		Praetĕr,	besides, beyond.
Circā, circum,	around.	Prŏpĕ,	near.
Circĭtĕr,	about.	Proptĕr,	{ close to, on account of.
Cis & cĭtrā,	on this side of.		
Contrā,	{ against, contrary to.	Sĕcundum,	{ following, in accordance with.
Ergā,	{ towards (only of the feelings).	Suprā,	above.
		Trans,	across.
Extrā,	outside of.	Ultrā,	{ on the farther side of.
Infrā,	below.		
Intĕr,	between, among.	Versŭs,	{ towards (in the direction of).²
Intrā,	inside of, within.		

184 The various meanings of the Prepositions (only a few of
which have been given above) must be learned by practice.
But some help may be gained by remembering that most
Prepositions can be used to denote some THOUGHT, such as
that of *cause, obstacle, superiority,* &c., besides denoting
relations of PLACE and TIME. Thus ŏb meant originally
(1) *in front of,* but it means more commonly (2) *on account
of*; pĕr means (1) *through,* of SPACE, but it also means (2)
throughout or *during,* of TIME, and (3) *through,* of MEANS, or
owing to, of CAUSE; antĕ means (1) *before,* of TIME, " *before*

---

¹ Pōnĕ, an old form of post, is used as an adverb by Virgil, but is rarely
used as a Preposition except by ante-classical and post-classical authors.
185 ² Versus usually follows the name of the place to which motion is
directed: *in the direction of Ambracia,* Ambrăciam versus. Sometimes ad
is inserted before the name of the place: ad Occănum versus. Versus
and adversus have old forms versum and adversum.

daybreak;" (2) *before*, of PLACE, "*before* the gates;" (3) *before*, of ESTIMATION, "He loved Balbus *before*, or *above*, the rest."

Exercise LX.

186   Ăd, *to* or *towards*, is used to denote *purpose*, with the Acc. of (1) the Gerund, or (2) if the Verb is used *transitively* in English, the Acc. of the *Gerundive Adjective*.

(1) *This will be useful to drink-*   Hoc ăd bĭbendum ŭtĭlĕ ĕrit.
    (ing).[1]

I am prepared to fight(ing).   Ăd pugnandum părātus sum.

(2) *This is useful for cultivating*   Hŏc est ăd agros cŏlendos
    the fields, i.e. *towards*   ŭtĭlĕ (*not* ăd agros cŏlendum).
    the fields being hereafter
    cultivated.

1. Postquam ad multam noctem pugnatum est, ad castra uterque exercitus revertit.[2] 2. Qui apud me manserant, ii apud judices rei facti sunt.[3] 3. Apud antiquos (sic apud Ciceronem scriptum est) mos erat ante lucem surgere, negotia ante voluptatem ponere. 4. Post paucos dies videbo te cum manibus tuis post tergum vinctis ad carcerem reductum. 5. Citra Alpes erat Gallia Cisalpina; ultra Alpes, Gallia Transalpina. 6. Phaethon, Phoebi filius, quum per aethera patris sui equos paulisper egisset, de curru dejectus est. 7. Ob oculos mihi mors est; hanc poenam superbiae meae jure do.[4] 8. Hoc contra jus fasque est, trans Euphratem exercitum tuum in pace trajicere.[5] 9. Interfecti sunt hostium supra viginti milia.[6] 10. Hoc est infra tuam dignitatem. 11. Tela haec ad eminus (*adv.*) feriendum sunt utilissima. 12. Vallis ad pugnandum nostro equitatui parum apta erat.[7]

---

187   [1] In Old English *to* was followed by a Gerund resembling the form
188   *drinking*, not by an Infinitive.
    [2] Trans "after the battle *had* gone on," and remember that postquam *with the Latin Perfect* (not Pluperfect) represents the English *had*.
    Also distinguish carefully between the Conjunction postquam, *when* or *after (that)*, and the Preposition post.
    [3] Look out reus.
    [4] Why is jūrĕ Abl.? See Par. 182.
    [5] "Trajicere . . . . exercitum" is in Apposition to hŏc.
    [6] Hostium is Gen. governed by milia. The Nom. to interfecti sunt is hostes *understood*, or some other Masc. Nom. implied from the context.
    [7] Equĭtātui is *Dat. of Advantage*, see Par. 7.

1. *Among the ancients it was the custom to rise before dawn and to dine in the evening* (30). 2. *Why have you led your army across the Euphrates?* 3. *In-the-pages-of Cicero we read many (things) (that are) truly, all (things) tastefully expressed* (i.e. *said*). 4. *When he had been accused in-the-presence-of the judges he was led to prison.* 5. *Bread is useful even for quenching thirst.* 6. *This water is not fit to drink.* 7. *Why do you do these things against the law of-man and of-God?* 8. *It is right to place business before pleasure.* 9. *Have not these things come under your notice* (i.e. *eyes*)? 10. *During* (per) *two nights, in this great* (i.e. *so-great*) *storm, death was before our eyes.*

EXERCISE LXI.

189   Intĕr se (expressing all reciprocal relations) means *among themselves; together; with, between,* or *from, one another.*

Cicero's children are very loving among one another.	Cĭcĕrōnis pŭĕri ămant **intĕr se.**
These things do not agree together, or *disagree from one another.*	Haec **intĕr sē** rĕpugnant, *or* contrāria sunt.

1. Imperatori, penes quem est imperium, jam adversus Gallos bellum moventi, debes parere. 2. Inter urbem et campum fossa erat, per quam quondam amnis fluxerat. 3. Tullius, quem praeter modum stultissimus quisque laudat (140) neminem praeter sese amat.[1] 4. "Qui per alium facit, facit per se." 5. Per tres annos vitam in insula quadam propter Siciliam egit. 6. Quaedam propter sese expetenda sunt. 7. Hoc inter sese disputant philosophi : sed inter disputationes et facta quantum (*adv.*) interest! 8. Centurio noster, qui hanc ob causam extra teli jactum suos retinebat, cum extra culpam esset (151 a), non punitus est. 9. Quando hanc tantam eius benevolentiam erga te agnosces ? 10. Nonne quaerendum est nobis quomodo hae sententiae inter sese contrariae sint ? 11. Via una praeter fluminis ripam erat; altera inter duos altissimos montes; tertia per silvam ad urbem ducebat.

1. *He who loves no one besides himself is himself loved by no one* (92). 2. *Virtue is to-be-sought on-account-of itself.*[2] 3. *How*

---

[1] Which is the Principal Verb? The Antecedent of **quem**? The subject of laudat ? See *Hints on Construing,* Appendix III., p, 216.
[2] *To-be-sought,* i.e. *meet-to-be-sought.*

*great a-difference-is (there) between hopes and deed·! 4. The
general took-care to keep his soldiers out of shot. 5. One
road (led) beside the walls of the city, the other (86) led
through a small wood, across a stream. 6. The judgment is in
your hands: When (156) will you judge? 7. Who do you
beyond measure praise the foolish (126) Tullius? 8. Labienus
will hasten in-the-direction of the Rhine. 9. When will you
send our cavalry against the enemy, who are now fighting
amongst one another? 10. I ask you, my friends, how virtue
and vice are contrary (161) to one another. 11. For this cause
we prepared an ambush in a wood, which was near (prope)
the town.*

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

190   FORMATION.—(1) The Present Tenses of Verbs com-
pounded of a Preposition and a Verb usually change a or
e of the Verb into i: thus, from făcĭo we have dēfĭcĭo
suffĭcĭo, (*i.e.* sub-fĭcĭo), confĭcĭo, (*i.e.* cum-fĭcĭo), &c., and
from lĕgo we have dēlĭgo, collĭgo, (*i.e.* con-lĭgo or cum-
lĭgo), &c.[1] But the perfects remain unchanged: dē-fēci,
suf-fēci, de-lēgi, collēgi, &c.[2]

191   (2) The Verb prōd-est, *it is profitable*, retains d before
all forms of sum beginning with a vowel, but drops it
before all beginning with a consonant.

Prōd-est;   prōd-ĕrat;   prōd-ĕrit;   prōd-esse.
Prō-sum;   prō-fuit;   prō-fuĕrat;   prō-fuĕrit.

192   CONSTRUCTION.—Verbs compounded with Prepositions
mostly either (1) take a Dative of the Indirect Object,
or, (2) they repeat the Preposition with the Case proper
to the Preposition.

(1) *He took a ring from me.*   Ānŭlum mĭhi dētraxit.

(2) *He took a ring from my   Ānŭlum dē dĭgĭto mĕo dē-
finger.*   traxit.

---

[1] But there are exceptions: *e g*. intellēgo (not intellĭgo) is the correct
form.
193   [2] Three compounds of -lēgo make the Perf. in -lexi, (1) dīlĭgo, *love*;
(2) neglēgo, *neglect*; (3) intellēgo, *understand*.

194 The Compounds of *sum*, e.g. ădest, ĭnest, intĕrest, &c., all : ike a Dative:

Help me, Jupiter !	Adĕs mĭhĭ, Juppĭter.

195 Note the following use of ăbest:

I am, or shall be, within a very little of falling, lit. *very little is absent by-which-not* (145a) *I fall.*	Mĭnĭmum ăbest, or ăbĕrit, quĭn cădam.
I was within a very little of falling.	Mĭnĭmum ăfuit (*not* abfuit) quĭn cădĕrem.

Exercise LXII.

1. Non prodest tibi flere. 2. Non dubium est quin tributum victis impositum sit (9a). 3. Nostri urbi murum circumdederunt. 4. Cur non ei gladium eripuisti? 5. Alexander ipse his proeliis interfuit. 6. Minimum afuit quin urbs ab hostibus caperetur. 7. Romani Armeniam stultissimo illi regi detrahent. 8. Interrogabo cur huic tam forti equiti equum detraxerit (9a). 9. Non dubium erat quin frumentum civibus deesset. 10. Hoc (*Nom.*), cum militibus nostris summum terrorem injecisset, imperator Tullium decimae legioni praefecit. 11. Ob hanc causam frumentum exercitui defuturum erat. 12. Tu, qui me isti hodie postponis, cras antepones. 13. Oro te ne tales condiciones victae genti imponas.

1. *There was no doubt that the enemy had surrounded their camp with a ditch* (i.e. *set-round the camp a ditch*). 2. *The camp was within a very little of being taken by the enemy.* 3. *I asked the leader how-much* (*of*) *tribute* (71) *he was about-to-impose-on the conquered city.* 4. *That old soldier has taken-part-in twenty-two battles.* 5. *You are within a little of committing a very-great wickedness.* 6. *Why did you snatch-from me the last hope I had* (trans. *the hope which I had last,* '*last*' to agree with '*which*')? 7. *These words of the general displeased the king : who withdrew from him a large part of the army.* 8. *I will ask him why he imposed-on us these hard* (trans. *these so hard*) *conditions.* 9. *By-this-time all hope was gone* (i.e. *was absent*) *from us.* 10. *Conquered* (pass. part. agrees with '*Balbus*') *by this great calamity, Balbus was within a very little of surrendering the city.*

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

196   There is no regular Perfect Participle *Active* in Latin, so
as to express the English *having killed*. Latin has therefore
to use the *Passive* Participle in the Ablative, thus:

The barbarians, the citizens having been killed (by them) set the city on fire i.e. *the barbarians, having killed the citizens, set the city on fire.*	Barbări, cīvĭbus interfectis, urbem incendērunt.

The Noun and Participle thus expressing *some circum-
stance in connection with the principal Verb,* are put in
the Ablative (which is the ordinary Case to express *manner*
and *circumstance,* as well as *instrument,* see Par. 181);
and this Ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute cannot always be rendered by
the English Active, *e.g.*

The citizens having been slain, the city was set on fire.	Cīvĭbus interfectis, urbs in- censa est.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. Caesar, Rheno trajecto, constituit in Galliam se recipere.[1]
2. Hostes, castris relictis, in suos fines subito se receperunt.
3. Brutus, filiis suis a se ipso interfectis, culpam non effugit.
4. Hieme barbari, missis legatis, pacem ab imperatore
petiverunt.   5. Imperator, direpto a barbaris templo,
statuit urbem eorum incendere.   6. His auditis nostri
clamorem tollunt, et trajecto amne impetum in hostem
faciunt.   7. Tarquinio ex urbe expulso, consules imperium
susceperunt. 8. Imperator, re feliciter gesta, tributum victae
genti imposuerat.   9. Exposito exercitu Caesar equitatum
ante se mittit.   10. Non dubium est quin, cognito hostium
adventu, terror ingens nostros invasurus sit.

---

[1] In this exercise the Ablative Absolute should be translated in two
ways, 1st, literally, *the Rhine having been crossed (by him),* and 2nd,
according to the English idiom, *having crossed the Rhine* or *when he had
crossed the Rhine.* In subsequent Exercises the second or true English
translation may suffice.

1. *The enemy having made a charge (i.e. a charge having been made by the enemy), our men for-a-short-time retreated.*
2. *Having disembarked (his) cavalry, Caesar gave-orders-to (his) foot-soldiers to leap down into the water, i.e. the cavalry having been disembarked, Caesar gave, &c.*
3. *There is no doubt that our leader, having ascertained the number of the enemy, will quickly retire.*
4. *Having carried on the war most-prosperously, the general was praised by all (his) country-men.*
5. *The city having been plundered, the citizens determined to declare war against the barbarians.*
6. *After slaying the three hundred hostages (i.e. the three hundred hostages having been slain) the barbarians had no hope of peace.*
7. *The general, having imposed this heavy tribute (trans. this so-great tribute having been imposed) on the conquered nation, restored to them the cities he had taken.[1]*
8. *Codrus, king (123) of the Athenians, having been slain, those who were besieging Athens retired in-haste* (181)

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE *(continued).*

197   The Ablative Absolute is also used (1) with Active Present Participles, and (2) with a few Nouns or Adjectives.

(1) *When the sun sets, lit. the sun setting, lions leave their caves.*

Sōle occĭdente, lĕōnes antra linquunt (p. 207).

(2) *While Tullius was king, lit. Tullius being king.*

Tullio rēge.

While I am alive, i.e. I being alive.

Mē vīvo (adj.).

In my judgment, i.e. while I am judge.

Mē jūdĭce.

198   N.B.— When the Noun with which the Participle agrees can be made the *Subject or Object* of a Verb, *the Ablative Absolute must not be used.* Thus, *While the general was leading on his men he was transfixed by an arrow*, must not be rendered "Impĕrātōre mīlĭtes dūcento (ĭs) săgittă transfixus est," but "Impĕrātor, mīlĭtes dūcens, săgittă transfixus est," or else "Impĕrātōrem, mīlĭtes dūcentem, săgittă transfixit."

198*a*   [1] Note that the Relative, when omitted in English, must be inserted in Latin: *the cities (which) he had taken.*

I

Dionysius having been banished, (he) taught boys.[1]	Diōnȳsius, ex urbe pulsus, puēros docebat (*not*, Diō-nȳsio pulso.)
Having at last found the boy, Tullius sent him back to his (the boy's) friends.	Puĕrum tandem reï ertum Tullius ad ămīcos eius rēmīsit (*not*, Puĕro rēperto . . T. eum remīsit.)

Exercise LXIV.

1 Hostes, me duce, facillime vincetis. 2. Trecentos obsidum, quos in armis cepimus, vinctos statim interfecimus. 3. Filia, matre nequiquam misericordiam implorante, jugulata est. 4. Mulier, nequiquam misericordiam implorans, coram rege jugulata est. 5. Tullius, reclamante optimo quoque civium, in exilium pulsus est. 6. Trajecto fluvio, Suevorum fines intrabimus ; a quibus, me judice, nobis acerrime resistetur (167). 7. Gaio haec dicente, omnes tacebant ; itaque Tullius, nullo reclamante, ab exilio revocatus est. 8. Caesare et Bibulo consulibus, hoc templum prope viam Latinam aedificatum est. 9. Non igitur dubium est quin Alpibus trajectis Hannibal in Italiam descensurus sit. 10. Itaque, his compertis, consentientibus civibus, magistratus omnia ad resistendum (186) paraverunt.

1. *By your own judgment (i.e. you yourself being judge) your brother has conducted this war unsuccessfully. 2. The barbarians, having immediately slain the hostages, determined to stir up a war against us. 3. The daughter was led before the king, while the mother in vain protested (i.e. the mother in vain protesting). 4. The general having been pierced with an arrow, the enemy determined to deliver him to us (198). 5. The bridge having been broken-down, we determined to withdraw from Germany into Gaul. 6. During-the-reign-of Tarquin, great buildings were erected in the city. 7. There is no doubt that our general, having ascertained the arrival of the enemy, will immediately retire. 8. The excellent Tullius (126) was recalled to his country, on the fourth day, no one (92) protesting (against it.)*

---

[1] The *he* is very often (though incorrectly) inserted even in modern English ; but it must be omitted in Latin.

Exercise LXIV.*

(*Recapitulatory.*)

In eo eramus ut vinceremur.   2. Curate ne ab hostibus
opprimamini.   3. Si urbem ipsi incenderitis, nemo vestrum
servabitur.   4. Murus et arx ab equitibus capta sunt.   5.
Et ego et tu ab optimo quoque civium laudati sumus.
6. Urbem captam Balbus, dux crudelissimus, incenderat.
7. Ne tu injustos, Tulli optime, laudaveris.   8. Quod scelus
commisit?   Quid morte dignum fecit?   9. Num tu, puer
jam duodecim annos (31), natus octo vel novem horas dormis?
10. Interrogastine num in oppido mulier mansura sit?
11. Balbum, plura fortasse dicturum, hastae equitum
transfixerunt.   12. Quid huic arbori, fructum jam praebi-
turae, tantum (*adv.*) nocuit?   13. Huius tantae calamitatis
vel in memoria nobis semper erit ingratissima.   14. Interro-
gate quando ventura sit (32)?   num in animo habeat biduum
in oppido manere?   15. De Tullio valde dubito num vitio
potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus sit.   16. Balbus, homo
parum (*adv.*) contentus, aliena laudat, sua semper culpat.
17. Cur tibi, nostri immemori, tot dona damus?   18. Ab
optimo quoque civium responsum est.   19. Nobis (192) pro
patria pugnantibus homo ignavissimus ob ignaviam suam
ipsam ultimam eripuit.   20. Minimum afuit quin urbi fossam
circumdaremus.   21. Non est dubium quin Balbus decimae
legioni praefectus fuerit.

DEPONENT VERBS.

199   A few Verbs (called Deponent) have a Past Participle
with Active meaning.   These Verbs, though having an
Active meaning, yet have a *Passive form* in all the Tenses
and in the Past Participle, as hortor, *I exhort*, hortābor, *I
will exhort*, hortātus, *having exhorted*.

200   Besides the Passive forms, every Deponent Verb has also
the Active forms of the *Participles, Supines, and Gerunds :*
hortans, hortaturus, *exhorting, about to exhort, &c.*

201   The Deponent Gerundive, *e.g.* hortandus, *meet to be
exhorted*, is used like the Gerundive of an ordinary Verb.[1]

---

[1] The Past Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are sometimes used
Passively, as, ădeptŭs, *having been obtained*, from ădĭpiscor.

DEPONENT

I. Hortŏr, hortātŭs sum, hortārī, *exhort*. like ămŏr.
II. Vĕrĕŏr, vĕrĭtŭs sum, vĕrērī, *fear*, like mŏneŏr.

		I.			II.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	*Present.*	Hort-ŏr,	{ I exhort, or am exhorting.	Vĕr-ĕŏr,	{ I fear, or am fearing.	
		Hort-ārĭs (ĕrĕ). &c.	} thou exhortest. &c.	Vĕr-ērĭs (ĕrĕ). &c.	} thou fearest. &c.	
	Future Simple.	Hort-ābŏr,	I shall exhort.	Vĕr-ēbŏr,	I shall fear.	
	Imperfect,	Hort-ābăr,	I was exhorting.	Vĕr-ēbăr,	I was fearing.	
	Perfect,	Hort-ātŭs sum.	{ I have exhorted, or I exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sum.	{ I have feared, or I feared.	
	Fut. Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs ĕro,	{ I shall have exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro,	{ I shall have feared.	
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ātŭs ĕram,	} I had exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram,	} I had feared.	
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	*Present.*	Hort-ĕr,	I may exhort.	Vĕr-ĕăr,	I may fear.	
	Imperfect.	Hort-ārĕr,	I might exhort.	Vĕr-ērĕr,	I might fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sim.	{ I may have exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sim,	{ I may have feared.	
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ātŭs essem	{ I should have exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs essem,	{ I should have feared,	
IMPERATIVE.	*Present.*	Hort-ārĕ,	Exhort thou.	Vĕr-ērĕ,	Fear thou.	
	Future.	Hort-ātŏr,	{ thou shalt, or must exhort.	Vĕr-ētŏr,	{ thou shalt, or must fear.	
INFINITIVE.	*Pres. & Imperf.*	Hort-ārī,	to exhort.	Vĕr-ērī,	to fear.	
	Perf. & Plup.	Hort-ātŭs essĕ,	} to have exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs essĕ,	} to have feared.	
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs essĕ,	} to be about to exhort.	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs essĕ,	} to be about to fear.	
PARTICIPLES.	*Present.*	Hort-ans,	exhorting.	Vĕr-ens,	fearing.	
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs,	about to exhort.	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs,	about to fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ātus,	having exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtŭs,	having feared.	
	Gerundive.	Hort-andŭs	{ meet to be exhorted.	Vĕr-endŭs,	meet to be feared.	
SUPINES.		Hort-ātum,	to exhort.	Vĕr-ĭtum,	to fear.	
		Hort-ātū.	to be exhorted.	Vĕr-ĭtū,	to be feared.	
GERUND.		Hort-andī, &c.	of exhorting. &c.	Vĕr-endī, &c.	of fearing. &c.	

VERBS.

III. Lŏquŏr, lŏcūtūs sum, lŏquī, *speak*, like rēgŏr.
IV. Partĭŏr, partītūs sum, partīrī, *divide*, like audĭŏ.

	III.		IV.		
Present.	Lŏqu-ŏr,	{ *I speak*, or am *speaking*.	Part-ĭŏr,	{ *I divide*, or am *dividing*.	
	Lŏqu-ĕrĭs (-rĕ), &c.	} *thou speakest*. &c.	Part-ĭrĭs (irĕ), &c.	} *thou dividest*. &c	
Fut. Simple.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I shall speak*.	Part-ĭăr,	*I shall divide*.	
Imperfect.	Lŏqu-ēbăr,	*I was speaking*.	Part-ĭēbăr,	*I was dividing*.	INDICATIVE Mood.
Perfect.	Lŏcūtūs sum,	{ *I have spoken*, or *I spoke*.	Part-ītūs sum,	{ *I have divided*, or *I divided*.	
Fut. Perfect.	Lŏcūtūs ĕro,	} *I shall have spoken*	Part-ītūs ĕro,	} *I shall have divided*.	
Pluperfect.	Lŏcūtūs ĕram,	} *I had spoken*.	Part-ītūs ĕram,	} *I had divided*.	
Present.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I may speak*.	Part-ĭăr,	*I may divide*.	
Imperfect.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕr,	*I might speak*.	Part-ĭrĕr,	*I might divide*.	SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.
Perfect.	Lŏcūtūs sim,	} *I may have spoken*.	Part-ītūs sim,	} *I may have divided*.	
Pluperfect.	Lŏcūtūs essem,	} *I should have spoken*.	Part ītūs essem,	} *I should have divided*.	
Present.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕ,	*speak thou*.	Part-ĭrĕ,	*Divide thou*.	IMPERA-TIVE.
Future.	Lŏqu-ĭtŏr,	{ *thou shalt*, or *must speak*.	Part-ĭtŏr,	{ *thou shalt*, or *must divide*.	
Pres. & Imp.	Lŏqu-ī,	*to speak*.	Part-ĭrī,	*to divide*.	INFINITIVE.
Perf. & Plup.	Lŏcūtūs esse,	} *to have spoken*.	Part-ītūs esse,	} *to have divided*.	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrūs essĕ,	} *to be about to speak*.	Part-ītūrūs essĕ,	} *to be about to divide*.	
Present.	Lŏqu-ens,	*speaking*.	Part-iens,	*dividing*.	PAR-TICIPLE.
Future.	Lŏcū-tū-rūs,	*about to speak*.	Part-ĭtūrūs,	*about to divide*.	
Perfect.	Lŏcū tūs,	*having spoken*.	Part-ītūs,	*having divided*.	
Gerundive.	Lŏqu-endūs	*meet to be spoken*	Part-iendūs,	*meet to be divided*	
SUPINES.	Lŏcu-tum,	*to speak*.	Part-ītum,	*to divide*.	
	Lŏcū-tū,	*to be spoken*.	Part-ītū,	*to be divided*.	
GERUND.	Lŏqu-endī, &c.	*of speaking*. &c.	Part-iendī, &c.	*of dividing*. &c.	

Exercise LXV.

202　　The Participle can be used (like the Adjective, Par. 34) to agree with *men* understood : **victis parcĕ**, *spare the conquered ;* **fŭgĭentes sĕquĕre**, *follow those-who-are fleeing.*[1]

1. Non dubium est quin regina filios suas hortata sit (9a). 2. Ne mentitus sis, mi fili. 3. Interrogabam puerum cur asini vocem imitaretur. 4. Pygmalion, diu imaginem contemplatus, tandem cum spirantem mirabatur. 5. Conatus parva, homo ignavissimus minora perficiebat. 6. Non dubium est quin miranda perfecturus sis, nisi tyranni exemplum imitaberis. 7. Hortandus est tibi frater ne pessimi istius amici exemplum imitetur.[2] 8. Deos veneramini, imitamini parentes. 9. Diu dolum meditatus tandem servis suis imperavit ut armati gladiis Tullium nocte sequerentur. 10. O divinam illam vitam voluptatem (202) aspernantium, sequentium virtutem ! [3]

1. *Virtue is to be followed for its own sake (i.e. on account of itself).* 2. *Having imitated the bad from (his) boyhood, the boy made himself very like (66) the bad.* 3. *The life of those-who-follow* (trans. *those-following*) *virtue is most happy.* 4. *Attempt great things, that you may at-least accomplish small things.* 5. *Having long contemplated the stars, the philosopher did not see the well at* (ad) *his feet.* 6. *Why, O ye traitors, do ye meditate plots? How-often shall I entreat you not to* (143) *lie-in-wait-for the consul?* 7. *In-vain do you venerate the gods, most deceitful of men, (while) meditating snares for the innocent* (7). 8. *Ah! the happy life of those-who-scorn wealth and do not* (18) *suffer poverty.*

203　　Rule.—Obliviscor, rĕmĭniscor, rĕcordor, mĭsĕreor, commonly govern the Genitive.[4]

204　　[1] Note that "iis victis" would mean "them, *since* they are conquered," and "eos fugientes," "them, *while, or since,* they are fleeing;" and generally a Latin Participle, *in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun*, may be rendered by an English Conjunction (154a).

205　　[2] When an ordinary and a Pronominal Adjective both agree with the same Noun the Pronominal Adjective generally comes between the ordinary Adjective and the Noun: *That distinguished man, clārissimus illĕ vir.*

206　　[3] The Accusative is commonly used with O in *exclamation* (not in *address*), and may be called the *Exclamatory Accusative.*

[4] These Verbs were once reflexive, *I forget-myself, remember-myself, pity-myself of,* &c. Compare the French "se plaindre," *to pity,* and in Old English, *I remember myself of.*

Distinguish between (1) mĭsĕror, -āri, *I shew-pity-to,* which governs an Acc., and (2) mĭsĕreor, -ēri, *I feel-pity-for,* which governs a Genitive.

207   Rule.—Fungor, fruor, ūtor, vescor, pŏtior, govern the Ablative.[1]

Exercise LXVI.

1. Non dubium est quin mulier oratione liberrima usa sit (9a).
2. Interrogabam barbaros num pane vescerentur, nonne ferarum pellibus pro vestitu uterentur.   3. Miserere Balbi, viri justissimi, quem nemo adhuc miseratus est.   4. Recordare uxoris tuae; ne liberorum oblitus sis, in te uno spem ponentium.   5. Vastandi sunt agri gentis illius crudelissimae quae nihil veneratur, nullius miseretur.   6. Regno potitus, promissorum statim oblitus est.   7. Qui magistratibus functi erant, eos, capta urbe summo honore affecimus.   8. Dum vita fruimini, nolite (169) virtutis oblivisci.   9. Sagacitate canum ad nostram utilitatem utimur.   10. Cur nullius ipse miseritus, nostra misericordia frui cupis?

1. *To remember past evils is sometimes pleasant.   2. There is no doubt that very-many enjoy the memory of past evils.   3. You should eat* (i.e. *it-is-to-be-eaten*) *that you may live ; you should not live that you may eat.   4. Let us use the opportunity which the enemy have afforded us.   5. If you do not* (i.e. *unless you shall*) *show pity to the conquered, beware lest you yourselves suffer the same fate* [trans. *same* (*things*).]   6. *Having suffered adversity, the woman will peculiarly* [i.e. *before* (ante) *others*] *enjoy prosperity.   7. I will ask whether he discharges his duty well or* (171) *ill.   8. Do not forget, (as) an old-man, those precepts which you learned (as) a boy.[2]*

Exercise LXVII.

1. Nisi res adversas experiemur patientiam non discemus.   2. Loquere pauca, multa disce.   3. Parentes et verendi et amandi sunt.   4. Plurima pollicentibus ne tu credideris.[3]   5. Forte leo et asinus et vulpes, partituri praedam, de partibus sortiebantur.[4]   6. Dux noster, cives captae urbis clementer allocutus, pavorem omnium minuit.   7. Nocte proficiscamur ne hostis nos videat.   8. Nonne scelus fatemini? Fatendum est, si poenam effugere cupitis.   9. Quid tibi videtur? Qui pro

---

[1] These Verbs were also once reflexive, *e.g.* fruor, *I enjoy myself with ;* vescor, *I feed myself with ;* ūtor, *I employ myself with.*
[2] *Old-man is in Apposition with you the Subject of forget.*
[3] Pollicentibus is *not* Abl.; see Par. 202.
[4] Vulpēs is feminine ; why therefore is partitūri masc.; See Par. 161.
N.B. Latin inserts et *between each pair of a list of Nouns or omits* et *between each ; English inserts it only before the last*
    The lion, the ass, and the fox.   Lĕo, (et) ăsĭnus, (et) vulpēs.

patria moritur nonne is laude dignus est?[1]   10. Cohorti jam ex urbe proficiscenti sex aquilae, omen optimum,[2] visae sunt (*appeared*).   11. Non dubium erat quin mulier fame et siti mortua esset.   12. Adepti libertatem, nonne contenti eritis nisi et (146) imperium adipiscemini ?

1. *Did not pain seem the greatest of evils* (73) *to the disciples of Epicurus?   2. Take care to obtain liberty.   3. Having confessed this, do you dare to remain in the city?   4. The general made every preparation* (i.e. *prepared all things*) *that he might set-out on the next day.   5. The woman was within a very little* (194) *of dying of* (Lat. Abl.) *hunger and thirst. 6. When-they-had-conversed* (154a) *together* (189) *they determined to set-out at night.   7. Do not draw-lots about the booty, O soldiers, since-you-are* (i.e. *being*) *about-to-obtain a greater booty by fighting.   8. Trust one-who-has-experienced* (202) (*it*) : *he-who promises much* (i.e. *many things*) *performs little* (i.e. *few things*).   9. I asked the rich Balbus when* (156) *he was going to enjoy* (i.e. *was about-to-enjoy*) *the riches which he had* (subjunctive) *obtained.   10. What prevented you from confessing the truth* (i.e. *true things*) ?

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

208   1. OBJECT-CLAUSES.—When a Principal Sentence, *e.g. he is mistaken*, becomes the Object of a Verb, *e.g. believe, declare, &c.*, there are two ways of expressing the change in English *but only one in Latin, viz., the Accusative and Infinitive* :

I declare (1) *that he is mistaken.*   Dīco ĕum errāre.
I declare (2) *him to be mistaken.*

Here errāre is " the Infinitive depending on dīco " ; and ĕum is " the Subject of the Infinitive errāre," (*i.e.* ĕum is so related to errāre that, *if* errāre were in the Indicative, ĕum, or rather ĭs, *would be* its Subject or Nominative).

209   2. SUBJECT-CLAUSES.—The same construction, viz., Accusative and Infinitive, is used in Subject-Clauses: *That-he-is-in-error, is certain,* (or, *It is certain that he is in error*),

---

[1] What is the antecedent (Par. 107) of qui ?

[2] The punctuation shews that ōmen is not Nom. after sunt : what Case is it then (123)?

Certum est ĕum errāre; *That I should go into exile pleased
them,* (or, *It pleased them that I should go into exile*),
Plăcŭit eis mē in exsĭlium īre.

210 THE TENSE IN SUBJECT AND OBJECT-CLAUSES.—After a
Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the Tense of the English
Indicative *e.g. is* (208, 1) is changed, but the Tense of the
English Infinitive *e.g. to be* (208, 2) *remains unchanged:*
and the Latin Infinitive also *remains unchanged: I declared*
(1) *that he* WAS *mistaken; I declared* (2) *him* TO BE
mistaken · dixi ĕum errāre.[1]

211

OBJECT-CLAUSE. *Tullius said that*	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE. *Tullius said,*	*Tullius dixit*
(1)	(1)	(1)
(*a*) *he conquered*	"*I conquer*"	sē vincĕre
(*b*) *he was conquering*	"*I am conquering*"	
(2)	(2)	(2)
{ *he conquered, had conquered, or, had been conquering*	"*I conquered*" "*I was conquering*" "*I had conquered*" "*I had been conquering*" "*I have conquered*"	sē vīcisse
(3)	(3)	(3)
he should conquer *he was about to conquer*	"*I shall conquer*" "*I am about to conquer*"	sē victūrum esse?

EXERCISE LXVII, A.

1. Tullia dicit se tibi haec pollicenti creditūram esse.[3] 2.
Clamaverunt obsides se meliore fato dignos esse. 3. Re-
sponderunt virgines nunquam se tantae virtutis oblitūras esse.
4. Negavit magister discipulos corpora satis exercuisse.
5. Placetne tibi tot cives uni tyranno parere? 6. Respondit
puer se nescire quot sorores haberet. 7. Fatendum est te
promisisse multa, pauca perficere. 8. Scribunt mihi se duos
menses in Italia mansisse, jam in Graeciam profectūros esse.

---

[1] Dixi ĕum errāvisse would have meant, *I declared him to have been,* or
that he had been, mistaken.

[2] In accordance with Par. 24, esse takes the same case after it as before
it; and therefore, since sē is the Accusative, victūram is also Accusative.

[3] Hitherto sē has been used only for *himself, themselves,* &c.: but in
Object-Clauses it must often be rendered by *he, they,* &c.

(Write out the Subject and Object-Clauses in the above
Exercise as Principal Sentences : 1. Ego tibi. . . credam.
2. Meliore fato digni sumus, &c. ; see 218a).

1. *It is certain that no dangers will terrify him.* 2. *He said that
he feared* (210) *these dangers.*[1] 3. *The boy writes that he had
always exercised (his) body.* 4. *My sister says that she will not
depart from the city.* 5. *Have you heard that the barbarians
set the city on fire?* 6. *Do not* (169) *say that you did this.*
7. *He said that he should bind the captives.* 8. *He did-not-
know that they had escaped in the night.*

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (PASSIVE).

212 As the Latin Passive has no Future Infinitive (except
the Supine īrī, (248)), the Latin employs a periphrasis :

Tullius said that he should be conquered.	Tullius dixit fŏre, *or* fŭtūrum esse, ut vincerētur, *i.e. that it would come to pass that he would be conquered.*	

213

OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	Tullius dixit
(1)	**(1)**	**(1)**
he was being conquered	" I am being conquered"	sē vinci
(2)	**(2)**	**(2)**
(a) (b) *he was conquered*	(a) "I am conquered"[3]	(a)(b) sē victum esse[2]
(c) (d) *he had been conquered*	(b) "I was conquered"	(c) (d) sē victum fuisse[2]
	(c) "I had been conquered"	
	(d) "I have been conquered"	
(3)	**(3)**	**(3)**
he should be conquered *he was about to be conquered*	"I shall be conquered" "I am about to be conquered"	fŏre, *or* fŭtūrum esse ut vincerētur

---

214 [1] Wherever *he*, *she*, &c., in a Subordinate Clause, stand for some Noun
or Pronoun which is the Nominative to the Principal Verb, they must be
rendered by sē.

215 [2] The esse or fŭisse is sometimes omitted (as also in the Active Inf.):
and care is then required to distinguish the Inf. from the Participle.

Some Compound Tenses are occasionally supplied in Latin by the phrase
" in eo sum ut" (Par. 166). *Tullius said that he was or had been* (on the point
of) *being conquered*, Tullius dixit se in eo esse, or fuisse, ut vincerētur.

216 [3] "I am *loved*" would imply that the action continued, and would be
rendered " sē āmāri ;" but " I am *conquered*" implies that the *action is*

N.B.—The Tense of the Latin Infinitive in the *third* column above, is the same as that of the English Verb in the *second* column, where it is used *as a Principal Verb.*

217 RULE.—The Latin Inf. in a Subject or Object-Clause is of *the same Tense as the English Verb would be, if it were made a Principal Verb in the words of the speaker.*

EXERCISE LXVIII.

218 RULE.—Use sē, suus, &c. (not ĕum, eius, &c.) when the Pronoun (in a Subordinate Clause, see page 328) stands for the Subject of the Principal Verb:

Tullius said that he (i.e. *Tullius*) *was mistaken.*	Tullius dixit sē errāre.
I said that he was mistaken.	Dixi ĕum errāre.

1. Quis nescit solem lunā majorem esse? 2. Dixit se in animo habere ad patriam reverti. 3. Dixit se in animo habuisse ex Italia proficisci; sed tempestatem obstitisse. 4. Mulieres clamaverunt nunquam se ad oppidum libenter reversuras esse. 5. Balbum certiorem fecimus nos ad Italiam venisse, ibi paulisper manere, inde ad Graeciam venturos (214). 6. Tullius clamavit quondam se sontem fuisse, nunc vero venia dignum esse. 7. Interrogavi num captivos vinxisset: respondit nondum se vinxisse, cras autem vincturum esse. 8. Certum erat urbem ab ipsis civibus incensam esse. 9. Compertum erat hostium (91) trecentos prope a castris nostris abesse. 10. Certum est nunquam fore ut urbs a te capiatur. 11. Negavere hostes futurum esse ut nobis urbem intrantibus resisteretur (167). 12. Respondimus legatos a nobis quoque ad hostem mitti.[1]

218ʟ *past,* and only the *result* is *present.* The pupil must carefully distinguish between *the two meanings of the ambiguous English Passive,* e.g. (1) " the house *is burned,* incensa est; " (2) " the house *is guarded,*" custōditur.

[1] The pupil (before proceeding to the English-Latin Exercise) should write out the Subject and Object Clauses in the Latin Exercise, as Principal Sentences, and in the words of the speakers. Thus, (1) sol lunā major est. (2) Ego in animo habeo, &c. (3) Ego in animo habui (*or* habueram) ex Italia, &c. (4) Nunquam nos revertemur, &c.

In the English-Latin Exercise, (before being turned into Latin) the Subject and Object Clauses may be similarly turned into Principal Sentences. (1) *Four hundred of the enemy are hastening,* &c. (2) *Some of the citizens say one thing, others another.* (3) *I had purposed to set out for Greece, but now I purpose,* &c. Then use the Rule in Par. 217.

1. *It had been ascertained that four hundred of the enemy were hastening to the city.* 2. *He answered that some (t6) of the citizens said one thing, others another.* 3. *He said that he had formerly purposed to set-out for (i.e. to) Greece, but (139a) that now he purposed to remain in Italy.* 4. *It is certain that the women will never remain in Greece.* 5. *Who does-not-know that Italy is larger than Sicily?* 6. *We did-not-know that the hostages had been immediately bound.* 7. *I informed his brother that we had the horse, and that we should sell it to-morrow.* 8. *It was ascertained by our spies that three thousand of the enemy had set-out from the camp by night.* 9. *They said that we (212) should be conquered by the Scythians.* 10. *Who does-not-know that Tarquin was sent into exile by Brutus?* 11. *I for-my-part (139) still hope; but Tullius says that the river will be crossed before the third day.* 12. *When will you confess that you (168) (164) alone (96) must pay the penalty of this folly?*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

219   1. Impersonal Verbs denoting *feeling* require the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause [1]:

Mĭsĕret				pity	
Pĭget				am vexed at	
Poenĭtet	} me tuae stultĭtiae.	I	{	repent of	} your folly.
Pŭdet				am ashamed of	
Taedet				am weary of	

220   2. Others require an Accusative of the Person, and an Infinitive, or Nominative, for the Subject:

| Dĕcet | } mē | { dīlĭgentia. | *Industry* | { | *becomes* or *misbecomes* | } *me.* |
| Dēdĕcet | | { hōc fīcĕre. | *To do this* | | | |

221   3. Others require a Dative of the Person and an Infinitive for the Subject.

| Lĭbet | } mĭhĭ hōc fīcĕre. | *It pleases me (suits my fancy)* | } *to do this.*[2] |
| Lĭcet | | *It is lawful for me* | |

---

[1] So in Old English, *it repents me of*, *it pitied him of*, &c.

221a   [2] Plăcet is used somewhat similarly with a subject-clause, "plăcŭit lēgātos mitti," *it pleased them*, i.e. *they resolved, that ambassadors should be sent*; but being personally used, it is not classed among Impersonal Verbs.

222   4. The verbs ŏportet, *it behoves*, and lĭquet, *it is clear*, take an Accusative and Infinitive as their Subject-Clause.[1]

It is clear that the man has been slain.	Lĭquet hŏmĭnem interfectum esse.

223   Note that ŏportet (or dēbeo, *I owe*) is never followed by the Perfect Infinitive.

You ought to come, lit., *it behoves you to come.*	Ŏportet tŭ (*or* dēbēs) vĕnīre.
You ought to have come, lit., *it behoved you to come.*	Ŏportuit tŭ (*or* dēbuisti) vĕnīre.

224   5. Several Verbs relating to the weather are used impersonally, as in English: plŭit, *it rains*, &c.

225   All the above Verbs (except those in Class 5) are of the 2nd conjugation: dĕcēre, dĕcēbit, dĕcēbat, dĕcuit, dĕcuĕrat, dĕcuisset, &c.

226   Besides the Perfects in -ŭit, there are also in use pertaesum est (for taedŭit); mĭsĕrĭtum est; pĭgĭtum est; pŭdĭtum est; lĭcĭtum est; lĭbĭtum est (which is found in Cicero perhaps to the exclusion of lĭbŭit).

Exercise LXIX.

1. Senem stultitiae suae poenitebit.[2]   2. Quando mulieres suspicionis suae pudebit?   3. Non dubium est quin pedites huius tam longi itineris taedeat.   4. Licebit hosti nocte ex urbe proficisci.   5. Oportuit te ei mulieri veniam dare.   6. Nonne licebat nobis isti praedam eripere?   7. Interrogavi latronem nonne se tot scelerum puderet, nonne latrociniorum jam pertaesum esset.   8. Nonne judicem dedecebat inepte loqui?   9. Aliquando te tuae tam ineptae jactationis poenitebit.[3]   10. De hac re libitum est mihi plura scribere.

---

227   [1] Ŏportet and lĭcet are also followed by the Subjunctive with ŭt omitted; ŏportet (ŭt) virtūtem ămes, *it is right that you should love virtue.* The insertion of the ŭt is post-classical, or rare.

227a   [2] As the *implied Subject* of the sentence is sĕnex, "the old man will repent," sŭus is here used and not eius, see Par. 218.

228   [3] Tam is often used between a pronominal and ordinary Adjective in the sense of *very*.

11. Interrogabo mulierem nonne se jam jactationis suae taed-
eat. 12. Liquebat hostes per dolum atque insidias pacem
petere. 13. Licet omnes (227) fremant; consilium meum
non muto.

1. *When will it-be-lawful for us to set-out from the city?* 2. *There
is no doubt that the citizens are-ashamed of their* (227a)
boasting. 3. *Ask, dear son, whether the women repented of their
suspicion.* 4. *Does it befit an orator to be-angry without cause?*
5. *You ought to know at-least these-things which it misbecomes
even* (141a) *a boy to-be-ignorant-of.* 6. *I asked the magistrate
whether it-was-lawful to bury the dead within the city.* 7. *It-
is-clear that his brothers were treacherously slain.* 8. *Let*
(227) *them murmur to one another* (189) *that I am guilty;
I-for-my-part* (139) *know that I am innocent.* 9. *When will
- you confess that you ought to* (223) *have led those two hundred
soldiers with you?* 10. *It was uncertain whether the woman
was weary of the journey or desired to return to her father.*
11. *Balbus declared that his slaves ought to have snatched the
booty from the robbers.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

229   1. **Possum, pŏtŭī, possĕ,**—*to be able; can.*[1]

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present.*		3. *Imperfect.*	
Pos-sum	Pos-sim	Pŏt-ĕram	Pos-sem
Pŏt-ĕs	Pos-sīs	Pŏt-ĕrās	Pos-sēs
Pŏt-est	Pos-sĭt	Pŏt-ĕrăt	Pos-sĕt
Pos-sŭmŭs	Pos-sīmŭs	Pŏt-ĕrāmŭs	Pos-sēmŭs
Pŏt-estīs	Pos-sītīs	Pŏt-ĕrātīs	Pos-sētīs
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pŏt-ĕrant	Pos-sent
2 *Future-Simple.*		4. *Perfect.*	
Pŏt-ĕro	(wanting.)	Pŏt-uī	Pŏt-ŭĕrim
Pŏt-ĕris		Pŏt-nistī	Pŏt-ŭĕrīs
Pŏt-ĕrĭt		Pŏt-uĭt	Pŏt-ŭĕrĭt
Pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs		Pŏt-uĭmŭs	Pŏt-ŭĕrimŭs
Pŏt-ĕritīs		Pŏt-nistīs	Pŏt-ŭĕritīs
Pŏt-ĕrunt		Pŏt-ŭĕrunt(ĕrĕ)	Pŏt-ŭĕrint

230   [1] Pos-sum is compounded of potis-sum, *I-am-able*, which passes into
pŏte-sum and thence to pos-sum. The Tenses may be obtained by
putting pot- before the differen. parts of the Verb sum and (1) striking
out f after t, *e.g.* pot-(f)ui; (2 changing t into s before s, *e.g.* pos-sum
(not pot-sum); (3) contracting pot-esse and pot-essem into pesse and
possem.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
5. Future-Perfect.		*6. Pluperfect.*	
Pŏt-uĕro	(wanting)	Pŏt-uĕram	Pŏt-uissem
Pŏt-uĕrĭs		Pŏt-uĕrās	Pŏt-uissēs
Pŏt-uĕrĭt		Pŏt-uĕrăt	Pŏt-uissĕt
Pŏt-uĕrimŭs		Pŏt-uĕrāmŭs	Pŏt-uissēmŭs
Pŏt-uĕritĭs		Pŏt-uĕrātĭs	Pŏt-uissētĭs
Pŏt-uĕrint		Pŏt-uĕrant	Pŏt-uissent

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—**Possĕ.** *Perf. and Plup.*—**Pŏtuissĕ.** *Future* —wanting. (Participle **pŏtens,** used only as Adjective, *powerful.*)

231   As possum has no Participle in -rus, it cannot form the Periphrastic Tense of the Subjunctive (Par. 155) used to represent the Future in an Indirect Sentence. Hence, in this and other Verbs which have not the Participle in -rus, a Periphrasis (see Par. 212) is used:

I will ask whether he will be able to help me. : · Interrŏgābo num **fūtūrum sit ut possit** mihī subvĕnīre, i.e. *whether it-will-come-to-pass that he may be able.*

EXERCISE LXX.

232   **Pŏtui** (and sometimes **pŏtĕram**) is sometimes followed, like **ŏportuit** above, by a Present Inf. where the English *could* requires the Perfect Infinitive:

You could have come.   Pŏtuisti (*or* pŏtĕras) vēnīre.

1. Veniam si potero; cura tu ut venire possis. 2. Poteras patri tuo parere, sed beneficiorum eius plerumque immemor eras. 3. Interrogavi nonne possent trecenti nostrorum, cum mille equitibus sociorum, duobus milibus hostium resistere. 4. Non possumus justius quam a te gubernari. 5. Nonne potuistis melius scribere?   Frater vester optime scribere poterat (*used to be able*). 6. Nihil honestius Epaminondae dari potuit quam mors clarissima. 7. Quis dubitat quin urbs

1

a nostris (34) expugnari potuerit?   8. Interrogavi agricolam nonne potuisset quolibet tempore fundum suum vendere.[1]   9. Valde dubito num futurum sit ut possis voluptatis illecebris resistere.   10. Miserum est olim potuisse, nunc non posse, amicis subvenire.

1. *There is no doubt that you can help me, O friends.   2. I asked our men whether they could resist three thousand of the enemy.[2]   3. Will you not be able to come, boys, if we ask you?   4. You could have written better, but you neglected the matter.   5. That you may be able to help others, acquire riches.   6. The enemy bridged the river that they might be able at any time (quilibet) to invade our territories.   7. Do you believe that you will be able to resist these great enticements?   8. Those who cannot be first, can generally be before (prior) the last.*

2. Vŏlo, vŏlŭī, vellĕ,—*I am willing, wish.*
3. Nōlo, nōlŭī, nollĕ,—*I am unwilling, do not wish.*[3]
4. Mālo, mālŭī, mallĕ,—*I prefer, would rather, had rather.*[3]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. *Present.*

Vŏlo	Nōlo	Mālo
Vīs	Nōn vīs	Māvīs
Vult	Nōn vult	Māvult
Vŏlŭmŭs	Nōlŭmŭs	Mālŭmŭs
Vultis	Nōn vultīs	Māvultīs
Vŏlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. *Future-Simple.*[4]

Vŏl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
Vŏl-ēs, &c.	Nōl-ēs, &c.	Māl-ēs, &c.

3. *Imperfect.*[4]

Vŏl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
Vŏl-ēbās, &c.	Nōl-ēbās, &c.	Māl-ēbās, &c.

232a   [1] Where *suus* cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

233   [2] For *can* may be substituted *am, is, are able*; and for *could, was,* or *were able*; and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of *possum* into which *can* should be translated.

234   [3] Nōlo is for nē-vŏlo, and mālo for ma- (*i.e.* māgis or māge) -vŏlo. The dropping of the v is illustrated by the forms sīs (for sī vīs, *if you please*) and (sultis for sī vultis).
   [4] These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of rĕgo.

4. *Perfect.*[1]

Võl-uī	Nōl-uī	Māl-uī
Vŏl-uistī, &c.	Nōl-uistī, &c.	Māl-uistī, &c.

5. *Fvture-Perfect.*[1]

Vŏl-uĕro	Nōl-uĕro	Māl-uĕro
Vŏl-uĕrĭs, &c.	Nōl-uĕrĭs, &c.	Māl-uĕrĭs, &c.

6. *Pluperfect.*[1]

Vŏl-uĕram	Nōl-uĕram	Māl-uĕrām
Vŏl-uĕrās, &c.	Nōl-uĕrās, &c.	Māl-uĕrās, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present.*

Vĕl-im	Nōl-im	Māl-im
Vĕl-īs	Nōl-īs	Māl-īs
Vĕl-ĭt	Nōl-ĭt	Māl-ĭt
Vĕl-īmŭs	Nōl-īmŭs	Māl-īmŭs
Vĕl-ītĭs	Nōl-ītĭs	Māl-ītĭs
Vĕl-int	Nōl-int	Māl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
Vel-lĕt	Nol-lĕt	Mal-lĕt
Vel-lēmŭs	Nol-lēmŭs	Mal-lēmŭs
Vel-lētĭs	Nol-lētĭs	Mal-lētĭs
Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*[1]

Vŏl-uĕrim	Nōl-uĕrim	Māl-uĕrim
Vŏl-uĕrĭs, &c.	Nōl-uĕrĭs, &c.	Māl-uĕrĭs, &c.

4. *Pluperfect.*[1]

Vŏl-uissem	Nōl-uissem	Māl-uissem
Vŏl-uissēs, &c.	Nōl-uissēs, &c.	Māl-uissēs, &c.

---

[1] These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of mŏnēo.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

(Wanting.)   Nŏl-ī.   (Wanting.)
                    Nŏl-īte.

Future.

Nŏl-īto.
Nŏl-īto.
Nŏl-ītōte.
Nŏl-unto.

INFINITIVE MOOD

Present.

Vel-lĕ.   Nol-lĕ.   Mal-lĕ.

Perfect.

Vŏl-uissĕ·   Nŏl-uissĕ.   Mǎl-uissĕ.

Present Participle.

Vŏl-ens.   Nŏl-ens.   (Wanting.)

Gerunds and Supines.

(Wanting.)   (Wanting.)   (Wanting.)

EXERCISE LXXI.

Mǎlo, (being a contraction of **mǎgis—vŏlo,** *I wish rather*), is naturally followed by quam *than,* coupling Infinitives or Nouns (62) in the same Case.

We had rather fight than yield.   Pugnāre quam cēdĕre mālŭmus.

1. Idem velle atque idem nolle—ea demum est vera amicitia.[1]
   2. Imperator cum nollet mihi obesse, interrogavit fratrem meum num vellem clam ex urbe excedere.   3. Non dubium est quin malis hic (*adv.*) manere ; sed excedendum tibi erit.
   4. Māne nunc, si vis ; sed si cras voles excedere, non tibi

---

[1] The Nom. to est is the sentence ĭdem ... nolle. Ĭdem (not īdem, Par. 103) is Acc. Neut. governed by velle. Instead of ea we ought strictly to have id, *i.e. that* (*thing*), Nom. in Apposition to the sentence ĭdem ... nolle. But id is "attracted" into the gender of ămīcĭtia.

licebit.   5. Quid vultis, ignavissimi? Semper fugere quam mori maluistis.   6. Hoc vel voluisse mox tibi inhonestum videbitur.[1]   7. Curate, judices, ut justa non solum dicatis sed etiam velitis.   8. Nolebam reum vinciri; sed, si praetor ita voluerit, vinciendus erit.   9. Nunc quidem puer non vult discere; sed non dubium est quin futurum sit ut mox discere malit quam ludere.[2]   10. Interrogavi (133) fratrem eius num ludere quam discere maluerit.   11. Quam turpe est fallere! Nolite mentiri, ne multa, quae non vultis, pati cogamini.   12. Roganti mihi ut cenaret mecum, respondit se nolle foris cenare.[3]   13. Nonne disciplinam quam fugam (62) mavis.

1. *What do you wish, citizens?   Do you prefer six hundred kings to* (quam) *one?   2. Why, O friend, would you not (i.e. were you unwilling to) obey the excellent Tullius?   3. There is no doubt that he was unwilling to resist the citizens.   4. When, if-not* (nisi) *now, will they be willing to take up (i.e., to prepare) arms that they may preserve the city?   5. I have no doubt, (my) friend, that you prefer death to* (quam) *slavery.   6. I asked them whether they wished to be slaves (i.e., to serve); but they* (illi autem) *replied that they preferred* (217) *to pay tribute rather than die.   7. To wish-for things-useful, is a great part of a happy life.   8. I asked his friends to help him; but they were unwilling to sustain an idle man.   9. Which* (85) *of you* (93) *two prefers to dine out of doors?   10. I am ashamed of having even* (141a) *wished-for this.*

Fĕro, tŭli, ferrĕ, lātum, *I bear, endure, bring.*

235   Fĕro, in the Present-derived Tenses, is conjugated like rĕgo, except that, after fer-:

   (1) e final is dropped, and also e before r.[4]
      fer-(e), Imperat.; fer-(e)res, Imperf. Subj.

   (2) i is dropped before s or t.

         fer-(i)s, fer-(i)t, Indic. Pres.

---

[1] The Subject of vĭdēbitur is a Clause. Hōc is Acc. governed by vŏluisse.

236   [2] Not lŭdĕrĕ mālĭt. The Latins do not like to have a prose sentence ending in ‾ ˘ ˘ ‾ ‾, because it is the regular end of a hexameter verse. They would prefer " rĕdīrĕ stătim vŏlēbant " to " stătim rĕdīrĕ vŏlēbant."

[3] Where is the Dat. naturally governed by respondit? Fŏris is an Adverb.

237   [4] The -e final is similarly dropped in the Imperative Sing. of dīco, dūco, and făcio: dīc, dūc, făc.

The Perfect-derived tenses are formed, in the Active, regularly from tŭli (root toll-o, *I bear*), and, in the Passive, from lātus (another form of the same root).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indic. Present. Fĕr-o, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-ĭmus, fĕr-tis, fĕr-unt.

Imperative Pres. Fer, fer-tĕ. *Fut.* Fer-to, fert-o, fer-tōtĕ, fĕr-unto.

Subjunct. Imperf. Fer-rem, fer-res, fer-ret, fer-rēmus, fer-rētis, fer-rent.

Infinitive Pres. Fer-re.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. Fĕr-am. *Imperf.* Fĕr-ēbam. *Perf.* Tŭli.

Fut. Perf. Tŭl-ero. *Pluperf.* Tŭl-eram.

Subjunctive Pres. Fĕr-am. *Perf.* Tŭl-ĕrim. *Pluperf.* Tŭl-issem.

Infinitive Perf. Tŭ-lisse. *Fut.* Lātūrŭs esse.

Participle Pres. Fĕrens. *Fut.* Lātūrus.

Supines. Lātum, lātu.

Gerund. Fĕrendi, &c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Pres. Fĕr-or, fer-ris, fer-tur, fĕr-ĭmur, fĕr-ĭmĭni, fĕr-untur.

Imperative Pres. [Fer-re],[1] fĕr-ĭmĭni. *Fut.* Fer-tor, fer-tor, fĕr-untor.

Subjunctive Imperf. Fer-rer, fer-rēris, fer-rētur, fer-rēmur, fer-rēmini, fer-rentur.

Infinitive Pres. Fer-ri.

---

[1] There is no instance of this form occurring in Latin literature.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. **Fĕr-ar.** *Imperf.* **Fĕr-ēbar.** *Perf.*
Lātus sum.

Fut. Perf. **Lātus ĕro.** *Pluperf.* **Lātus essem.**

Subjunctive Pres. **Fĕr-ar.** *Perf.* **Lātus sim.** *Pluperf.* **Lātus
essem.**

Infinitive Perf. **Lātus esse.** *Fut.* **Lātum īri.**

Participle Perf. **Lātus.**

Gerundive. **Fĕr-endus.**

238 The following compounds of **fero** are noteworthy for the
changes of the prefix:

> Af-fĕro (ad-fĕro) af-ferrĕ, at-tŭli, ad-lātum.
> Au-fĕro (ab-fĕro) au-ferrĕ, abs-tŭli, ab-lātum.
> Ef-fĕro (ex-fĕro) ef-ferrĕ, ex-tŭli, ē-lātum.
> In-fĕro (in-fĕro) in-ferrĕ, in-tŭli, il-lātum.
> Of-fĕro (ob-fĕro) ob-ferrĕ, ob-tŭli, ob-lātum.
> Rĕ-fero (rĕ-fĕro) rĕ-ferrĕ, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rĕ-tŭli} \\ \text{ret-tŭli} \end{array} \right\}$ rēlātum.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

239 The construction of the Indirect Question (Par. 136) is
used with Interrogative Pronouns and Conjunctions, not
only after Verbs of *asking*, but also after any Verbs that
take a question as their Subject or Object.   Thus the
Direct Question " Quĭd fēcisti ? " *What did you do ?* becomes:

It is uncertain
Tell me
I shall ascertáin $\Big\}$ *what you did.*
I know

Incertum est
Dīc mĭhĭ
Cognoscam
Cognōvi[1] $\Big\}$ quĭd fēcĕris.[2]

---

240   [1] **Cognōvi** and **nōvi**, (Perf.) mean *I have ascertained,* and hence *I know.*
240a   [2] Why **quĭd**, not **quŏd** ? Ans. *because it is the construction of the In-
direct Question.*   This constr. is used with **intĕrest** and **rĕfert** (329) ; *it
matters not what he said,* non rēfert quĭd dixĕrit.

After all these Verbs, there holds the law of the
SEQUENCE OF TENSES (Par. 136).

EXERCISE LXXII.

1. Respondete, milites fortissimi, quomodo laturi sitis hanc tan-
tam contumeliam hostium vel ad vallum vestrum equitan-
tium (154a). 2. Ferebamus convicia eius, feremus maledicta ;
laudem eius perferre omnino non poteramus.[1] 3. Nonne
reperire potes quis hanc rogationem ad populum tulerit ?[2]
4. Non dubium est quin Ariovisto, regi potentissimo, bellum
illaturi simus. 5. Nonne miles es ? Nonne vallum fers et
arma ? 6. Interrogavi nonne milites essent ? cur tandem
arma ferrent nisi ut hostibus resisterent.[3] 7. Comperistine
quot nostrorum in hoc tam (228) funesto proelio ceci-
derint ? 8. De provinciis ad Patres consules rettulerunt ;
de legatis nihil relatum est. 9. Cognoscam per nuntium
num legem a Graccho rogatam Patres aegre tulerint.
10. Cognoscere voluimus num hae tot tantaeque calami-
tates a fratre eius patientius perferrentur. 11. Quid obstat
quominus, occasione oblata, res ad senatum referatur ?
12. Spem mihi (192), quam unam habui, tu tua temeritate
abstulisti. 13. Tu qui totiens promisisti, (152a) nonne
jam perficies ?

1. *I have never been able to ascertain why the matter was referred
to the senate. 2. Tell (237) me, friend, why you took away
from (192) me the last hope (i.e. the hope which last) I had.
3. Do not tell them how-many insults you endured, nor how
many you are about to endure ; for they will not believe you.
4. The consuls had referred the subject of the prisoners (trans.
had referred concerning the prisoners) to the senate. 5. The
matter was referred to the senate : nevertheless you who (108)
referred (it), now deny that you referred (it). 6. Tell me, Tullius
(13), when (156) you will bring help to me. 7. I asked the
soldier why he bore arms except to (143a) fight against the
enemies of (his) country. 8. We could not (i.e. were-not-able
to) ascertain how-many captives our-men had taken. 9. You
who patiently endured so many great (i.e. so-many and so-
great) calamities, will you not (see sent. 13, above, and Par.*

[1] (a) Omnīno nōn means *altogether not*, i.e. *not at all, certainly not :*
(b) nōn omnīno means *not altogether, not quite.*
[2] Why quis, not qui ?
[3] Repeat interrogāvī before cūr; look out tandem.

152*a*) *endure this very* (228) *slight loss?* 10. *There is no doubt that the enemy will soon offer us an opportunity* (5*a*).

6. Ĕo, īvī, īrĕ, ĭtum—*I go.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. *Present.*		**4. *Perfect.***	
Ĕ-o	E-am	Ĭ-vī or I-ī	Ĭ-vĕrim or I-ĕrim
Ĭ-s	E-ās	Ĭ-vistī	&c. Ĭ-vĕrĭs &c.
Ĭ-t	E-ät	I-vīt	&c. Ĭ-vĕrĭt &c.
Ī-mŭs	E-āmŭs	Ĭ-vĭmŭs	&c. Ĭ-vĕrimŭs &c.
Ĭ-tis	E-ātĭs	Ĭ-vistĭs	&c. Ĭ-vĕritĭs &c.
E-unt	E-ant	Ĭ-vērunt	&c. Ĭ-vĕrint &c.
		or Ĭ-vērĕ	
2. *Future-Simple.*		**5. *Future-Perfect.***	
Ĭ-bo	Ĭ-tūrŭs sim	Ĭ-vĕro or Ĭ-ĕro (wanting)	
Ĭ-bĭs	Ĭ-tūrŭs sīs	Ĭ-vĕrĭs &c.	
Ĭ-bĭt	I-tūrŭs-sīt	Ĭ-vĕrĭt &c.	
Ĭ-bĭmŭs	I-tūrī sīmŭs	Ĭ-vĕrĭmŭs &c.	
Ĭ-bĭtĭs	Ĭ-tūrī sītĭs	Ĭ-vĕritĭs &c.	
Ĭ-bunt	Ĭ-tūrī sint	Ĭ-vĕrint &c.	
3. *Imperfect.*		**6. *Pluperfect.***	
Ĭ-bam	Ĭ-rem	Ĭ-vĕram *or* Ĭ-vissem, I-issem,	
Ĭ-bās	Ĭ-rēs	I-ĕram *or* I-ssem	
Ĭ-băt	Ĭ-rēt	Ĭ-vĕrās &c. Ĭ-vissēs &c.	
Ĭ-bāmŭs	Ĭ-rēmŭs	Ĭ-vĕrāt &c. Ĭ-vissēt &c.	
Ĭ-bātĭs	Ĭ-rētis	Ĭ-vĕrāmŭs &c. Ĭ-vissēmŭs &c.	
Ĭ-bant	Ĭ-rent	Ĭ-vĕrātĭs &c. Ĭ-vissētĭs &c.	
		Ĭ-vĕrant &c. Ĭ-vissent &c.	

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Ī	*Present.*	Ĭ-ens (*Gen.* ĕ-untĭs)
	Ī-tĕ	*Future.*	Ĭ-tūrŭs (ă, um)
Future.	Ī-to		
	Ī-to		GERUND.
	Ī-tōtĕ	*Gen.*	Ĕ-undi, &c.
	Ĕ-unto		
			SUPINE.
INFINITIVE.		Ĭ-tum	
Pres. and. Imp.	Ĭ-rĕ		
Perf. and Plup.	Ĭ-vissĕ, ĭ-issĕ,		
	or issē		
Future.	Ĭ-tūrus essĕ		

242 The Passive of ĕo is only used impersonally, *e.g.* ītur, *it is gone*, i.e. *they go* : see Par. 247.

243 1. The compounds of ĕo are conjugated in the same way, except that those which take an Accusative in the Active, have the full Passive Voice. Thus from in-ĕo and praeter-ĕo come the Pass. Participle ĭn-ĭtus and praetĕr-ĭtus, and the Gerundives, ĭn-ĕundus and praetĕr-ĕundus.

244 2. The compounds of ĕo generally omit v in the Perf. and Perfect-derived Tenses: rĕd-ii, trans-iĕrim, praeter-iĕram, &c.

245 3. The Dative is not governed by these compounds, except by sŭb-eo (rarely), and prae-eo.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. Cum jam mulieres liberique flumen auctum imbribus trans-iissent, curavit imperator ut senes transirent. 2. Peribit iste, nisi celeriter (125) redieris. 3. Cum ad ripam rediissem, alios transituros, alios jam transeuntes inveni. 4. Ibam forte ad forum cum subito Tullius me adiit. 5. I, decus nostrum, i pater patriae, ut mox triumphaturus redeas. 6. Praei jus-jurandum mihi, pontifex. 7. Pudet me abiisse ; redire statim volo. 8. Unus tantum (*adv.*) exiens ab hostibus captus est : ceteri, cum jam exeuntes fraudem intellexissent, subito redierunt. 9. Flumen quod heri transiistis, jam glacie plenum omnino (241) non transibitis. 10. Quid obstat quominus

redeas aditurus Apollinem? 11. Apollo aditus respondit mortem homini decimo die esse obeundam. 12. Praeterita (34) redire nequeunt.

1. *There is no doubt that he met death with (181) fortitude.*
2. *Having passed over the river (196) they began-to-wish (imperf.) immediately to return (redeo) (236).* 3. *If you begin the battle without cavalry, you will not be able to resist the greater forces of the enemy.* 4. *Alas! when, O citizens, will you return to the city whence you now go-forth exulting?* 5. *There is no doubt that we must return to the city with speed.* 6. *Returning to the city I met Balbus himself returning.* 7. *Tullius besought me to go to the city with him.* 8. *The river which you crossed in-the-morning cannot be crossed now, since-it-is-swollen (i.e., being-increased) by showers (236) (5a).* 9. *Are you ignorant that death must be met by all?* 10. *The battle having now begun (i.e., having-been begun) the general gave-orders-to the sixth legion to (145) charge the enemy.*

THE SUPINES.

246   1. The Supine in -u is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Ablative, and mostly after Adjectives signifying *good* or *evil*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *fitness* or *unfitness*, &c., as "ămārum gustātu," *bitter in the tasting*, i.e., *bitter to the taste.*

247   2. The Supine in -um is a Verbal Noun used only in the Accusative after Verbs of Motion without the Preposition ăd. It can take an object after it, which the Supine in -u cannot do:

He came to play.   Vēnit lūsum.
He went to see the city.   Ivit vīsum urbem.

248   3. Besides the form with fŏre mentioned in Par. 212, the Supine in -um is used after the Pres. Inf. Passive of eo, *I go*, to supply the missing Future Passive Infinitive:

He said that the city would be   Dixit īri captum urbem.[1]
taken.

---

[1] The words are arranged in this order to show the construction; but *in practice*, īri *follows the Supine.*

The literal rendering of this is, *He said that-there-was-a-going* (īri being used impersonally) *to take* (captum being the Supine after the Verb of Motion) *the city* (urbem being Accusative after captum). So:

He said that we should be sent to the prison.	Dixit nōs ǎd carcěrcm ductum īri. (*Parse* nōs).

Exercise LXXIV.

249   Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Accusative (without a Preposition) after Verbs of Motion; and so are the Nouns dŏmum and rūs.

1. Dictu difficile est uter horum peccaverit (9a).   2. Venimus Romam spectatum ludos.[1]   3 Audierat pater non datum iri uxorem filio suo.   4. Inde Delum navigant consulturi Apollinem ; qui respondit frustra se consuli, (32) urbem captum iri.   5. Nonne hoc nefas visu est ? Nonne etiam dictu turpissimum ?   6. Mittendi sunt Athenas legati pacem petituri. 7. Non dubium est quin qui urbem speculatum venerunt, re infecta redierint.   8. Diversas ob causas juvenes philosophum adierunt ; alii quidem jocatum venerunt, alii autem ad discendum parati.   9. I tu consultum Jovem, equidem Delpl.os ibo Apollinem consulturus.   10. Interrogate nautas utrum Carthaginem an ad Italiam navigent.

1. *The ambassadors who have been sent to seek-for peace have returned without-accomplishing anything.*   2. *The citizens sent the prophet in vain to Delos ; for Apollo predicted that the captives would be slain by the enemy.*   3. *We have come here (i.e. hither) to fight, not to talk.*   4. *I asked the physician whether the herb was bitter or* (171) *sweet to taste.*   5. *When will you return home, my son ?*   6. *The youth (monstrous to relate !) set-out-for the country from the city intending-to slay (trans. about-to slay) his own father.*   7. *Having set the city on fire, the general gave orders to his men to set-out-for Carthage* (196). 8. *I asked the young man to come to dine with (see 'with') me, but he answered that he must-go to Athens on that day.*

---

[1] What are the two pronunciations, and consequently the two meanings of "venimus"? Why is uxorem (in Sent. 3) Accusative (248)?

THE GERUND.

250   1. When an English Transitive Verbal, *e.g. writing*, is the Nominative to a Verb, or the Accusative governed by a Verb, it is expressed (Par. 128) by the Latin Infinitive:

Writing letters is easy.	Făcĭle est ĕpistŏlas scrībĕre.
I prefer writing letters.	Mălo ĕpistŏlas scrībĕre.

251   2. But when the Transitive Verbal is preceded by *of, for, to, towards, during, in, by*, &c., the former Object of the Verbal *writing* is now made the Object of the Preposition *of, for*, &c., and the Latin Gerundive *Adjective* scrībendus, *meet-to-be-written*, is used in agreement with its former Object:

The art of writing letters, i.e *of letters meet-to-be-written.*	Ars ĕpistŏlārum scrībend- ārum.
Let us pay attention to making a bridge, i.e. *to a bridge meet- to-be-made.*	Dēmus ŏpĕram ponti făcĭendo.
During the building of a city i.e. *during a city meet-to-be- built.*[1]	Intor urbem aedĭfĭcandam.
In making a bridge, i.e. *in a- bridge-meet-to-be-built.*	In ponte făcĭendo.
Choiceness of expression is in- creased by reading orators and poets.	Lŏquendi ĕlĕgantia augĕtur lĕgendis ōratōrĭbus et pŏëtis.[2]

252   3. If the Verbal (1) is Intransitively used, or (2) requires a Dative Case in Latin, the Latin Gerundive *Noun* is used, governing a Dative if necessary:

(1*a*) *The art of writing.*	Ars scrībendi.
(1*b*) *We are born for acting.*	Nāti sūmus ad ăgendum.
(2) *I am desirous of pleasing friends.*	Stŭdĭōsus sum plăcendi ămīcis.

---

[1] With the English Verbal, we may *generally* either insert or omit the *. . . of : in (the) building (of) a city*, but the Latin construction is the same in either case. The English *meet-to-be-built, made*, &c., is an inadequate rendering of the Latin Gerundive, which has no exact English equivalent.
[2] The use of the Gerundive Adjective to express the *Ablative of the Instrument*, is rare.

253   4. The impersonal Gerundive (163) may govern any case except the Accusative:

We must do our duty.	Fungendum est **offĭcio.**
We must obey the laws.	Pārendum est **lēgĭbus.**
We must not forget benefits.	Non est oblīviscendum **bĕnĕfĭciōrum.**

EXERCISE LXXV.

254   RULE.—To turn into Latin a Transitive English Verbal preceded by a Preposition, place the Object in the Case demanded by the English Preposition, and make the Gerundive agree with it.[1]

1. Barbari legatos causa petendae pacis miserunt.   2. Quid vultis, legati? Nonne ad pacem petendam parati estis? 3. Tunc quidem ab inimicis nostris ridebatur ; nunc nobis ridendum est.   4. Si vis scribere, si scribendi causa huc venis, cur non scribendo operam das? 5. Rogavit me ut venandi causa equos plures colligerem.   6. Traditum est Fabium Maximum rem Romanam cunctando restituisse.   7. Mors est omnibus (168) obeunda : nec nos flendo (170) morti moram afferemus.   8. Quis nescit mentem nutriri legendo, disputando acui?   9. Duc (237) nos citius, centurio ; utendum est occasione ab hoste nobis data.[2]   10. Vita et utenda est et fruenda.[2]

1. *They-live for the sake of eating ; in-eating they consume their lives.   2. Do (237) something, my son ; we are born to act (i.e. for acting), not to consume the fruits of the earth.   3. For the sake of discharging duty towards his friends, Tullius neglected his children.[2]   4. By punishing and by pardoning, not by forgetting, will you improve the bad.   5. (We) must obey (our) elders ; we must pity the poor.   6. The conspirators had conceived the hope (trans. had come into the hope) of slaying the consul.   7. He pays attention to writing verses.   8. Have you come to Athens to hear philosophers, or (171) for the sake of breeding dogs?   9. Even in (in) leading a cohort there is some art (i.e. something of art); either (157a) lead better, Marcus, or-else do not lead.*

---

255   [1] Of course in such sentences as *I will take-care-of the making of the bridge*, the " Case demanded by the English Preposition " is the Acc., because *take-care-of* is really a Transitive Verb, cūrāre.

256   [2] The Verbs **fungor, fruor, ūtor, vescor, pŏtior** (207) may be used either in the Impersonal or in the Personal Construction, *i.e.* either governing the Abl. or agreeing with a Noun.

THE IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE, &c.

257 (1) *He is persuaded.*   **Persuāsum est** (167) ei.[1]

(2) *(It) is certain that he is persuaded.*   Certum est ei **persuāsum esse.**

(3) *He says he is persuaded.*   Dīcit sĭbĭ persuāsum esse.

258 2. The Verb **fĭo**, *I am made, I become*, is used as the Passive of **făcio**. In its Present and Present-derived Tenses it is conjugated like the Active of audio, except that fĭr- is always written fĭĕr-; and the Infinitive is fĭĕri (not fĭrĕ nor fĭĕrĕ). The Perfect-derived Tenses are formed regularly from the Passive Participle **factus.**

259 3. Incomplete Transitive Verbs, *e.g. make, esteem, call,* &c. (which require, besides the Primary Object, a Complementary Noun or Adjective to complete the meaning) have the Complementary Object in the same case as the Primary Object.

We will make you leader   Te dŭcem făcĭĕmus.

260 4. In the Passive, these Verbs take the Complementary Subject in the same Case as the Subject.

Balbus was made leader   Balbus dux factus est.
He said that Balbus was made leader   Dixit Balbum dŭcem factum esse.

Exercise LXXVI.

1. Mulieres ob incolumitatem filiorum suorum gavisae sunt. 2. Histrio omnia fit: heri rex fiebat, cras fiet servus. 3. Quis nescit Palladis imaginem a Phidia factam esse ? 4. Quid obstabat quominus mercator fieres ? scio enim tibi in omnibus rebus a patre indultum esse. 5. Constat legibus obtemperatum esse, ab eis qui in leges jurati sunt. 6. Interrogavit cur nos, crudelitatem nostram jactare soliti, regem cenatum occidere noluissemus. 7. Scribit se philosophum fieri et ob hanc causam velle Athenas venire philosophos auditurum. 8. Constat paucos hostium resistere ausos esse (32), nemini

261 [1] **Persuādētur ei** would mean *it is being persuaded to him*, i.e. *he is being persuaded.*

a nobis parsum (214).   9. Breves esse cupientes, o poëtae,
obscuri fitis.   10. Admoneto socios vestros ne arma contra
patriam moveant.

1. *There was no doubt that the cruel Tullia had rejoiced on-account-
of the death of her own son.   2. You, who lately became a
praetor, will soon become a consul.   3. I know that you have
always been too-much indulged (257) by your father.   4. It is
certain that the laws are not always obeyed.   5. What pre-
vented you from becoming consul?   6. Having themselves
been accustomed to spare no one, the barbarians declared that
no one was spared.   7. Is it not well-known that Cincinnatus
from (ex) a ploughman was made a consul?   8. The scout
brought-word that a hundred of our men had been slain, (and)
two hundred had been spared.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

262   The Accusative expresses extent (*a*) of *space*, and (*b*) of
time; and therefore answers to the questions (1) *How far?
high? long? deep? broad?*   (2) *For*, or *during, how long a
time?* and (313) sometimes (3) *How long ago?*

(1) *The ditch is ten feet broad.*   Fossa dĕcem pĕdes est lāta.
(2) *He sleeps all the night.*   Tōtam noctem dormit.
(3) *He died two years ago.*   Ābhinc biennium ŏbiit.

263   ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.—Distinguish bè-
tween the Accusative of *extent of time* (*how long?*), and
(3) the Ablative (Par. 30) of the *point of time* or *season*
(*when?*)[1]

He cannot sleep in the night.   Nocte dormīre nōn pŏtest.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

1. Tiberius Caesar tredecim annos principatum obtinuit.   2. Quis
nescit Platonem octoginta unum annos vixisse, Socratem
anno septuagesimo veneno interfectum esse?   3. Decimo
die post captam urbem,[2] fossam decem pedes altam arci

263a   [1] The Ablative also answers to the question: *Within what time?   We
shall know everything in (the next) three days,* Omnia his tribus diēbus, *or*
hoc trīduo, comperta hăbēbimus: see Par. 30.

264   [2] Note this idiom *after the city taken,* i.e. *after the taking of the city;* so
ante urbem condĭtam, *before the foundation of the city.*

circumdedimus.   4. Pericles, cum quadraginta annos Atheni-
ensibus praefuisset, morbo correptus est.   5. Cum jam viginti
milia passuum iter fecissemus, nuntiant exploratores bidui
iter hostes abesse.   6. His auditis, imperator aggerem du-
centos pedes latum, triginta altum, exstruere statuit.   7. Non
erat dubium quin hostes castra tria tantum milia passuum
ab urbe posuissent.   8. Decima hora per exploratores com-
pertum est hostes habere in animo nocte castra oppugnare.
9. Tullius, senex impigerrimus, jam sex et sexaginta annos
natus, dicit se tribus his mensibus Athenas navigaturum, esse.
10. Quis non meminit Trojam, decem annos obsessam,
per Ulyssis dolos esse captam?   11. Tullius, poëta praecla-
rissimus, dictitabat nunquam se plus agere quam cum nihil
ageret.   12. Dicitur urbs abhinc centum annos floruisse.

1. *Do you not remember that Plato lived eighty-one years?*
2. *When we had advanced forty days' journey it was found*
that the enemy were distant twenty-four miles.   3. *I asked the*
workmen to build a wall thirty-five feet high.   4. *Having crossed*
the river we shall-have-to-journey for two-days through an un-
cultivated district.   5. *For three-days our men resisted three*
thousand of the enemy.   6. *When Balbus was sixty-three years*
old, he was struck by lightning and died (trans. *having been*
struck . . . . he died) *in the third month of (his) sixty-fourth*
year.   7. *Within the-next three hours we shall take the*
city which has resisted our army for three-years.   8. *Caesar*
writes that the territories of the Helvetii extend two hundred
and forty miles in (in with Acc.) length.

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

265   With the names of Towns and small Islands (and with
hŭm-i, *on the ground;* dŏm-i, *at home;* bell-i,[1] *in the wars;*
militiae, *in the wars;* rŭr-i, *in the country*), the question
Where? is answered by the old Locative Case, thus:

		Singular.	Plural.
First declension	. . .	Rŏm-ae	Athēn-īs
Second „	. . .	Cŏrinth-ī	Coriŏl-īs
Third „	. . .	Carthăgĭn-ĕ [2]	Cūr-ĭbus

265a   With the names of Towns and small Islands (and also
with dŏmo and rŭre) the question *Whence?* is always
answered by the Ablative.

266   [1] Militiae and belli are seldom used *except with* dŏmi.
267   [2] The older form Carthăgĭn-ī is only to be used where the Acc. is in
-im, as Neāpŏl-im, Neāpŏl-ī.   Rŏm-ae, is a contraction for Rŏm-āī.

268   RULE.—The Dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, especially with the Verbs **sum** and **do**.

He imputed it to me as a fault,   Id mĭhĭ **vĭtĭo** dĕdit, *or* vertit.
     lit., *gave for a fault.*
This will be (for) a proof to   Hōc ĕrit mĭhĭ **dŏcŭmento.**
me.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1. Num vitam rusticam crimini esse putas? 2. Pater meus litteris Epheso datis,[1] scribit se mihi libros hos dono daturum. 3. Hostemne oras ut te adjuvet? Num vis omnibus esse derisui? 4. Conjurati, Athenis capti, epistolam concremaverunt ne forte sociis suis, qui Corinthi tum erant, periculo foret. 5. Si domi manseris, ipse tibi dedecori eris; si ruri (id quod pater suadet) vitam ages, nunquam te facti poenitebit.[2] 6. Cur vitio mihi res domi militiaeque honestissime gestas dedisti? 7. Nobis, qui tum Romae vitam agebamus, Tullii crudelitas odio erat. 8. Eniti debes ut, non[3] solum tibi ipsi, sed amicis omnibus qui Carthagine nunc sunt, adjumento esse possis. 9. Dum forte Neapoli moror, audiebam pullos sacros in aquam conjectos esse, quam rem Romani omnes religioni habuerunt.[4] 10. Vobis qui Delphis vivitis, quique (*not from* quisque, 37) Apollinem veneramini, nonne turpissimum videtur Apollinis responsa simul quaestui simul derisui habere?[5] 11. Audistine Cannis infeliciter pugnatum esse? Occidimus; actum est de exercitu. 12. I Roma.

1. *There-is no doubt that, if you remain longer at Corinth, you will be a disgrace to your friends.* 2. *Let his life be an example to you, that you may know that life in-the-country is often happier than in the city.* 3. *I asked him not to impute to me as a fault the-fact-that* (quod, i.e., *because*) *I had departed from Carthage in-order-to live at Rome.* 4. *You will remain three months at Rome, your brother at Athens, we at Samos; soon we shall all go to Gaul, thence we shall sail to Rhodes.* 5. *When Socrates had been put-to-death at Athens—which (270) was a disgrace to the Athenians—his friend Glaucus betook himself to Cyprus; thence after two months he set out for Asia.* 6. *I like to live at Rome; that-fellow (likes to live) in Campania;*

---

269   [1] *i.e.* "dated *from* Ephesus," (not "*at* Ephesus," which would be Ĕphĕsi): see Par. 265a.

270   [2] Note this use of ĭd quŏd, *that which,* i.e. *as, your father recommends:* ĭd may be parsed as *Nom. in Apposition to the sentence* "rūri vitam ages."

271   [3] Not nē, because the nōn goes with sōlum.

272   [4] **Dum** is mostly used with the *Present,* though the Principal Verb is in the *Past:* "dum haec gĕruntur, hostes terga dăbant."

     [5] **Vōbīs** is Dat. governed by vĭdētur.

you, who are a laughing-stock to all the best-men (140), *are setting out from Athens that you may live at Capua.* 7. *That great man was not more-renowned in-war than in-the-arts-of peace* (trans. *at home*). 8. *There is no doubt that you remember* (memini, Appendix II., page 216) *when* (156) *the Romans were defeated by Hannibal at Cannae* (239).

THE ABLATIVE.

273 1. Since the Ablative denotes the *means* or *instrument*, it can express the *definite price*, by *means* of which anything is bought.

> *The fish was bought for a denarius, i.e. with a denarius.*　　Piscis **dēnārĭo** emptus est.

274 2. It can also express the *measure*, by *means* of which one thing *exceeds*, or *falls short of*, another.

> *The sun is (by) many times larger than the moon.*　　Sōl **multis partĭbus** mājor est quam lūna.[1]

275 3. It can express that, by *means* of which anything is *filled.*

> *The river is full of water, i.e. filled with water.*　　Amnis plēnus **ăquā** est.[2]

276 4. It can also express any *circumstance, in* which, or *with* which, something occurs; and hence it can express, (*a*) *manner*, or (*b*) *quality*.[3] But in such cases the Noun must have an Adj. agreeing with it.

> (*a*) MANNER, *He answered in haste.*　　Respondit **summā cĕlĕrĭtāte**, *or* cum cĕlĕrĭtāte.
>
> (*b*) QUALITY, *Tullius was a man of ability.*　　Tullius ingĕnio **haud parvo**, *or* **magno**, ĕrat.

277　[1] Hence "*much* better," "*little* better," should be rendered "**multo paulo, mĕlĭor**," not multum.

278　[2] But in the best writers **plēnus** more often takes the Genitive.

　[3] Under this head comes the Rule (Par. 28) that **dignus, indignus, frētus, contentus,** &c., take the Ablative; but the Ablative after these words requires no Adjective agreeing with it.

L

279   5. The Ablative is also used after Verbs and Adjectives implying *need, deprivation, emptiness, freedom from,* &c.

I am free from cares.	Văcŭus sum cūrĭs.
I have need of money.	Ŏpus est mĭhĭ argento.

280   RULE.—After Verbs of *promising* and *hoping,* the English Present Infinitive is expressed by the Latin Future Infinitive.

I promise to come, or that I will come.	Prōmitto, *or,* pollĭceor, mē ventūrum esse.
I hope to see her to-morrow.	Spēro mē crūs eam vīsūrum esse.

Exercise LXXIX.

1. Ne mille quidem talentis virtutem emere poteris.   2. Multo sanguine ea victoria nobis stetit.   3. Duabus unciis procerior eras quam frater tuus.   4. Fossae aqua plenae erant, urbs frumento abundabat; sed omnes armis egebamus.   5. Compertum est nostros ab hostibus commeatu interclusos esse.   6. Magno timore sum, sed spero mox fore ut puer convalescat.[1]   7. Centurioni, viro summa probitate, promittenti se venturum, nonne tu credes?   8. Omitte timorem, mi fili; nam, quo fortius ei resistes, eo facilius tibi cedet.[2]   9. Divitiis facile carebis; nemo facile virtute caret.   10. Opus est auxilio tuo; miliens promisisti te venturum esse; omissis jam excusationibus, fac venias (*see* 'facio').   11. Balbus (multo felicior quam frater) ante urbem captam mortem obierat.   12. Quod ne asse (*see* 'as') quidem emere volumus, id asse carum est.

1. *There is no need of excuses; promise to help us.*   2. *There is no doubt that that victory cost us much blood.*   3. *We (can) easily do-without flesh, but (sed) we need water.*   4. *Tullius, a man of approved excellence, had promised to come to see us.*   5. *Are you much taller than your brothers?*   6. *The more patiently he bore these insults, the more-steadily he was loved by the citizens.*   7. *I will ask the general whether he has cut off the enemy from supplies.*   8. *He answered in-anger* (276)

281   [1] Verbs ending in -sco commonly have the sense of *beginning* an action or state, and are called *Inceptives. Inceptives* rarely have a Fut. Part. in -rus, and consequently require, even in the Active, the use of the periphrasis fŏrē ut, like possum (Par. 231).

[2] Quo . . . . eo, lit. *by how much . . . . by so much,* i.e. *the more bravely . . . . the more easily.* Why is quo Abl.? See Par. 274.

that there was no need of an axe. 9. *He is a man of little ability, yet by his perseverance he conquered very many rivals.* 10. *What prevents us from carrying on the war much more successfully, Tullius being now* (jam) *our leader* (197) (5a)?

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used in the following constructions:

282 1. (a) *Descriptively*, and (b) to express *quality*, as in English.

(a) *A fleet of two hundred*   Classis **dŭcentārum nāvium.**
vessels.
(b) *He is a man of ability.*   Vir est **magni ingĕnii.**

In such instances, the Genitive Noun must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

283 2. To express (a) *estimation*, and (b) *indefinite price*.

(a) RULE.—**Magni, plūris, plūrĭmi, parvi, mĭnōris, mĭnĭmi, tanti, quanti,** and **nĭhĭli,** are used after Verbs of *estimation*, such as **pendo** (I *hang, weigh, value*), **făcĭo, aestĭmo.**

284 (b) RULE.—**Tanti, quanti, plūris, mĭnōris** (but **magno, parvo, plūrĭmo,** &c.) are used after Verbs of *selling* and *buying*.

(a) *I do not count you worth a*   Nōn **flocci** tē făcĭo.
straw.
(b) *At what price was the corn*   **Quanti** frūmentum emptum
bought? For a large sum.   est? **Magno.**[1]

285 3. To express *plenty* or *want* (but this is more often expressed by the Ablative).

The pupil must learn by practice what words generally take the Genitive and what the Ablative: for example, **indĭgeo** generally takes the Genitive, and **ĕgeo** the Ablative.

286 [1] The distinction between the Genitive and Ablative appears to be this: the Gen. is used when the price is stated *indefinitely* and regarded as a *quality*, the Abl. when it is stated *definitely* and regarded as the *instrument* whereby the purchase is effected.

287   4. After Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, such as
conscĭus, *conscious of*, nescĭus, *ignorant of*, insnētus,
unaccustomed to, &c.

> *He is ignorant of manners, but*   Mōrum impĕrītus est, jūris au-
> *very learned in the law.*   tem perītissĭmus.
>
> *He informed me of his plan, i.e.,*   Consĭlii sui mē certĭōrem
> *he made me more certain of*   fēcit.
> *his plan.*

288   5. After Present Participles and Adjectives that have
the force of Nouns, such as ăvĭdus, pŏtens, insŏlens,
cŭpĭdus, &c.

> *Patient (i.e. an endurer) of*   Pătiens frīgŏris.
> *cold.*
>
> *He was an extreme lover of his*   Patrīae ĕrat ămantissĭmus.
> *country.*

289   6. After a suppressed Noun, such as *nature, mark, duty,
lot, part*, &c.

> *It is (the mark) of a wise man*   Săpientis est nōn făcĭle per-
> *not to be easily disturbed.*   turbāri.
>
> *It is (the duty) of a young man*   Ădŭlescentis est mājōres nātu
> *to respect his elders.*   vĕrēri.
>
> *It is not (the luck) of every one to*   Nōn cuiusvīs est hŏc făcĕre.
> *do this.*

290   7. After a suppressed Noun, such as *charge, cause*, &c.,
with Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, convicting*, &c.

> *Having been accused (on the*   Balbus (crīmĭne) furti accŭ-
> *charge) of theft, Balbus was*   sātus, căpĭtis damnātus est.[1]
> *condemned to death.*

EXERCISE LXXX.

1. Non cuiusvis est summos honores assequi.   2. Haruspices aut
stultitiae aut vanitatis recte condemnamus.   3. Quanti prae-
dium emptum est?   Magno : sed equidem id parvi aestimo.

290a   [1] The Genitive is not habitually used to denote the *punishment*, but only
the *charge*. But it is used of the *punishment* in the phrases, " căpĭtis,
dupli, quadrupli, &c., (multā) condemnāre," *to condemn (in the fine) of
death, two-fold, four-fold*, &c.

4. Tardi ingenii est nihil nisi omnibus nota[1] perspicere.
5. Themistocles, providi animi vir, persuasit Atheniensibus ut classem centum navium compararent. 6. Majestatis accusati, alii in metalla, alii ad bestias, alii capitis damnati sunt.
7. Quaerebam mecum quare apud hanc gentem parum (*adv.*) vinum veritas haberet. 8. Rhodum aut aliquo (*adv.*) terrarum hinc migrandum est. 9. Omnium regionum, id temporis,[2] Gallia et frugum et metallorum fertilissima esse videbatur.
10. Stultorum est doctrinae cupidos contemnere. 11. Barbaros, insuetos laboris, disciplinae insolentes, rudes rei militaris, facile vicimus. 12. Tempori cedere a plerisque, sed non a Catone, sapientis est habitum.

1. *The Christians, having been accused of treason before* (apud) *the proconsul, were condemned to the mines.* 2. *Where* (292a) *in-the-world shall we find a-second-man so fond of learning, so patient of labour?* 3. *Balbus, a man of incredible perfidy, was found guilty of bribery.* 4. *I value the farm at-a-great-price; but it was sold for-a-small price.* 5. *I asked why the farm had been sold for more than* (quam) *the house.* 6. *It is not like a philosopher* (i.e. *the mark of a philosopher*) *to be disturbed by trifles.* 7. *It is not the lot of everybody to per vade those-who-listen* (202). 8. *His brother was acquitted of theft; but Balbus himself, a man free from all fault, was condemned to death.* 9. *It requires* (i.e. *it is the part of*) *a great leader to effect this task; for effecting* (186) *which, Tullius has too-little ability.* 10. *Whither in-the world are you migrating from Athens?*

SOME USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

291 I. The Subjunctive Mood is used in its proper Subjunctive use when it is *subjoined* to a Principal Verb, to express (132) *purpose* or *indirect question.* But it is also *subjoined* to express (1) *result*, and (2) *reason*: (for cum causal with Subjunctive, see Par. 151a).

292 [1] Nota is Neut. Pl. Acc., used as a Noun, governed by perspicis understood: *to perceive nothing unless* (*you perceive*) *things-known to all.* The phrase nil nisi is often used thus with the force of *except.*
[2] Here Id is the Accusative of Duration (202); but instead of tempus, there is the Partitive Genitive temporis.

292a The Partitive Gen. often follows (*a*) Neut. Pronouns, *e.g.* "quicquid, or si quid cibi habuimus," *whatever food*, or *all the food, we had*; and also (*b*) Adverbs, *e.g.* aliquo terrarum, lit. *some-whither of lands,* i.e. *to some place or other in the world;* ubi terrarum? *where in the world?*

(1) *The fighting was so brisk*   Tam ācrĭter pugnātum est ut
   that many were slain on   multi utrimque interficēr-
   both sides; among whom   entur; inter quos accĭdit
   it happened that the   ut dux ipse occidēret.
   leader himself fell.

(2) *The Athenians condemned*   Āthēnienses Sōcrātem cāpĭti
   Socrates to death because   damnāvērunt quod jüventū-
   he had (said they) cor-   tem corrūpisset.[1]
   rupted the youth.

293   II. Besides its uses in the above *subjoined* clauses, the
Subjunctive (or, as it is sometimes called, the Conjunctive
Mood) is also used independently, as follows:

(1) *Hortatively*, i.e. *exhorting*: ămēmus, *let us love*.[2]

(2) *Concessively*, i.e. *granting* for the sake of argument:

Grant that you expel nature, yet   Nātūram expellas; usquē tă-
she will continually return.   men rĕcurret.

(3) *Optatively*, i.e. *wishing*: pēreas! *may you perish!*

(4) *Conditionally*, i.e. expressing a statement made
subject to the fulfilment of a *condition*.

I should like to come (i.e. *if it*   Vĕlim vĕnīre,
could be allowed, &c.).

III. The Subjunctive is used (1) after si, *if*, to express a
condition, and also (2) to express a *consequence*.[3]

If he came, (then) he would   Si (1) vĕniat, (2) vincat.
conquer.

The *if-clause* is called the Protasis (see p. 238); the Con-
sequent, or *then-clause*, is called the Apodosis (see p. 233).

293a   [1] The Subjunctive implies that the reason influences the mind of
others, not the mind of the writer. Corrūperant would have implied
that the writer believed the charge: *because he had (as a fact) corrupted
the youth.*

[2] This usage is ordinarily placed under the Imperative.

293b   [3] Si with the Indic. Pres. or Perf. (less frequently Imperf. or Pluperf.)
is used in conditions *which are assumed to be true*, and is often equivalent to
when or *since*.

294 1. *N.B.*—After sī, nē, num, use quĭs for *any one*, quando *or at any time*, ("sī ălĭquis" would mean *if some one;* "sī ălĭquando," *if at some time*).

295 The Tenses of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences vary with the nature of the condition.

The *Past Tenses* of the Subjunctive are naturally employed to express conditions (1 *a*) *impossible* or (1 *b*) *regarded as impossible.*

The *Present* expresses (2 *a*) conditions *possible* or (2 *b*) though really impossible, *graphically regarded as possible.*

(1 *a*) *If I had received any-thing (which I have not done) I would have given it.*	Si quid accēpissem, dĕdissem (dărem *would mean 'I should now be giving'*).
(1 *b*) *Should I receive, or, if I received anything (which there is no reason for thinking like-ly) I would give it.*	Si quid accĭpĕrem, dărem.
(2 *a*) *Should I receive, or, if I received, anything (which is possible) I would give it.*	Si quid accĭpĭam, dem, i.e. *imagine me receiving some-thing.*
(2 *b*) *Imagine Plato come to life again; believe me, you would blush while saying this.*	Si rĕvīviscat Plăto; crēdĕ mĭhĭ, haec dīcens rŭbĕas, i.e. *I see you blushing.*

N.B.—*The Tense is the same* in the Protasis and Apodosis.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

296 RULE.—Ut. . . . non is *not* to be changed into nē when the Subjunctive expresses Consequence.

So rigorous was the charge that they could not resist.	Tantus ĕrat impĕtus ŭt rĕsistere nōn possent.

1. Bonorum exempla imitemur, malorum caveamus.[1] 2. Peream nĭsi haec vere dico. 3. Plures cecidissent ni nox proelio intervenisset. 4. Si semper optima videre et facere possemus, haud sane praeceptore nobis opus foret. 5. Si quis gladium a te insaniens poscat, nonne dare peccatum sit?

297 [1] Note that, where in English we say "*those of the bad,*" the Latin either (1) repeats the Noun, "mălōrum exempla," or (2), as above, leaves Noun to be understood; but in no case inserts ea.

6. Si vir bonus hanc vim habeat ut verbo inimicos interficer
possit, hac vi profecto (*adv.*) non utatur (295, 2 *b*).   7. A
si Marco Crasso dares hanc vim ut digitorum percussion·
divitissimum quemque interficeret (52), divitias ipse acci
peret, in foro (mihi credo) prae gaudio saltaret.   8. Cav·
ne quis tibi, epistola mea usus, ignaro noceat.   9. Nun·
quis tam amens est ut filiis suis invideat?   10. Tanta v
hostes in urbem irruperunt ut nostri, tanta multitudine
oppressi, in arcem se recipere non possent.

1. *By-chance it happened that a few of our-men had been slain by
the arrows of the enemy.*[1]   2. *If the excellent Tullius had
promised to* (280) *help a friend, he would have kept his word.*
3. *If any one asked* (295, 2a) *you whence you come, you
would reply that you come from Carthage.*   4. *It cannot be*
(fiĕri) *that a just man would wish to use an unjust power.*[1]
5. *If by some* (quīdam) *magic art, Balbus were able to assume
the form of any animal* (*he-pleased*), *he would choose a fish.
that he might* (131) *not be compelled to speak.*   6. *The
general was so greedy of fame as to envy* (i.e. *that he envied*)
even his own centurions.   7. *How are you-getting-on* (i.e. *what
are you doing,* quid ǎgis) *at Athens, my son?*   8. *Write to
me how you are getting-on at Corinth.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

298   Qui takes the Indicative (I.) when it is used for a De-
monstrative Pronoun with a Coordinate Conjunction such
as *and, but,* &c.[3]; but (II.) it takes the Subjunctive when
used for a Demonstrative with a Subordinate Conjunction
denoting (1) *purpose,* (2) *consequence,* (3) *cause,* &c.

I. *At length we reached the enemy; who* (i.e. *but they*) *immediately fled.*	Tandem ventum ĕrat ad hostes ; qui stătim terga dǎbant.
II. (1) *We sent ambassadors to* (Lat. *who should* i.e. *that they should*) *ask for peace.*	Mīsĭmus lēgātos qui (*i.e.* ut ěī) pācem pětěrent.
(2) *There were some that* (i.e. *such that they*) *blamed you.*	Ěrant qui (*i.e.* ǎlĭ qui tǎles ut) te culpārent.

299

299a

[1] See the use of accēdit in the first example in page 150, above.
The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of *happening, coming to pass,* &c.
sa if they implied a *result* consequent on something preceding.
   [3] Qui is sometimes used for the Demonstrative without a Conjunction,
e.g. in the idiom "tū, cuius ĕs săpientiae (282b), non errābis," *you (of such
wisdom are you, i.e. such is your wisdom) will not err.*

(3) *I congratulate you because you have such a son.* Grātŭlor tĭbĭ quī (*i.e.* quod tu) tālem fīlium hăbeās.

300 After the antecedent nēmo, or quĭs, you must not write quī nōn, nor quō (old form quī) nōn, but quīn (this appl to all Genders.)

(2 a) *Who is there (or, there is no one) that does not hate you?* Quĭs est (*or,* Nēmo est) quīn tē ōdĕrit?

There was no day but Tullius walked with me, lit. *on-which-not T. walked with me.* Dies ĕrat nullus quīn (*i.e.* quo nōn) Tullius mēcum ambŭlāret.

301 Vĕrĕor means *I am anxiously on the watch.* Hence, when it is translated *I fear,* the English requires (1) the insertion of a negative if the Latin omits it, and (2) the omission of a negative if the Latin inserts it.

(1) *I fear he will not come.* Vĕreor (*or* tĭmeo) ŭt vĕniat, lit. *I am anxiously watching that he may come.*

(2) *I feared he would come.* Vĕrĭtus sum (*or* tĭmui) nē vĕnĭret, lit. *I anxiously watched that he might not come.*

N.B.—After *fear,* translate the English Future by the Latin Subjunctive.

302 Nescĭo ăn. Before ăn, utrum is always implied, if not expressed. Hence in Direct Questions ăn is used to introduce an *alternative* to which the speaker is driven, "(Utrum hōc fătēris) ăn hōc nĕgās?" (*Whether do you confess this*) *Or must I suppose that you actually deny this?* Similarly, in Indirect Questions, nescĭo ăn introduces ăn *alternative and more probable supposition;* thus, "Nescĭo (utrum ventūrus sit) ăn nōn ventūrus sit," means, *I do not know (whether he will come), or whether, as is more probable, he will not come,* i.e., *I rather think he will not come.* Consequently, with nescĭo ăn (as with vĕrĕor) a negative must be inserted or omitted in Latin, in a manner exactly contrary to the English idiom.

I do not know whether he will come.	Nescio ăn **nōn** ventūrus sit, i.e. *I rather think he will not come.*
I do not know whether he will not come.	Nescio ăn ventūrus sit,[1] i.e. *I rather think he will come.*

Exercise LXXXII.

303   Rule.—With a Comparative Adverb, purpose is expressed by **quo**, *i.e.* **ut ĕo** (Par. 277):

*In order that he might swim Quo (i.e. **ut ĕo**) cĕlĕrius nāret.*
more quickly.

1. Mittamus legatos qui pacem petant. 2. Quotusquisque est qui tibi faveat! Sunt qui te oderint; nemo fere est quin tibi invideat. 3. Omnes laudabant victorem qui tot milia civium incolumes servasset, totiens hostem sub jugum misisset. 4. Quis est quin sibi consulat, alienis sua anteponat? 5. Dies fere nullus erat quin (*i.e.* quo non) rus tecum irem. 6. Fossam castris circumdedimus quo (*i.e.* ut eo) facilius hostibus resisteremus. 7. Vereor ne optimus quisque civium nos deserat. 8. Nescio an res mihi non bene successura sit; sed id agam ut tibi subveniam. 9. Nescio an mulieres venturae sint; sed, si aberunt, equidem tibi subveniam. 10. Pavor ceperat milites ne praeda sibi eriperetur. 11. Lege quădam cavebatur ne quis, ob causam orandam, pecuniam donumve (*see* -ve) acciperet. 12. Cave ne aeger neve hieme naviges. 13. Non tu is (*see Vocab.* 'is') es qui mentiaris.[2]

1. *They sent ambassadors to* (qui) *ask for peace.* 2. *I am not the man* (ĭs qui) *to use this opportunity.*[2] 3. *There was no one but wished to help him.* 4. *I feared that all the best of the citizens would set out for the country.* 5. *All praise you for* (298, 3) (qui) *having conquered so many thousands of the enemy.* 6. *Even if it were possible,*[3] *I should not wish to do this.* 7. *I fear that the enemy, having now crossed the river, will not make* (fĕrio) *peace.* 8. *There were some who answered that not even an assassin must be delivered-over against the laws.* 9. *How-few* (quŏtus-quisque *with sing.*) *are there*

---

[1] These differences between the English and Latin idioms are sometimes expressed in the lines:—

<div align="center">

With vĕreor and nescĭo

For English *yes*, put Latin *no.*

</div>

303a   [2] Note that, after "nōn ĕgo ĭs sum, tū ĭs ĕs, ĭs est, qui," the Relative agrees, *in Person*, with the Subject of the Verb *to be*, not with ĭs.

304   [3] *It is possible*, i.e. *it is able to be done*, "fĭeri pŏtest," not pŏtest alone, except in the phrases "ut pŏtest," "si pŏtest," and these mostly in colloquial Latin. The pupil should use pŏtest to mean *it is able*, not *it is possible*. See Vocab. "*even*."

who are unwilling to use an opportunity of obtaining wealth!
10. *There is no one in this city who will not prefer his-interests*
(i.e. *his-things,* 34) *to mine.*

Sĕ, ipsĕ, &c.

It has been said above (Par. 218, and see page 328) that
sē, suus, &c. (and not eum, eius) are used when they refer
(in a Subordinate Clause) to the Subject of the Principal
Verb.   But there are exceptions to this Rule.

305   I. Sometimes an apparently Subordinate Sentence (*e.g.*
one introduced by *because*) is really equivalent to a Co-
ordinate Sentence introduced by *for.*

Marcius returned safe because I had spared him.	Marcius salvus rĕdiit quod ei pĕpercĕram.[1]

This is really equivalent to the two Co-ordinate Sen-
tences, *Marcius returned safe : for I had spared him,* "Mar-
cius salvus rĕdiit ; nam ei pŭpercĕram :" and ei is therefore
used, because rĕdiit is regarded, not as a Principal, but as
a Co-ordinate Verb.

But if the *because-clause* be more closely connected with
what precedes, and if some notion of *thought he, said he,* be
introduced, so as to make the latter part appear, *not a
historical fact,* but rather dependent upon *what Marcius
thought, said, &c.*—then sĭbĭ must be used.

Marcius returned me thanks because (said he) I had spared him.	Marcius grātias ēgit mĭhĭ quod sĭbĭ pĕpercissem.[1]

306   II. Occasionally suus is used of different persons in the
same sentence.   In such cases the *sense* must determine
the translation.

The Veneti sent an ambassador to Caesar (commanding that) if he wished to receive back his own men, he should send their hostages back for them.	Vĕnĕti lēgātum ad Caesărem mīsērunt : "Si vellet sŭos rĕcĭpere, obsĭdes sĭbĭ rĕmitteret."[2]

---

[1] Note also that the Indicative pĕpercĕram is changed into the Sub-
junctive pĕpercissem (203a).

[2] The construction of rĕmitterĕt is explained more fully in the rules
on Exercise XCIII.: here, rĕmitterĕt may be parsed as Subjunctive after
impĕrāvērunt ut, which is *implied* in mīsĕrunt, *they sent (with orders that).*

307   III. Ambiguity in English is sometimes avoided by the distinction between *him* and *himself*: but in Latin both these pronouns are sometimes rendered by sē, so that the meaning of sē has to be determined by *the sense of the whole passage*:

The captive besought the conqueror to spare him.	Captīvus victōrem obsecrāvit ut sĭbĭ parcĕret.
The father commanded the son to restrain himself.	Păter fīlio impĕrāvit ut sē coercēret.

308   IV. Ambiguity is sometimes removed in Latin (1) by adding ipsĕ to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb, to which sē refers :

(1) *Nature impels a child to love itself.*	Nātūra mŏvet infantem ut se ipsĕ dīĭgat.

(2) by placing ipsĕ in antithesis with sē, using ipsĕ to refer to the Principal Subject and sē to refer to the Subordinate Subject :

Caesar asked (his soldiers) why they distrusted their own valour or his diligence.	Caesar quaesīvit (ex mīlĭtĭbus) cur de suā virtūte aut de ipsĭus dīĭgentĭa despērā-rent.

Exercise LXXXIII.

309   Rule.—Quisquam, and ullus, *any*, are used in negative and comparative sentences, and in interrogative sentences that expect the answer *No*.

Quisquam is used for the English *no one* and *nothing* when *and* precedes: *and no one* nĕc quisquam; *and nothing*, nĕc quidquam. Similarly, *and never*, neque unquam, &c.

310   Distinguish between quisquam and quisquĕ, *each one*; quisquīs, *whoever*; quīlĭbet and quīvīs, *any one you like*; quīdam, *a certain (person)*; ălĭquīs, *some one*.[1]

310a   [1] Quīdam means *a certain person (whom I could mention by name, if I desired)*, ălĭquīs *some one (who exists, but it matters not who precisely it is)*. Note that quisquīs is the only one of these words that has a Relative force.

1. Venator orabat comites ne se ante oculos suos perire sinerent.
2. Pertimuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in
gratiam rediret. 3. Quaesivit imperator cur milites sibi totiens
antea obtemperassent, jam obtemperare nollent. 4. Tum
vero rex circumstantes obsecrat ut suae quisque saluti con-
sulant, ipsum morientem neglegant.[1] 5. Quodam tempore
natus sum; aliquo tempore mihi moriendum erit. 6. Non
cuivis contingit optimo cuique suorum civium placere. 7.
Si quis in scena saltat, ei non quivis motus sed certus qui-
dam (motus) datur. 8. Inest etiam superbis falsa quaedam
modestiae species. 9. Interrogavi nonne major natu esset
quam quisquam ex fratribus suis. 10. Dixerit aliquis (some
one may be inclined to say) inutilem fuisse hanc victoriam:
sed eiusmodi dicta (quae cuilibet prompta sunt), flocci non
facio. 11. Neapoli profectura subito obiit (265a).

1. *I hope that the city will soon be captured, and that no one (i.e.
nor any one) of the enemy will escape.* 2. *They believed that
the boy had departed from them and returned to his (friends.)*
3. *The general besought the soldiers to trust in their own valour
and in his wisdom.* 4. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking)
who (240a) would (i.e. wished to) carry the letter, one[2] of my
brother's servants replied that he would do it.* 5. *Some-one
may say (see Sent. 10 above) that death is an eternal sleep:
but, even among (apud) the ancients, most of the philosophers
believed that there is something after death.* 6. *It is lawful to
the actor to utter not any words he-likes, but certain fixed
words.* 7. *Sometimes it is a kind-of virtue (see 'kind') even
to abstain from vice.* 8. *Can any one (294) deny that we
must beware lest any one of the spies should hear this?*

EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF THE NOUNS AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

311   Dea, -ae, f. *goddess*, makes Dat. Pl. deābus in classical
authors: and filiābus is found in inscriptions and legal
forms.

Bōs, c. *ox* or *cow*, Gen. bŏvis, has Dat. and Abl. Pl. bōbus
and būbus.

Vīs, f. sing. *force, violence*, has Gen. and Dat. Sing. want-
ing, and is declined Nom. vīs, Acc. vim, Abl. vī.

Vīres, f. pl. *strength* (Pl. of vīs, but not meaning *violence*),
is formed regularly, vīrĭum, vīrĭbus, vīres.

---

[1] What case is quisquĕ? See the word in the Vocabulary.
[2] Trans. *a certain one*; not ūnus, which would mean *one only*.

Jŭppĭtĕr makes Jŏvem, Jŏvis, Jŏvi, Jŏve.

Dŏmŭs is formed partly from the Second and partly from the Fourth Declension. The Gen. and Dat., Sing. and Pl., are of the Fourth, dŏmūs, dŏmui, domūum, dŏmĭbus, and also the Abl. Pl. dŏmĭbus; the rest are of the Second.[1]

Jūs-jūrandum, *oath* (which has no Plural), and rēs-publĭca, *state*, are not irregular, but simply words compounded of Nouns and Adjectives agreeing with them, Gen. jūris-jūrandi, rēïpublĭcæ, &c.

Exercise LXXXIV.

312   Rule.—Cēlo, dŏceo, and some other Verbs take two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive :

Mercury taught Cupid letters.   Mercūrius Cūpīdĭnem littĕras dŏcuit.

My son must be taught letters. Fīlĭus meus littĕras est dŏcendus.

313   Rule.—Antĕ, post (placed *Adverbially* between the Noun and Adj. of time), and sometimes (216) ăbhinc, *ago*, are used with the Abl. of *Measure* (274), to denote an interval before or after.

He died a very few days before.   Hŏmo perpaucis antĕ diēbus ŏbiit.

Many years afterwards, he returned home.   Multis post annis, dŏmŭm rēdiit.

They perished two years ago.   Abhinc biennio pĕriĕrunt.

1. Non dubium est quin solverit quod pro fratre spopondit.   2. Rogavi imperatorem utrum civitatem omnem an paucos procerum jure-jurando obstrinxisset.   3. Quibus domibus milites pepercerant eas cives ipsi incenderunt.   4. Quod frater tuus me non celavit, id cur tu occuluisti ?   5. Num, te jubente, consul secures sumpsit posuitque ?   6. Nolo exorsa (*see* exordior) vel potius fere detexta, postea, jam senex, retexere.   7. Tullius, primis annis, puer, equis bubusque

---

313a [1] The Gen. and Acc. Pl. dŏmōrum and dŏmūs are sometimes found. The forms are sometimes remembered by the lines:—

  Si dēclīnāre dŏmŭs vis
  Tolle (i.e. *take away*) -mĕ, -mŭ, -mī, et -mīs.

The form dŏmī, *at home*, is the Locative Case, see Par. 265.

alendis; mox juvenis, rei-publicae operam dedit.[1] 8. Si quid
mihi humanitus (*adv.*) accidisset, liberi mei defensore
caruissent (295, 1a). 9. Quotusquisque didicit quomodo vi-
vendum sit! 10. Filiorum eius alteri Tullia nupsit; alteri
soror eius, perpaucis post mensibus. 11. Fertur Venus [2]
filium suum Mercurio literas docendum tradidisse. 12. Homo
stultissimus filio, qui natu maximus est, grandem pecuniam
testamento (*abl. instr.*) legat; filiabus nihil legat.

1. *The worthless Balbus was-unwilling to support the parents who
had supported him from boyhood. 2. I asked the husbandman
when (i.e. at what time) he had sown (his) corn (pl.). 3. There
is no doubt that the soldiers distrusted the general. 4. I asked
Tullius why he was going-to-leave so-large a sum-of-money to
his three daughters. 5. Did you, a few days afterwards, pro-
mise your daughter (in-marriage) to that-fellow? 6. Do you,
who elected me consul, now hope, O citizens, to wrest the
consulate from-me (mihi) by violence (152a)? 7. At-first our
men were driven-back; (but) soon a-second-time advancing they
drove the enemy down-from the hill. 8. Why have you
pledged-yourself to pay so large a sum-of-money? 9. Be-
cause you are bankrupt, do not (ne) on that account make
false promises. 10. Are-you-ignorant of the way in which
(i.e. in-what-way) Brutus drove-out Tarquin?*

EXERCISE LXXXV.

314 1. The Distributive Numerals (for which see Par. 77)
are used, (1) where the same number applies to *each* of a
class: (2) where the Noun with which the Numeral agrees
is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form, *e.g.*
littĕrae, castra (so that the Noun implies a *group*, e.g.
littĕrae, *a group of alphabetical letters*); (3) in poetry.[3]

(1) *The men will be contented*　　Hŏmĭnes bīnis, aut certo ternis
　　with two or at all events three　　dēnāriis contenti ĕrunt.
　　denarii a-piece.

---

[1] Dat governs ĕquis as well as rei-publicae.

315 [2] Note the Latin idiom. *It is reported that Venus did*, &c., is never
to be rendered "fertur Vĕnĕrem fecisse," &c., but always *Venus is
reported to have done*, &c., "fertur Vĕnus fĕcisse," &c. A similar con-
struction is used with dĭcĭtur, see Par. 177.

316 [3] Because, in poetry, number is regarded not as a precise collection
of units, but as a *group*, a "brace," "dozen," "score," "hundred," &c.,
which may belong to any number of persons *a-piece*, so that a kind of
distribution is implied. Thus any hero may carry his "couple" of darts,
and any giant may have his "hundred hands"; and hence Virgil speaks
of "bina hastīlia," in the hand of Æneas, and "centēnae mănūs" be-
longing to a giant.

(2) *At that time I used to write*   Eo tempŏre singŭlis diēbus
one, two, three, four, sometimes   ūnas, bīnas, trīnas, quā-
five letters a day.   ternas, interdum etiam qui-
                   nas littĕras scribēbam.[1]

317   2. Cum ... tum, used like ĕt . . . ĕt, sometimes mean
not only, but also : see sentence 7 below.

        (*Look out* allĭcio, diffindo, ĭnūro, oblĭno.)

1. Quam messem senex severat filius eius messuit. 2. Hostes
fusos fugatosque tanta vi nostri collo depulerunt ut ne
equites quidem in arcem se recipere possent. 3. Vita eius
tot tantisque flagitiis oblita fuerat ut turpitudinis nŏtam
non sibi soli sed toti generi et nomini suo inussisset. 4.
Nonne apud Plinium, in Naturali Historia, legistis piscibus
non supra quaternas pinnas esse, quibusdam binas, aliquibus
nullas ?[2] 5. Hujus urbis portas aurum vestrum, non virtus,
diffidit.[3] 6. Inter occulta et sepulta non multum interest.
7. Allexerunt audientium animos, cum oratoris eloquentia,
tum jurisjurandi commemoratio, et hostium jam accedentium
minae. 8. Incertum est utrum militibus singulos an binos
denarios dederit, an denique alios pecunia alios promissis ad
seditionem impulerit. 9. Qui cum (*i.e. Now when he*) de-
cemvir legibus scribendis[4] delectus esset, statim intellexit
Licinius rem non jam neglegendam esse. 10. Tanta erat
hostium multitudo ut ne trina quidem castra eis sufficerent.

1. *To (his) two daughters, whom he loved to a remarkable-degree*
(unice), *he left ten thousand denarii a-piece. 2. (His) sons he
entirely neglected, except one, the youngest, to whom he left all-the-
money-that* (quantum pecuniae) *he had collected. 3. The soldiers
he allured, by promising to some six, to others seven, denarii a-
piece. 4. The daughter did not marry that (man) to whom her
father had promised-her-in-marriage. 5. Having drawn the
water, the girl returned to the well to draw (some) again.[5]
6. At the command of the emperor the consul laid-aside the
fasces, which he had assumed a very-few days before. 7. I*

---

  [1] Note that, with Pl. Nouns of Sing. meaning, the forms ūni, trīni
are used, instead of the ordinary distributives, singŭli, terni.
   [2] For a list of the distributive numerals, see Par. 77.
   [3] It was a proverb of Philip of Macedon that any city could be taken,
to the gates of which a mule laden with gold, *i.e.* a bribe, could make
its way.
   [4] This dative (for "ad leges scribendas") is rare, except in *official
appellations ;* and it is not to be imitated.
  [5] Remember that the Eng. Infinitive is never to be rendered by the
Latin Inf. unless it is the Subject or Object of a Verb: see Par. 217.

fear that something (301) amiss has befallen the excellent
Tullius. 8. My son, what you have sown, that you will reap.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

319 *He is too cruel to be loved by*   Crūdēlior est **quam qui** (or
    any one.   **ut**) a quoquam ămētur.
He is the same as he always   Īdem est **ac** (or **qui**) semper
   was.   fuit.

(*Look out* accumbo, cōgo, comprĕhendo, dēposco, nan-
ciscor, rĕgĕro, părio, excŭtio.)

1. Proserpina, ut flores aspexit, "Accedite," inquit, "comites."[1]
2. Crudelior erat rex quam ut cuiquam indulgeret vel ignos-
ceret. 3. Sperasne ceteros poenas dăturos, tibi uni indultum
iri?[2] 4. Centurioni milites increpanti vox haesit; nam me-
minerat et sibi uxorem liberosque domi manere.[3] 5. Praetor
eadem, quae antea, respondit, lege sanctum fuisse ne quis
mortuum intra urbem sepeliret. 6. Homo cum inter cenan-
dum obdormiisset, subito tanto strepitu stertuit ut qui una
(*adv.*) accubuerant omnes risum tollerent. 7. Mulier cum tres
liberos uno partu peperisset, solitum praemium a regina de
poposcit. 8. Exuta veste piscator se in undam mersit; mox
anulum nactus regerit. 9. Tum Balbus, quem facinorum
quae coactus commiserat jam poenituerat, rem omnem consuli
pandit. 10. Continuo, excusso sopore, pater latronem com-
prensurus exsiluit foras.

1. *When (she) had approached the meadow the flowers attracted*
the maiden's eyes. 2. (His) voice failed (desum) him when
he attempted (i.e. attempting) to ask the tyrant what he
wished to do. 3. Having shaken off sleep, our men leaped
out of their beds. 4. We went yesterday to Rome to see a
picture painted by the celebrated painter Tullius. 5. If he had
revealed the (295, 1a) matter of-his-own-accord he would have-
been-spared (167) by the conquerors. 6. It had been enacted
that no one should possess more than two hundred acres, but
the sons of Tullius possessed three hundred acres a-piece.
7. There is no doubt that you compelled the man to bind
himself by an oath. 8. Those who remained in Corinth were
all taken and slain. 9. When will you go from Rome (265a)?

320   [1] Inquit always comes after the first emphatic word of a speech, see
page 215. For **ŭt** with the Indicative, see the Latin Vocabulary.
   [2] Esse is omitted after dătūros, a very common omission (211).
   [3] Centŭrĭōni is *Dat. of Disadvantage;* sĭbĭ, *Dat. of Advantage;* for ĕt
see Par. 146.

Exercise LXXXVII.

321   The Historical Infinitive is used for the Indicative
(always in the Present, and more commonly Active than
Passive), when a writer is describing a number of actions
so confused together that the times and persons are not
easily defined; so that the *Infinitive*, i.e. the *Infinite* or
Indefinite form of the Verb is naturally preferred. The
consequent indefiniteness is somewhat similar to that
which arises from the omission of *sum*; and this Infinitive
is often found in a sentence in which *sum* is actually
omitted.

Horses and men, friends and   Ĕqui, vĭri, hostes, cīves per-
  foes were mingled together;   mixti; fors omnia rĕgĕre.
  all was chance, lit. *chance*
  ruled all things.

322   A Dative of *Purpose* (besides the Dat. of Possession or
Reception) is used after sum and do (268):

He gave me the book (to serve) for   Lĭbrum mĭhi dōno dĕdit.
  a gift.
This will be (for) a help to me.   Hōc ĕrit mĭhi adjūmento.

A similar Dat. is sometimes used after dūco, hăbĕo, &c.,
meaning *consider*:

This was considered (for) a   Hōc magnae contŭmēlĭae
  great insult.   hăbĭtum est.
        (*Look out* allĭcĭo, anquīro, excŏlo, torreo.)

1. Foeda inde colluvies; pars cedere, alii insequi; hi fugere, illi
     resistere ac propulsare; nihil consilio agi. 2. Campus,
     frumentis optime excultus, decem milia passuum in latitu-
     dinem, tria in longitudinem patebat. 3. Consenserant Patres;
     uni Catoni aliter visum est. 4. Virgines alias (88) alii flores
     allexere; huic rosae, illi violae curae[1] erant: una Proserpina
     liliis sinum replebat. 5. Fertur Ceres famem longam pa-
     pavere imprudens solvisse, quod, intratura senis domum,
     forte collegerat. 6. Nostri per apertas portas irruĕre; ibi
     clamorem tollere, caede atque incendio omnia miscere. 7. Cur
     non ante confessus es te peccavisse quam res ipsa anquisita
     est? 8. Credo fore ut mox judices timeas, quamquam nunc

---

[1] Cūrae is Dative; rŏsae and vĭŏlae Nominative.

quidem negas quidquam de te compertum esse. 9. Quid? Errorem tuum, nisi tibi ipsi nocuerit, nonne vis corrigere? 10. Ulmos vitibus amictas quis non rubetis (*not from* rŭbeo), sole tostis anteponit?

1. *The false witnesses had not deceived* (fallo) *the judge, who favoured neither of us.* 2. *The fields, scorched by the sun, have not produced (their) usual fruits.* 3. *The maiden whom your brother has demanded in* (in *with acc.*) *marriage, her father has not promised-in-marriage.* 4. *The two armies, which consisted of four legions (each), filled the whole (of the) valley.* 5. *There is no doubt that he collected a great sum-of-money.* 6. *When he had plunged into the sea, he saw nothing but stones.* 7. *When all had agreed, Balbus alone resisted the proposal* (i.e. *plan*). 8. *She did not confess her fault until* (ante . . . quam) *the king bound her by an oath.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

323 (1) **Quamquam,** *although*, mostly takes the Indicative; (2) **quamvīs,** *however much*, always the Subjunctive (in Prose). (3) But **quamvīs** is sometimes used as an Adverb: " ēlĭge quamvīs **multa,**" [1] *choose however many*, i.e. *as many as you please.*

(*Look out* pando, prōgigno, reor, sarcio, scindo.)

1. Scissa veste, crine passo, virgo ad caelum supplices manus protendebat. 2. Hic, quamvis male sevisset, sperabat se bene messurum esse. 3. Romani, quamquam hostem fuderant, tamen insequi fugientes nequibant. 4. Vestem sartam quidem, si necesse erit, patiar; turpem vero temaculis foedatam non patiar. 5. Legimus, apud Vergilium, Famam extremam prolem a Tellure progenitam. 6. Difficile est dictu cur hic tantus imperator tam imbellem gentem non facile perdomuerit. 7. His minis perterritus, saepsit se tyrannus militibus; tremere et exalbescere vel amicis adeuntibus; adeo (*adv.*) ut, ob metum tonsoris, se ipsum radere, coactus formidine, disceret. 8. Hanc occasionem delendae urbis minimo spernendam esse ratus, Balbus regem ad necandos fame captivos

---

323a   [1] Quamvīs is used once with the Indicative by Cicero, but this use is not to be imitated. Quamquam is used with the Subjunctive (1) in general statements, mostly in the Second Person (called the *Gnomic Subjunctive*), "*Although you may forgive a man, it is difficult to improve him,*" " Quamquam ignoscas, diffĭcile est ēmendāre," (2) in statements expressing, not *fact*, but the *thought* of the writer.

impulit, jure-jurando se obstringens ita demum rem-publicam
salvam fore.¹ 9. Itane mentieris? Nec nosti (*see* nosco),
prout seres, ita te messurum esse? 10. Jure falluntur ei qui
divitiis, non virtute, homines metiuntur.

1. *It is one-thing* (34) *to dine, another-thing to stuff one's stomach
with food. 2. Did you envy that-vile* (iste) *tyrant, hedged-round
with soldiers, who measured dangers by his own fear? 3. There
is no doubt that, as-boys, we learned many-things which as-old
men we shall forget. 4. Having routed the enemy, why did you
not pursue the itives* (i.e. *those fleeing*)? *5. Thinking that
this opportunity was not to be neglected, the general ordered his-
soldiers to charge. 6. After you had bound yourself by an
oath to spare us, did you then impel the king to* (ad) *slay us?
7. The disciples of Epicurus, measuring* (i.e. *having-measured*)
*all things by pleasure, were unable to estimate virtue at a suf-
ficiently high value* (285). *8. You who spurned her while-
-she-lived* (i.e. *living*), *will you spurn* (her) (*now-that-she-is-*)
about-to-die?

Exercise LXXXIX.

324   Jampridem and jamdūdum change the Latin Present
into the English Complete Present (Perfect with *have*), and
the Latin Imperfect into the English Pluperfect: "Jam-
dūdum opto, *or* optābam," *I have been,* or *had been,* long
desiring.

(*Look out* dīgĕro, expergiscor, lăbor, quĕror.)

1. Ceres, diu secum questa, tandem his verbis Tonantem allocuta
est. 2. Aut non erat paciscendum, aut, si pactus es, standum
est promissis. 3. Nec fefellit opinionem eventus; tanta enim
vi milites in castra irruperunt ut ducem ipsum in lecto non-
dum experrectum caperent. 4. Jampridem colonum ad-
monebam ut pirum fructu gravatam et jam lapsuram ful-
ciret. 5. Circa amnem, piscium (278) omnis generis plenum,
armenta pinguia pascebantur. 6. Quamvis multa dedecora
in se admisisset, non dubium erat quin semper promissis
stetisset. 7. Flores inter se dissimillimi, arte quadam in
serto digesti, quis nescit quantum oblectationis afferant?²
8. Num imperatorem incusas quod unius et alterius (*see*
'alter') salutem ob incolumitatem totius exercitus neglexerit?

---

325   ¹ Dēmum adds emphasis to the word before it, and is often equivalent
to *only:* tum dēmum, *only then, then and not till then.*
     ² Flōres is Nom. to afferant.

1. *Awake at-last, or sleep for ever (in aeternum) slaves. 2. If you had not made-this-bargain, citizens, the city would not have been delivered-over by the enemy. 3. It is reported that (315) Paris fed sheep round Mount Ida (i.e. Ida the mountain).*[1] *4. Our men, shut (in) on-one-side by the enemy, on-the-other by a river and by mountains, were cut-off-from (their) supplies. 5. It is (the part) of an orator not-only (317) to arrange (his) facts, but-also to explain (them) clearly (when) arranged.*[2] *6. You have caused me as-much sorrow as (you caused) yourself joy. 7. When I asked (i.e. to me asking) why she had complained she replied that her daughter had been torn-away from (de) her embrace. 8. This great man, whom neither threats had terrified nor gifts had tamed, succumbed at-last to Fortune.*

<div align="center">EXERCISE XC.</div>

1. Apud antiquos cor (non cerebrum) visum est sapientiae esse sedes. 2. Nostri, cum ad collem confugissent, biduum ibi hostibus resistebant. 3. Nostris famem longam vix sustentantibus allatum est magnum gregem nuper ab hostibus in castra compulsum esse. 4. Fasces illos severos et secures sanguineas nemo plebis non formidabat. 5. Post tertium mensem, quum in eam vallem descendissemus quam nuntius indicaverat, nihil repperimus nisi tabescentia cadavera eorum quos pestis absumpserat. 6. Hoc sermone perterriti, suam quisque (165) domum conjurati dilapsi sunt. 7. Nescisne Taurum montem, inter Asiam et Syriam interjacentem, a Livio cardinem quendam appellatum esse? 8. Hunc panem ne furi quidem invidere possim. 9. Jure dictitabat Menenius plerosque, ventre (197) pleno, humaniores esse. 10. Hinc orta est inter senatorium et equestrem ordinem summa discordia; quorum alter Caesari, alter Pompeio favebat.

1. *Seest thou not, O Brutus, thine axes polluted and thy fasces dyed with the blood of thy sons? 2. Having broken the two hinges, the robbers tore-away the gate. 3. Contented with a little (exiguus) bread, this great philosopher demanded no more (i.e. did not demand more-things). 4. Your sheep were lying under a beech-tree, which (was) struck with lightning (and) fell. 5. By his pleasant discourse this witty poet delighted both old-men and young. 6. Near a very high hill was a narrow valley*

326
326a

[1] In Latin the name of the individual precedes the name of the class.
[2] Avoid the repetition of Pronouns in Latin: trans. *facts not only to arrange, but also, (when) arranged, to explain;* making (*facts*) the Obj. both of *arrange* and of *explain.*

watered by a small stream (amnis). 7. *(Fair)-shone the
ground* (hŭmus) *painted with many kinds of beautiful flowers.*
8. *I have been long hoping that the city will be taken in two
months.*

Exercise XCI.

327   **Quam**, *as far as*, is sometimes put briefly for "quam
pŏtŭit, pŏtĕris," &c.: *he prepared as sumptuous a dinner as
he could*, "cēnam quam (pŏtuit) ŏpīmăm părāvit." This
construction, with the Positive degree, is rare, and not to
be imitated: but *with the Superlative it is common*:

He hastened with as long marches as possible.	Quam (pŏtuit) maxĭmis ĭtĭnĕrĭbus contendit.
Take care to come as often as you can. (Lat. *shall be able.*)	Cūrā ŭt quam (pŏtĕris) saepissĭmē vĕnias.

1. O sortem (206) infelicissimam! Quibus pelagus pepercerat,
eos fere in portu perire![1] 2. Specum quendam, in ipso
montis vertice, pumice exeso structum, anus haec incolere
ferebatur. 3. Hic inter frutices viridissimos amnis parvus
de gelido fonte defluens quam gratissimos latices nobis
suppeditabat. 4. Tales sonos si quis e lyra elicere velit,
Phoebeo pollice opus sit. 5. Nondum venenatum calicem
reus exhauserat, cum accurrit nuntius clamans regem mor-
tuum esse. 6. Tuas messes, ut aiunt, ussisti; tua vineta
cecīdisti. 7. Aggerem illum altissimum decem diebus nostri
exstruxerant. 8. Balbone credis? Peribis hercle, nisi an-
guem illum in herba latentem quam celerrime extimueris.
9. Has urbes Philippus ille magni aestimabat tamquam com-
pedes ipsas Graeciae.[2] 10. Vergilius scribit Tartareaarum
portarum postes adamantinos ne a caelicolis quidem exscindi
posse.

1. *The open-sea* (pĕlăgus) *is not to-be-tried by us in this small ship.*
2. *Let us hope that the harvest will be as great as possible.*
3. *The general surrounded the town with a mound thirty feet
high.* 4. *We have four fingers and one thumb* (314).
5. *Did you see the snake which the eagle had carried off?*

---

328   [1] Trans. *to think that they should perish!* and parse as *Exclamatory
Infinitive.*
    [2] Compĕdes is Acc. governed by aestīmāret understood: "tam quam
(aestimaret)" *as much as* (*he would value*) *the fetters*, &c. The meaning
is that certain fortresses in Greece enabled their owner to keep the whole
country in subjection, as fetters enable a jailer to keep a prisoner.

6. *Horace says that* (nego) *he cannot free himself from the pleasing fetter of love.* 7. *There is no doubt that the goat injured that beautiful tree as much as possible with (his) destructive tooth.* 8. *Are you not ashamed* (see Vocab. 'ashamed'), *soldiers, of having yielded to enemies so few (in-numbers)?* 9. *As-long-as you are* (125) *in debt, you will never be able to be contented with your lot.*

EXERCISE XCII.

329   With **intĕrest** and **rēfert**, to express *it concerns you, me, himself* (not *him*), the forms **meā, tuā, nostrā, suā,** &c., are used.

These Verbs are qualified by the Adverbs **nihil, multum, tantum, quantum, quid,** and also by **magni, parvi, plūris, mĭnōris, tanti,** as well as by ordinary Adverbs such as **maxĭmē.**

What does it matter to me in   **Quĭd meā,** rēfert quā rătiōne
what manner you compel me?   mē (240) cōgātis?

Intĕrest, *it concerns,* is used with the Gen. of the person or thing concerned; (but **rēfert** is rarely thus used). Both are followed by the Acc. and Inf., or by **ŭt** (or **nē**) with the Subjunctive.

It concerns the State and us that   **Ĕt rei-publĭcae** ĕt **nostrā**
you should be well.   intĕrest tē vălēre.
It is important for you to come.   **Tuā** intĕrest ŭt vĕniās.

330   **Ŭtĭnam,** *would that!* or *O that!* is used to signify a wish, (1) with the Pres. Subjunctive for a *possible,* (2) the Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive for an *impossible* wish.

O that the past might return!   **Ŭtĭnam** praetĕrĭta rĕdīrent!
O that he might arrive to-day!   **Ŭtĭnam** hŏdiē advĕniat!

1. A recta conscientia ne transversum quidem unguem discesseris.[1] 2. Interrogavi colonum num domi sedens murmur maris exaudire posset. 3. Respondit fulmen ibi decem ante annis de caelo cecidisse.[2] 4. Non nostri moris est ebur et aurum ad Deum colendum adhibere.[3] 5. Quis tumidum guttur

---

[1] Why is **unguem** the Acc. (262)? **Nē** affects (129) the translation of discesseris.

[2] Parse **annis**: Par. 313.

[3] Parse **mōris**: Par. 289.

in Alpibus miratur? 6. Qui humana carne vescebantur apud
Graecos Anthropophagi nominati sunt. 7. Utinam ex hoc
fonte nunquam pestis in totam rempublicam defluat! 8.
Eligendum erat inter duo itinera, quorum alterum per montes
altissimos ducebat, alterum trans angustum pontem, quo
nuper amnem junxeramus. 9. Dicebat homo sponte sua se
venisse; sed frons ipsa testabatur eum adesse invitum.
10. Multum interest rei familiaris tuae te quam celerrime
venire. 11. Utinam fur pecuniâ multaretur, neve verbera
passus esset! 12. Minoris refert qualibus in aedibus vivas
(240), si modo Romae vivis. 13. Aere alieno quondam
oppressus, ne nunc quidem se omnino liberavit.

1. *The fellow had not-yet vomited-forth against me the venom of his
    envy.   2. He who had not feared even lashes and tortures,
    now hearing* (abl. abs.) *the words of the judge, trembled from-
    head to-foot* (toto corpore). *3. It is reported that the raven,
    whereas* (cum, *with* subjunct.) *he ought to have brought*
    (223) *a golden cup to Apollo, lied, feigning that a long snake
    had caused him delay.   4. The centurion, his eye having been
    struck out* (effodio), *was no longer fit for performing military
    service* (stipendia merēre, lit. *to earn pay*).   *5. They spoke
    with-every-appearance-of-truth* (trans. *with a most true fore-
    head*); *but, in my judgment, they were lying.   6. There is no
    doubt that from this source many evils flowed into our country.
    7. There was no doubt that he had been scourged before he
    was sent* (i.e. *had been sent*) *into exile* (145b). *8. O-that you
    would not depart even a hair's breadth from the precepts of
    your father!   9. He thought to himself* (i.e., *with himself*) *how
    important it was for Balbus that he himself should return home*
    (Acc. and Pres. Inf.).   10. *What does it matter whether these
    birds are fed or not?*

ELEMENTARY RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.

331   'Speech reported in the First Person ("*I* fear," said
Balbus, "*I am* mistaken") is called Oratio Recta, or, *Direct
Speech;* speech reported in the Third Person (Balbus said
that "*He* feared *he* was mistaken") is called Oratio Obliqua,
or *Indirect Speech.*

  In passing from English O. R. to O. O. almost the only
change is in the Personal Pronouns and Tenses, as above, *I*
into *he, am* into *was:*

Speech in First Person.	Speech in Third Person.
" I know," said Balbus, " that you will help me. What is lost can be regained. The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered. Take courage therefore. Why do you delay? Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? Do not desert me. Trust in your own right-hands and in my diligence."	*Balbus said that " He knew that they would help him. What had been lost could be regained. The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered. They should therefore take courage. Why did they delay? Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight? They should (or let them) not desert him. They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."* [1]

But in Latin there are changes in the Moods, besides other changes, as follows :

332   1. (*a*) *Principal Verbs in the Indicative* are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (*b*) Inquit is changed into dixit or some other Verb.

ORATIO RECTA.	ORATIO OBLIQUA.
" I know," said Balbus,	*Balbus said that " He knew"*
Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)	Balbus dixit "Sē scīre"

333   2. Ĕgo and nōs are changed into sē; vōs into eos.

| *that you will help me.* | *that they would help him.* |
| vos mĭhī adfutūros. | eos sĭbī adfutūros. |

334   3. *Indicatives after Relatives and after Non-co-ordinate Conjunctions*, are changed into Subjunctives.[2]

| *The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered.* | *The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered.* |
| Quae urbes captae sunt, antequam hūc vēnĭmus, rĕcŭpĕrārī possunt. | Quae urbes captae fŭissent, antĕquam illūc vēnissent, posse rĕcŭpĕrārī. |

34*a*   [1] Before the pupil writes Latin he should practise turning English speech of the First Person into speech of the Third Person.

[2] (1) Co-ordinate Conjunctions are sĕd, autem, tămen, et, -que, nam, enim, ĭtaque, Igĭtur, &c. (2) Non-co-ordinate or Subordinate Conj. are ŭt, quŏd, quĭa, cum, dōnĕc, antĕquam, postquam, sī, quamquam, &c.

When the Relative, *e.g.* quos, can be replaced by a Demonstrative and a Coordinate Conjunction, (et eos), it is *sometimes* followed by an Infinitive. But for the beginner this construction will not be necessary.

335   4. *Imperatives* are changed into Subjunctives.

Take courage therefore.	(*He begged that*) *They should therefore take courage.*
Ērĭgĭte ĭgĭtur ănĭmos.	Ērĭgĕrent ĭgĭtur ănĭmos.

336   5. Questions asked in the *Second Person* are rendered by the Subjunctive in the Third Person (*being really Indirect Questions*).

Why do you delay?	(*He asked*) *Why did they delay?*
Cūr mŏrāmĭni?	Cūr mŏrārentur?

337   6. Questions asked in the *First* and *Third Person* are rendered by the Accusative and Infinitive.

Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight?	*Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight?*
Nonne hostis prŏpĕ jam ăbest? Nonne ad pugnandum părāti sūmus?	Nonne hostem prŏpĕ jam ăbesse? Nonne sē ad pugnandum părātŏs esse?[1]

338   .7. (*a*) Sē, sĭbĭ, &c., are used for the Person speaking; (*b*) but where sē, suus, &c., are needed to express the Person addressed, ipse is used for the Person speaking.

(*a*) *Do not desert me.*	(*a*) *They should not desert him.*
Nōlĭte me dēsĕrĕre.	Nollent sē dēsĕrĕre.
(*b*) *Trust in your own right hands and in my diligence.*"	(*b*) *They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence.*"
Spem in vestris dextris et in mea dīlĭgentiā pōnĭte."	Spem in suis dextris et in ipsĭus dīlĭgentiā pōnĕrent."

Exercise XCIII.

To be turned into Latin Oratio Obliqua.

A. His audītis, Tullius, ad amīcos conversus, "Cur" inquit (332 *b*) "moramini? Neque enim ego volo amīcis exitium ferre neque vos jam potestis moritūro prodesse. Hostes jam

---

[1] These questions are really partly questions, partly passionate statements: *The enemy is but a little way off, is he not? We are prepared to fight, are we not?* Hence, they are expressed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

prope absunt ; mox aderunt. Urbs capietur. Fugite igitur.
Quod facere potui, feci ; nihil praeter mortem mihi jam restat.
Quae vobiscum auferre potestis, ea auferte. Num responde-
tis vos hic mansuros ? Antequam vos inter cohortes con-
scripsi promisistis vos (338b) mihi obtemperaturos, nec fidem
fefellistis. Satis virtuti datum est : jam saluti consulite.
At cur nos hic tempus inani colloquio terimus ? Equidem,[1]
quoniam necesse est, moriar. Vos (335) vivite et valete, et
curate ut mortem meam ulciscamini."

    (*B. is already in O. O. ; C. must be turned into O. O.*)

B. *Balbus having now departed from the senate-house, the consul*
    addressed the senators (i.e. the fathers) to this effect: "*Why*
    did they (336) hesitate ? Let them choose, if it was necessary,
    between a glorious death and an inglorious servitude. But he
    was persuaded that this was not necessary. Victory, not
    death, awaited them, if, without fear, they consulted-the-interest-
    of the country. Not even the lowest of the citizens now favoured
    the conspirators. Already they were praised by all the best of
    the citizens, soon they would be praised by all. Why therefore
    did they sit there hesitating, since both Fortune and Necessity
    taught them that they ought not now to deliberate but to act ?
    When they had made a beginning, the citizens would to a man
    (ad unum) approve their plans. He would say no more,
    for there was need not of words but of deeds."

C. *Tullius now turned to the soldiers of the tenth legion.* "*Why,*"
    said he (332b), "*do you fear-the multitude of the enemy ?*[2]
    We indeed have only three thousand, the enemy ten thousand ;
    but three free citizens can easily resist ten slaves. The victories
    that the enemy has lately gained have been gained by treachery
    and guile ; but in this plain, treachery will avail nothing
    (nullo modo). Be of good cheer therefore, since Mars will
    give the palm to the more worthy army. If only you can
    repel the first assault of (their) cavalry, the infantry will speedily
    turn their backs. Trust in your own valour and in my skill
    (i.e. plans). What avail ten thousand sheep against one
    wolf ? But why do I waste time in speaking ? The enemy is-
    at-hand, the contest-is-to-be-waged (i.e. it-is-to-be-striven) not
    with tongues but with swords."

---

[1] Equidem being (130) almost always used with the *first person*, should
be changed into quidem when attached to *se*.

[2] In turning this into O. O , inquit must *not* be used. You may either
translate *Tullius having turned to . . . . spoke to this effect,* ' *Why did they
fear,*' &c., or omit the Verb of speaking and leave it to be understood :
Tullius now turned . . . . legion, ' *Why did they fear ?*' &c.

EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

I.—ON THE NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.[1]

(The only Verbs required are those given in paragraphs 1—112.)

EXERCISE I.

1. Probo scribae. 2. Fabri (9*a*) pigri. 3. Molesto pediti. 4. Pavidorum nautarum. 5. Jucundā insulā. 6. 7. Temporum prosperorum. 8. Stultis principibus. 9. Parvi papilionis. 10. Ossium magnorum. 11. Ab indigno comito. 12. Insigni labore. 13. Meliorum judicum. 14. Scytha perniciosus. 15. Itineris longi. 16. Planitiei vastae. 17. Velocium equitum. 18. Vigilum tribunorum. 19. Regionum pulchrarum. 20. Morum antiquorum. 21. A benigno nauta.

1. *From the good leader.* 2. *To the wretched sailor.* 3. *Of frequent lightnings.* 4. *Of the poor girl.* 5. *To great hope.* 6. *Of the left horn.* 7. *To the wise charioteer.* 8. *Of the active inhabitants.* 9. *Of the black teeth.* 10. *By the difficult journey* 11. *To the short bows.* 12. *Of the third tribe.* 13. *To the lean face.* 14. *O angry poet.* 15. *Of the stern leaders.* 16. *Of beautiful fountains.* 17. *To the useful bow.* 18. *Of high citadels.* 19. *By the enemy's camp.* 20. *To a few soldiers.* 21. *Of the second cohort.* 22. *By* (13*a*) *the king.* 23. *By great hope.* 24. *Of long days.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Maximus ille vir. 2. Pulcherrimarum urbium muri. 3. Optimorum poetarum dulcia carmina. 4. Majorum oppidorum arces. 5. Difficillimorum et maximorum operum. 6. Principum munificentissimorum jussa. 7. Harum tam miserarum calamitatum. 8. Pessima haec exempla. 9. Pulcherrimorum florum color. 10. Imbri tristi et pernicioso. 11. Quercus nigerrimae glandes paucae. 12. Ultimi illius diei memoria. 13. Morborum taetriorum multitudo. 14. Aurigae maxime strenuo dona (95) dāmus. 15. Quis te pessimo hoc rege liberat? 16. Quis haec ei dat?

---

[1] These exercises may be heard *vivâ voce*, and the sentences are numbered that the pupil may be rapidly called to translate any sentence at the teacher's discretion.

1.[1] *To this very wise girl.*   2. *The two brothers of the same woman.*
3. *The largest part of the outer wall.*   4. *Of very slender
legs.*   5. *The girl loves his two brothers: which-of-the
two do you love most* (maximè)?   6. *The very-old soldier
loves older wine.*   7. *The very contemptible* (superl. of humilis)
memory of that most unhappy day.   8. *With which of these two
cities?*   9. *To the same woman he gives three apples.*   10. *To
Tullia alone he gives three hundred cherries.*   11. *To the
other sea.*   12. *Of the same camp.*   13. *To one-man's spurs,
to another-man's sword.*   14. *Of the younger soldiers.*   15. *By
this most troublesome thirst.*   16. *By the older* (61) *soldier.*

Exercise III.

1. Hic vi, illo sapientia, hostes superat.   2. Multos pericula
minima terrent.   3. Alterius constantiam, alterius diligentiam
laudamus.   4. Piscator tria milia piscium habet.   5. Nequis-
simorum puerorum versus non laudo.   6. Tussi febrique
medicus te liberat.   7. Plura tibi quam nobis dat.   8. Pejor
est iste pessimo meorum comitum.   9. Agricola optimus
meliore fato dignus erat.   10. Nulli suorum carior erat
quam sibi.   11. Haec tibi uni jucunda sunt.

1. *Which of these two journeys do you praise?*   2. *To this very-
tender maiden alone he gives a hundred oxen.*   3. *The boy is
smaller than the largest of the men.*   4. *Wisdom frees him from
anger.*   5. *To you he gives more gifts than to himself.*   6. *The
memory of that very keen contest was more bitter to you than to
him.*   7. *This was more agreeable to you than to any of his
companions.*   8. *By patience he delivers himself from fever.*
9. *What poet is wiser than Homer? what poem better than his
poems?*   10. *The former is wiser than the latter.*

II.—ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

Exercise IV.—First Conjugation.

1. Castigaberis.   2. Agros vastavisti.   3. Laudatus est.   4. Pug-
nabunt.   5. Ne erraveritis.   6. Vastate agros.   7. Pugnaverant.
8. Ut aedificet urbem.   9. Vulnerata est.   10. Vitupera-
bimini.   11. Ambulaveratis.   12. Cantavissetis.   13. Ut
cantarent.   14. Cantemus.   15. Dubitate.   16. Servemus
urbem.   17. Ambulaveritis.   18. Oppidum aedificatum erat.
19. Ut servaremur.   20. Ut laudarere.   21. Canta.

---

[1] On the position of the Pronoun Adjective between an ordinary Adjec-
tive and Noun, see Vocabulary, *this.*

1. *You will sing.* 2. *He will have been wounded.* 3. *Ye must build* (imper.). 4. *The city had been built.* 5. *Let us praise them.* 6. *The fields have been laid waste.* 7. *You will be chastised.* 8. *That he might be wounded.* 9. *That we might sing.* 10. *Do not doubt, O friend.* 11. *We shall have preserved the city.* 12. *I should have carried.* 13. *They would have been blamed.* 14. *Ye will not be loved.* 15. *That ye may take-care.* 16. *We shall have been preserved.* 17. *You had sung, O daughter.* 18. *Sing, O daughter.* 19. *Ye were being preserved.* 20. *Ye will be wounded.*

EXERCISE V.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. Puer valebat. 2. Terrebamini. 3. Timebere. 4. Territus fuerat. 5. Ut exerceres corpus. 6. Monuissem te. 7. Ut monereris. 8. Doce puerum. 9. Ne timueris. 10. Exercueris. 11. Filia monita fuisset. 12. Ut terreare. 13. Valuistis. 14. Exercetor. 15. Exerceamus corpora. 16. Ne territa sis, O mulier. 17. Docebimur. 18. Terrebare. 19. Terres puerum. 20. Terremur. 21. Terruistis.

1. *We had been terrified.* 2. *That he may fear.* 3. *Ye will be taught.* 4. *He was being advised.* 5. *We should have feared.* 6. *That they might exercise (their) bodies.* 7. *Ye have been advised, O citizens.* 8. *You will be terrified, O friend.* 9. *You have terrified us.* 10. *That you might be advised.* 11. *Let us terrify the enemy.* 12. *I used-to-have* (115) *a book.* 13. *You had taught us.* 14. *Do not teach him.* 15. *He will have terrified you.* 16. *You will have been terrified, O friends.* 17. *Exercise (your) bodies.* 18. *Ye would have taught him.* 19. *The soldiers terrified the woman.*

EXERCISE VI.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. Duxeratis. 2. Contraxisti. 3. Quid homo dixerat? 4. Ut instruantur milites. 5. Ut instrueret aciem. 6. Scribes epistolam. 7. Hoc spem nostram minuerat. 8. Gloriam eius minuemus. 9. Agger structus fuerat. 10. Flumen ponte junxissemus. 11. Milites ducentur. 12. Ut ducare. 13. Libri scripti sunt. 14. Ut ducoremini. 15. Quis legionem ducebat. 16. Ne nos duxeris. 17. Haec tibi dixissemus. 18. Dicamus vera (Par. 34). 19. Duceris. 20. Duceris.

1. *That they might rule.* 2. *You will be led.* 3. *He would have said these-things.* 4. *You have piled up a mound, soldiers.* 5. *She has been led.* 6. *The mound has been piled up.* 7. *Be ye drawn-up, soldiers.* 8. *He had drawn together-foot-*

soldiers. 9. *What will you say, friends?* 10. *His glory has been diminished.* 11. *That we may bridge the river.* 12. *The river would have been bridged.* 13. *You were being drawn-up, soldiers.* 14. *Do not say this.* 15. *Let us pile-up a mound.* 16. *You had written a letter, my brother.* 17. *Do not write these letters, friends.* 18. *I shall be led.* 19. *They are being drawn up.* 20. *They would have been led.* 21. *Our hopes were diminished.* 22. *They will write.*

EXERCISE VII.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. Dormiisti. 2. Puniti erant. 3. Urbs munietur. 4. Opus finitum est. 5. Ut erudiremini. 6. Nutriebantur. 7. Ut vestias puerum. 8. Opus finieris. 9. Custodiverat obsides. 10. Obsides custodiuntur. 11. Urbes custoditae fuissent. 12. Erudientur pueri. 13. Ut opus finiatur. 14. Custodiere milites captivum. 15. A magistro erudiemur. 16. Dormiamus. 17. Erudiebamini. 18. Erudientur. 19. Ne puerum erudiveris. 20. Ut erudiremini. 22. Erudiëris.

1. *We had slept.* 2. *You will sleep.* 3. *That you may be punished, O citizens.* 4. *The girl had been clothed.* 5. *The boy will be guarded.* 6. *The camp would have been fortified.* 7. *That the boy might be instructed.* 8. *Let us guard the leader.* 9. *We shall clothe the boy.* 10. *The boy was being instructed.* 11. *That the tasks may be ended.* 12. *The boys must be instructed* (imper.). 13. *Nourish the boys.* 14. *We shall fortify the city.* 15. *That you may fortify the city, soldiers.* 16. *That you might sleep.* 17. *You were being instructed, boys.* 18. *You will have instructed the boys, most learned master.* 19. *The boys will have been instructed.* 20. *The boys will sleep.* 22. *They used-to-sleep* (115). 23. *You slept, boys.*

III.—GENERAL EXERCISES.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Bidui iter fecēre. 2. Multi hoc negant. 3. Quantum pecuniae habes? 4. Et ego et tu hoc negamus. 5. Errare humanum est. 6. Multa eis dedimus. 7. Fato meliore digna est. 8. Puer matri est simillimus. 9. Plura tibi quam mihi dederunt. 10. Nonne equus est animalium utilissimum? 11. Utri plura dedisti? Neutri : eadem ambobus dedi.

1. *I will give a book to one of you.   2. Many of the children gave us
flowers.   3. You and I have erred.   4. The girl is more like
her father than her mother.   5. Let us hasten by night.   6.
The soldiers are most worthy of punishment.   7. We led the
army into the nearest city.   8. This work is not very easy.
9. The words of the unjust sailor are very base.   10. A
hundred brave (men) are better than two hundred cowardly
(men).   11. He was more worthy of punishment than you.*

<div align="center">EXERCISE IX.</div>

1. Uter fontium major est?   2. Decem millia passuum iter
fecimus.   3. Tullius, rex crudelissimus, veniam Balbo
dedit.   4. Nocte hostes castra nostra invaserunt.   5. Decem
his diebus trecentos elephantos ad exercitum mittemus.
6. Equites peditesque plurimos habemus.   7. Regum fortium
vitae nos delectant.   8. Hoc opus facilius est quam illud.
9. Et mihi et tibi felicium supplicum verba jucunda sunt.
10. Nullius dona, quam fratris tui mihi jucundiora sunt.

1. *What have you done worthy of praise?   2. He is worse than
his brother.   3. The keenest soldiers fought most bravely.   4.
You journeyed for (i.e. made a journey of) two-days in a
very rough country.   5. Neither of the fountains had very
sweet water.   6. Which of the two girls loves her father
more?   7. He is more like you than me.   8. Where is the
book you gave me?   9. Do not say many-things.   10. All
love themselves.   11. Do you say this?*

<div align="center">EXERCISE X.</div>

1. Pueri ludere amant.   2. Ne plura rogaveris.   3. Milites in
campum ducamus.   4. Si venti flaverint, in portu manebimus.
5. Multas noctes in urbe mansimus.   6. Dicamus vera.   7.
Senex septuagesimo altero anno uxorem tertiam duxit.   8.
Senum memoria infirmior quam juvenum est.   9. Pejor
morte est infamia.   10. Verba eius isti molesta sunt.

1. *Very many say this.   2. You say the same.   3. He wounded me
with a spear.   4. Let us walk six days.   5. His words are
more pleasant to you than to any of your brothers.   6. The
brave Balbus was leader of the whole (totus) army.   7. Both to
you and to me he gave the same gifts.   8. No poet blames his
own poems.   9. If he comes by night, we will depart in three
hours.   10. To one of his two sons he gave a thousand oxen,
to the other two thousand sheep.   11. Do not sleep, boy.*

EXERCISE XI.

(Exercises XI. to XIX. refer to Par. 1—295.)

1. Clam parentibus huc venisti.   2. Ne tu quidem idem dedecus bis in te admittes.   3. Nostri ab hostibus superati sunt.   4. Quid obstat quominus patri tuo pareas ?   5. Plura dicturum duae sagittae transfixerunt.   6. Interrogavi matrem num huc ventura esset.   7. Hostes urbem captam incendunt. 8. Non dubium est quin aurum in ea regione reppereris. 9. Captivos vinctos centurio ad imperatorem duxerat.   10. Quot dies hostibus resistebatis ?   11. Tune times ?

1. *There is no doubt that he pardoned the accused (man).   2. Cultivate learning that you may not be unlearned.   3. Not even Tullius will spare this city.   4. Let us ask her on what day she will come.   5. What prevented you from pleasing his father ?   6. I will do my best to pardon him.   7. They took and burned the city (Par. 159).   8. The leaders gave orders-to their men not to resist the enemy.   9. There was no doubt that the city had been taken by the tenth legion.   10. She was killed by poison, without-the-knowledge-of the king.*

EXERCISE XII.

1. Extra urbem decem horas pugnatum est.   2. In eo eram ut Balbum vincerem.   3. Saepe me interrogavisti utrum Romanus sim an Atheniensis.   4. Civibus pro patria fortiter pugnandum est.   5. Aut vincendum est aut serviendum.   6. Oravi ducem ut captis parceret.   7. Interrogate hominem num coram judice hoc dixerit.   8. Reo, haec neganti, mendacium graviter nocuit.   9. Dux suis imperavit ne acie cederent.   10. Ne tibi quidem rex ignoscet, si a Tullio stabis.   11. Quis nescit urbem incendi ?

1. *He was silent for two hours in-the-presence-of the judge.   2. He had reigned ten years as-far-as the Alps.   3. He was on the point of conquering.   4. The king asked us whether we were husbandmen or sailors.   5. There is no doubt that the cold hurt the beautiful pine-tree.   6. He asked me whether the centurion was worthy of this great (see Vocab. great) reward. 7. I advised the soldier to answer the leader with these words. 8. We must make-haste that we may not come late.   9. When the general had heard this, he ordered the line-of-battle to retire.   10. Answer-was-made to the king in these words.*

EXERCISE XIII.

1. *What is pleasant to some is troublesome to others.* 2. *He built a house twenty feet high.* 3. *I asked him, O citizens, to -come by night.* 4. *I asked which of you two said these-things.* 5. *Did you say this to deceive us?* 6. *It is very difficult to make very long marches in winter.* 7. *The excellent physician Balbus gave you medicine to cure you.* 8. *The girl is even now more beautiful than her sister.* 9. *There is no doubt that he gave you more gifts than me.* 10. *By the fruitful harvest the hearts of the husbandmen were delighted.* 11. *He asked why the goats were larger than most of the sheep.*

EXERCISE XIV.

1. *Come here in haste, my son.* 2. *Is he very poor?* 3. *When were the Gauls conquered by Caesar?* 4. *Do you call me a citizen?* 5. *There is no doubt that he was created consul by the citizens.* 6. *At the enemy, overcome by our men, fled to the camp.* 7. *Each of the two brothers pleased* (placeo) *himself alone.* 8. *Do not set-out from the city by night.* 9. *She is about-to-return to Asia.* 10. *The head of Hasdrubal was thrown into the camp.* 11. *You slept the whole night.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. *He sent a letter to his friend.* 2. *Give that woman the same book you gave me.* 3. *Do not declare war, O king.* 4. *When will you quench your thirst?* 5. *Have you ever used a golden axe?* 6. *I shall have given you, my son, three hundred denarii.* 7. *What you say, is true.* 8. *What is more faithful than a faithful dog?* 9. *There is no doubt that every good man resisted this law.* 10. *You will be no longer foolish but base, if, even now, you please yourself alone.* 11. *Do not stay.*

EXERCISE XVI.

1. *Some stood here, others there.* 2. *The disease did not hurt even one of the sheep.* 3. *On the fifth day you came to Egypt.* 4. *Being-about-to-set-out for Europe we shall send two messengers to Alexander.* 5. *You and I will pay attention to philosophy.* 6. *Who took the city (of) Corinth?* 7. *Mummius, who took Corinth, was very poor.* 8. *He came a-second-time into the forum.* 9. *What prevented him from walking in his brother's garden?* 10. *Ajax slew himself with the sword which he had received from Hector.* 11. *He is free from cares.*

Exercise XVII.

1. *This work is finished.* 2. *My son and I sent messengers to you.* 3. *My brother and sister are very happy.* 4. *There is no doubt that it is pleasant to conquer.* 5. *We ought to command* (164)*; you ought to obey.* 6. *The city is being built; a great part of it is built already.* 7. *The small town (of) Corioli was taken* (agrees with 'town') *by Marcius, who was thence called Coriolanus.* 8. *Balbus and Tullius besought me to pardon both (of) them.* 9. *You praised both, you pleased neither.* 10. *Nothing prevents you from building a new bridge.*

Exercise XVIII.

1. Spem mihi ultimam eripuisti. 2. Sole orto, in campum descensum est. 3. Hoc ad agros colendos erat utilissimum. 4. Romae biennium habitavimus. 5. Huic genti quis tributum imponere ausus est? 6. Capta urbe, arcem incendimus. 7. Nonne vis fateri quantum te tuae stultitiae pudeat? 8. Quando ibis Corinthum? 9. Hodie Arpinum eo, cras Romae manebo. 10. E malevolo, fis malevolentior; mox fies malevolentissimus. 11. Ego et frater hic (*adv.*) manemus.

1. *Are you not weary of idleness?* 2. *He built walls twenty-five feet high.* 3. *Dionysius, driven from Syracuse, taught boys.* 4. *Why do you not confess that you repent of your wickedness?* 5. *He says that this ditch is twenty feet deep.* 6. *When will you come to see me?* 7. *No one pities the conquered.* 8. *He could have helped me, but he would not.* 9. *I can no longer bear these great insults.* 10. *I hear that he is becoming weaker.* 11. *Will you go to Rome or remain in Corinth?*

Exercise XIX.

1. Utrum duos an tres menses vis Carthagine manere? 2. Non facile istum tuli querentem de seditione. 3. Nostine quo velit ire? 4. Tot scelera fassus, num putas nos posse tui misereri? 5. Negavit se sui tanti flagitii poenitere. 6. Postquam ab hostibus clamatum est, nostri, Balbo hortante, e silvis erupere. 7. Aliorum oblitus num speras alios tui non oblituros esse? 8. Oportuit te non isti sed patri tuo placere. 9. Quantum pecuniae tibi pater ad emendos flores dedit? 10. Negari non potest ambos semper eadem voluisse, eadem noluisse. 11. Licuit tibi esse felici; sed noluisti mihi parere. 12. Operam dabat libris scribendis.

1. *To live in Rome seemed to me more pleasant than to live at Gabii.   2. Have you already, O foolish girls, forgotten these most easy verses?   3. Who ordered the fourth tribe to be-present?   4. Having suffered so many evils, you ought to pity others.   5. The two boys, horrible to relate! attempted to murder their own father.   6. In three days you will become richer than his brother if your ship returns to Corinth.   7. You might have dined with (183) your kind host; but you would dine at home.   8. I have come here to see-to the building of a bridge.   9. Who does-not-know that water, by often falling, hollows even the hardest stone?*

Exercise XX.

(Exercises XX. to XXIX. refer to the whole of the book.)

1. Barbari erant proceris corporibus, promisso capillo.   2. Non opus est mihi tanta pecunia.   3. Virtutem maximi aestimate.   4. Die quarto aggerem jam decem pedes altum exstruxerant.   5. His condicionibus pax ab utroque duce facta est.   6. Respondit se non assis me facere.   7. Certum erat fundum grandi pecunia emptum fuisse.   8. Patriae amantissimus erat, patientissimus periculorum, suis contentus, alienarum divitiarum nunquam cupidus.   9. Respondit se nolle sua pretio emere.   10. Tu, cuius (299a) es sapientiae, intelleges quid his respondere oporteat.   11. Non est moris nostri quos praesentes laudavimus eos absentes condemnare.

1. *He was acquitted of bribery.   2. Why did you, O judges, condemn the innocent Balbus to death?   3. He was endowed with a (see 'a') wonderful art of persuading.   4. By this road you will never come to Athens.   5. He sent a messenger to ask-which of his two brothers lived at Gabii.   6. The girl replied that she was descended from royal parents.   7. Do you think that it is the mark of a philosopher to envy the wealth of-others?   8. He was learned in the law, and very brave; but greedy of wealth.   9. Are you certain of this thing?   10. My barns are full of corn; I have much money at home.*

Exercise XXI.

1. Nescio an mulier Carthagine ventura sit.   2. Misi qui praedium magno pretio emat.   3. Vereor ut puer virtutem pluris quam voluptatem aestimet.   4. Si auxilium poposcisses, abhinc biduum misissem.   5. Nescisne inepti esse nunquam ridere?   6. Quis Thracum more velit bibere?   7. Non cuiusvis est multa bene facere.   8. Si illuc ibis, vereor ne

serpentis morsu pereas. 9. Num quis audeat negare consules bene de republica meritos esse ? 10. Duabus unciis procerior est quam quisquam nostrum.

1. *If any one had given me the book I would have read (it).* 2. *I feared he would be weary of the journey.* 3. *My father advises Balbus to consult his own interests.* 4. *It makes a great difference whether you live at Rome or at Carthage.* 5. *Whatever he had, he gave to all the poorest of the citizens.* 6. *I have long been desirous of hearing Tullius.* 7. *He came from the city to the country as speedily as possible.* 8. *Ask your brother who sang this song.* 9. *The elder of the two brothers died before the capture of the city* (i.e. *before the city having been captured*). 10. *He is a man of wisdom.*

[EXERCISE XXII.[1]

1. Crudelior erat quam ut cuiquam parceret. 2. Quidquid armorum habuimus, id omne tradendum erat. 3. Quamvis errorem feceris, licebit tibi meliora facere. 4. Idem es qui semper fuisti. 5. Cuilibet licuisset mentiri nisi hunc testem produxisses. 6. Quid refert utrum haec vera sint annon ? 7. Nostine plerisque piscibus pinnas binas esse ? 8. Tantae multitudini trinis castris opus erat. 9. Si quis tibi Achillis arma promitteret se daturum esse, quid tandem faceres ? 10. Balbus moriens fratrem admonuit ut se ipse servaret. 11. Mira quadam arte erat suadendi. 12. Fallacior est quam cui credas. 13. Haec, sive vera sunt sive falsa, nullo modo me movent.

1. *Whatever you wish to say must be said at once.* 2. *It matters little whether we die to-day or to-morrow.* 3. *There is a certain pleasure in recollecting calamities.* 4. *What would you have replied if he had promised to give you money?* 5. *He is too deceitful for you to converse with.* 6. *He hastened to Athens by the most rapid marches possible.* 7. *He was on the point of dying on the fourth day before the taking of the city.* 8. *He is better than any of his brothers.* 9. *Two days ago, we sent messengers to ascertain what prevented Balbus from coming to Corinth.* 10. *Ask him to come to see me as quickly as possible.*

---

[1] In this and the following Exercises, some idioms are introduced that are not given in the previous part of the book : but they will be found explained in the Vocabularies.

Exercise XXIII.

1. Promisit se Gades venturum.   2. Erant qui dicerent urbem nunquam captum iri.   3. Misit imperator centurionem qui captivos deposceret.   4. Non adhuc compertum habeo quis hunc tantum virum rhetoricam docuerit.   5. Aggerem exstruxit quo facilius hostem prohiberet.   6. Nemini pepercit, nullius miseritus est.   7. Cur tam parvo fune uteris? 8. Turpior erat quam quocum colloquereris.   9. Dies fere nullus est quin eam querentem audiam.   10. Spero fore ut urbs decem his diebus capiatur.   11. Interrogavit utrum haec caedes abhinc biennium an triennium facta sit.   12. Respondit iste se tuas excusationes parvi aestimare.

1. *It is said that you burned this temple, Tullius.   2. Do not pardon that wicked soldier.   3. The brave general Balbus opposed four thousand Scythians.   4. Having gained possession of our gold, O Persians, do you now wish to despoil us of our liberty?   5. In the battle of Cannae there fell many thousand Roman knights.   6. Ariovistus was answered in these words by Caesar.   7. Our men, under Labienus, laid waste the greatest part of the province, as far as the Alps.   8. Who was there that did not hate you, a man devoid of all kindness and courtesy?   9. Not even the older men were spared by the conquerors.   10. They threatened the man with death that they might the more easily ascertain the truth.*

Exercise XXIV.

1. Cur me morbum fratris mei celasti?   2. Hoc te moneo ne quem, clam patre tuo, domi accipias.   3. Diceris, mi fili, ipse hunc pontem rescidisse.   4. Non dubium est quin in certamen eloquentiae ambo venerint.   5. Obsecravit ducem mater ne sibi filiam eriperet.   6. Nonne licuit tibi, divitiis his carenti, consulem (*see* licet *in* Vocab.) fieri?   7. Ego me Phidiam esse mallem quam vel optimum fabrum tignarium. 8. Illud permagni referre arbitror ut domestica cura te liberem.   9. Alii alibi steterunt; erant qui ne stare quidem possent sed humi occumberent.   10. Leonidas cum trecentis se multis milibus Persarum opposuit.   11. Alii capi; alii cadere; plurimi vulnera accipere.   12. In eo proelio trecenta milia hostium interfecti sunt.   •

1. *Who founded the city of Carthage?   2. He was asked his opinion by Tullius, but answered nothing.   3. By this time • the wall (murus) and the citadel had been taken by our men.   4. Do you suppose that two hundred can resist two*

*thousand?   5. I do not know whether she will agree with you.
6. The consul was the first who was asked his opinion. 7. There
is no doubt that he bought the horse at a very high price.   8. I
was informed of his arrival the-day-before he came to Corioli.
9. Will any one promise to go with him?   10. I fear that we
shall arrive at Athens (too) late unless we hasten by forced
marches.*

Exercise XXV.

1. Quis nescit nos omnes famae atque fortunarum expertes esse?
2. Decimo anno post conditam urbem in exsilium pulsus est.
3. Fac ut quam celerrime in Italiam ad amicos redeas.
4. Adulatores, turbam levissimam, dux contemnebat. 5. Inter-
rogavit num crederem se tantum dedecus in se admittere
potuisse.   6. Non est cur fugias, hominum turpissime.
7. Non dubium est quin tibi pater nimis indulserit.   8. Utra
harum dearum Vulcano nupsit? 9. Tandem ei persuasit
pater ut mulierem in matrimonium duceret.   10. Quis non
huius tanti philosophi audiendi studiosus erit?   11. Spera-
veram fore ut frigus mitesceret.   12. Aurum, argentum,
ferrum, utilia illa quidem omnia; sed non pariter utilia.[1]

1. *The boy had concealed* (celo) *the fact from his father by a
falsehood.   2. Having burnt the village, the cohort set out for
the nearest river* (amnis). *3. You ought to have consulted the
interests of each of your two sisters.   4. After he had con-
quered the Scythians, the general sent ambassadors to offer
peace.   5. I am very desirous of hearing this story, if it is not
troublesome to you.   6. Having accused others of bribery, he
was himself condemned on the same charge.   7. If you ever
come to Gabii, I hope you will stay with me for a few days.
8. There were some who said that it mattered little what
Tullius decided.   9. There is no doubt that all the best of the
citizens resisted this law.   10. This field was valued at a high
rate, but bought by me for a small price.*

Exercise XXVI.

1. Nunc quod agitur agamus; agitur autem liberine vivamus[2] an
obeamus.   2. Quis negat Socratem parentem philosophiae
jure dici posse?   3. Vir ille maximus cum a ceteris scriptoribus

---

[1] The redundant illō (sometimes ĭs) is commonly found before quĭdem
when a concession is made, but immediately qualified, 'Tuus dolor huma-
nus is quidem, sed tamen moderandus,' *Yours is a grief natural to man, I
admit, but one which should be modified.*"
[2] Not here *whether we live*, but *whether we are to live.*

tum a Xenophonte laudatus est. 4. Si qui capti sunt, omnes
ad unum interfecti. 5. Et mea et tua interest ut huic legi
resistamus. 6. Vereor ne ex hoc fonte magna pestis in
rempublicam fluxura sit. 7. Nunc quidem valetudini
tribuamus aliquid, cras autem rei-publicae. 8. Non tibi
tantus dolor est quantus isti. 9. Victis hostibus, Caesar ab
urbibus quinque trecenos obsides poposcit. 10. Credisne
hanc perfidiam ei profuturam esse?

1. *In Xenophon we read a good deal (i.e. many things) about the
illustrious general Agesilaus. 2. It concerns the whole country
that Catiline should perish. 3. Having bound yourselves by
an oath, do you now say that you did not promise to help him?
4. It is said that Labienus was at that time in command of
thirty thousand soldiers. 5. It is said that Venus, the most beau-
tiful of the goddesses, married Vulcan. 6. In the reign of
Tullius the learned poet Balbus wrote very good poems.
7. I asked him why he did not do-his-duty to (trans. satisfy)
his country. 8. Do not teach young boys philosophy.[1] 9. I do
not care a farthing for any of you. 10. Ask the boy whether
Cyrus conquered the Scythians.*

<center>EXERCISE XXVII.</center>

1. Nunquam in dicendo irascor. An tibi irasci videor si quid
acrius dico, permovendorum judicum causa? 2. Constat
Labienum dimidio exercitus a Caesare praefectum esse. 3. In
summo monte casa quaedam erat ; quo inter venandum rex
ventitabat. 4. Philoctetes, Lemni relictus, multis post
annis Trojam a Neoptolemo reductus esse fertur. 5. Con-
tigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini.[2] 6. Quaeritur suamne
propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliquos virtus ex-
petenda sit. 7. Caesar Aeduis quadringentos obsides im-
peraverat. 8. Non jam stulti eritis, sed turpissimi, si diutius
ab illo stabitis. 9. Milites in verba imperatoris jurarunt.
10. Poma haec utilia quidem sunt, sed amariora gustatu.
11. Dixit se plura facturum fuisse, nisi sibi persuasum
fuisset judicem neutri favere. 12. Milites pugnam popos-
cerunt, quibus imperator "Cunctando," inquit, "rem restitu-
emus."

1. *He was answered by Tullius, but not even Tullius could excuse
the deed. 2. Before he bound the captives he compelled them
to swear not to escape. 3. Do you doubt, O citizens, what is*

---

[1] For "young" write "younger," and remember never to use "juvenis"
as an Adjective.

[2] Supply "contigerit." The antecedent of "quod" is "id," nom. to
"contigit."

to be done? 4. Tell me, (my) boy, for how much he sold this farm. 5. For the same price as Tullius sold it to me. 6. We should have written much better verses if time had not failed us. 7. Have you not sworn to obey this law? 8. Homer and Virgil are read by all; the latter imitated the former. 9. The work, I say (see say), is quite finished. 10. The boys used no longer to be taught music by their father.

Exercise XXVIII.

1. Medio in foro, coram rege ipso, a plebe turbatum est. 2. Terra marique diversis casibus jam multos annos pugnatum erat. 3. Te duce, vel ignavissimi nostrum tubam canentem libenter audient. 4. Post Corinthum captam magna praeda Romam a Mummio missa est. 5. Non ante venit nobis auxilio quam quinquiens misissemus. 6. Satis erat tibi semel ignoscere; quoniam bis peccavisti, non iterum es excusandus. 7. Corinthum, tribus his diebus, veniet tui visendi causa. 8. Apud Romanos arma in majore honore quam pacis artes habebantur. 9. Multa terra marique passus tandem se in Italiam contulit. 10. Aurum plurimis et viris et civitatibus plurimarum miseriarum causa est. 11. Haec urbs, gentis devictae caput, quam celerrime delenda est. 12. Tullia, regina miserrima, fertur veneno fuisse interfecta.

1. *After he had remained two months in the country he set out for the city. 2. Two cohorts came as a reinforcement for the besieged citizens. 3. You ought not to have promised to come before the third day. 4. She replied that she was born of noble but very poor parents. 5. This field cost me more than that meadow. 6. In the middle of the night we rose up terrified by the sound of robbers. 7. Having taken the city the enemy slew the citizens, and no one was spared. 8. You ought to have sent messengers three or four times to the city. 9. I have no need of excuse, for I am worthy of praise. 10. It is said that the Cyclopes had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.*

Exercise XXIX.

1. Auctore Balbo, carissimo amicorum, juvenis ex Italia cessit. 2. Puella multo quam frater peritior erat canendi. 3. Responderunt homines pauperrimi non jam pares se esse solvendo. 4. Admonendus es foederis; cuius tu jam fere oblitus es. 5. Dic mihi Tulliaene an sorori eius promiseris te anulum daturum esse. 6. Nisi te itineris taeduisset, jampridem domum perventum fuisset. 7. Olim lupus, cuius in faucibus os inhaeserat, mercede conduxit gruem qui id

extraheret.   8. Senex filios convocatos hortatur, ut fascem frangant.   9. Quod quum nequirent facere, singulis singulas virgas distribuit.   10. Quibus facillime fractis ita pueros docuit quam firma res esset concordia.

1. *Pallas was worshipped by the Athenians with the highest honours.   2. It is reported that the girl died of grief* (trans. on account of grief).   *3. By my advice you will set out for Corinth in the spring.   4. Who says that Jupiter did not marry Juno?   5. Can any one deny that you poured poison into my cup?   6. In my judgment, it is less disgraceful to dance in the middle of the forum than to lie.   7. The speech was too long for you to learn in three days.   8. It is said that the Druids were in great honour among the Britons.   9. Did you come here hoping to see her?   10. The foolish Balbus replied that he had once been more learned than any of his brothers.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(Following Exercise XXXII., p. 53.)

EXERCISE XXXII. A.

1. *Do you blame him who is praised by your brother?   2. Many things are troublesome to him who loves pleasure very greatly.   3. No one loves Tullia, who was always unmindful of others and ignorant of pity.   4. Do you who chastise the unjust, praise unjust things?   5. The Belgians, who were bordering on our land, were very troublesome to us.   6. He is always mindful of his sister, who is both very good and very beautiful.   7. We do not always love most-of-all those to whom we give the largest gifts.   8. The fruits you give me are not good.   9. The queen is overcome by pity, of which* (trans. of which thing) *they are ignorant.   10. His son takes-care-of the pigs, of which he has very-many* (trans. which he has very-many).

EXERCISE XXXII. B.

1. *Who is that-fellow whose threats terrify you?   2. For-the-whole-of that winter* (31), *which was very cold, the husbandmen were ignorant of the cause of the disease.   3. To us, who give many gifts to the poor, your words are disagreeable.   4. To the butterfly, who lives* (only) *a few hours, life is very pleasant.   5. Our line of battle, which was very long, is-being-overcome by the enemy.   6. Those whom virtue delights, vices do not*

delight. 7. *Few of those who praise you blame me.* 8. *Who terrifies him?* *What does the man fear?* 9. *What do you avoid?* *What deed terrifies you?* 10. *What you love I do not love.*

EXERCISE XXXII. C.

Do you, O sisters, who blame Tullius, praise his brother? 2. *To what woman are you giving this?* 3. *These fountains, which were in his garden, were very agreeable to us during that whole summer.* 4. *The frost, which was destructive to the tall tree, was more pleasing than heat to the strong soldier.* 5. *This delay, which is unworthy of you and your brother, is destructive to the army.* 6. *Whose threats terrify you?* 7. *During-the-whole-of this year, you, who blame the vices of Tullius, are praising the-same-things in Balbus.* 8. *I praise the same-things as (i.e. which) you (praise).* 9. *The same woman who praises herself blames her friends.* 10. *Of those (34) who were in the garden ten (were) boys, four were old-men.*

APPENDIX I.

IRREGULAR VERBS
IN THE ORDER OF THEIR FORMATION.[1]

When a Compound Verb is formed from a Simple Verb and a Preposition or other Prefix, the a or e of the Simple Verb is changed, in the Compound Verb, into:

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Ăgo	ĭ rĕdĭgo	ē or ĭ rĕdēgi	a, e, or u rĕdactum	reduce
Cădo	occĭdo	occĭdi	occāsum	die
Răpio	ĕrĭpio	ĕrĭpui	ĕreptum	snatch
Făcio	confĭcio	confēci	confectum	finish
Sălio	prōsĭlio	prōsĭlui	prōsultum	spring forth
Făteor	confĭteor		confessus	confess
Tĕneo	sustĭneo	sustĭnui	sustentum	sustain
Lĕgo	ēlĭgo	ēlēgi	ēlectum	elect[2]
Ēgeo	indĭgeo	indĭgui.	—	need

In the following lists all the Compounds of the above Simple Verbs, and of scando, [pleo], tango, [specio], cedo, caedo, jacio, emo, &c., will not be given, as they follow the forms of the Simple Verbs.

Note that when the Simple Verb has a reduplicated Perfect of three syllables, pĕpŭli, cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, cĕcĭni, the Perfect of the Compound Verb often rejects a syllable, ex-pŭli, con-cĭdi, con-tĭgi, con-cĭnui, &c.: but there are exceptions to this rule, viz. the compounds of disco, posco, -dēre, and sometimes of curro.

---

[1] The order of the *Public School Grammar* is adopted in this list.
[2] But note that three compounds of lēgo, viz., neglēgo, intellēgo, and dīligo, make the perfects neglexi, intellexi, dīlexi.

FIRST CONJUGATION.[1]

Dăre	dĕdī	dătum	*give, put*
Stāre	stĕtī	[stătum][2]	*stand*
Iŭv-āre	iūvī	iūtum	*help*
Lăv-āre[3]	lāvī	lōtum	*wash*
Frĭc-āre	frĭcuī	frictum	*rub*
Sĕc-āre	sĕcuī	sectum	*cut*
Crĕp-āre	crĕpuī	crĕpĭtum	*creak, prattle*
Cŭb-āre	cŭbuī	cŭbĭtum	*lie down*
Dŏm-āre	dŏmuī	dŏmĭtum	*tame*
Sŏn-āre	sŏnuī	sŏnĭtum	*sound*
Tŏn-āre	tŏnuī	tŏnĭtum	*thunder*
Vĕt-āre	vĕtuī	vĕtĭtum	*forbid*
Plĭc-āre	plĭcāvī (-uī)	plĭcĭtum (-ātum)	*fold*
Mĭc-āre	mĭcuī (-āvī)	[-mĭcātum]	*glitter*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mŏrd-ēre	mŏmordī	morsum	*bite*
Pend-ēre	pĕpendī	—	*hang*
Spond-ēre	spŏpondī	sponsum	*contract*
Tond-ēre	tŏtondī	tonsum	*shear*
Căv-ēre	cāvī	cautum	*beware*
Făv-ēre	fāvī	fautum	*favour*
Fŏv-ēre	fōvī	fōtum	*cherish*
Mŏv-ēre	mōvī	mōtum	*move*

---

[1] Verbs that may be omitted by beginners are marked thus *.

[2] A bracket denotes that the form, although correct according to the rules of the language, seldom or never occurs in Latin literature. This is the case with many Supines commonly given in Latin Grammars. In many cases, a Participle is found where there is no Supine. Thus haesum is not found, but haesūrus is; there is no cārītum, but there is cārītūrus; no quītum, but quītus; no fŭgītum, but fŭgītūrus. The Supine is in fact a comparatively rare form in all verbs, and it is to be regretted that usage has selected it as a typical part of a Latin Verb to be committed to memory. The Perf. Passive Participle would be preferable.

Note also that the Fut. Participle often does not follow the Supine, *e.g.* sectum but sĕcātūrus, sŏnĭtum but sŏnātūrus, &c.

[3] In classical prose, *sup.* lăvātum, *perf. part.* lautus.

Vŏv-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	*vow*
Păv-ēre	pāvi	—	*quake*
Sĕd-ēre	sēdi	sessum	*sit*
Vĭd-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	*see*
Prand-ēre	prandi	pransum	*dine*
Cŏnīv-ēre	[cōnivi *or* -nixi]	—	*blink*
Strĭd-ēre	strīdi	—	*creak*
Ferv-ēre	ferbui *or* fervi	—	*boil*
Dĕl-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	*blot out*
Fl-ēre	flēvi	flētum	*weep*
N-ēre	nēvi	nētum	*spin*
[-Plēre]	[-plēvi]	[-plētum]	*fill*
*Vi-ēre	[viēvi]	viētum	*bind with twigs*
Ci-ēre	cīvi	cītum	*stir up*[1]
-Ŏlēre	[-ŏlēvi]	[ŏlītum]	*grow, &c.*
[Su-ēre]	suēvi	suētum	*be wont*
Arc-ēre	arcui	—	*ward off*
Coerc-ēre	coercui	coercĭtum	*restrain*
Exerc-ēre	exercui	exercĭtum	*exercise*
Cār-ēre	cārui	[cārĭtum]	*be without, be in want of*[2]
Dĕb-ēre	dēbui	dēbĭtum	*owe*[2]
Dŏl-ēre	dŏlui	[dŏlĭtum]	*grieve*
Hăb-ēre	hăbui	hăbĭtum	*have*
Jăc-ēre	jăcui	[jăcĭtum]	*lie*
Lĭc-ēre	lĭcui	lĭcĭtum	*be bid for*
Mĕr-ēre	mĕrui	mĕrĭtum	*deserve, earn*
Mŏn-ēre	mŏnui	mŏnĭtum	*advise*
Nŏc-ēre	nŏcui	nŏcĭtum	*hurt*
Pār-ēre	pārui	[pārĭtum]	*appear, obey*
Plăc-ēre	plăcui	plăcĭtum	*please*
Praeb-ēre	praebui	praebĭtum	*afford*
Torr-ēre	terrui	terrĭtum	*affright*
Tăc-ēre	tăcui	tăcĭtum	*be silent*
Văl-ēre	vălui	[vălĭtum]	*be strong, be well*
Dŏc-ēre	dŏcui	dŏctum	*teach*
Misc-ēre	miscui	{ mistum mixtum }	*mingle*

[1] The primitive form is cio, cīre (found in the compounds accio, excio).
[2] This is properly a compound of hăbeo; but some of the less obvious compounds of verbs are included in this list.

Tĕn-ēro	tĕnui	tentum	*hold*
Torr-ēro	torrui	tostum	*scorch*
Cens-ēro	censui	consum	*value, rate*
Ĕg-ēro	ĕgui	—	*want*
*[-Mĭn-ēre]	[-mĭnuī]	—	*jut*
Ol-ēro	ŏlui	—	*smell*
Sorb-ēro	sorbui	—	*suck up*
Stŭd-ēro	stŭdui	—	*study* [1]
Aug-ēro	auxi	auctum	*increase (trans.)*
Indulg-ēro	indulsi	indultum	*indulge*
Mulg-ēro	mulsi	[mulctum]	*milk*
Torqu-ēro	torsi	tortum	*twist*
Lūg-ēro	luxi	—	*mourn*
Mulcēro	mulsi	mulsum	*soothe*
Tergēro	tersi	-tersum	*wipe*
Ardēro	arsi	arsum	*take fire*
Ridēro	rīsi	rīsum	*laugh*
Suādēro	suāsi	suāsum	*persuade*
Iŭbēro	iussi	iussum	*command*
Mănēro	mansi	mansum	*remain*
Haerēro	haesi	[haesum]	*stick*
Algēro	alsi	—	*be cold*
Fulgēro	fulsi	—	*glitter*
*Turg-ēro	tursi	—	*swell*
Urg-ēro	ursi	—	*urge*
*Frīgēro	[-frīxi]	—	*be cold*
Lūcēro	luxi	—	*shine*
Aud-ēro	ausus sum	—	*dare*
Gaud-ēro	gāvīsus sum	—	*rejoice*
Sŏl-ēro	sŏlĭtus sum	—	*be wont*
Lĭc-ēri	lĭcĭtus	—	*bid for*
Mĕr-ēri	mĕrĭtus	—	*deserve*
Mĭser-ēri	mĭsĕrĭtus	—	*pity*
Tu-ēri	tuĭtus	—	*view, protect*
Vĕr-ēri	vĕrĭtus	—	*fear, respect*
R-ēri	rătus	—	*think*
Făt-ēri	fassus	—	*confess*
Mĕd-ēri	—	—	*heal*

---

[1] Several Verbs that have an Adjective in Ĭdus reject the Supine, *e.g.* stŭpeo, āveo, flōreo; and some that have no such Adjective, as lăteo.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sĕpĕl-īre	sĕpĕlīvi	sĕpultum	*bury*
Īre (eo)	īvi	ĭtum	*go*
Quīre (queo)	quīvi	quĭtum	*be able*
Săl-īre	sălui	(saltum)	*leap, dance*
Ăpĕr-īre	ăpĕrui	ăpertum	*open*
Opĕr-īre	ŏpĕrui	ŏpertum	*cover*
Compĕr-ire	compĕri	compertum	*find*
Repĕr-ire	reppĕri	rĕpertum	*discover*
Vĕn-īre	vēni	ventum	*come*
Ămĭc-īre	ămixi & -īcui	ămictum	*clothe*
Farc-īre	·farsi	fartum	*stuff*
Fulc-īre	fulsi	fultum	*prop*
Sanc-īre	sanxi	sanctum	*consecrate*
Sarc-īre	sarsi	sartum	*mend*
Vinc-īre	vinxi	vinctum	*bind*
Saep-īre	saepsi	saeptum	*hedge in*
Haur-īre	hausi	haustum	*drain*
*Rauc-īre [1]	—	—	*be hoarse*
Sent-īre	sensi	sensum	*feel* [2]
Expĕr-īri		expertus	*experience*
Oppĕr-īri		oppertus	*wait for*
Or-īri		ortus	*arise*
Assent-īri		assensus	*agree*
Mēt-īri		mensus	*measure*
Ord-īri		orsus	*begin*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Disc-ĕre [3]	dĭdĭci		*learn*
Posc-ĕre	pŏposci	—	*demand*
Pa-*n*-g-ĕre [4]	pĕpĭgi	pactum	*fasten, covenant*

[1] There are also found rausūrus and ir-rausērit; *denotes rare occurrence.

[2] Some Verbs, such as gestio, *I am eager*, and others which express only passions, *e.g.* singultio, *I sob*, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

[3] Compounds of Verbs with Reduplicated Perfect drop Reduplication, except those of disco, posco, sisto, -dēre, and sometimes of curro.

[4] The n in this and following Verbs is not a part of the root. The forms pĕpĭgi, pactum, are reserved for the metaph. meaning, *covenant*; for the lit. meaning, the forms in use are pēgi or panxi, and panctum.

Pu-n-g-ĕre	pŭpŭgi	punctum	*prick*
Ta-n-g-ĕre	tĕtĭgi	tactum	*touch*
Sist-ĕre	[-stĭti¹]	[-stĭtum¹]	*stop*
[-d-ĕro¹]	[-dĭdī]	[-dĭtum]	*put, give*
Tend-ĕre	tĕtendi	{ tensum *and* tentum }	*stretch*
Căn-ĕre	cĕcĭni	cantum	*sing*
Păr-ĕre	pĕpĕri	partum	*bring forth*
Toll-ĕre	sustŭli	sublātum	*take up*
Parc-ĕre	pĕperci	parsum	*spare*
Căd-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	cāsum	*fall*
Caed-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	caesum	*cut, beat, kill*
Pend-ĕre	pĕpendi	pensum	*weigh*
Tu-n-d-ĕre	(tŭtŭdi)	tūsum	*thump, pound*
Curr-ĕre	cŭcurri	cursum	*run*
Fall-ĕre	fĕfelli	falsum	*deceive*
Pell-ĕre	pĕpŭli	pulsum	*drive*
[-Cell-ĕre]¹	[cĕcŭli]	[-culsum¹]	*push*
Făc-ĕre (*i-o*)	fēci	factum	*make, do*
Jăc-ĕre (*i-o*)	jēci	jactum	*throw*
Li-n-qu-ĕre	līqui	[-lictum]	*leave*
Vi-n-c-ĕre	vīci	victum	*conquer*
Ăg-ĕre	ēgī	actum	*do*
Fra-n-g-ĕre	frēgi	fractum	*break*
Lĕg-ĕre	lēgi (-lexi)²	lectum	*read, choose*
Căp-ĕre (*i-o*)	cēpi	captum	*take*
Ru-m-p-ĕre	rūpi	ruptum	*break*
Ĕm-ĕre	ēmi	emptum	*buy, take*
*Scăb-ĕre	scābi	—	*scratch*
Ĕd-ĕre	ēdi	ēsum	*eat*
Făd-ĕre (*ĭ-o*)	fŏdi	fossum	*dig*
Fu-n-d-ĕre	fūdi	fūsum	*pour*
Făg-ĕre (*ĭ-o*)	fūgī	[fŭgĭtum]	*fly*
Bĭb-ĕre	bĭbi	bĭbĭtum	*drink*
Ĭcĕre	ĭci³	ictum	*strike*

---

¹ Only found in Compounds.
² The form -lexi is found only in dī-līgo, neg-lĕgo, intel-lĕgo.
³ This form is non-classical.

Fi-*n*-d-ĕre	fĭdi	fissum	*cleave*
Sci-*n*-d-ĕre	scĭdi	scissum	*cut*
Vert-ĕre	verti	versum	*turn*
[-Cend-ĕre]	[-cendi]	[-censum]	*set alight*
Cūd-ĕre	cūdi	cūsum	*hammer*
[-Fend-ĕre]	[-fendi]	[-fensum]	*strike*
Mand-ĕre	mandi	mansum	*chew*
Pand-ĕre	pandi	passum	*spread*
Prehend-ĕre	prehendi	prehensum	*take, grasp*
Scand-ĕre	-scandi	-scansum	*climb*
Sīd-ĕre	sīdi[1]	—	*settle*
Lamb-ĕre	[lambi][2]	[lambĭtum]	*lick*
Verr-ĕre	verri	versum	*sweep*
Vell-ĕre	{ velli / vulsi }[3]	vulsum	*rend, pluck*
*Psall-ĕre	psalli	—	*play (chords)*
Vīs-ĕre	vīsi	—	*visit*
Fīdere	fīsus sum	—	*trust*
Compesc-ĕre	compescui	—	*restrain*
Răp-ĕre (*i*-o)	rapui	raptum	*seize*
Ăl-ĕre	ălui	altum	*nourish*
Cŏl-ĕre	cŏlui	cultum	*till*
Consŭl-ĕre	consŭlui	consultum	*consult*
Occŭl-ĕre	occŭlui	occultum	*hide*
Sĕr-ĕre	sĕrui	sertum	*join together*
*Pins-ĕre	pinsui	pistum[4]	*pound*
Tex-ĕre	texui	textum	*weave*
*Deps-ĕre	depsui	—	*knead, tan*
Stert-ĕre	stĕrtui	—	*snore*
Strĕp-ĕre	strĕpui	strĕpĭtum	*rattle*
[-Cumb-ĕre]	cŭbui	cŭbĭtum	*lie down*
Frĕm-ĕre	frĕmui	[frĕmĭtum][5]	*roar*
Gĕm-ĕre	gĕmui	[gĕmĭtum][5]	*groan*
Trĕm-ĕre	trĕmui	[trĕmĭtum][5]	*tremble*
Vŏm-ĕre	vŏmui	vŏmĭtum	*vomit*
Gign-ĕre	gĕnui	gĕnĭtum	*beget*
Pōn-ĕre	pŏsui	pŏsĭtum	*place*
Mŏl-ĕre	mŏlui	mŏlĭtum	*grind*

---

[1] More commonly, sēdi, from sēdeo.
[2] The Perf. and Sup. are only found in Priscian.
[3] Vulsi is the rarer of the two forms.
[4] There are also pinsi, pinsum, and pinsĭtum.
[5] These forms are found in Priscian only, who does not assign them to any authors.

Velle (vŏlo)	vŏlui	—	*wish*
Nolle (nŏlo)	nŏlui	—	*wish not*
Malle (mālo)	mālui	—	*wish rather*
Mĕt-ĕre	messui	messum	*mow, reap*
*Frend-ĕre	[frendui][1]	fressum	*gnash, bruise*
Lĭn-ĕre	lēvi	lĭtum	*smear*
Sĭn-ĕre	sīvi	sĭtum	*allow*
Cern-ĕre	[crēvi]	[-crētum]	*sift*
Spern-ĕre	sprēvi	sprētum	*spurn*
Stern-ĕre	strāvi	strātum	*strew*
Sĕr-ĕre	sēvi	sătum	*sow*
Cresc-ĕre	crēvi	crētum	*grow*
Quiesc-ĕre	quiēvi	[quiētum]	*rest*
Suesc-ĕre	suēvi	[suētum]	*be wont*
(G)nosc-ĕre[2]	(g)nōvi	(g)nōtum	*know*
Pasc-ĕre	pāvi	pastum	*feed*
Cŭp-ĕre (ĭ-o)	cŭpīvi	cŭpītum	*desire*
Pĕt-ĕre	pĕtīvi	petītum	*demand*
Quaer-ĕre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	*seek*
*Rŭd-ĕre	[rŭdīvi][3]	[rŭdītum]	*bray*
Săp-ĕre (ĭ-o)	sapĭi (-īvi)[4]	—	*savour*
Tĕr-ĕre	trīvi	trītum	*rub, bruise*
Arcess-ĕre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	*fetch*
Incess-ĕre	incessīvi	incessītum	*attack*
Căpess-ĕre	căpessīvi	căpessītum	*take in hand*
Făcess-ĕre	făcessīvi	făcessītum	*cause*
Lăcess-ĕre	lăcessīvi	lăcessītum	*provoke*
Dīc-ĕre	dixi	dictum	*say*
Dūc-ĕre	duxi	ductum	*lead*
[-Lăc-ĕre (ĭ-o)][5]	[-lexi]	[-lectum]	*entice*
[-Spĕc-ĕre (ĭ-o)][6]	[-spexi]	[-spectum]	*espy*
Cŏqu-ĕre	coxi	coctum	*cook*
Cing-ĕre	cinxi	cinctum	*surround*
Fing-ĕre	finxi	fictum	*fashion*
*Flīg-ĕre	flixi	flictum	*smite*

[1] Frendui is not found; frendēre is found.

[2] Nosco has dropt g which reappears in agnosco, agnōvi, agnĭtum; cognosco, cognōvi, cognĭtum; ignosco, ignōvi: Adj. ignōtus.

[3] Rŭdīvi is only in Apuleius; rŭdītum, nowhere.

[4] But dēsĭpio, dēsĭpui. Augustine has săpui.

[5] Compare al-lĭcio, il-lĭcio, pel-lĭcio, pro-lĭcio, which make -lexi, -lectum. But ēlĭcio makes ēlĭcui, ēlĭcĭtum.

[6] Compare (circum- con- de- di- in- per- pro- re-)-spĭcio -spexi -spectum. So aspĭcio, suspĭcio.

Frīg-ĕre	frixi	frictum	*roast, fry*
Jung-ĕre	junxi	junctum	*join*
*Ling-ĕre	[-linxi]	[-linctum]	*lick*
*Mung-ĕre	[-munxi]	[-munctum]	*wipe*
Ping-ĕre	pinxi	pictum	*paint*
Plang-ĕre	planxi	planctum	*beat*
Rĕg-ĕre [1]	rexi	rectum	*rule*
String-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	*bind*
Sūg-ĕre	suxi	suctum	*suck*
Tĕg-ĕre	texi	tectum	*cover*
*Stingu-ĕre	[-stinxi]	[-stinctum]	—
Tingu-ĕre	tinxi	tinctum	*stain*
Ungu-ĕre	unxi	unctum	*anoint*
Ningu-ĕre	ninxi	—	*snow*
Ang-ĕre	[anxi]	[anctum] [2]	*squeeze*
*[Clang-ĕre]	—	—	*rattle*
Trăh-ĕre	traxi	tractum	*draw*
Vĕh-ĕre	vexi	vectum	*carry*
Vīv-ĕre	vixi	victum	*live*
Stru-ĕre	struxi	structum	*pile*
Fīg-ĕre	·fixi	fixum	*fix*
Flu-ĕre	fluxi	fluxum	*flow*
Merg-ĕre	mersi	mersum	*drown*
Sparg-ĕre [3]	sparsi	sparsum	*sprinkle*
Terg-ĕre	tersi	tersum	*wipe*
Flect-ĕre	flexi	flexum	*bend*
Nect-ĕre	{ nexi / nexui }	nexum	*twine*
Pect-ĕre	pexi	pexum	*comb*
Plect-ĕre	—	[-plexum]	{ *plait* / *smite* }
Mitt-ĕre	mīsi	missum	*send*
Quăt-ĕre (*i*-o) [4]	—	quassum	*shake*
Cēd-ĕre	cessi	cessum	*yield*
Claud-ĕre	clausi	clausum	*shut*
Dīvĭd-ĕre	dīvīsi	dīvīsum	*divide*
Laed-ĕre	laesi	laesum	*hurt*
Lūd-ĕre	lūsi	lūsum	*play*

[1] Compare arrĭgo, corrĭgo, dīrĭgo; (e- por-)-rigo -rexi -rectum. Also pergo, perrexi, perrectum; surgo, *rise*, surrexi, surrectum, with its compounds: (as con- ex- in- re-)-surg -surrexi -surrectum.

[2] Priscian mentions these forms, but no authorities for them.

[3] Compare conspergo, dispergo; (ad- in- re-)-spergo -spersi -spersum.

[4] Compare (con- dis- ex- in- per-)-cŭtio -cussi -cussum. So rĕper-cŭtio.

Plaud-ēre	plausi	plausum	*clap hands*
Rād-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	*shave*
Rōd-ĕre	rōsi	rōsum	*gnaw*
Trūd-ĕre	trūsi	trūsum	*thrust*
Vād-ĕre	[-vāsi]	[-vāsum]	*go*

Carp-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	*pluck*
*Clĕp-ĕre	clepsi	cleptum	*steal*
{ Rēp-ĕre	repsi	[reptum]	*creep*
{ Serp-ĕre	serpsi	[serptum]	*crawl*
{ Scalp-ĕre	scalpsi	scalptum	*scratch*
{ Sculp-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	*grave*
*Glūb-ĕre	[glupsi]	[gluptum]	*peel*
Nūb-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	*wed*
Scrīb-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	*write*

Cōm-ĕre	compsi	comptum	*dress hair*
Dēm-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	*take away*
Prōm-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	*take forth*
Sūm-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	*take up*
Temn-ĕre	tempsi	temptum	*despise*

| Prĕm-ĕre [1] | pressi | pressum | *press* |

| Gĕr-ĕre | gessi | gestum | *carry on* |
| Ūr-ĕre | ussi | ustum | *burn* |

Ăcu-ĕre	ăcui	ăcūtum	*sharpen*
Argu-ĕre	argui	argūtum	*prove*
Exu-ĕre	exui	exūtum	*put off*
Indu-ĕre	indui	indūtum	*put on*
Imbu-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	*tinge*
Lu-ĕre	lui	— [2]	*atone*
Mĭnu-ĕre	mĭnui	mĭnūtum	*lessen*
Nu-ĕre	nui	— [2]	*nod*
Spu-ĕre	spui	spūtum	*spit*
Stătu-ĕre	stătui	stătūtum	*set up*
Sternu-ĕre	sternui	[sternūtum]	*sneeze*
Su-ĕre	sui	sūtum	*sew*
Trĭbu-ĕre	trĭbui	trĭbūtum	*assign, pay*
Solv-ĕre	solvi	sŏlūtum	*loose, pay*
Volv-ĕre	volvi	vŏlūtum	*roll*

---

[1] Compare imprĭmo, supprĭmo; (com- de- ex- op- re-)-prĭmo -pressi -pressum.

[2] No Supine is found; but the fut. part. luĭtūrus points to luĭtum as Supine; and abnuĭtūrus to nuĭtum for nuo.

Ru-ĕre	rui	rūtum (rŭĭtum)	*rush*
*Batu-ĕre	batui	—	*beat*
*-Gru-ĕre	-grui	—	*cry like a crane*
Mĕtu-ĕre	mĕtui	—	*fear*
Plu-ĕre	plui or plūvi	—	*rain*

Fung-i	functus	*perform*
Nīt-i	nīsus (nixus)	*strive*
Plect-i	[-plexus]	*twine*
Păt-i (*i*-or)	passus	*suffer*
Ūti	ūsus	*use*
Grăd-i (*i*-or)	gressus	*step*
Lāb-i	lapsus	*glide, fall*
Mŏr-i (*i*-or)	mortuus	*die*
Quĕr-i	questus	*complain*
Fru-i	fruĭtus	*enjoy*
Lŏqu-ī	locūtus	*speak*
Sĕqu-i	secūtus	*follow*
Apisc-i	aptus	*obtain*
[-Mĕnisc-i][1]	[-mentus]	*have in mind*
Expergisc-i	experrectus	*wake up*
Fătisc-i	fessus	*be weary*
(g)nasc-i	(g)nātus	*be born*
Irasc-i	īrātus	*be angry*
Nancisc-i	nactus *or* nanctus	*find*
Oblīvisc-i	oblītus	*forget*
Păcisc-i	pactus	*bargain*
Prŏficisc-i	prŏfectus	*set out*
Ulcisc-i	ultus	*avenge*
Vesc-i	—	*feed*
Līqu-i	—	*melt*
*Ring-i	—	*grin*

[1] Compare com-mĭniscor, -mentus, 3; rĕ-mĭniscor, 3.

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH MANY OF THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.

(Alphabetically arranged.[1])

Abdo	-ĕre	abdĭdi	abdĭtum	*hide*
Ăbĭgo	-ĕre	ăbēgi	ăbactum	*drive away*
Ăbōleo	-ĕre	ăbōlēvi	ăbōlĭtum	*destroy*
Abrĭpĭo	-ĕre	abrĭpui	abreptum	*snatch away*
Accendo	-ĕre	accendi	accensum	*set on fire*
Accumbo	-ĕre	accŭbui	accŭbitum	*recline at table*
Accurro	-ĕre	accŭcurri *and* accursum		*run up*
		accurri		
Acquīro	-ĕre	acquīsīvi	acquīsītum	*acquire*
Addo	-ĕre	addĭdi	addĭtum	*add*
Ădeo	-īre	ădii	ădĭtum	*go to*
Ădĭmo	-ĕre	ădēmi	ădemptum	*take away*
Adjŭvo	-āre	adjūvi	adjūtum	*help*
Ădōleo	-ēre	ădōlŭi	ădultum	*to honour in wor-ship*
Ădōlesco	-ĕre	ădōlēvi	ădultum	*grow up*
Agnosco	-ĕre	agnōvi	agnĭtum	*recognize*
Ăgo	-ĕre	ēgi	actum	*do, act, drive*
Algeo	-ēre	alsi	—	*be cold*
Allĭcio	-ĕre	allexi	allectum	*entice*
Ălo	-ĕre	ălui	altum [2]	*feed, nourish*
Ămĭcio	-īre	[ămĭcui & -ixi]	ămictum	*clothe*
Ămitto	-ĕre	āmīsi	āmissum	*lose*
Amplector	-i	amplexus (sum)	—	*embrace*
Ango	-ĕre	—	—	*squeeze*
Anquīro	-ĕre	anquīsīvi	anquīsītum	*examine into*
Antecello	-ĕre	—	—	*surpass*
Ăpĕrio	-īre	ăpĕrui	ăpertum	*open*
Appello [3]	-ĕre	appŭli	appulsum	*put into shore*

---

[1] The object of this list is to test the memory of the pupil. Looking at the first column, and covering the other columns with his hand, he can repeat the Perfects and Supines without having the guidance which is necessarily furnished by the grouping in List I.

[2] Ālltum was introduced in the post-Augustan age, possibly to distinguish it from the adj. altus *high*.

[3] Distinguish this word from appello, appellāre, -āvi, -ātum, *call*.

Applĭco	-āre	applĭcui *and* applĭcāvi	applĭcĭtum *and* applĭcātum	*apply*
Arcesso	-ĕre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	*send for*
Ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum (neut.)	*take fire*
Arguo	-ĕre	argui	argūtum	*prove*
Ascendo	-ĕre	ascendi	ascensum	*ascend*
Attendo	-ĕre	attendi	attentum	*attend*
Audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	*dare*
Aufūgio	-ĕre	aufūgi	—	*flee away*
Aufĕro	-erre	abstŭli	ablātum	*carry away*
Augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	*increase*
Bĭbo	-ĕre	bĭbi	—	*drink*
Cădo	-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	cāsum	*fall*
Caedo	-ĕre	cĕcīdi	caesum	*cut, beat, kill*
Căno	-ĕre	cĕcĭni	cantum	*sing*
Căpesso	-ĕre	căpessīvi	căpessītum	*seize, take hold of*
Căpio	-ĕre	cēpi	captum	*take*
Carpo	-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	*pluck*
Căveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	*beware*
Cēdo	-ĕre	cessi	cessum	*yield*
Conseo	-ēre	censui	censum	*vote*
Cerno [1]	-ĕre	—	—	*discern*
Cieo	cĭēre	[cīvi	cĭtum]	*stir up*
Cio	cīre	[cīvi	cītum]	*stir up*
Cingo	-ĕre	cinxi	cinctum	*surround*
Circumcīdo	-ĕre	circumcīdi	circumcīsum	*clip*
Clango	-ĕre	—	—	*resound*
Claudo [2]	-ĕre	clausi	clausum	*shut*
Cŏ-ĕmo	-ĕre	cŏ-ēmi	cŏ-emptum	*buy up*
[Coepio]	-isse	coeptus (sum)	*used with Pass. Inf.*	*begin*
Cognosco	-ĕre	cognōvi	cognĭtum	*find out, know*
Cōgo	-ĕre	cŏēgi	cŏactum	*compel*
Collĭgo	-ĕre	collēgi	collectum	*collect*
Cŏlo	-ĕre	cŏlui	cultum	*till*
Cŏmo	-ĕre	compsi	comptum	*adorn*
Compello [3]	-ĕre	compŭli	compulsum	*drive together*
Compĕrio	-īre	compĕri	compertum	*ascertain*
Compesco	-ĕre	compescui	—	*restrain*
Compleo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	*fill*
Comprĕ-hendo } *or*	-ĕre	comprehendi	comprehensum	*seize*
Comprendo	-ĕre	comprendi	comprensum	*seize*

[1] The Perfect and Supine crēvi and crētum are rarely used in this sense.
[2] The compounds of claudo are similar, except that they change au into ū, *e.g.* circumclūdo, conclūdo, &c.
[3] Distinguish this from compellāre, *accost*.

Concīdo	-ĕre	concīdi	concīsum	*cut in pieces*
Concĭdo	-ĕre	concĭdi	—	*fall in a heap*
Concĭno	-ĕre	concĭnui	—	*play together, harmonize*
Concurro	-ĕre	concurri	concursum	*run together*
Concŭtio	-ĕre	concussi	concussum	*shake together*
Condo	-ĕre	condĭdi	condĭtum	*found*
Confīdo	-ĕre	confīsus (sum)	—	*confide*
Conjĭcio	-ĕre	conjēci	conjectum	*throw*
Cōnīveo	-ĕre	[cōnīvi & -ixi]	—	*wink*
Conscendo	-ĕre	conscendī	conscensum	*go up*
Consentio	-īre	consensi	consensum	*agree*
Consĕro	-ĕre	consēvi	consĭtum	*sow, plant*
Consĕro	-ĕre	consĕrui	consertum	*put close together*
Consīdo	-ĕre	consēdi	consessum	*sit down*
Conspergo	-ĕre	conspersi	conspersum	*sprinkle*
Consŭlo	-ĕre	consŭlui	consultum	*consult*
Contingo	-ĕre	contĭgi	contactum	*touch, happen*
Convello	-ĕre	convelli	convulsum	*tear up*
Converto	-ĕre	converti	convorsum	*turn towards*
Cŏquo	-ĕre	coxi	coctum	*cook*
Crēdo	-ĕre	crēdĭdi	crēdĭtum	*believe*
Crĕpo	-āre	crĕpui	crĕpĭtum	*creak*
Cresco	-ĕre	crēvi	[crētum]	*grow*
Cŭbo	-āre	cŭbui	cŭbĭtum	*lie down*
[-cumbō	-ĕre	-cŭbui	-cŭbĭtum	*lie down*]
Cūdo	-ĕre	cūdi	cūsum	*fashion*
Cŭpio	cupĕre	cŭpīvi	cŭpĭtum	*covet, desire*
Curro	-ĕre	cŭcurri	cursum	*run*
[-cŭtio¹	-ĕre	-cussi	-cussum	*shake*]
Dēcerno	-ĕre	dēcrēvi	dēcretum	*decree*
Dēcĭdo	-ĕre	dēcĭdi	—	*fall down*
Dēcīdo	-ĕre	dēcīdi	dēcīsum	*decide*
Dēcurro	-ĕre	dēcŭcurri and decurri	dēcursum	*run a course*
Dēdisco	-ĕre	dēdĭdĭci	—	*unlearn*
Dēfendo	-ĕre	dēfendi	dēfensum	*defend*
Dēgo	-ĕre	—	—	*live*
Dēleo	-ĕre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	*blot out*
Dēmo	-ĕre	dempsī	demptum	*take away*
Dēpello	-ĕre	dēpŭli	dēpulsum	*drive down*
Dēpendeo	-ĕre	—	—	*hang down* (ĭntr.)
Dēpendo	-ĕre	dēpendi	dēpensum	*pay down*
Dēposco	-ĕre	dēpoposci	—	*demand*
Descendo	-ĕre	descendi	descensum	*descend*
Dēsĭno	-ĕre	dēsĭi [-ivi]	[dēsĭtum]	*cease*

¹ A form of quătio only found in the compounds concŭtio, percŭtio, &c.

Despondeo	-ēre	despondi [-spopondi]	desponsum	*pledge*
Dētergeo	-ēre	dētersi	dētersum	*wipe away*
Dēvincio	-īre	dēvinxi	dēvinctum	*bind down*
Dīco	-ēre	dixi	dictum	*say*
Diffīdo	-ēre	diffīsus (sum)	—	*distrust*
Diffindo	-ēre	diffīdi	diffissum	*cleave asunder*
Dīgēro	-ēre	dīgessi	dīgestum	*set apart*
Dignosco	-ēre	—	—	*distinguish*
Dīlīgo	-ēre	dīlexi	dīlectum	*love*
Dīlūcesco	-ēre	dīluxi	—	*dawn*
Dīmētior	-īri	dīmensus (sum)	—	*measure out*
Dīmīco	-āre	dīmīcāvi & ui	dīmīcātum	*fight*
Dīrīmo	-ēre	dīrēmi	dīremptum	*break off, or up*
Dīrīpio	-ēre	dīrīpui	dīreptum	*tear asunder*
Dīrumpo	-ēre	dīrūpi	dīruptum	*burst asunder*
Discēdo	-ēre	discessi	discessum	*depart*
Discindo	-ēre	discīdi	discissum	*rend asunder*
Disco	-ēre	dīdīci	—	*learn*
Discumbo	-ēre	discŭbui	discŭbĭtum	*recline (at dinner)*
Discurro	-ere	discurri	discursum	*run in different directions*
Discŭtio	-ēre	discussi	discussum	*shake asunder*
Disjĭcio	-ēre	disjēci	disjectum	*cast asunder*
Dispergo	-ēre	dispersi	dispersum	*scatter apart*
Dissentio	-īre	dissensi	dissensum	*disagree with*
Dissēro	-ēre	dissērui	[dissertum]	*set forth distinctly, discourse*
Dissĭdeo	-ēre	dissēdi	dissessum	*be at variance with*
Dissĭlio	-īre	dissĭlui	dissultum	*leap apart*
Dissolvo	-ēre	dissolvi	dissolūtum	*dissolve*
Dissuādeo	-ēre	dissuāsi	dissuāsum	*dissuade*
Distinguo	-ēre	distinxi	distinctum	*discriminate*
Disto	-āre	—	—	*be distant*
Distrăho	-ēre	distraxi	distractum	*draw apart*
Dīvello	-ēre	dīvelli	dīvulsum	*rend asunder*
Dīvĭdo	-ēre	dīvīsi	dīvīsum	*divide*
Do	dăre	dēdi	dătum	*give*
Dŏceo	-ēre	dŏcui	doctum	*teach*
Dŏmo	-āre	dŏmui	dŏmĭtum	*tame*
Dūco	-ēre	duxi	ductum	*lead*
Ēdisco	-ēre	ēdĭdĭci	—	*learn off*
Ēdo	ēdĕre & esse	ēdi	ēsum	*eat*
Ēdo	-ēre	ēdĭdi	ēdĭtum	*give out*
Effervesco	-ēre	efforbui	—	*effervesce*

Effulgeo	-ēre [1]	effulsi	effulsum	*shine forth*
Effundo	-ĕre	effūdi	effūsum	*pour forth*
Elĭcio	-ĕre	ēlĭcui	ēlĭcĭtum	*entice forth*
Elīdo	-ĕre	ēlīsi	ēlīsum	*knock out*
Elĭgo	-ĕre	ēlēgi	ēlectum	*choose out*
Ementior	-īri	ēmentitus (sum)	—	*lie outright*
Emĭco	-āre	ēmĭcŭi	ēmĭcatum	*flash out*
Emo	-ĕre	ēmi	emptum	*buy, take*
Enĕco	-āre	ēnĕcui	ēnectum	*kill*
		[ēnĕcavi]	[ēnĕcātum] [2]	
Enĭteo	-ēre	ēnĭtui	—	*shine out*
Enĭtor	-i	ēnīsus (enixus)	—	*strive hard*
Eo	īre	īvi	ĭtum	*go*
Evello	-ĕre	ēvelli	ēvulsum	*tear out*
Evŏmo	-ĕre	ēvŏmui	ēvŏmĭtum	*vomit forth*
Excēdo	-ĕre	excessi	excessum	*retire from*
Excello	-ĕre	excellui	[excelsum]	*excel*
Excerpo	-ĕre	excerpsi	excerptum	*pick out*
Excīdo	-ĕre	excīdi	excīsum	*hew out*
Excĭdo	-ere	excĭdi	—	*fall out*
Excŏlo	-ĕre	excŏlui	excultum	*cultivate carefull*
Excŭbo	-āre	excŭbŭi	excŭbĭtum	*lie out of doors*
Excūdo	-ĕre	excūdi	excūsum	*hammer out*
Excurro	-ĕre	excŭcurri	excursum	*run out*
Excŭtio	-ĕre	excussi	excussum	*shake out*
Exĕdo	-ĕre	exēdi	exēsum	*gnaw out*
Exĭmo	-ĕre	exēmi	exemptum	*take out*
Exŏlesco	-ĕre	exŏlēvi	exŏlētum	*grow out of date*
Expello	-ĕre	expŭli	expulsum	*expel*
Expergis-cor	-i	experrectus (sum)	—	*awake oneself*
Expĕrior	-īri	expertus sum	—	*test*
Expĕto	-ĕre	expĕtīvi	expĕtītum	*seek out*
Expleo	-ēre	explēvi	explētum	*fill up*
Explĭco	-āre	explicāvi (-ui)	explĭcātum (-ĭtum)	*unfold*
Explōdo	-ĕre	explōsi	explōsum	*hiss off the stage*
Expōno	-ĕre	expŏsui	expŏsitum	*set forth*
Exposco	-ĕre	expŏposci	—	*demand earnestly*
Exprĭmo	-ĕre	expressi	expressum	*squeeze out*
Exquīro	-ĕre	exquīsivi	exquīsītum	*search out*
Exscindo	-ĕre	exscĭdi	exscissum	*extirpate*
Exsĕco	-āre	exsĕcui	exsectum	*cut out*
Exsĕro	-ĕre	exsĕrui	exsertum	*protrude*

---

[1] So in Virgil. Perhaps the verb should be effulgo, 3.
[2] The forms in -āvi, -ātum, are less classical; but note that nĕco is of the first conj., and regular.

Exsĭlio	-īre	exsĭlui	exsultum	*leap forth*
Exsisto	-ĕre	exstĭti	[exstĭtum]	*come forth, arise*
Exsolvo	-ĕre	exsŏlui	exsŏlūtum	*unloose*
Exstinguo	-ĕre	exstinxi	exstinctum	*extinguish*
Exsto	-āre	exstĭti	—	*project, be extant*
Exstrŭo	-ĕre	exstruxi	exstructum	*heap up*
Exsurgo	-ĕre	exsurrexi	exsurrectum	*rise up, recover*
Extendo	-ĕre	extendi	extentum (-tensum)	*stretch out*
Exuo	-ĕre	exŭi	exūtum	*put off*
Făcesso	-ĕre	făcessīvi	făcessītum	*accomplish*
Făcio	făcĕre	fēci	factum	*do, make*
Fallo	-ĕre	fĕfelli	falsum	*deceive*
Farcio	-īre	farsi	fartum	*stuff*
Făteor	-ēri	fassus (sum)	—	*confess*
Făveo	-ēre	făvi	fautum	*favour*
Fĕrio [1]	-īre	—	—	*strike*
Fĕro	ferre	tŭli	lātum	*bear*
Ferveo & vo	-ēre -ĕre	fervi *and* -bui	—	*boil*
Fīdo	-ĕre	fīsus sum	—	*trust*
Fīgo	-ĕre	fixi	fixum	*fix*
Findo	-ĕre	fĭdi	fissum	*cleave*
Fingo	-ĕre	finxi	fictum	*fashion*
Fīo	fĭĕri	factus sum	—	*be made, become*
Flecto	-ĕre	flexi	flexum	*bend*
Fleo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	*weep*
Flīgo	-ĕre	flixi	flictum	*dash*
Fluo	-ĕre	fluxi	[fluxum]	*flow*
Fŏdio	fŏdĕre	fōdi	fossum	*dig*
Fŏveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	*cherish*
Frango	-ĕre	frēgi	fractum	*break*
Frĕmo	-ĕre	frĕmui	[frĕmĭtum]	*mutter, murmur*
Frendo	-ĕre	—	fressum & frēsum	*gnash*
Frĭco	-āre	frĭcui	frictum	*rub*
Frīgeo	-ēre	frixi	—	*be cold*
Frīgo	-ĕre	frixi	frictum	*roast*
Fŭgio	fŭgĕre	fūgi	[fŭgĭtum]	*flee*
Fulcio	-īre	fulsi	fultum	*prop*
Fulgeo	-ēro	fulsi	—	*glitter*
Fundo	-ĕre	fūdi	fūsum	*pour, rout*
Fŭro [2]	-ĕre	[fŭrui]	—	*be mad*
Gaudeo	-ēre	gāvīsus sum	—	*rejoice*
Gĕmo	-ĕre	gĕmui	gĕmĭtum	*groan*
Gĕro	-ĕre	gessi	gestum	*carry on*

---

[1] The perfect forms percussi, percussum, are supplied from percŭtio.
[2] The perfect form generally supplied instead of fŭrui, insānīvi.

Gigno	-ĕre	gĕnui	gĕnĭtum	*produce*
Grădior	-i	gressus (sum)	—	*step*
Hāereo	-ēre	haesi	haesum˙	*stick*
Haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	*drain*
Ico	-ĕre	īci	ictum	*strike*
Ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	*pardon*
Illĭno	-ĕre	illēvi	illĭtum	*smear*
Illūcesco	-ĕre	illuxi	—	*dawn*
Illūdo	-ĕre	illūsi	illūsum	*make game of*
Imbuo	-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	*tinge*
Immisceo	-ēre	immiscui	immixtum(-mistum)	*intermix*
Impendeo	-ēre	—	—	*impend*
Impendo	-ĕre	impendi	impensum	*expend*
Impingo	-ĕre	impēgi	impactum	*thrust against*
Impleo	-ēre	implēvi	implētum	*fill*
Incēdo	-ĕre	incessi	incessum	*step*
Incendo	-ĕre	incendi	incensum	*set on fire*
Incesso	-ĕre	incessīvi	—	*assail*
Incĭdo	-ĕre	incĭdi	[incāsum]	*fall, light on*
Incīdo	-ĕre	incīdi	incīsum	*cut into, engrave*
Incingo	-ĕre	incinxi	incinctum	*gird*
Inclūdo	-ĕre	inclūsi	inclūsum	*shut in*
Incŏlo	-ĕre	incŏlui	incultum	*inhabit*
Incŭbo	-āre	incŭbui	incŭbĭtum	*brood over*
Incumbo	-ĕre	incŭbui	incŭbĭtum	*lean on, bend one's mind to*
Incurro	-ĕre	incurri[-cŭcurri]	incursum	*run towards, meet*
Incŭtio	-ĕre	incussi	incussum	*strike against*
Indĭgeo	-ēre	indĭgui	—	*need*
Indo ..	-ĕre	indĭdi	indĭtum	*put in, apply* ..
Indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	indultum	*indulge*
Induo	-ĕre	indui	indūtum	*put on*
Ĭneo	-īre	ĭnĭi	ĭnĭtum	*enter*
Inflŭo	-ĕre	influxi	[influxum]	*flow into*
Insĕro	-ĕre	insēvi	insĭtum	*sow in*
Insĕro	-ĕre	insĕrui	insertum	*put in, mingle:*
Insisto	-ĕre	institi	—	*stand on, persevere*
Insto	-āre	institi	[instātum]	*press on* :
Insurgo	-ĕre	insurrexi	insurrectum	*rise up, or to*
Intellĕgo	-ĕre	intellexi	intellectum	*understand*
Intendo	-ĕre	intendi	intentum, or -sum	*stretch, direct*
Intercēdo	-ĕre	intercessi	intercessum	*intervene, interpose*
Intĕreo	-īre	intĕrĭi	intĕrĭtum	*perish*
Interĭmo	-ĕre	intĕrēmi	interemptum	*destroy*
Interlĭno	-ĕre	interlēvi	interlĭtum	*smear, falsify by erasures*
Internosco	-ĕre	internōvi	—	*distinguish*

Intŏno	-āre	intŏnui	intŏnitum	*thunder*
Intorqueo	-ēre	intorsi	intortum	*twist, hurl*
Intueor	-ēri	intuĭtus (sum)	—	*look on, regard*
Invĭdeo	-ēre	invīdi	invīsum	*envy*
Jăcio	-ēre	jēci	jactum	*throw*
Jŭbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	*command*
Jungo	-ēre	junxi	junctum	*join*
Jŭvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	*help*
Lābor	-i	lapsus (sum)	—	*glide*
Lăcesso	-ēre	lăcessīvi	lăcessītum	*provoke*
Laedo	-ēre	laesi	laesum	*hurt*
Lambo	-ēre	lambi	—	*lick*
Lăvo	-āre[1]	lāvi	lăvātum lautum, lōtum }	*wash*
Lĕgo	-ēre	lēgi	lectum	*read, choose*
Lĭbet	-ēre	lĭbĭtum est		*it pleases, suits*
Lingo	-ēre	linxi	linctum	*lick*
Lĭno	-ēre	līvi and lēvi	lĭtum	*smear*
Linquo	-ēre	līqui	[lictum]	*leave*
Lūceo	-ēre	luxi	—	*shine*
Lūdo	-ēre	lūsi	lūsum	*play*
Lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	—	*mourn*
Luo	-ēre	lui	luĭtum	*wash, atone*
Mālo	mallo	mālui	—	*prefer*
Mando	-ēre	mandi	mansum	*chew*
Măneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	*remain*
Mĕdeor	-ēri	—	— —	*heal*
———	mĕmĭn- isse	mĕmĭni	—	*remember*
Mergo	-ēre	mersi	mersum	*drown*
Mētior[3]	-īri	mensus (sum)	—	*measure*
Mĕto	-ēre	messui	messum	*mow, reap*
Mĕtuo	-ēre	mĕtui	—	*fear*
Mĭco	-āre	mĭcui	— —	*glitter*
Mĭnuo	-ēre	mĭnui	mĭnūtum	*lessen*
Misceo	-ēre	miscui	mistum or mixtum	*mix*
Mĭsĕreor	-ēri	mĭsĕrĭtus (sum)	—	*pity*
Mitto	-ēre	mīsi	missum	*send*
Mŏlo	-ēre	mŏlui	mŏlĭtum	*grind*
Mordeo	-ēre	mŏmordi	morsum	*bite*
Mŏrĭor	-i	mortŭus (sum)	—	*die*
Mŏveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	*move*
Mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	*soothe*

---

[1] There is an ante-classical and poetical form lăvĕre.
[2] The form lĭbuit is perhaps not found in Cicero.
[3] Distinguish this from mentior, mentīri, mentītus, *lie.*

Mulgeo	-ēre	mulsi	mulctum	*milk*
Nanciscor	-i	nactus, nanctus (sum)	—	*obtain*
Nascor	-i	nātus (sum)	—	*be born*
Necto	-ĕre	nexui & nexi	nexum	*tie, bind*
Neglĕgo	-ĕre	neglexi	neglectum	*neglect*
Neo	nēre	nēvi	nētum	*spin*
Ningo	-ĕre	ninxi	—	*snow*
Nĭteo	-ēre	—	—	*shine*
Nĭtor	-i	nīsus *and* nixus	—	*strive*
Nōlo	nolle	nōlui	—	*be unwilling*
Nosco [1]	-ĕre	nōvi	nōtum	*come to know*
Nūbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	*be married*
Obeo	-īre	ŏbĭi *and* īvi	—	*go towards, down*
Oblīno	-ĕre	oblēvi	oblītum	*besmear*
Oblīviscor	-i	oblītus (sum)	—	*forget*
Obrēpo	-ĕre	obrepsi	obreptum	*creep up to*
Obrŭo	-ĕre	obrui	obrŭtum	*overwhelm*
Obsĭdeo	-ēre	obsēdi	obsessum	*besiege*
Obsisto	-ĕre	obstĭti	[obstĭtum]	*oppose*
Obsōlesco	-ĕre	obsōlēvi	obsŏlētum	*wear out*
Obsto	-āre	obstĭti	obstātum	*stand in the way of*
Obstringo	-ĕre	obstrinxi	obstrictum	*bind (by oath)*
Obtĕro	-ĕre	obtrīvi	obtrītum	*trample underfoot*
Ocŏĭdo	-ĕre	occĭdi	occīsum	*slay*
Occĭdo	-ĕre	occĭdi	occāsum	*fall, die*
Occŭlo	-ĕre	occŭlui	occultum	*hide*
Occurro	-ĕre	occurri	occursum	*meet, resist*
——	ōdisse	ōdi	[ōsum]	*hate*
Offendo	-ĕre	offendi	offensum	*knock against*
Offero	-erre	obtŭli	oblātum	*offer*
Ŏmitto	-ĕre	ōmīsi	ōmissum	*pass over*
Ŏpĕrio	-īre	ŏpĕrui	ŏpertum	*cover*
Oppōno	-ĕre	oppōsui	oppŏsĭtum	*put in the way*
Opprĭmo	-ĕre	oppressi	oppressum	*press down, over-power*
Ordior	-īri	orsus (sum)	—	*commence*
Ŏrior	-īri	ortus (sum)	—	*arise*
Păciscor	-i	pactus (sum)	—	*bargain*
Pando	-ĕre	pandi	passum & pansum	*expand, spread*
Pango	-ĕre	pĕpĭgi / pēgi / panxi	pactum / panctum	*frame, fasten*
Parco	-ĕre	pĕperci	parsum	*spare*

---

[1] Nosco means, *I make acquaintance with;* nōvi means, *I have made the acquaintance of,* i.e. *I know.*

Pario [1]	-ĕre	pĕpĕri	partum	*bring forth*
Pasco	-ĕre	pāvi	pastum	*feed*
Pāveo	-ēre	pāvi	—	*fear*
Pecto	-ĕre	pexui *and* pexi	pexum	*comb*
Pello	-ĕre	pĕpŭli	pulsum	*drive away*
Pellĭcio	-ĕre	pellexi	pellectum	*allure*
Pendĕo	-ēre	pĕpendi	—	*hang (intr.)*
Pendo	-ĕre	pĕpendi	pensum	*hang, weigh (tr.)*
Pĕrăgo	-ĕre	perēgi	peractum	*complete*
Percello	-ĕre	percŭli	perculsum	*strike (with terror)*
Pĕrcŭtio	-ĕre	percussi	percussum	*strike*
Perdo	-ĕre	perdĭdi	perdĭtum	*lose, destroy*
Pergo	-gĕre	perrexi	perrectum	*continue*
Pĕrĭmo	-ĕre	perēmi	peremptum	*make away with*
Perlĕgo	-ĕre	perlēgi	perlectum	*read through*
Perpĕtĭor	-i	perpessus (sum)	—	*endure*
Persto	-āre	perstĭti	perstātum	*persevere*
Pĕto	-ĕre	pĕtīvi & pĕtii	pĕtītum	*seek*
Pingo	-ĕre	pinxi	pictum	*paint*
Pinso	-ĕre	pinsi & pinsui	pinsum	*pound*
Plango	-ĕre	planxi	planctum	*beat*
Plaudo	-ĕre	plausi	plausum	*clap hands*
Plecto	-ĕre	—	—	*lash*
Plecto	-ĕre	plexui, plexi	plexum	*plait*
[Pleo	plĕre	plēvi	plētum	*fill*]
Plico	-āre	plĭcui	plĭcatum & plĭcĭtum	*fold*
Plŭo	-ĕre	plŭit *and* plŭvit	—	*rain*
Pōno	-ĕre	pŏsui	pŏsĭtum	*place*
Posco	-ĕre	pŏposci	—	*demand*
Possum [2]	posse	pŏtui	—	*be able*
Pŏto	-āre	pŏtāvi	pŏtātum & pōtum	*drink*
Praecăveo	-ēre	praecāvi	praecautum	*take precautions*
Praecello	-ĕre	—	—	*excel*
Praecīdo	-ĕre	praecīdi	praecīsum	*cut off, abridge*
Praecĭno	-ĕre	praecĭnui	praecentum	*play before, fore-tell*
Praecurro [3]	-ĕre	praecŭcurri	praecursum	*precede*
Praedīco [4]	-ĕre	praedixi	praedictum	*predict*
Praeeo	-īre	praeii, *or* -īvi	praeĭtum	*go before, dictate*
Praesto	-āre	praestĭti	praestātum [-ĭtum]	*excel, answer for*

[1] Distinguish this from pāreo, pārēre, pārui, pārĭtum, *obey.*
[2] Distinguish this from the forms of the regular Verb pŏtior, *I gain possession of.*
[3] Note that here, and in excurro, the longer form of the Perfect is the more common.
[4] Distinguish this from praedĭco, praedĭcāre, praedĭcavi, praedĭcātum, *proclaim.*

P

Praetexo	-ĕre	praetexui	praetextum	*border, pretend*
Prandeo	-ēre	prandi	pransum	*lunch, dine*
Prĕhendo	-ĕre	prĕhendi	prensum	*seize, grasp*
Prĕmo	-ĕre	pressi	pressum	*press*
Prŏcumbo	-ĕre	prŏcŭbui	prŏcŭbĭtum	*fall (on one's knees, wounded, &c.)*
Prŏdeo	-īre	prŏdĭi	prŏdĭtum	*go forth*
Prŏdo	-ĕre	prŏdĭdi	prŏdĭtum	*betray*
Prŏficiscor	-i	prŏfectus (sum)	—	*set out*
Prŏfĭteor	-ēri	prŏfessus (sum)	—	*avow*
Prŏfundo	-ĕre	prŏfūdi	prŏfūsum	*pour forth*
Prŏmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	*take forth*
Prŏmŏveo	-ēre	prŏmōvi	prŏmōtum	*move forward*
Prŏpello	-ĕre	prŏpŭli	prŏpulsum	*drive before one*
Proscribo	-ĕre	proscripsi	proscriptum	*publish, proscribe*
Prŏvĭdeo	-ēre	prŏvīdi	prŏvisum	*foresee, provide*
Psallo	-ĕre	psalli	—	*play on harp*
Pungo	-ĕre	pŭpŭgi	punctum	*prick*
Quaero	-ĕre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	*seek*
Quătio	quătĕre		quassum	*shake*
Queo	quīre	quīvi	quĭtum	*be able*
Quĕror	-i	questus (sum)		*complain*
Quiesco	-ĕre	quiēvi	quiētum	*rest*
Rādo	-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	*scrape*
Răpio	răpĕre	răpui	raptum	*seize*
Rĕcĭdo	-ĕre	reccĭdi [1]	rĕcāsum	*fall back, relapse*
Rĕcīdo	-ĕre	rĕcĭdi	rĕcīsum	*lop, retrench*
Rĕcumbo	-ĕre	rĕcŭbui	—	*lie down*
Reclūdo	-ĕre	reclūsi	reclūsum	*disclose*
Reddo	-ĕre	reddĭdi	reddĭtum	*restore, render*
Rĕdeo	-īre	rĕdĭi	rĕdĭtum	*return*
Rĕdigo	-ĕre	rĕdēgi	rĕdactum	*bring back, reduce*
Rĕdĭmo	-ere	rĕdēmi	rĕdemptum	*buy back, buy up*
Rĕfello	-ĕre	rĕfelli	—	*refute*
Rĕfercio	-īre	rĕfersi	rĕfertum	*cram*
Rĕfĭgo	-ĕre	rĕfixi	rĕfixum	*unfasten*
Rĕdŏleo	-ĕre	rĕdŏlui	—	*smell of*
Refrīgesco	-ĕre	refrixi	—	*grow cool, flag*
Refringo	-ĕre	rĕfrēgi	refractum	*break open, destroy*
Rēgero	-ĕre	rēgessi	rēgestum	*cast back*
Rĕlĕgo [2]	-ĕre	rĕlēgi	rĕlectum	*gather up, get through again.*
Rĕmaneo	-ēre	rĕmansi	—	*stay behind*

---

[1] Other verbs that lengthen compound re- in the perfect, are, rettŭli and reppĕri.

[2] Distinguish this from rēlēgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *banish.*

Rěor	-ēri	rātus (sum)	—	*think, suppose*
Rěpello	-ěre	reppŭli	rěpulsum	*drive back*
Rěpendo	-ěre	rěpendi	rěpensum	*pay back*
Rěpěrio	-īre	reppěri	rěpertum	*discover*
Rěpo	-ěre	repsi	reptum	*creep*
Rěquiro	-ěre	rěquīsīvi	rěquīsītum	*seek again*
Rescindo	-ěre	rescīdi	rescissum	*break open, down, rescind*
Rěsěco	-āre	rěsěcui	rěsectum	*prune*
Rěsĭdeo	-ēre	rěsēdi	rěsessum	*remain behind*
Rěsĭdo	-ěre	rěsēdi	—	*sit down, settle*
Rěsĭpi o o	-ěre	rěsĭpīvi *and* ui	—	*recover one's senses*
Rěsĭsto	-ěre	restĭti	—	*halt, resist*
Resperpo	-ěre	respersi	respersum	*besprinkle*
Respicio	-ěre	respexi	respectum	*have regard to*
Respondeo	-ēre	respondi	responsum	*answer*
Restinguo [1]	-ěre	restinxi	restinctum	*quench*
Resto	-āre	restĭti	—	*remain, hold out*
Rětexo	-ěre	retexui	rětextum	*unweave*
Rětundo	-ěre	rěttŭdi & rettŭdi rětūsum		*blunt*
Rěvello	-ěre	rěvelli	rěvulsum	*tear away*
Rěverto [2]	-ěre	rěverti	rěversum	*return*
Rĭdeo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	*laugh*
Rōdo	-ěre	rōsi	rōsum	*gnaw*
Rŭdo	-ěre	[rŭdīvi]	[rŭdītum]	*bray*
Rumpo	-ěre	rūpi	ruptum	*break*
Ruo	ruěre	rui	ruĭtum [rŭtum] [3]	*rush, fall*
Saepio	-īre	saepsi	saeptum	*hedge in*
Sălio	-īre	sălui	[saltum]	*leap*
Sălio	-īre	—	salītum	*salt*
Sancio	-īre	sanxi [-īvi]	sanctum [-ītum]	*render sacred, enact*
Săpio	-ěre	săpīvi *and* -ii	—.	*savour of, have taste, or wisdom*
Sarcio	-īre	sarsi	sartum	*patch*
Scăbo	-ěre	scābi	—	*scratch*
Scalpo	-ěre	scalpsi	scalptum	*scratch*
Scando	-ěre	—	—	*climb*
Scindo	-ěre	scĭdi	scissum	*cut, tear*

---

[1] The obsolete stinguo is only found (in Present forms) in Lucretius and quotations of Priscian.

[2] In the Present and Present-derived Tenses rěvertĭtur is more common: in the Perfect and Perfect-derived Tenses rěverti, rěvertěram, &c.: but the best authors use the Dep. Participle rěversus.

[3] The Fut. Part. ruĭtūrus points to sup. ruĭtum: but in an old legal word "rŭta," things dug up (on an estate), the vowel was long. In the compounds obrŭtus, ērŭtus and surrŭtus the vowel was short.

Scisco	-ĕre	scīvi	scītum	*decree*
Scrībo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	*write*
Sculpo	-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	*engrave*
Sĕco	-āre	sĕcui	sectum	*cut*
Sĕdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	*sit*
Sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	*feel*
Sĕpŭlio	-īre	sĕpĕlīvi	sĕpultum	*bury*
Sĕro	-ĕre	sĕrui	sertum	*join together*
Sĕro	-ĕre	sēvi	sătum	*sow*
Serpo	-ĕre	serpsi	serptum	*crawl*
Sīdo	-ĕre	sīdi	—	*sit down*
Singultio	-īre	singultīvi	—	*sob*
Sĭno	-ĕre	sīvi	sĭtum	*allow*
Sisto	-ĕre	—	—	*stop, make stand*
Sŏleo	-ĕre	sŏlĭtus sum	—	*be accustomed*
Solvo	-ĕre	solvi	sŏlūtum	*loosen*
Sŏno [1]	-āre	sŏnui	sŏnĭtum	*sound*
Sorbeo	-ēre	sorbui [sorpsi]	—	*suck up*
Spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	*sprinkle*
[Spĕcio	-ĕre	spexi	spectum]	*espy*
Sperno	-ĕre	sprēvi	sprētum	*despise*
Spondeo	-ēre	spŏpondi	sponsum	*pledge, promise*
Stătuo	-ĕre	stătui	stătūtum	*set up*
Sterno	-ĕre	strāvi	strātum	*strew*
Sterto	-ĕre	stertui	—	*snore*
Sto	stāre	stĕti	stătum	*stand*
Strĕpo	-ĕre	strĕpui	[strĕpĭtum]	*roar*
Strīdeo & Strīdo	-ēre & -ĕre }	strīdi	—	*creak, hiss, whizz*
Stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	*tie*
Struo	-ĕre	struxi	structum	*build, pile*
Suădeo	-ēre	suāsi	suasum	*advise, persuade*
Sŭbĕo	-īre	sŭbĭi	subĭtum	*go under, spring up*
Sŭbĭgo	-ĕre	sŭbēgi	subactum	*bring under, sub-duc*
Subnecto	-ĕre	subnexui	subnexum	*tie under*
Subruo, see surruo.				
Subsīdo	-ĕre	subsēdi	subsessum	*sink down*
Subvĕnio	-īre	subvēni	subventum	*help*
Subverto	-ĕre	subverti	subversum	*subvert*
Succēdo	-ĕre	successi	successum	*approach, follow*
Succendo	-ĕre	succendi	succensum	*set on fire*
Succurro	-ĕre	succurri	succursum	*help*
Suesco	-ĕre	suēvi	suētum	*be accustomed*
Suffĕro	-erre	sustŭli	sublātum	*endure*

---

[1] Note insŏnui and consŏnui, but rĕsŏnāvi.

Suffúndo	-ĕre	suffúdi	suffúsum	*suffuse*
Suggĕro	-ĕre	suggessi	suggestum	*supply, subjoin*
Súgo	-ĕre	suxi	suctum	*suck*
Summŏvĕo	-ēre	suminōvi	summōtum	*thrust off*
Súmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	*take*
Suo	-ĕre	—	sútum	*sew*
Suppĕto	-ĕre	suppĕtivi	suppĕtitum	*be in store, suffice*
Suppleo	-ĕre	supplēvi	supplētum	*fill up*
Suppōno	-ĕre	suppŏsui	suppŏsitum	*substitute, counterfeit*
Supprimo	-ĕre	suppressi	suppressum	*check, conceal*
Surgo	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	*arise*
Surrĕpo	-ere	currepsi	surreptum	*creep up to*
Surrĭgo [1]	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	*raise*
Surrĭpio	-ĕre	surrĭpui	surreptum	*snatch by stealth*
Surruo	-ĕre	surrui	surrútum	*undermine*
Suspendo	-ĕre	suspendi	suspensum	*suspend*
Suspĭcio	-ĕre	suspexi	suspectum	*look up to*
Tango	-ĕre	tĕtĭgi	tactum	*touch*
Tĕgo	-ĕre	texi	tectum	*cover*
Temno	-ĕre	—	—	*despise*
Tendo	-ĕre	tĕtendi	[tentum & tensum] [2]	*stretch*
Tĕneo	-ēre	tĭnui	[tentum]	*hold*
Tergeo & tergo	-ēre -ĕre }	tersi	tersum	*wipe*
Tĕro	-ĕre	trivi	trítum	*rub*
Texo	-ĕre	texui	textum	*weave*
Tinguo	-ĕre	tinxi	tinctum	*dye*
Tollo	-ĕre	sustúli [3]	sublátum [3]	*take up*
Tondeo	-ēre	tŏtondi	tonsum	*shave*
Tŏno	-āre	tŏnui	tŏnĭtum	*thunder*
Torqueo	-ēre	torsi	tortum	*twist*
Torreo	-ēre	torrui	tostum	*roast*
Trádo	-ĕre	trádĭdi	trádĭtum	*hand over*
Tráho	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	*draw*
Transeo	-ire	transĭi *and* -ivi	transĭtum	*pass over*
Transĭgo	-ĕre	transēgi	transactum	*transact*
Transĭlio	-ire	transĭlui [-ívi] [4]	—	*leap across*
Trĕmo	-ĕre	trĕmui	—	*tremble*
Trĭbuo	-ĕre	trĭbui	trĭbútum	*assign*
Trúdo	-ĕre	trúsi	trúsum	*thrust*

[1] This is the uncontracted form of surgo used transitively.
[2] These Supine forms have probably no existence, and are merely inferred from the Pass. Part. tentus and tensus.
[3] These forms do not properly belong to tollo, but are assigned to it, as it has no perfect and supine: see note on fúro above.
[4] Livy uses -ui; Plautus and Pliny, -ívi.

Tŭeor[tuor]-ēri		tuĭtus *and* tūtus (sum)	—	*regard, guard*
Tundo	-ĕre	tŭtŭdi	tūsum & tunsum	*thump*
Turgeo	-ēro	tursi	—	*swell*
Ulciscor	-i	ultus (sum)	—	*avenge myself on*
Unguo	-ĕre	unxi	unctum	*anoint*
Urgeo	-ēre	ursi	—	*urge*
Ūro	-ĕre	ussi	ustum	*burn*
Ūtor	-i	ūsus (sum)	—	*use*
Vādo	-ĕre	[vāsi]	[vasum]	*go*
Vĕho	-ĕre	vexi	vectum	*carry*
Vello	-ĕre	velli *and* vulsi	vulsum	*rend*
Vēneo	-īre	vēnii	—	*be sold*
Vĕnio	-īre	vēni	ventum	*come*
Vergo	-ĕre	[versi]	—	*bend*
Verro	-ĕre	verri	versum	*sweep*
Verto	-ĕre	verti	versum	*turn*
Vĕto	-āre	vĕtui	vĕtĭtum	*forbid*
Vĭdeo	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	*see*
Vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinctum	*bind*
Vinco	-ĕre	vīci	victum	*conquer*
Vīso	-ĕre	visi	—	*visit*
Vivo	-ĕre	vixi	victum	*live*
Vŏlo	velle	vŏlui	—	*wish*
Volvo	-ĕre	volvi	vŏlūtum	*roll*
Vŏmo	-ĕre	vŏmui	vŏmĭtum	*vomit*
Vŏveo	-ĕre	vōvi	vōtum	*vow*

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Defective Verbs coepī, *begin*, mĕmĭnī, *remember*, and ōdī, *hate*, have no Tenses except those derived from the Perfect. Thus *I remembered* is mĕmĭnĕram; *that they may remember,* or *let them remember*, mĕmĭnĕrint; *I shall remember*, mĕmĭnĕro; and the same of ōdī.

INDICATIVE.

	(1)	(2)	(3)
Perfect.	Coepī	Mĕmĭnī	Ōdi
Fut.-Perf.	Coepĕro	Mĕmĭnĕro	Ōdĕro
Pluperf.	Coepĕram	Mĕmĭnĕram	Ōdĕram

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	Coepĕrim	Mĕmĭnĕrim	Ôdĕrim
Pluperf.	Coepissem	Mĕmĭnissem	Ôdissem

IMPERATIVE.

Future.	(wanting)	Mĕmento	(wanting)
		Mĕmentōte	

INFINITIVE.

Perfect.	Coepissĕ	Mĕmĭnissĕ	Ōdissĕ

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	Coeptūrŭs	(wanting)	Ōsūrŭs

4. Aio, *I say :—*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.			*Imperfect.*	
S. Aio	—		*S.* Aiĕbam	—
Aïs	Aiās		Aiēbās	—
Aït	Aiāt		Aiĕbāt	—
P. —	—		*P.* Aiēbāmŭs	—
—	—		Aiēbātĭs	—
Aiunt	Aiant		Aiēbant	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

5. Inquăm, *say I :—*

INDICATIVE.

Present.	*Imperfect.*		*Future.*	*Perfect.*
Inquam	—			Inquĭi
Inquĭs	—		Inquĭes	Inquistī
Inquĭt	Inquiēbāt[1]		Inquiēt	—
Inquĭmŭs	—			
Inquĭtĭs	—			
Inquĭunt	—			

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	*Future.*
Inquĕ	2 *Pers.* Inquĭto.

N.B.—**Inquam** is always used after the first emphatic word in a speech, and is almost always separated from its Nominative.

Then Balbus said, " This I deny."	Tum Balbus, " Haec," inquit, " nĕgo."

---

[1] But this form is found without the e.

APPENDIX III.

HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

Take as an example :

Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in aequor
Trinacris, a positu nomen adepta loci.

I.—QUESTIONS ON THE SENTENCE.

1. The first question is, *Which is the Principal Verb?*
Ans., procurrit—*runs forth.*

2. *What is the Subject of the Principal Verb?* Ans.,
Terra, *a land.*

3. (a) *Is the Principal Verb Intransitive; or has it* (b) *a
Direct Object?* (c) *an Indirect Object?*
Ans., It is Intransitive.

4. (a) *Is there any Noun in Apposition with the Subject?*
(b) *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the
Subject, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*
Ans., (a) Trinacris (*i.e.* trin-acris, *three-promontoried*)
is sometimes a Noun (a name of Sicily), sometimes an
Adjective, and may be regarded either as in Apposition to
terra, or as agreeing with it ; (b) Adepta, from adipiscor,
is a Participle agreeing with terra, meaning *having
obtained.*

---

¹ Bear in mind that *two Adjectives* (unless connected by a Conjunction)
rarely agree with the same Noun: *many serious sorrows*, multi et graves
dolores (153). But an *Adjective and Participle* may agree with the same
Noun, without a Conjunction.

5. *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Object, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

6. The next question is to ask, *Are there any Adverbial Clauses attached to the Principal Verb? i.e.* any Clauses answering to the question (*a*) *How?* (*b*) *When?* (*c*) *Where?* (*d*) *Whence?* (*e*) *Why,* &c.

Ans. *How?* tribus scopulis, with *three rocks;* (*c*) *Where?* or *Whither?* vastum in aequor, *into the vast sea.*

7. Coming to adepta, repeat the above questions. Is it Transitive? Has it an Object? Adverbial Clauses, &c.?

Ans. (3) (*b*). The Object is nomen, *the name;* (5) loci, of *the place,* is Gen. depending on nomen (or positu); (6) *Whence?* Ans., a positu, *from its position.*[1]

8. No further questions are required for this sentence: but instead of the Participle adepta, a prose author might have written quod, or quia adepta fuerat, *because it had obtained,* and the Conjunction quod or quia would have introduced a Subordinate Sentence.

Therefore it must be borne in mind that the answer to the question (6) *How? When? Why?* &c., may be conveyed by a Subordinate Sentence introduced by a Conjunction, *because, though, when, in order that,* &c.: and this Subordinate Sentence must be taken to pieces in the same way as the Principal Sentence.

N.B.—A Subordinate Sentence may sometimes be the Subject or Object of the Principal Verb, *e.g.* " incertum est (*or* nescio) num locus a positu nomen adeptus fuerit," *it is uncertain whether the place obtained its name from its position:* here est (or nescio) is the Principal Verb, and has for its Subject (or Object) "num . . . . fuerit."

---

[1] Possibly, loci may be transposed, as is sometimes done in poetry, and may be dependent on positu: *from the position of the place.*

II.—RULES FOR THE CASES.

In order to answer the question *What Case?* it is not
enough, for example, to say that "loci is Genitive because
it means *of the place;* " the pupil must say " Genitive
Case, governed by nomen (or positu)." In other words, the
pupil *must give the Rule.*

The Rules for the Cases are as follows :—

1. Nominative.

1. *The Subject of a Verb.*

2. *In Apposition* to another Nominative.

3. *The Complementary Nominative* (Par. 260).

4. *By connection,* i.e. because it is connected with another
Nom. by some Conjunction, quam, vel, et, &c.

2. Accusative.

1. *The Subject of an Infinitive* (Par. 208, 209).

2. *The Object of a Verb.*

This includes the Accusative (often called *Cognate Ac-
cusative*) found after some Intransitive Verbs, when the
Verb and Noun are of kindred, *i.e. Cognate* meaning, *e.g.*
"lūdo ludum," *I play a game ;* "eo viam," *I go my way.*   .

3 *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 183).

4. *In Apposition* to another Accusative (Par. 123).

*5. *The Accusative of Respect* (or *the Accusative of the*
Part affected).

This is more common in poetry than in prose, especially
with Passive Participles : " tectus cālīgĭnĕ vultum," *covered*
with darkness as to his features.

6. *The Accusative of Extension* of (*a*) time or (*b*) space
(Par. 262).

---

* This mark denotes a construction more common in poetry than in
prose.

7. The *Accusative of Place Whither* (towns and small islands, Par. 249).

8. The *Exclamatory Accusative*: "me miserum!" *wretch that I am!* "O sortem infelicem," *O, unhappy fate!* (206).

9. The *Double Accusative* (after Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*) : Par. 312.

10. The (*a*) *Primary* and (*b*) *Complementary* Accusative : see Par. 259.

We thought you a second Cato.	Alterum te Catonem putabamus.
They will create you king.	Te regem creabunt.

Here the person (te) is (*a*) the *Primary* Object of the Verb, and requires (*b*) a *Complementary* Accusative, Catonem or regem, to make the meaning complete.[1]

*11. An *Adverbial Accusative* is sometimes formed from the Neuter of an Adjective, especially in poetry : " torva tuens," *looking grimly;* " dulce ridentem Lalagen," *Lalage sweetly laughing.*

3. THE DATIVE.

1. *Of the Remote Object*: after Verbs of *giving, pleasing, helping, obeying*, and their opposites (Par. 142) ; also after *Verbs Compounded of Prepositions* (Par. 192) ; after many Adjectives signifying *nearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality*, &c., and their opposites (Pars. 27, 90, 112).

*2. *Of Advantage or Disadvantage* (sometimes called " Commodi et Incommodi "):

Thou sowest for thyself.	Tibi seris.
We desire office for thee.	Tibi honores optamus.

This construction should be rarely employed by beginners in Latin Prose.

---

[1] In the *Public School Grammar* this is called the Oblique Double Accusative with Factitive Verb.

3. *Of Purpose* (Par. 268): often accompanied by the *Dat. of Advantage* or *Disadvantage*, or some other Dative :

He came for a help to us.	Venit auxilio (*Dat. of P.*) nobis (*Dat. of Advantage*).
He gave this for a present to me.	Hoc mihi (*Dat. of Recipient.*) dono (*Dat. of P.*) dedit.

4. *Of the Recipient used for the Agent*, found only with Perfect Passive, Passive Participles, especially Gerundives (Par. 168), and Verbals in -bilis.[1]

I have now made up my mind.	Mihi jam consilium captum est.

4. The Ablative (Par. 273—280).

1. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 178).

This includes the Ablative *of the Agent* with a or ab.

2. *Of the Instrument* (Par. 8).

3. *Of the Measure of Excess or Defect* (Par. 274).

4. *Of Definite Price* (Par. 273).

5. *Of Manner* (Par. 276).

This requires an Adjective joined to the Noun (Par. 181), except with a few Adverbial Ablatives : nomine, *in name ;* re, or re ipsa, *in fact ;* verbo, *in word ;* specie, *in appearance ;* jure, *rightly ;* neque injuria, *and not unnaturally ;* recte atque ordine, *in due course ;* via atque ratione, *methodically ;* vi, *forcibly ;* dolo, *craftily.*

6. *Of Quality.*

This also requires an Adjective (Par. 281).

7. *Of the Point of Time* (Par. 30, 263).

8. *Of Comparison* (Par. 63).

9. *Absolute* (Par. 196).

---

[1] The poets use this Construction with Tenses not derived from the Perfect.
    I am scarce heard by any.   Vix audior ulli.—*Ovid.*

10. Used with dignus, indignus, fretus (Par. 28, 278).[1]

11. Object of fungor, fruor, utor, potior (Par. 207).

12. (a) *Of Plenty and Want;* (b) with "opus est," "usus est"; see Par. 279.

13. *Of the Place Where* (with towns and small islands in the Third Declension, and in the Plural of the First and Second Declension); see Par. 265.

* 14. *A Poetic Local Ablative,* where Prose writers would insert the Preposition in.

15. *Of the Place Whence* (of all towns and small islands); see Par. 265.

* 16. *Of Separation* (after a few words, mostly legal, "abdico me magistratu," *I resign my office;* "moveo te senatu," *I expel you from the senate*").

Most of the Verbs (Par. 8) which allow an *Abl. of Separation* in Poetry require or allow a Preposition in Prose.

17. *Of Origin,* after natus, ortus, genitus, satus, cretus.

5. The Genitive.

Genitives may be divided into two large classes, those in which the Gen. can be readily replaced (i.) by a Subject; (ii.) by an Object. The former are called *Subjective;* the latter, *Objective.*

Thus "injuriae Æduorum" may mean (i.) "wrongs inflicted *by the Ædui*" (*i.e.* "the Ædui wronged some one"), a *Subjective* Genitive; but it may mean (ii.) "wrongs inflicted *on the Ædui*" (*i.e.* "some one wronged the Ædui"), an *Objective* Genitive.

---

[1] The Abl. after the Verbal Adjectives contentus, fretus, onustus, is really an Abl. of the Instrument.

(i.) THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Par. 281—292).

1. *The Possessive* Genitive.

The Noun governing this Genitive is often omitted (Par. 289) in such phrases as *it is the mark of, characteristic of,* &c.

2. *The Descriptive* or *Adjectival* Genitive; see Par. 282.

This may be illustrated by the English descriptive Adjective formed out of a Noun, *sun-light* (i.e. *sun's light*), *a pine forest.* &c.   So in Latin: "lauri nemus," *a laurel grove;*" nomen regis," *the name of king* (or *the royal name*); virtus constantiae, *the virtue of constancy.*

3. *Of the charge,* after Verbs of accusing and condemning.

This is really governed by some Noun understood, as crimine, nomine, causa, &c.: see Par. 290.

4. *Of Quality* (Par. 282), *Value,* or *Indefinite Price* (Par. 283).

5. *The Partitive Genitive* (Par. 91).

*6. A Genitive, in Poetry, often follows a Neuter (mostly Plural) used instead of a Noun: "secreta silvarum," *the secret place of the woods.*

7. After some Verbs and Adjectives of *plenty* and *want* (285).[1]

(ii.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

8. *Governed by a Noun.*

This Gen. must be rendered by different English Prepositions: auri fames, *hunger* for *gold;* militiae vacatio, *exemption from military service;* remedium irae, *remedy against anger;* incitamenta periculi, *incitements* to *peril:* quies laborum, *rest* from *evils.*   (In writing Latin avoid this construction where it is ambiguous: obsequium coelibis,

---

[1] This is said (*Pub. Sch. Gr.* p. 420) to be a Partitive Genitive, and it would therefore fall under the head of Subjective, not Objective Genitives.

respect to *a bachelor;* praestantia animarum reliquarum, *superiority* to *other souls.*)

9. With *Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles used as Nouns* (Par. 288).

10. *With Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, and some Adjectives of desire* (Par. 287).

11. *With Impersonal Verbs* (as the Impersonal Object): see Par. 219.

12. *With Verbs of remembering and forgetting :* Par. 203.

13. An apparent Genitive, more properly called *the Locative Case in* -i, is used in the Second Declension to represent *Place Where,* of towns and small islands, and with a few other Nouns (Par. 265.)

6. ALL CASES.

N.B.—A Noun may be in any Case by (1) *Connection, i.e.* through being connected with some other Noun by a Conjunction, *e.g.* quam, vel, et ; or by (2) *Apposition.*

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING TABLE.

The following Table shows how the different parts of speech should be parsed.

The pupil is intended to use the Table, principally to show him how to parse *viva-voce* ; but he may occasionally make similar Parsing Tables for himself in order to fill up the columns in writing.

"Rogāvērunt cives ut urbs, incendio fērī dēlēta, a nostris restituĕrētur."

	ACCIDENCE									SYNTAX.
	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Conjugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voice.	Mood.	Tense.	Number.	Person.	
Verb ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Conjugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voice.	Mood.	Tense.	Number.	Person.	Agrees with what Nom ? Has what Object? Principal? or how dependent? ¹
Noun or Pronoun.	Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Person.]	—	—	Why that Case?
Adjective ...	Nom. S. of all Gend.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Comp.] [Superl.]	—	—	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Participle ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Conjugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voice.	Tense.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Preposition ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs what Noun or Pronoun?
Adverb ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies what Verb?
Conjunction ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins what?

¹ (1) The Verb must have a Subject, which should always be stated in the Syntax; (2) it may be (a) Intransitive, or have (b) a Direct Object, or (c) an Indirect Object; (iii) it may be (a) Principal, or (b) Coordinate, or (c) Subordinate to another Verb; or, if Inf., (d) Subject or Object of some Verb, or Partial Object or Subject.

Word										Remarks
"Rogaverunt." *Verb.*	rogo	-āre 1st	-āvi	-itum	Act.	Indic.	Pluperf.	Pl.	3rd	Agrees with Nom. "cives," has for its Obj. the sentence "ut urbs ...restitueretur."
"Cives." *Noun.*	civis	civis	3rd	Masc.	Pl.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "rogave-runt."
"Ut." *Conjunction.*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins "rogaverunt" with "restitueretur."
"Urbs." *Noun.*	urbs	urbis	3rd	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "resti-tueretur."
"Incendio." *Noun.*	incendium	-i	2nd	Neut.	Sing.	Abl.	—	—	—	Abl. of Instrument.
"fero." *Adverb.*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies "deleta."
"deleta." *Participle.*	doleo	-ēre 2nd	-ēvi	-ētum	Passive	Perf.	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	Agrees with "urbs."
"a." *Preposition.*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs the Abl. "nos-tris (hominibus)."
"nostris." *Pronoun Adj.*	noster, -ra, -rum	nostri, -ae, -i	2nd	Masc.	Pl.	Abl.	no Compar.	no Superl.	—	Agrees with "homini-bus", understood, which is Abl. of the Agent, governed by "a."
"restitueretur." *Verb.*	restituo	-ere 3rd	-i	-itum	Pass.	Subj.	Imperf.	Sing.	3rd	(1) Agrees with its Nom. "urbs"; (2) Subordinate to "rogave-runt." Subjunctive after "ut." RULE. Verbs signifying *ask, command, &c.,* take "ut" with the Subjunctive.

APPENDIX V.

LATIN GENDERS.

Fem. Nouns are in **black type**; *Neut., in* CAPITALS; *Masculine
in ordinary type;* (f. *means sometimes fem.* ; m., *sometimes masc.*).

I.—BY TERMINATIONS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

FEMININE.[1]

SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings -er, -ir, -us.   *Neuter endings* -UM.

Exceptions { alvus, cŏlus (m.), dŏmus, hŭmus, vannus;
arctus,† ătŏmus,† carbăsus,† diălectus,†
phărus,† PĒLAGUS,† VĪRUS, VULGUS.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Masculine Terminations.

-er, -or, -os.
-es *increasing in the Genitive.*
-o (*when not* -do, -go, -io).

Principal Exceptions.

-er]	línter	CĂDĀVER
	ĪTER	PĂPĀVER[2]
	ŪBER	VĒR
	VERBER	
-or]	arbor	ÆQUOR
	CŎR	MARMOR
-os]	cōs	dōs
	ŌS	ŎS
	CHAOS†	ĔPOS†
-es]	compēs	mercēs
	mergĕs	quiēs
	rĕquiēs	sĕges
	tĕgĕs	ÆS
-o]	cāro	ēcho†

[1] Excepting names of men and men's occupations, and national names,
such as Scȳtha, *a Scythian*, pŏeta, *a poet* &c.; for which see "Genders by
Meaning" below.   Add also the Greek-derived words cŏmēta *m.,* and
plănēta *m.*

[2] Also some other names of vegetable products, as ĂCER, CĬCER, PĬPER,
SĪLER, SĬSER, TŪBER, &c.

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

Feminine Terminations.

-ŭo, -go, -ĭo, -as, -ĭs, -aus, x.
-ēs, *not increasing in the Genitive.*
-s, *preceded by a consonant.*
-ūs (*long*) *in words of more than one syllable.*

Principal Exceptions.

-do]	cardo	cupīdo (f.)	ordo	
-go]	harpāgo	lĭgo	margo	
-ĭo]	*concrete nouns, such as* pāpīlĭo.			
	pŭgĭo	ūnĭo		
-as]	as	ĕlĕphās†	văs	
	vās	fās	nĕfās	
-ĭs]	amnis	anguis	axis	cassis (-is)
	caulis	cĭnis	collis	clūnis
	crīnis	cŭcŭmis	ensis	fascis
	fīnis (f.)	follis	fūnis	fustis
	ignis	lăpis	mensis	orbis
	pānis	piscis	postis	pulvis
	sanguis	torris	unguis	vectis
	vermis			
-x]	ăpex	cŭlex	cōdex	cortex (f.)
	frŭtex	grex	lătex	mūrex
	pollex	sĭlex (f.)	thōrax	vertex
-es]	ăcīnăcēs			
ns, -ps, &c.]	bĭdens (f.)	dens	fons	hydrops
	mons	pons	rŭdens (f.) _	

Neuter Terminations.

-c, -a, -t, -ĕ, -ĺ, -n.
-ar, -ur, -ŭs (*short*).
-ūs (*long*) *in monosyllable.*

Principal Exceptions.

-ĺ]	săl	sōl	
-n]	lĭen	pectĕn	
	rēn	splĕn	
-ur]	fūr	furfŭr	
	turtŭr	vultŭr	
-ŭs]	lĕpŭs	pĕcŭs (ŭdis)	
-ūs]	grūs m.)	sūs (m.)	
	mūs		

---

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

MASCULINE.

Except ăcus, īdus (pl.), mănus, portĭcus, trĭbus.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

FEMININE.

Except diēs (*f. in Poets*), mĕrīdĭēs.

II.—GENDERS REGULATED BY MEANING.

A.—MASCULINE.

Names of (1) men, (2) men's occupations, (3) months,
(4) winds, (5) mountains, (6) rivers, (7) peoples.[1] The exceptions
arise from the terminations, such as :—

Exceptions
> (5) Aetna, Hybla, Ĭda; Calpē, Cyllēnē, Rhŏ-
> dŏpē; Alpēs (pl.); PĒLĬŎN *and Plurals implying*
> *ranges* (JŪGA) such as GARGĂRA, ISMĂRA, &c.;
> SŌRACTĒ.
> (6) Allia, *and others in* -ă, Lēthē, Styx.

B.—FEMININE.

Names of (1) women, (2) plants, (3) countries, (4) islands,
(5) cities.[2]

Exceptions
> (2) *Nouns of Decl. 2, in* -us *and* -er, *e.g.* ăcanthus,
> ŏleaster; *Nouns in* -UM, *e.g.* ĂPĬUM; *Nouns of*
> *3rd Decl. in* -ER, *e.g.* ĂCER, CĬCER, PĀPĀVER,
> PĬPER, SĬLER, SĬSER, *and* SŪBER; *also* RŌBUR
> *and* TŪS.
> *The following are common :* bălănus, cȳtĭsus, lōtus,
> rŭbus, spīnus.
> (3) *Masc. Decl. 2.* Pontus; *Neut. Nouns. in* -UM.
> (5) *Masc.* (*a*) *all Plurals in* -i, *e.g.* Cŏrĭŏli; *also*
> (*b*) Cănōpus *and* Orchŏmĕnus; (*c*) *Nouns in* -as,
> -ant, *e.g.* Acrăgas, -antis; (*d*) *several in* -o, -on,
> *e.g.* Hippo, -ōnis; (*e*) *a few in* -us, -unt-, *e.g.*
> Pessīnus, -untis. *Neut.* (*a*) Nouns in -UM, -ON,
> -A (pl.) *of Decl.* 2 ; (*b*) most in -E, -UR, -os *of*
> *Decl.* 3.

---

[1] These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) and,
(2) homo, (3) mensis, (4) ventus, (5) mons, (6) fluvius, (7) populus.
[2] These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) mulier,
(2) planta, (3) terra, (4) insula, (5) urbs.

APPENDIX VI.
RULE FOR TURNING THE DAYS OF THE MONTH FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN.

In Latin the day of the month is reckoned not as in English, from the first day of the month but from (1) the *Nones*, *i.e.* the 5th or 7th of the current month; (2) the *Ides*, *i.e.* the 13th or 15th of the current month; (3) the *Kalends*, *i.e.* the first day of the *next* month.

The Latin terms are—

(1) **Nōnae, -ārum** (f.), *i.e. nine days* before the Ides.[1]

(2) **Īdūs, -ŭum** (f.), *i.e.* the *dividing* days of the month, falling about the middle.[2]

(3) **Kălendae, -ārum** (f.), *i.e.* the *calling* days (Old Latin calāre, *proclaim*), the day when the order of the days of the month was *proclaimed* to the people, the first day.

There is *in every month* an interval of 8 days between the Nones and the Ides. The Nones are on the 5th, and the Ides on the 13th, in every month, except March, July, October and May; in which four months the Nones are on the 7th and the Ides on the 15th.

This is sometimes remembered from the rhyme:—

"In March, July, October, May,
The Nones are on the seventh day."

I. When the day falls *between the first* and the *Nones*, or *between the Nones* and the *Ides*, the rule is (since the Romans reckoned inclusively) *Add one to the Nones or Ides and subtract the day.*

Thus, if the day be 4 March, add 1 to the Nones of March; $7 + 1 = 8$, subtract 4, the result is 4. This is written "antĕ diem quartum Nōnas Martias."[3]

If the day be 11 April, add 1 to the Ides of April; $13 + 1 = 14$; subtract 11, the result is 3. This is written "antĕ diem tertium Idus Aprīles."[3]

II. When the day falls *after the Ides*, the rule is (since here we are reckoning not from the last day of the month but from the day after that), *Add two to the total number of days in the month, and subtracting the day from the result, reckon from the Kalends of next month.*

Thus if the day be 20 January, add 2 to 31, and from 33 subtract 20, the result is 13 days before the Kalends of *February:* and this is written thus "ante diem tertium dĕcĭmum Kălendas Februārias."[3]

III. If the day is (*a*) *on*, or (*b*) *the day before*, the Nones, Ides or Kalends, it is expressed by (*a*) the Abl., or (*b*) Prīdie, followed by the Acc.: (*a*) 7th *of May*, "Nōnis Maiis"; (*b*) 12th *of June*, "Prīdie Īdus Jūnias"; 30th *of June*, "Prīdie Kălendas Quintīles"; 4th *of August*, Prīdie Nōnas Sextīles.

IV. Note that Adjectives, (and not Nouns in the Genitive) are used in each case. The Adjectives are, ("antĕ diem—Kălendas, Nōnas, Īdus) Jānuārias, Februārias, Martias, Aprīles, Maias, Jūnias, Quintīles, Sextīles, Septembres, Octōbres, Nŏvembres, Dĕcembres."

---

[1] We should say "*eight* days before": but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

[2] This is the derivation commonly given from an Etruscan word iduāre, *divide*: but more probably from Sanscr. indh-, idh-, *kindle, enlighten,* (indu, *moon*) from being the days of *light*, the days of the full moon.

[3] A rarer form is "tertio, quarto, tertio dĕcimo die antĕ," &c. The common construction cannot be explained except as a confusion.

APPENDIX VII.

ELEMENTARY RULES ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

As a Guide to Pronunciation.

I.—GENERAL RULES.

1. Diphthongs (a**ē**s, *brass*) and contracted syllables (qu**ī**s for qu**ĭ**bus) are long.

2. A vowel before another vowel (mon**ĕ**o) is short.

3. A vowel naturally short (*e.g.* the a in c**ă**no, *I sing*), when placed before two consonants (*e.g.* in cantus, *song*), is said to be *long by position*, and is long for the purposes of verse-making; but it is *pronounced* in the same way as the a in cano, so that *length by position does not affect pronunciation.*   .

II.—FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Final -**ā** is *long*: exceptions; Nom., Voc., and Acc. cases; also ĭt**ă**, quĭ**ă**.[1]

2. Final -**ĕ** is *short:* exceptions : (1) Adverbs in -**ē** derived from Adj. in -us, -a, -um, as maxim**ē**, (save b**ĕ**n**ĕ**, m**ă**l**ĕ**, s**ŭ**pern**ĕ**); (2) Abl. Sing. of 5th Decl.; (3) 2nd Pers. Sing. Imper. of 2nd Conj. ; (4) n**ē**, m**ē**, t**ē**, s**ē**.

3. Final -**ī** is *long;* but -i is mostly *short* in mĭh**ĭ**, tĭb**ĭ**, ŭb**ĭ**, ĭb**ĭ**, sĭb**ĭ**, always in nĭs**ĭ**.   :

4. Final -**ō** is *long;* but mostly *short* in **ĕ**g**ŏ**, m**ŏ**d**ŏ** (adv.) only.

5. Final -**ū** is *long.*

6. A vowel before -c is *long* ; exceptions, n**ĕ**c, d**ō**n**ĕ**c, f**ă**c.

7. A vowel is *short* before final -b, -d, -l, -n, -r, and t.[2]

---

[1] None but the more important exceptions are given to every rule.
[2] The quantities of syllables not final must be learned by experience ; but the quantity of one word often helps the pupil to that of many derived words. For example, the short ŏ in m**ŏ**neo determines the quantity in adm**ŏ**neo, comm**ŏ**neo, m**ŏ**nĭtus, -us, m**ŏ**nĭtor, -ōris, monumentum, -i, &c.: exceptions, d**ū**cis, *of a leader,* d**ū**co, *I lead;* s**ē**d**ē**s, *a seat;* s**ē**deo, *I sit.*

8. -ās and -ēs are *long* : but nouns in -es, increasing the Genit., are short, *e.g.* mīlĕs, mīlĭtis; and ĕs (*thou art*) is *short*, both in sum and in its compounds.

9. -īs is *short* : exceptions (*a*) Plural Cases, *e.g.* insŭlīs, dŏmĭnīs, nōbīs; (*b*) second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic., of fourth Conj., audīs; (*c*) sīs (Pres. Subj. of sum) and vīs (Pres. Indic. of vŏlo), and their compounds, as well as velīs, mālīs, nōlīs; (*d*) vīs, *violence*.

10. -ōs is *long* : exception, ŏs (Gen. ossis).

11. -ŭs is *short* : exceptions; (*a*) Gen. Sing., and Nom. and Acc. Pl. of Fourth Decl.; (*b*) nouns in -us which increase in the Gen. with a long penult, virtūs, -ūtis.

N.B.—It will be seen that (by Rules 7 and 9) many of the commonest monosyllables are short; ŏb, sŭb, ăd, ăt, ĕt, ĭd, ĭn, ăn, vĕl, pĕr, tĕr, vĭr; also ĭs, and quĭs.

But although (according to Rule II. 2) -quĕ, -vĕ, and -nĕ? are short, nē *lest* is long, and so are the pronouns mē, tē, se. Also cūr? *why?* is long.

APPENDIX VIII.

ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

Ablative (Case) [L. *ab*, "from;" *latus*, "carried"]. The Case denoting, among other things, *ablation*, or *carrying away from* (8, 273).

Absolute (Construction) [L. *ab*, "from;" *solut-*, "loosed"]. A construction in which a Noun, Participle, &c., is supposed to be used apart, *i.e. loosed from*, its ordinary Grammatical adjuncts. But the *Abl. Absolute* is really an *Abl. of circumstance* (196).

Abstract (Noun) [L. *abs*, "from;" *tract-*, "drawn"]. The name of an *abstraction*, *i.e.* of something considered by itself, apart from (*drawn away from*) the circumstances in which it exists.

Accent [L. *ad*, "to;" *cantus*, "song"]. Perhaps originally a sing-*song*, or modulation of the voice, added *to* a syllable. Now used of stress laid on a syllable.

Accidence [L. *accident-*, "befall"]. That part of grammar which treats of the changes that *befall* words. (1); Quintilian I. 5, 41, "frequentissime in verbo quia plurima huic *accidunt*."

Accusative (Case). 2. Probably a Latin mistake. The Greek original meant (1) *cause*, (2) *accusation*. The Latins took it in sense (2) instead of (1). The Latin name for the Direct Objective Inflexion. Possibly the Romans regarded the object as confronted with the agent, like an *accused* person with the prosecutor.

Active (Voice). The form of a Verb that usually denotes *acting* or doing.

Adjective [L. *ad*, "to;" *jact-*, "cast or put"]. A word *put to* a Noun.

Adverb [L. *ad*, "to;" *verb-*, "word" or "Verb"]. A word generally joined *to* a Verb.

Adversative [L. *adversus*, "opposite"]. An epithet applied to Conjunctions that (like "but") express *opposition*.

Affix [L. *ad*, "to;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. A syllable or letter *fixed* to the end of a word.

Agreement. The change made in the inflections of words so that they may suit or *agree* with one another.

Alphabet [Gr. *alpha, beta*; "a," "b"]. The list of letters, so called from the names

of the first two letters in Greek.

Anacolouthon [Gr. *a*-, "not;" *acolouthon*, "following"]. A break in the Grammatical sequence, or *following*.

Anomaly. A Greek-formed word meaning "uneven-ness," "irregularity."

Antecedent [L. *ante*, "before;" *cedent*-, "going"]. (*a*) That part of a sentence which expresses a condition. So called because the condition must *go before* its consequence. (*b*) Also used for the Noun that *goes before* a Relative Pronoun (107).

Apodosis [Gr. *apo-dosis*, "a paying back"]. A Greek name for the "Consequent," or "Then-Clause," in a Conditional Sentence (293). The Consequence was regarded as a sort of *debt*, to be *paid* in return for the fulfilment of the Condition.

Appellative [L. *appella*, "call to"]. A name for the *Vocative* or *calling* use of a noun.

Apposition [L. *ad*, "near;" *posit*-, "placed"]. The *placing* of one noun in the same case with another noun or pronoun, to express some quality, or circumstance, of the latter (123).

Asyndeton [from Greek "not bound together."] The placing of words together without a Conjunction : see Par. 32.

Attribute [L. *attribut*-, "assigned"]. An Adj. *assigned* to qualify a Noun.

Cardinal (Numbers) [L. *cardin*-, "hinge"]. That on which

anything *hinges* or turns : hence, "important." A name given to those more *important* forms of Numeral Adjectives from which the Ordinal forms are derived.

Case [L. *casus*, "falling"]. The Latin translation of the Greek term for the forms of a Noun. The subjective form was regarded as "erect," and the other forms as more or less *falling* away from it. Hence "oblique," "decline,' &c.

Clause [L. *claus*-, "enclosed"]. A general term for a part of a Sentence, whether it be a Phrase or a Subordinate Sentence.

Cognate (Object) [L. *co*-, "together;" (*g*)*nat*-"born"]. The name given to an object that denotes something *akin* to (*born together* with) the action denoted by the Verb.

Common (Noun). A name that is *common* to a class and not *peculiar* or *proper* to an individual.

Comparative (Degree). The form of an Adjective denoting that a quality exists in a greater degree in some one thing than in some other with which it is *compared*.

Complementary [L. *comple*-"fill up"]. That which completes, or *fills up*.

Complete (State). A name given to an action (whether Past, Present, or Future) that was, is, or will be *complete*.

Complex (Sentence) [L. *con*-"together ;" *plic*-, "fold"]. A sentence that is *folded together*, or involved by con-

taining one or more Subordinate sentences.

Compound (Sentence) [L. *con*, or *com*, "together;" *pon-*, "place"]. A sentence made up of a number of Co-ordinate sentences *placed together*.

Concord. The name given to syntactical *agreement* between words, *e.g.* between Verb and Subject.

Conjugation [*con*, "together;" *jugatio*, "joining"]. A number of Verbs *joined* together in one class.[1]

Conjunction [L. *con*, "together;" *junct-*, "joined"]. A word that *joins together* two sentences expressed or implied.

Consequent. The name given to that part of a Sentence which expresses the *consequence* of the fulfilment of a *condition*. See *Antecedent*.

Consecutive. The name sometimes given to a clause introd. by "ut" *so that*, expressing *result*, or *consequence*, of an *action*.

Consonant [L. *con*, "together;" *sonant-*, "sounding"]. Letters (such as *p*) that can only be *sounded together with* a vowel.

Coordinate [L. *co-*, "with;" *ordin-*, "rank"]. The name given to a Sentence that *ranks with* the Principal Sentence (134*a*): see Note following the Glossary.

Correlatives. Words that are *related together* or mutually related, *e.g.*, "either," "or;" "both," "and;" "when," "then."

Dative [L. *dativus*,[2] "that which has arisen from giving"]. The Latin name for the Indirect Objective case used after Verbs of *giving*, &c. (192)

Declension. The bending or *declension* of the Oblique (see *Oblique* below) cases from the Subjective form, which was regarded as "erect."

Defective (Verbs) [L. *deficio*, "I fail"]. Verbs that are *deficient* in some of their forms: see p. 215.

Degree (of comparison) [L. *gradus*, Fr. *degré*, "step"]. The forms expressing the *steps* or *degrees* in which a quality can be expressed by an Adjective.

Dependent (Sentence). Sometimes used for Subordinate. But generally applied to *Subordinate* sentences that are the Subjects or Objects of Verbs (208, 239).

Deponent (Verbs) [L. *deponens*, "laying aside"]. Verbs that retain an Active meaning, while *laying aside* Active forms : Par. 199.

Diæresis [Gr. *diairesis*, "separation"]. The mark placed over one of two vowels to show that each is to be

---

[1] Hence to *conjugate* a Verb is to repeat the inflections belonging to the class or *conjugation*. But the Romans used *decline* and not *conjugate* in this sense (Madvig).

[2] Termination *-ivus* in Latin, when added to Participles, denotes *that which has arisen from, e.g.* "*captivus*," *that which has arisen from* "*capture*."

pronounced *separately*, *e.g.* in "aërial."

Diphthong [Gr. *di*, "twice;" *phthongos*, "sound"]. *Two* vowel sounds pronounced as one.

Direct (Object). The Noun that denotes what is regarded as the *direct object* of the action of a Verb.

Ellipsis [Gr. *elleipsis*, "omission"]. The *omission* of words (said to be "understood" *i.e.* implied) in a Sentence.

Enclitics [Gr. "lean on"]. Words that cannot stand without *leaning on*, and being attached to, the words before them, *e.g.* -quĕ, -vĕ, -nĕ.

Epithet [Gr. *epithetos*, "placed to"]. An Adjective *placed to* a Noun to describe some quality of the person or thing denoted by the Noun.

Final [L. *finis*, "end"]. A *final* clause expresses an *end* or *purpose;* and "ut" *final* ("in order that") is distinguished from "ut" *consecutive* ("so that") (296).

Finite (Verb). A name given to those parts of the Verb which are de*fined* by Number and Person, as distinct from the *Infinitive* or *Infinite.*

Frequentative (Verb). A Verb that expresses a *frequently* repeated action, *e.g.* "ventito," *I often come.*

Gender [L. *genus*, Fr. *genre*, "breed," or "class"]. Forms to denote *classification* according to sex.

Genitive (Case) [L. *genitiv-*, "generating"]. The Case denoting *generation*, origination, possession (282).[1]

Gerund {L. *gero*, "I carry on"]. Part of the Verb denoting the *carrying on* of the action of the Verb. The *Gerundive* is Adjectival, the *Gerund* is a Noun (163, 170, 251).

Gutturals [L. *guttur*, "throat"]. *Throat* letters, *k*, and hard *g*.

Historic Infinitive. The Infinitive used for the Indicative, as is sometimes the case in rapid *historical* narrative : see Par. 320.

Idiom [Gr. *idioma*, "peculiarity"]. A mode of expression *peculiar* to a language.

Imperative (Mood). [L. *impera-*, "command"]. The *commanding* Mood (129).

Impersonal (Verbs). Verbs not used with a *Personal* Subject : see Par. 219.

Indicative (Mood). [L. *indica-*, "point out"]. The Mood that *points out* or *indicates* an action, &c., as a past, present, or future existence.

Indirect (Object). The Noun or Pron. denoting the person or thing regarded as not directly but only *indirectly* influenced by the action of the Verb (192).

Infinitive (Mood) [L. *in*, "not;" *finit-*, "limited"]. A Mood *not limited* by any definition of Person or Number.

Inflection. [L. *inflecto*, "I

---

[1] The Latin "genitivus" is a mistranslation of the Greek *genike*, which meant the *generic* case *i.e.* the case that denoted the *genus* or *class*. For example "life," "What *class* of life?" "*Man's* life."

. bend"]. The *bending* of a word from the simple form, by means of varying the termination. See *Oblique.*

Interjection [L. *inter-ject-*, "thrown between"]. An utterance *thrown* in *between* words, to express emotion.

Intransitive (Verb). [L. *in*, "not"; *transitiv-*, "passing across"]. A Verb whose action is not supposed to *pass across* to any Object.

Labials [L. *labium*, "lip"]. *Lip*-letters: *f, v, p, b, m, hw* and *w.*

Linguals [Latin *lingua*, "the tongue"]. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *tongue:* *sh, s* in pleasure.

Locative (Case) [L. *locus*, "place"]. A case expressing *place* (Par. 265).

Liquids. Letters of a flowing, *liquid* sound, as *l, r.*

Monosyllable [Gr. *mono*, "only"]. A word of *only one* syllable.

Mood [L. *mod-*, "manner"]. The form of a Verb expressing the *manner* of action.

Mutes [L. *mut-*, "dumb"]. Letters that are *dumb* without the aid of a vowel: *k, g, t, d, p, b.*

Nasal [L. *nas-*, "nose"]. Consonants sounded through the *nose; n, m.*

Neuter (Gender). [L. *neuter*, "neither"]. That Gender which is *neither* Masc. nor Feminine.

Nominative (Case) [L. *nomina-*, "to name"] A Latin term for the Subject, because the Subject was regarded as a person or thing *named.*

Noun [L. *nomen*, Fr. *nom*, "name"]. The *name* of anything.

Object. The word, or group of words, denoting that which is regarded as the *object* or mark aimed at by the action of Verbs or the motion of Prepositions.

Oblique (Case). A name given to all Cases but the Subjective. By the Greeks the Subjective form of a Noun was regarded as *erect*, and all the other forms as *fallings* or *oblique* deviations from the Subjective.

Oblique (Speech). Speech reported, not *directly* in the First Person with the exact words of the speaker, but *indirectly* or *obliquely* in the Third Person.

Ordinal (Adjective) [L. *ordin-*, "order"]. An Adjective, that answers to the question "in what *order.*"

Palatals. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *palate:* *ch, j.*

Participle [L. *particip-*, "participating"]. A form of a Verb *participating* in a Verb and an Adjective.

Particle. A "little part": a name given to the four undeclined "*parts* of speech," Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection and Preposition.

Partitive (Genitive). A Genitive implying *partition* (91).

Passive (Voice). A form of the Verb expressing *passiveness* rather than *activeness.*

Perfect (Tense) [L. *perfect-*, "complete"] The Name

for the Latin Tense that has to represent (1) our Indef. Past, (2) our Complete Present.

Period [Gr. *peri*, "round" ; *od-*, "path"]. (1) The full, *rounded path* of a complex sentence, (2) a mark at the end of a sentence.

Person [L. *per*, "through" ; *son-*, "sound ;" hence, *persona* " a mask *through* which an actor *sounds ;*" "an actor's *part* in a play"]. The *part played* in conversation, (1) speaking; (2) spoken to ; (3) spoken of.

Phrase [Gr. *phrasis*, a "saying"]. A group of words not expressing a statement, question, or command.

Pluperfect (Tense) [L. *plu-*, "more ;" *perfect-*, "complete"]. A *more than complete* Tense.' The Latin equivalent of our Complete Past (121).

Plural (Number) [L. *plu-*, "more"]. The form denoting *more* than one.

Polysyllable [Gr. *poly*, "many"]. A word of *many* syllables.

Positive. The simple form of an Adjective ; so-called because it expresses a quality not comparatively, but *positively*.

Possessive [L. *possess-*, "possessed"]. The name given to the use or case of a Noun denoting *possession*.

Predicate [L. "*praedica-*," "proclaim," "state"]. A word or group of words

making a *statement* about a Subject.

Prefix [L. *prae*, "before ;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. A letter, syllable, or word *fixed before* another word.

Preposition [L. *prae*, "before;" *posit-*, "placed"]. A Word (not a Verb) generally *placed before* a Noun or Pronoun as its Object. N.B. A Preposition and its Object make up an Adverbial Phrase.

Pronoun [L. *pro*, "for;" L. *nomen*, "noun"]. A word used *for* a Noun.

Proper (Noun). [L. *propri-*, F. *propre ;* "peculiar"]. A name that is *peculiar* or *proper* to the individual, not *common* to a class.

Prose [L. *prosa*, for *prorsa*, for *pro-versa*,[1] *i.e.* "turned forward"]. Writing that does not *turn like verses* but runs *straight on.* Hence, the *straightforward* arrangement of prose.

Prosody [Gr. *prosodia*, a "song"]. Hence, that part of Grammar which treats of verse, whether intended to be sung or not.

Protasis [Gr. *pro*, "before ;" *tasis*, "stretching"]. Literally, *stretching before.* Hence, in a sentence, the Antecedent or Condition. See *Apodosis.*

Punctuation [L. *punctum*, "point"]. Dividing a sentence by means of *points* representing the pauses.

Quantity. The *quantity* of time necessary to pronounce a syllable.

---

[1] Compare our *e'er, o'er* for *ever, over.*

Reduplication. The *redupli-cating* or *redoubling* of a syllable, mostly found (but with some change) in a few Latin Perfects, *e.g.* " tendo," " te-tendi."

Reflexive (Pronoun) [*reflexus*, " bent back "]. A Pronoun which is as it were *bent back* on the Subject, so that the Pronoun and the Subject denote the same person or thing.

Relative (Pronoun) [L. *re*, " back ;" *lat-*, " carried "]. A name given to *qui*, *quae*, &c., when used not Interrogatively to carry one forward, but to *carry* one *back* to the Antecedent.

Root. A word that gives birth to a group of kindred words, as a *root* to branches.

Sentence [L. *Sententia*, a " meaning "]. A group of words of *meaning* so complete as to express a statement, question, or command.

Sibilant L. [*sibila-*, hiss]. *Hissing* letters : *s*, *z*, *sh*.

Stem. That part of a word which remains the same when the word is inflected.

N.B.—The True Stem of a word is sometimes concealed by changes, *e.g.* the " o " which is part of the True Stem of " dominus " is lost in almost all the Cases. Hence the Stem of " dominus" as printed in Par. 12 appears to be "domin-." This false Stem, which is obtained by clipping the True Stem of its final vowel, is sometimes called the Clipt Stem. (Par. 55, note 1.)

Subject [L. *subject-*, " placed under "]. That which is *placed under* one's thoughts, as the basis for speech. Hence, the Subject of a Verb is that about which the Verb makes a statement (127).

Subjunctive (Mood) [L. *sub-junct-*, " subjoined "]. A Mood expressing a purpose, condition, &c., *subjoined* to some statement, question, or answer.

Subordinate (Sentence) [L. *sub*, " beneath ;" *ordin-*, " rank "]. See Note p. 239.

Substantive (Noun) [L. *sub-stantia*, " substance "]. A name given to Nouns, perhaps as being the *substance* or *ground standing beneath* the Adjective. It is from a Greek term, applied not to Nouns but to the *Substantive Verb*, " to be."

Suffix [L. *sub*, " beneath ;" *fix-*, " fixed "]. Same as *Affix*.

Supine. A name given to two very rarely used Noun forms of the Verb used only in the Accusative and Ablative. Its origin is unknown, but it may at least serve to remind the pupil that these forms are the laziest and most *supine* of all the parts of the Verb : see Par. 246, 247.

Superlative (degree) [L. *super*, " above ;" *lat-*, " carried "]. An Adjectival form denoting the expression of a quality in a degree *carried above* other degrees.

Syllable [Gr. *syn*, " together ;" *lab-*, " take "]. A group of letters *taken together* so as to form one sound.

Syntax [Gr. *syn*, " together ;"

taxis, "arranging"]. The *arrangement* of words *together* in a sentence.

Temporal (Clause) [L. *tempus*, "time"]. An Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of *time*.

Tense [L. *tempus*, Fr. *temps*, "time"]. The forms of a Verb indicating the *time* of an action.

Transitive [L. *trans*, "across;" *it-*, "going"]. A Verb that has an Object, so called

because the action of the Verb is regarded as passing or *going across* to the Object.

Verb [L. *verb-*, "word"]. The chief *word* in a sentence.

Vocative [L. *voca-*, "call"]. The use, or Case, of a Noun when the person or thing is *called to*.

Vowels [L. *vocalis*, "having voice"]. The letters that *have a voice* or are sounded (not as the "consonants but) by themselves: *a, e, i, o, u.*

NOTE ON SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Subordinate Sentences are those which express some (1) **Noun**, (2) **Adjective**, or (3) **Adverb** in another Sentence called the Principal Sentence.[1]

(1) (**Noun**) { (*a*) (Subject.) "WHEN *he-will-come* is uncertain." { (*b*) (Object.) "I say THAT *he-will-come.*"

(2) (**Adjective.**) "The battle *that-was-fought* at *Cannæ* was gained by Hannibal."

(3) (**Adverb.**) (*a*) (When?) "WHEN *he-had-heard-this* he departed"; (*b*) (Why?) "I will strive THAT *you-may-succeed*"; (*c*) (How?) "He behaved so gently THAT *he-surprised-everybody*"; (*d*) (Where?) "WHERE *the-Turk's-horse-goes*, nothing grows."

For a list of the Principal Subordinate and Coordinate Conjunctions see Par. 334*a*.

---

[1] A Subordinate Sentence (called also a Subordinate Clause) is sometimes defined as one that is "constructively dependent" on another Sentence. If this definition were adopted, a sentence in the Subjunctive preceded by "antequam" would be Subordinate, while the same sentence in the Indicative, preceded by "antequam," would not be Subordinate.

APPENDIX IX.

VOCABULARIES.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

adj.	= adjective	*m.*	= masculine
adv.	= adverb	*n.*	= neuter
c.	= common gender	*pl.*	= plural
conj.	= conjunction	*prep.*	= preposition
f.	= feminine	*pron.*	= pronoun
gen.	= genitive	*sing.*	= singular
indec.	= indeclinable	*v.*	= verb
inter.	= interrogative		

EXERCISE I.

ăqua, *f. water*
ăquĭla, *f. eagle*
fĭlĭa, *f. daughter*
insŭla, *f. island*
nauta, *m. sailor*
pĕcūnĭa, *f. money*
pŭella, *f. girl*
rēgĭna, *f. queen*

EXERCISES II.—VI.

constantia, *f. constancy*
culpa, *f. blame, fault*
dextra, *f. right hand*
expĕrĭentĭa, *f. experience*
fēmĭna, *f. woman*
intempĕrantĭa, *f. intemperance*
Ira, *f. anger*
pătĭentĭa, *f. patience*
patrĭa, -ae, *f. native land*
prŏcella, *f. storm*
prūdentĭa, *f. prudence*
săpĭentĭa, *f. wisdom*
stella, *f. star*

vĭŏlentĭa, *f. violence*
ămat, *v. loves*
dăt, *v. gives*
lăvat, *v. washes*
lībĕrat, *v. frees, delivers*
monstrat, *v. points out, shews*
sŭpĕrat, *v. overcomes*
vŏrat, *v. devours*
ĕt . . . ĕt, *conj. both . . . and*

EXERCISE VII.

dŏmĭnus, *m. lord, owner*
ĕquus, *m. horse*
fĭlĭŭs, *m. son*
flŭvĭus, *m. river*
glădĭus, *m. sword*
hortus, *m. garden*
măgister, *m. master* (mostly *teacher*)
mĭna, *f. threat*
mĭnister, *m. servant, attendant*
servus, *m. slave*
hăbet, *v. has*
tĭmet, *v. fears*
terret, *v. terrifies, frightens*

Exercises VIII.—XI.

áger, *m. field*
agrĭcŏla, *m. husbandman*
ăper, *m. boar*
arbĭter, *m. umpire*
Auster, *m. south wind*
cancer, *m. crab*
căper, *m. goat*
cŏlŭber, *m. snake*
culter, *m. knife*
făber, *m. artificer, workman*
gĕner, *m. son-in-law*
hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
invĭdĭa, -ae, *f. envy*
lĭber, *m. book*
Lĭber, *m. Liber, the god of wine*
lībĕri, *m. pl. children*
pŭer, *m. boy*
sŏcer, *m. father-in-law*
vesper, *m. evening*
vĭr, *m. man, hero*
culpat, *v. blames*
laudat, *v. praises*
nĕque, *or* nĕc, *conj. and not, neither*
nōn, *adv. not*
ā (ăb *before vowels or* h), *prep. by*
sŭpĕrantur, terrentur, *see p. 11*

Exercise XII.

argentum, *n. silver*
arvum, *n. cornfield*
aurum, *n. gold*
dīlĭgentĭa, *f. diligence*
dōnum, *n. gift*
mūrus, *m. wall*
Neptūnus, *m. Neptune*
oppĭdum, *n. town*
porta, -ae, *f. gate*
praemĭum, *n. reward*
terra, *f. land*
templum, *n. temple*
dēlectat, *v. delights, charms*

Exercise XIII.

aurīga, *m. charioteer*
bŏnus, -a, -um, *good*
dīrus, -a, -um, *terrible*
doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
ĕpistŭla, -ae, *f. letter*
impăvĭdus, -a, -um, *fearless*
imprŏbus, -a, -um, *dishonest*
injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
jussum, *n. command*
justus, -a, -um, *just*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*
păvĭdus, -a, -um, *fearful*
pĕlăgus, *n. sea*
pĕrīcŭlum, *n. danger*
prŏbus, -a, -um, *honest*
scrība, *m. scribe, clerk*
splendĭdus, -a, -um, *splendid*
strēnŭus, -a, -um, *vigorous*
tĭmĭdus, -a, -um, *timid*
vastus, -a, -um, *vast*
vĭa, *f. way*

Exercises XIV. and XV.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ailing*
āla, *f. wing*
albus, -a, -um, *white*
altus, -a, -um, *high, tall*
Brĭtannia, *f. Britain*
falsus, -a, -um, *false*
impĭger, -gra, -grum, *active*
incŏla, *m. inhabitant*
lātus, -a, um, *broad*
măcer, -cra, -crum, *lean*
mĭser, -era, -erum, *wretched*
morbus, *m. disease*
nĭger, -gra, -grum, *black*
pĭger, -gra, -grum, *slothful*
pŏēta, -ae, *m. poet* [*perous*
prosper, -pĕra, -pĕrum, *pros-*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beauti-ful*
rŭber, -bra, -brum, *red*
săcer, -cra, -crum, *sacred*

stultĭtia, -ae, *f. folly*
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
taeter, -tra, -trum, *foul*
vāfer, -fra, -frum, *cunning*
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong*
verbum, -i, *n. word*
est, *v.* (he) *is;* (there) *is*
sunt, *v.* (they) *are;* (there) *are*

Exercise XVI.

ăcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*
aestās, aestatis, *f. summer*
arx, arcis, *f. citadel*
bellum, -i, *n. war*
clārus, -a, -um, *renowned*
cōmēs, cōmĭtis, *m. companion*
dignus, -a, -um, *worthy* (g. abl.)
dux, dŭcis, *m. leader*
ĕques, ĕquĭtis, *m. horse-soldier*
fessus, -a, -um, *weary*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*
ignāvia, -ĭe, *f. sloth, cowardice*
impĕrātor, -ōris, *m. general*
indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*
ingrātus, -a, -um, *displeasing*
injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
jūdex, jūdĭcis, *m. judge*
lăpis, -ĭdis, *m. stone*
lex, lēgis, *f. law*
mălus, -a, -um, *bad*
mĕmōria, *f. memory, recollection*
mīlēs, mīlĭtis, *m. soldier*
mŏlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
nox, noctis, *f. night*
obscūrus, -a, -um, *dark*
pēdēs, pĕdĭtis, *m. foot-soldier*
pēs, pĕdis, *m. foot*
rēx, rēgis, *m. king*
sĭnister, -tra, -trum, *left*
spīna, -ae, *f. thorn*
verbum, -i, *n. word*
dēlectat, *v.* (he) *delights*
laedit, *v. hurts*

Exercise XVII.

annus, -i, *m. year*
ĕlĕphās, elephantis, *m. elephant*
fĕrus, -a, -um, *savage*
grus, grŭis, *c. crane*
hiemps, hĭĕmis, *f. winter*
hŏmo, hŏmĭnis, *m. human being*
hōra, -ae, *f. hour*
lĕo, lĕōnis, *m. lion*
longĭtūdo, -tūdĭnis, *f. length*
longus, -a, -um, *long*
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
multĭtūdo, -tūdĭnis, *f. multitude*
multus, -a, -um, *many, much*
păpīlio, păpīliōnis *m. butterfly*
pŏmum, -i, *n. fruit*
princeps, princĭpis, *m. chief*
terra, -ae, *f. land*
trabs, trăbis, *f. beam*
virgo, virgĭnis, *f. maiden*
vīvit, -unt, *v.* (he) *lives,* (they)
live

Exercise XVIII.

ămīcus, -i *m. friend*
ămor, ămoris, *m. love*
anser, ansĕris, *m. goose*
arbor, arbŏris, *f. tree*
causa, -ae, *f. cause*
cĭnis, cĭnĕris, *m. ashes*
clāmor, clāmōris, *m. clamour*
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright,
renowned*
cŏlor, cŏlōris, *m. colour*
consul, consŭlis, *m. consul*
flōs, flōris, *m. flower*
frāter, -tris, *m. brother*
frīgĭdus, -a, -um, *cold* [able
injūcundus, -a, -um, *disagree-
jussum, -i, *n. command*
māter, mātris, *f. mother*
ŏcŭlus, -i, *m. eye*
păter, patris, *m. father*
paucus, -a, -um, (mostly pl.) *few*
sĕpulcrum, -i, *n. sepulchre*
tĭmor, tĭmōris, *m. fear*
vōx, vōcis, *f. voice*

EXERCISE XIX.

căput, căpĭtis, *n. head*
carmen, carmĭnis, *n. poem, song*
cĭbus, -ĭ, *m. food*
corpus, corpŏris, *n. body*
Dĕus, -ĭ, *m. God*
doctrīna, -ae, *f. learning*
factum, -ĭ, *n. deed*
frŭtex, frŭtĭcis, *m. shrub*
fulmen, fulmĭnis, *n. lightning (that strikes)*
jūs, jūris, *n. right or law*
longus, -a, -um, *long* [*chant*
mercātor, mercatōris, *m. mer-*
nōmen, nōmĭnis, *n. name*
mens, mentis, *f. mind, under-standing*
ŏpus, ŏpĕris, *n. work*
pŏēta, -ae, *m. poet*
scĕlus, scĕlĕris, *n. crime*
sīdus, sīdĕris, *n. star*
verber, verbĕris, *n. lash, stripe*
-quĕ, *conj. and*
ĕrat, *v. (he) was ; there (was)*
ĕrant, *v. (they) were ; (there) were*

EXERCISE XX.

ănĭmal, ănĭmālis, *n. animal*
ăvĭdus, -a, -um, *greedy*
aurĕus, -a, -um, *golden*
Brĭtannus, -ĭ, *m. adj. used as noun, a Briton*
calcar, calcāris, *n. spur*
certāmen, certāmĭnis, *n. contest, strife*
cīvis, cīvis, *m. citizen*
cīvĭtas, cīvĭtātis, *f. state, country, citizenship*
crēber, -bra, -brum, *repeated, frequent*
dĕcus, dĕcŏris, *n. honour*
exĭtĭum, -ĭ, *n. destruction*
ferrum, -ĭ, *n. iron, sword* [*rage*
fŭror, fŭrōris, *m. madness,*

gens, gentis, *f. nation*
gĕnus, gĕneris, *n. kind, race*
hostis, hostis, *m. enemy ; oft. pl. in Lat. where Eng. is sing. ;* hostĭum castra, *the camp of the enemy*
ignāvus, -a, -um, *slothful*
ignis, ignis, *abl.,* -ĭ, *m. fire*
imber, imbris, *abl.,* -ĭ, *m. shower*
măre, măris, *n. sea*
nāvis, nāvis, *f. ship*
notūs, -a, -um, *known*
nūbēs, nūbis, *f. cloud*
ōs, ōris, *n. mouth, countenance*
ŏs, ossis, *n. bone*
pastor, păstōris, *m. shepherd*
răpĭdus, -a, -um, *rapid*
rōbur, robŏris, *n. strength*
saevus, -a, -um, *cruel, fierce*
tempestās, -tātis, *f. tempest*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole*
urbs, urbis, *f. city*
nĕque . . nĕque, *conj. neither . . . nor*
saepĕ, *adv. often*
consūmit, *v. (he) consumes*

EXERCISE XXI.

ācer, *m.* ācris, *f.* ācre, *n. keen*
ănĭmus, -ĭ, *m. mind*
audāx, *gen.* audācis, *bold*
cĕlĕr, *m.* cĕlĕris, *f.* celĕrē, *n. swift*
consĭlĭum, -ĭ, *n. plan* [*gent*
dīlĭgens, *gen.* dīlĭgentis, *dili-*
dīvĕs, *gen.* dīvĭtis, *rich*
dulcis, *m. & f.* dulce, *n. sweet*
ĕquester, *m.* -tris, *f.* -tre, *n. equestrian*
fĕrāx, *gen.* ferācis, *fruitful*
fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis, *happy*
fortis, *m. & f.,* forte, *n. brave*
infēlīx, *gen.* infēlīcis, *unhappy*
insignis, *m. & f.* insigne, *n. distinguished, illustrious*

R 2

lăbor, lăbōris, m. *labour*
laetĭtĭa, -ae, f. *joy*
laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*
mělĭor, m. & f. mělĭus, n. *better*
mors, mortis, f. *death*
prūdens, gen. prūdentis, *prudent*
sălŭber, m. -bris, f. -bre, n.
　　healthful
săpĭens, gen. săpĭentis, *wise*
sēdĭtĭo, sēdĭtĭōnis, f. *sedition*
tergum, -i, n. *back*
tristis, m. & f. triste, n. *sad*
tristĭor, m. & f. tristĭus, n.
　　sadder
verber, -ĕris, n. *lash, stripe*
vestis, -is, f. *garment*
vĭta, -ae, f. *life*

EXERCISE XXII.

almus, -a, -um, *loving*
ātrōx, gen. ātrōcis, *stern, gloomy*
āter, -tra, -trum, *dark, black*
běnignus, -a, -um, *kind*
brěvis, m. & f., brěve, n. *short*
cŏhors, cŏhortis, f. *a cohort, the*
　　tenth part of a Roman legion
fāma, -ae, f. *reputation, fame*
fērĭtās, fērĭtātis, f. *savageness*
hasta, -ae, f. *spear*
infirmus, -a, -um, *weak*
ĭnhŏnestus, -a, -um, *dishonour-*
　　able
ĭrācundus, -a, -um, *angry*
omnis, m. & f. omne, n. *all, the*
　　whole
poenĭtentĭa, -ae, f. *penitence*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first*
sĕnex, sĕnis, m. *old man*
tĕner, -ěra, -ěrum, *tender*
turpis, m. & f. turpe, n. *dis-*
　　graceful, base
vĕtus, gen. vĕtěris, *old*

vīnum, -i, n. *wine*
virtūs, virtūtis, f. *virtue*
vĭtĭum, -i, n. *vice*
quem, pron. acc. m. *whom?*
quis, pron. nom. m. *who?*

EXERCISE XXIII.

ăcŭs, -ūs, f. *needle*[1]
adversus, -a -um, *adverse*
arcus, -ūs, *bow*
audĭtus, -ūs, *hearing*
Caesar, -ăris. m. *Caesar*
cervus, -i, m. *stag*
cōpĭa, -ae, f. *plenty*
cornū, -ūs, n. *horn*
cursus, -ūs, m. *running, course*
dĭgĭtus, -i, m. *finger* [*ferent*
dīversus, -a, -um, *diverse, dif-*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*
fructus, -ūs, m. *fruit*
frūmentum, n. *corn*
gĕlū, -ūs, n. *frost*
gĕnū, -ūs, n. *knee*
glans, glandis, f. *acorn*
mŭlĭer, mŭlĭĕris, f. *woman*
myrtus, -i or -ūs, f. *myrtle*
pernĭcĭōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*
pīnus, -ūs, or -i, f. *pine-tree*
plebs, plēbis, f. *the common*
　　people
portus, -ūs, m. *harbour*
quercus, -ūs, f. *oak*
rāmus, -i, m. *branch*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*
săgitta, -ae, f. *arrow* [*perow*
sěcundus, -a, um, *second, pros-*
sĭnister, -tra, -trum, *left*
Scytha, -ae, m. *a Scythian*
sollertĭa, -ae, f. *skill, subtlety*
taurus, -i, m. *bull*
trĭbus, -ūs, f. *tribe*

---

[1] For the future, the quantity of the Nom. of the Fourth Decl. will
not be marked. The pupil must bear in mind that the Nom. Sing. of the
Fourth Decl. is to be pronounced short, diff. from the Gen. Sing. and
Nom. and Acc. Pl. which are long.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*
ūtĭlis, *m. & f.* ūtĭle, *n. useful*
ūtĭlĭtās, ūtĭlĭtātis, *f. utility*
vēnātor, vēnātōris, *m. hunter*
ventus, -i, *m. wind*
vīsus, -ūs, *sight*
vulpēs, vulpis, *f. fox*
dătur (*not* dātur) *v. is given*
ăgĭt, *v. drives*
compărat (-ant), *v. obtains* (-*ain*)
expectat, (-ant), *v. awaits* (-*ait*)
intellĕgit, *v. understands*
vītat, (-ant) *v. avoids* (-*oid*)
vulnĕrat (-ant), *v. wounds* (-*nd*)
nāvēs longae, *long ships, i.e.*
  ships of war

EXERCISE XXIV.

ăcĭēs, -ĭēi, *f.* line (*of battle*)
ăprīcus, -a, -um, *sunny*
călor, calōris, *m. heat*
densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*
dĭēs, dĭēi, *f. day*
dŏlor, dolōris, *m. grief*
exercĭtus, -ūs, *m. army*
făcĭēs, -ĭēi, *f. face*
flumen, -ĭnis, *n. river*
fūga, -ae, *f. flight*
glăcĭēs, -ĭēi, *f. ice*
ĭnĭmīcus, -a, -um, *hostile*
lūx, lūcis, *f. light*
mŏra, -ae, *f. delay*
mĕrīdĭēs, -ĭēi, *f. mid-day*
nŏvus, -a, -um, *new*
nŭmĕrus, -i, *m. number*
pars, partis, *f. part*
plānĭtĭēs, -ĭēi, *f. level ground*
rēs, rei, *f. thing ;* rēs adversae,
  adverse things, i.e. adversity ;
  rēs sĕcundae, *prosperity*
sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*
spēs, -ĕi, *f. hope*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*
tĕnuis, *m. & f.* tenue, *n. thin*
ăgĭtur, *v.* (*he*) *is* (*being*) *driven*
interdum, *adv. sometimes*
tam, *adv. so*

EXERCISE XXV.[1]

ămīcĭtĭă, -ae, *f. friendship*
ăsĭnus, *m. ass*
asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *rough,*
  rugged
ăvis, *f. bird*
brāchĭum, -i, *n. arm*
campus, -i, *m. a plain*
cănis, -is, *m. dog*
crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
diffĭcĭlis, -e, *difficult*
discĭpŭlus, -i, *m. pupil*
dissĭmĭlis, -e, *unlike*
fertĭlis, -e, *fertile*
grăcĭlis, -e, *slender*
hŭmĭlis, -e, *low, low-minded*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n. journey*
nĭhĭl, *indecl. n. nothing*
pătrĭa, -ae, *f. native land*
praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*
prōcērus, -a, -um, *tall*
rĕgĭo, -ĭōnis, *region, district*
săgax, săgācis, *sagacious*
sĭmĭlis, -e, *like*
sŏror, ōris, *sister*
tardus, -a, -um, *slow*
testūdo, -ĭnis, *f. tortoise*
turdus, -i, *m. thrush*
uxor, ōris, *f. wife*
vallis, -is, *f. valley*
vēlŏx, -ōcis, *swift*
virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valour*
autem, *conj. in the second place,*
  however, but, (never comes
  after a stop)
măgĭs, *adv. more*

---

[1] The pupil must not expect to find the Comparative or Superlative forms of Adjectives in this Vocabulary. In looking out the meaning of **hŭmĭlĭor**, for example, he will only find **hŭmĭlis**, the Positive

quam, *conj. than*
quidem, *conj. in the first place,
  indeed*
complet, *v. fills*
dūcit, *v. leads*

EXERCISE XXVI.[1]

Ālexander, -dri, *m. Alexander*
Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*
běněvŏlus, -a, -um, *well-wishing,
  benevolent*
castra, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*
contĭo, -ōnis, *f. speech*
Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*
maxĭmē, *adv. very greatly, most*
mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*
nātus, -ūs, *m. (used only in
  Abl. nātu, by birth)*
pius, -a, -um, *dutiful*
praestans, -antis, *excellent*
rătĭo, -ōnis, *f. reason*
rěvěrentia, ae, *f. reverence*
Sŏcrătēs, -is, *m. Socrates*
tempus, -ŏris, *n. time*
Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*
quid, *pron. (nom. and acc.) n.
  what?*

EXERCISE XXVII.

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*
centŭria, -ae, *f. century*[2]
centŭrio, -ōnis, *m. a centurion*
cěrāsum, -i, *n. cherry*
Děcember, *gen. -bris, adj. of
  December.*
Germānus, -a, -um, *German*
Jānjŭārĭus, -a, -um, *adj.
  January*
jŭvěnis, -is, *m. young man*
lēgio, -ōnis, *f. legion*

mănĭpŭlus, -i, *m. maniple*[2]
Martĭus, -ĭa, -ĭum, *of March*
mensis, -is, *m. month*
nux, nŭcis, *f. nut*
ōvum, -i, *n. egg*
patrimōnium, *n. patrimony*
pauper, -ěris, *poor*
pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
September, *gen. -bris, adj. of
  September*
trĭbūnus, -i, *m. tribune*
nunc, *adv. now*
quondam, *adv. formerly, once*
sōlum, *adv. alone*
tum, *adv. then, during that
  period*
tunc, *adv. then, at that moment*
castīgātur *v. (he) is chastised*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

armentum, -i, *n. herd*
āvārus, -a, -um, *greedy*
cārus, -a, -um, *dear*
cŏrōna, -ae, *f. crown*
ensis, -is, *m. sword*
laus, laudis, *f. praise*
mālum, -i, *n. evil*
mōres, mōrum, *m. pl. conduct*
mōs, mōris, *m. custom*
nēmo, *gen. nullīus, dat. nēmīni.
  acc. nēmĭnem, abl. nullo, no
  one*
scūtum, -i, *n. shield*
tot, *indecl. adj. so many*
ūterquě, utraquě, utrumquě,
  adj. either, both
valdē, *adv. strongly, exceed-
  ingly*
vŏluptās, -tātis, *f. pleasure*
clāmant, *v. (they) cry out*
vītāre, *v. to avoid*

---

[1] The irregular Comparatives and Superlatives given in the text are
intended to be learned there, and are consequently not repeated here.
[2] These terms are explained in a sentence of Exercise XXVII.

EXERCISES XXIX. AND XXX.

ălĭēnus, -a, -um, *another's*

crūdēlis, *m. & f.* -e, *n. cruel*

ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant*

immĕmor, *gen.* -ŏris, *adj. unmindful*

mĕmor, *gen.* -ŏris, *mindful*

-nĕ? *enclitic, asks a question (emphasizing the word to which it is attached)* ◆

nōnnĕ, *interrog. adv.* (expects the answer 'Yes')

num? *interrog. adv.* (expects the answer 'No')

porcus, -i, *m. pig*

sĕd, *conj. but (on the other hand); but yet; but still*

tālis, -e, *adj. such*

cūrat, *v. (he) takes-care-of*

EXERCISES XXXI. AND XXXII.

Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*

Dārīus, -i, *m. Darius*

doctus, -a, -um, *learned*

fīnītĭmus, -a, -um, *bordering on*

fons, fontis, *m. fountain, source*

Gallus, -i, *a Gaul*

Hŏmērus, -i, *m. Homer*

hūc, *adv. hither*

indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*

jūre, *rightly, see Par.* 38

maxĭmē, *adv. very greatly, especially, most of all*

mĭsĕrĭcordĭa, -ae, *f. pity*

nĭmĭs, *adv. too much*

nōmen, -ĭnis, *n. name*

părĭter, *adv. equally*

părens, -rentis, *c. parent*

patrĭa, -ae, *f. native land*

poena, -ae, *f.* (mostly pl.) *penalty*

prāvus, -a, -um, *depraved*

proxĭmus, *see Par.* 69

semper, *adv. always*

sŭi, -ōrum, *m. pl. (adj. used as noun) his (own) men*

vestis, -is, *f. garment*

Virgĭlĭus, -i, (*more correctly* Vergĭlĭus) *m. Virgil*

vĭtĭōsus, -a, -um, *full-of-vice*

errat, *v. (he) errs*

gustat, *v. (he) tastes*

intrat, *v. (he) enters*

laedit, *v. (he) hurts*

sĕrit, *v. (he) sows, plants*

do poenas, *I pay the penalty*

EXERCISE XXXIII.[1]

[The Conjugation of a Verb is denoted by the figure placed after it.]

Castīgo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *punish chastise*

culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*

do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1, *give*[2]

do, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *present*

ēgrĕgĭus, -a, -um, *excellent*

ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *improve*

erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err*

ĭnĭmīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*

laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*

monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *shew, point out*

optĭmus, -a, -um, *very good*

rŏgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask*

saepĕ, *adv. often*

sī, *conj. if*

Tullĭa, -iae, *f. Tullia*

vĭtŭpĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *revile*

---

[1] Henceforth words must be looked out in the Vocabularies, pp. 248-327.

[2] This Verb is irregular.

APPENDIX X.

VOCABULARY—I.

LATIN INTO ENGLISH.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative		*indef.*	= indefinite
acc.	= accusative		*interj.*	= interjection
adj.	= adjective		*intcr.*	= interrogative
adv.	= adverb		*m.*	= masculine
c.	= common gender		*n.*	= neuter
comp.	= comparative		*num.*	= numeral
conj.	= conjunction		*p.*	= page
dat.	= dative		*part.*	= participle
def.	= defective		*pass.*	= passive
dep.	= deponent		*pl.*	= plural
f.	= feminine		*prep.*	= preposition
g. gen., dat., ⎫ *abl., &c.* ⎭	= governs the gen., dat., abl., &c.		*pron.*	= pronoun
			rel.	= relative
gen.	= genitive		*sing.*	= singular
impers.	= impersonal verb		*sup.*	= superlative
indec.	= indeclinable		*v.*	= verb.

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the Conjugation of a Verb.

Ăb (ū, abs), *prep.* with *abl. from, by*

ăbĕo, -ĭi *or* -īvi, -ĭtum, -ĭre, 4, *to go away*

ăbhinc, *adv.* (216) (313) *ago* (*with acc. or abl.*)

abjĭcĭo, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast away*

absens, -entis, *absent*

abstŭli, *see* aufĕro

absum, afui, abesse, *I am absent;* mĭnĭmum ăbest quĭn pĕream, *I am almost perishing,* Par. 195; ăbest quinquĕ mīlĭa passŭum, *he is five miles off;* prŏpĕ ăbest ā nōbĭs, *he is close to us* [*the forms* abfui, abfŭtŭrus, &c., *for* ăfui, ăfŭtŭrus, &c., *are incorrect*]

absūmo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3, *consume, destroy*

absurdus, -a, -um, *adj. absurd*

ăbundo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *abound*

ăbūtor, -ūsus, 3, *v. dep. misuse, use*

ae, *a form of* atque

accēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, *approach*

accīdo, -ĭdi (*no sup.*) 3, *n. v. to happen* (*of ill fortune*) [*take*

accĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *receive,*

accumbo, -cŭbŭi, -cŭbĭtum, 3, *recline* (*at dinner*)

accurro, -cŭcurri & -curri, -cursum, 3, *run up, or towards*

accūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *accuse* (*g. gen. of the charge*)

ăcer, -cris, -cre, *keen, sharp, active*

ăcerbus, -a, -um, *bitter, painful*

Achillēs, -is, m. *Achilles*

ăcĭes, -iēī, *f. line* (*of battle*)

ăcŭo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *I sharpen*

ăcus, -ūs, *f. needle*

ăcūtūs, -a, -um, *sharp*

ăd, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *to, at, near, towards, for* (185, 186)·

ădămantĭnus, -a, -um, *adamantine*

ădĕo, *adv. so, to such an extent*

ădĕo, -īvi or -ii, -ĭtum, 4, *go to, come to, visit, consult* (*g. acc.*)

ădeptus, *see* ădĭpiscor

ădhĭbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *apply*

ădhūc, *adv. as yet*

ădĭpiscor, -eptus, 3, *acquire, obtain*

adjūmentum, -i, *n. assistance*

adjŭvo, ₋jūvi, -jūtum, 1, *assist*

admīror, -ātus, 1, *wonder at, admire*

admitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *to admit;* admīsit in se (*acc.*) scelus, *he gave crime entrance into himself,* i.e. *committed a crime*

admŏneo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2, *warn; remind,* (eum eius rei)

ădŏlescens, *see* ădŭlescens

adsum, affui, ădesse, *I am present, stand by, side with*

ădūlātĭo, -iōnis, *f. flattery*

adŭlātor, -ōris, m. *flatterer*

ădŭlescens, -ntis, *m. young man*

advĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *arrive*

adventus, -ūs, *m. arrival*

adversus, -a, -um, *adverse;* res adversae, *adversity*

adversŭs or -um, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *towards, against*

aedēs, -is, *f. sing. temple; pl. house*

aedĭfĭcĭum, -ii, *n. building*

aedĭfĭco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *build*

Aedŭi, -ōrum, *m. pl. the Aedui, a Gallic tribe*

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick;* aegrē fĕro hoc, *I bear this ill,* i.e. *I resent this*

Aegyptus, -i, *f. Egypt* [*just*

aequus, -a, -um, *adj. level, even,*

āēr, āĕris, *m. the air*

aes, aeris, *n. brass, money;* aes ălĭēnum, *debt*

aestas, -ātis, *f. summer*

aestĭmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I value;* with magni, plūris, &c. (283)

aetas, -ātis, *f. age, time of life*

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj. eternal*

aether, -ĕris, *m. the upper air, heaven*

affĕro, attŭlī, allātum, afferrĕ, *I bring to, cause;* (*impers.*) allatum est, *word was brought*

affĭcĭo, -fēci, fectum, 3, *treat;* aff. te hŏnōre, voluptāte, supplĭcĭo, mĕtu, *I treat you with honour, pleasure, &c.,* i.e. *I honour you, cause you pleasure, visit you with punishment, &c.*

affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *assert*

afflīgo, -ixi, -ictum, 3, *I cast down, prostrate*

Afrĭca, -ae, *f. Africa*

ăger, -gri, *m. field, lands*

agger, -ĕris, *m. a mound*

agnosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum, 3, *recognize*

ăgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3, *drive, lead, act, do;* id ăgo ut, *I am doing my best to;* grātĭās ăgĕre, *to return thanks;* causam a., *plead a cause;* vītam a., *lead a life;* nihil a., *do nothing;* actum est de nōbīs, *it is all over with us;* hōc ăgĭtur, *this is being done,* i.e. *this is the point, or question*

agrĭcŏla, -ae, m. *husbandman*

uĭo, v. *def. say, see* p. 215; ut aiunt, as they say, i.e. *as the proverb goes*

āla, -ae, f. *wing*

Albānus, -a, -um, *Alban*

albus, -a, -um, *white*

Alcĭbĭădes, -is, m. *Alcibiades*

Ălexander, -dri, m. *Alexander (the Great)*   [*time*

ălias, *adv.* at one time, at another

ălĭbi, *adv.* at one place, at another place; alii a. stant, *some stand in one place, others in another*

aliēnus, -a, -um, *another's;* ălĭēna sŭis antĕpōnit, *he places the interests of others above his own;* aes ălĭēnum, *debt;* in aerō ā.ĭēno esse, *to be in debt*   [*place*

ălĭo, *adv.* to one place, to another

ălĭquando, *adv.* sometimes, at some time or other

ălĭquis, -quae, -quid, *pron.* some one, something, *decl. like* quis

ălĭquo, *adv.* somewhither; ălĭquo terrārum, (*part. gen.*) *to some place in the world*

ălĭter, *adv.* otherwise, differently

ălĭus, -a, -ud, *irr. adj.* one of any number, one another. See Par. 86

allātum, *see* affero

allĭcĭo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *allure*

Allŏbrŏges, -um, m. *the Allobroges*

allŏquor, -lōcūtus, 3, *dep.* speak to, accost (*g. acc.*)

almus, -a, -um, *loving*

ălo, alŭi, altum, 3, *nourish*, rear

Alpēs, -ĭum, f. pl. *the Alps.*

alter, -tĕra, -tĕrum, (*gen.* -erīus, *dat.* -erī), one of two, second, the other; unus et a. *one or two;* vīcēsĭmus a., *twenty-first*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

ămābĭlis, -e, *adj.* lovely   [Par. 288

ămans, -ntis, *adj.* loving, (*g. gen.*)

ămārus, -a, -um, *bitter*

ambo, -ae, -o, *both.* See Par. 77

ambŭlo, -āvi, -ātum, *I walk*

āmens, -ntis, *senseless, mad*

amĭcĭo, -ĭcŭi or -ĭxi, -ictum, 4, *cover, clothe*

ămĭcĭtĭa, -ae, f. *friendship*

ămĭcus, -i, m. *friend*

ămo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *love*

ămor, -ōris, m. *love*

āmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *lose*

amnis, -is, m. *river*

ăn, or (*in dep. quest., see* Par. 171); (*also in direct quest.,* an alterna- tive being understood), An nō* prōdēs? i.e. (*you will be faith- ful, will you not?*) *Or will you actually betray us?* (171, 302)

Angli, -ōrum, m. pl. *Englishmen*

anguis, -is, m. *snake*

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* narrow

ănĭmadverto, -i, -sum, 3, *observe*

ănĭmăl, -ālis, n. *animal.*

ănĭmus, -i, m. *mind, soul, courage*

annōn, *see* Par. 172

annus, -i, m. *year*   [*vestigate*

anquīro, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, 3, *in- anser, -sĕris, m. goose*

antĕ, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) before, (183); *adv.* paucis ante annis, *a few years before;* N.B.—*distinguish the prep. from the conj.* ante... quam, *or* antequam; anteā, *adv.* before those things, beforehand

antĕpōno, -pōsui, -pōsĭtum, *prefer* (*g. acc. and dat.*) (192)

antĕquam, *conj.* before, until

Anthrŏpŏphăgi, -ōrum, m. pl. *man- eaters, cannibals*

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*

ānŭlus (*not* annŭlus), -i, m. *ring*

ănŭs, -ūs, f. *old woman*

ăper, -pri, m. *wild boar*

ăpĕrio, ăpĕrŭi, ăpertum, 4, *open*

ăpertus, -a, -um, *open, clear*

Apollo, -ĭnis, m. *Apollo*

appello, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *call*

aprīcus, -a, -um, *sunny*

ăpŭd, *prep. g. acc. See* Par. 183

aptus, -a, -um, *fit*

ăqua, -ae, f. *water*

ăquĭla, -ae, f. *an eagle*

arbĭter, -tri, m. *umpire*

arbĭtror, -ātus, 1, (v. dep.) *consider, judge*

arbor, -ŏris, f. *tree*

Archīmēdēs, -is, m. *Archimedes*

arci, *see* arx

arcus, -ûs, m. *bow*

ardĕo, arsi, -sum, 2, v. intr., *I burn, am on fire*

ardŭus, -a, -um, adj. *lofty, steep, difficult*

argenteus, -a, -um, *silver*

argentum, -i, n. *silver ; money*

Ariŏvistus, -i, m. *Ariovistus*

arma, -ōrum, n. pl. *arms*

Arměnia, -ae, f. *Armenia*

armentum, -i, n. *herd*

armo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *arm, equip*

ăro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *plough*

Arpīnum, -i, n. *Arpinum, the birth-place of Cicero*

ars, artis, f. *art, handicraft*

arvum, -i, n. *corn-field*

arx, arcis, f. *citadel*

as, assis, m. *the smallest Roman coin ; it may be translated a far-thing (used in the genit. of indef. price ; see Ex. LXXX.)*

Asia, -ae, f. *Asia (mostly Ā)*

ăsĭnus, -i, m. *ass*

asper, -ěra, -ěrum, *rough, rugged*

aspernor, -ātus, 1, v. dep. *reject, despise*

aspĭcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look at*

assĕquor, -secutus, 3, *attain*

ăt, conj. *but (more abrupt than sed)*

āter, atra, atrum, *black, gloomy*

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl. *Athens*

Athēniensis, -e, *Athenian*

atquĕ (or ac, *but not before vowels*), conj. *and further, and ; often used to couple words of similar meaning, e.g. sŏcĭi atquĕ ămĭci, hŏnestissĭmusatquĕ ornātissĭmus*

ātrox, -ōcis, *stern, gloomy*

auctor, -ōris, m. *adviser, author ;* Tullio auctōre, *at the advice of Tullius* (197)

auctōrĭtās, -ātis, f. *authority*

auctumnus, -i, m. *autumn*

audactĕr, adv. *boldly, daringly*

audāx, -ācis, *bold*

audĕo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, *to dare, venture*

audio, -īvi, -ītum, 4, *hear*

audītus, -us, m. *hearing*

aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum auferrĕ, *I carry away, take away*

augeo, auxi, auctum, 2. *augment*

Augustus, -i, m. *Augustus, the first emperor of Rome*

aurĕus, -a, -um, *golden*

aurīga, -ae, m. *charioteer*

aurĭs, -is, f. *an ear*

aurum, -i, n. *gold*

ausus, *see* audeo

Auster, -tri, m. *South wind* [173]

aut...aut, *either...or else* (157a,

autem, conj. *but, in the second place (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs) ; see* quĭdem (67)

auxĭlium, -i, n. *help, aid*

ăvārus, -a, -um, *avaricious, greedy*

ăvĭdus, -a, -um, *greedy*

ăvis, -is, f. *bird*

ăvus, -i, m. *a grandfather*

Băbylōn, -ōnis, f. *Babylon*

bālaena, -ae, f. *a whale*

Balbus, -i, m. *Balbus*

barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*

bĕātē, adv. *happily*

bĕātus, -a -um, adj. *happy*

Belga, -ae, m. *a Belgian*

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. *warlike*

bello, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I wage war*

bellum, -i, n. *war*

bēlŭa, -ae, f. *a great beast*

bĕnĕ, adv. *well*

bĕnĕfĭcium, -ii, n. *benefit*

běněfĭcus, -a, -um, *beneficent*

běněvolentia, -ae, *f. benevolence*

běněvŏlus, -a, -um, *well-wishing, benevolent.* See Par. 68a

běnignē, *adv. kindly*

běnignus, -a, -um, *kind*

bestĭa, -ae, *f. a beast*; damnāri ad bestĭas, *to be condemned to be exposed to the beasts (in the amphitheatre)*

bĭbo, bĭbi, bĭbĭtum, 3, *I drink*

Bĭbŭlus, -i, *m. Bibulus*

bĭdŭum, -i, *n. two days*; bĭdui ĭter, *two days' journey*

biennium, -i, *n. two years*

bīni, -ae, -a, *two apiece* (314)

bĭs, *adv. twice*

blandĭor, -ītus, with *dat.* 4, *v. dep. I flatter, win upon*

bŏna, -ōrum, *n. pl. goods, blessings*

bŏnus, -a, -um, *adj. good* [311]

bŏs, bŏvis, *c. ox, cow,* see Par.

bracchĭum, -i, *n. arm*

brĕvis, -e, *short, brief*

Brĭtannĭa, -ae, *f. Britain*

Brĭtannus, -i, *m. a Briton*

Brūtus, -i, *m. Brutus*

būbus, see bŏs

Cădāvĕr, -ĕris, *n. corpse*

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3, *I fall*; N.B. *distinguish this from* cēcīdi

caecus, -a, -um, *adj. blind*

caedēs, -is, *f. slaughter*

caedo, cĕcīdi, caesum, 3, *strike, cut down, slay*; N.B. *distinguish this from* cēcĭdi

caelestis, -e, *celestial*

caelĭcŏlae, -ārum, *m. pl. lit. heaven-dwellers,* i.e. *gods*

caelum, -i, *n. heaven*

Caesar, -ăris, *m. Caesar*

cālămĭtas, -ātis, *f. calamity*

calcăr, -āris, *n. spur*

cālix, -ĭcis, *m. cup*

cālor, ōris, *m. heat*

Cāmillus, -i, *m. Camillus*

Campānĭa, -ae, *f. Campania*

campus, -i, *m. plain*

cancer, -cri, *m. crab*

cānis, -is, *c. dog*

Cannae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cannae, a village where Hannibal defeated the Romans*

cāno, cĕcĭni, cantum, 3, *sing*; tūbā cĕcĭnit, *the trumpet sounded*

canto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I sing*

cantus, -ūs, *m. song*

căper, -pri, *m. goat*

căpillus, -i, *m. hair (pl. once in Cicero, but in poetry often)*

căpĭo, cēpi, captum, 3, *take* [ive]

captīvus (or captus) -a, -um, *capt-*

Căpŭa, -ae, *f. Capua, the most luxurious city in Italy*

căpŭt, -ĭtis, *n. head*; gentis căpŭt, *the capital city of the nation*; căpĭte multo, *I punish with death*; căpĭtis damno, *I condemn to death (Ex. LXXX.)*

carcer, -ĕris, *m. prison*

cardo, -ĭnis, *m. hinge*

cărĕo, -ui, 2, *I am without (g. abl.)*; fācĭle c. vīno, *I easily do without wine*

carmĕn, -ĭnis, *n. song*

căro, carnis, *f. flesh* [ginian]

Carthāgĭnĭensis, -e, *adj. Cartha-*

Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f. Carthage*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*

căsa, -ae *f. cottage*

cāsĕus, -i, *m. cheese*

castīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *chastise punish*

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*

cāsus, -ūs, *m. chance, accident*; dīversis cāsibus, *with varied fortunes*

cătēna, -ae, *f. chain*

Cătĭlīna, -ae, *m. Catiline*

Căto, -ōnis, *m. Cato*

causa, -ae, *f. cause*; audĭendi causā, *for the sake of hearing*; causam ēgit, *he pleaded a cause*

căvĕo, cāvi, cautum, 2, *beware,
beware of* (g. acc.) ; căvē nē
fŭcias, *take care not to do* ; căvē-
bātur, *precautions were taken*
cĕcĭdi, *see* cădo *and* caedo
cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *yield* ; c.
tĭbī, *I yield to you* ; c. ăciē *or*
ex ăciē, *I retire from the battle*
cĕlor, -ēris, -ĕro, *swift* ; cĕlĕrĭter,
adv. swiftly (61)
cĕlĕrĭtas, -tātis, *f. speed*
cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *conceal,* (g. two
acc.). *See Par. 312*
celsus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, tall*
cēna, -ae, *f. dinner* ; cēno, -āvi,
-ātum, 1, *dine* (perf. *also* cēnātus
sum) ; cēnātus, *having dined*
centum, *see Par. 81*
centŭrĭa, -ae, *f. a* (military) *century*
(*see Ex. XXVII., sent.* 8)
centŭrĭo, -ŏnis, *m. centurion (the
officer of a century)*
cĕrăsum, -i, *n. cherry*
cĕrăsus, -i, *f. the cherry-tree*
cĕrĕbrum, -i, *n. brain*
Cĕrĕs, Cĕrĕris, *f. Ceres*
certāmen, -ĭnis, *n. contest, strife* ; in
certāmen hŏnōris vēnērunt, *they
entered into a competition for
distinction*
cerno, 3, *I see, discern*
certus, -a, -um, *adj. certain* ; certĭ-
ōrem tē fēci, *I informed you* (foll.
by Gen., or Object Infinitive) ;
fixed, certum ŏpus, *a fixed task*
cervus, -i, *m. stag*
[cēter], -ĕra, -ĕrum, *adj. the rest,
the rest of* (*see Eng. Latin Vocab.,
of*) ; *pl.* cētĕri, *the others*
cĭbus, -i, *m. food*
Cĭcĕro, -ōnis, *m. Cicero*
cĭnis, cĭnĕris, *m. ashes*
cingo, -nxi, -nctum, 3, *I surround*
circā, circum, *prep.* (g. acc.)
around
circĭter, *prep. with acc. about*
circumdo, -dăre, -dĕdi, dătum, 1,

(1) *to put round* (acc. and dat.) ;
(2) *to surround* (acc. and abl.)
circumspĭcĭo, -spexi, -spectum, 3,
look round
circumsto, -stĕti, -stāre, *stand
round* ; (part. *as noun*) circum-
stantes, -ium, *by-standers   [of*
cis, citrā, *prep.* (g. acc.) *on this side*
Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *on this side of
the Alps, Cisalpine*
cĭthăra, -ae, *f. lute   [quickly*
cĭto, *adv. quickly* ; cĭtius, *more*
cīvīlis, -e, *adj. belonging to a
citizen, civil*
cīvis, -is, *m. citizen*
cīvĭtas, -tātis, *f. state, citizen-
ship* ; dōnant ĕum cīvĭtātĕ, *they
present him with the citizen-
ship*
clādēs, -is, *f. slaughter*
clam, *adv. secretly* ; *prep.* (g. abl.)
without the knowledge of
clāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry out,
shout*
clāmor, -ōris, *m. clamour, shout*
claudo, -si, -sum, 3, *shut*
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, renowned*
classis, -is, *f. a fleet*
clēmenter, *adv. gently, mercifully*
coactus, *see* cōgo
coelestis, *see* caelestis.
coelum, *see* caelum
coena, *see* cēna
coeno, *see* cēno
cŏĕo, -īvi *or* -ii, ĭtum, 4, *join
together* (v. intrans.)
cŏercĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *restrain*
cōgĭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think,
meditate*
cognosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum, 3, *learn,
ascertain*
cōgo, cŏēgi, cōactum, 3 *compel*
cŏhors, -rtis, *f. cohort, a tenth part
of the legion*
cŏhortor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. en-
courage*
collĭgo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3, *collect*

contentus. -a, -um (g. abl.) con-
  tented (278)
contĭnĕo, -ŭi, -entum, 2, I hold
  together
contingo, -tĭgi, 3, befall; contĭgit
  mĭhĭ, it was my good luck
contĭnŭo, adv. forthwith; N.B. not
  continually
contĭo, -ĭōnis, f. speech, harangue
contrā, prep. (g. acc.) against
contrăho, -axi, -actum, 3, draw
  together
contrārĭus, a, -um, contrary (189)
contŭmēlĭa, -ae, f. an insult
nvălesco, -vălŭi, 3, recover from
  illness
convĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, I
  assemble
converto, -verti, -versum, 3, turn
  round; conversus, being turned
  i.e. turning (himself)
convĭcĭum, -i, n. reviling, abuse
convŏco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, call to-
  gether
cōpĭa, -ae, f. plenty; cōpĭae, -ārum,
  f. pl. forces
cŏr, cordis, n. the heart
cōram, prep. (g. abl.) in presence of
Cŏrinthus, -i, f. Corinth
Cornēlĭa, -ae, f. Cornelia
cornū, -ūs, n. a horn
cŏrōna, -ae, f. a crown
corpus, -ŏris, n. body
corrĭgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, correct
corrĭpĭo, -rĭpŭi, -reptum, 3, snatch
  away; morbo correptus est,
  he was carried off by disease
cottīdĭe, see quŏtīdĭe
crās, adv. to-morrow
Crassus, -i, m. Crassus, a miserly
  millionaire of the times of Cicero
crĕātor, -ōris, m. creator   [peated
crĕber,- bra, -brum, frequent, re-
crēdĭbĭlis, -e, adj. credible   [dat.]
crēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3, believe (g.
crĕo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I create, make
Crēta, -ae, f. Crete

crīmen, -ĭnis, n. charge, accusation
crīnis, -is, m. hair
crŭcĭātus, -ūs, m. torture
crūdēlis, -e, cruel
crūdēlĭtas, -ātis, f. cruelty
crūs, crūris, n. leg
culpa, -ae, f. blame, fault; see ex-
  trā
culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, blame
culter, -tri, m. knife
cum, prep. (g. abl.) with
cum, (sometimes wrongly spelt
  quum) conj. when, (Par. 151)
  since; cum . . . tum not only
  . . . but also; N.B. — cum is
  never interrogative : see quando
Cūmae, -ārum, f. pl. Cumæ, (a city)
cunctor, -atus, 1 (v. dep.) delay
cunctus, -a, -um, adj. all (together)
cŭpĭdĭtas, -ātis, f. desire, passion
cŭpĭdus, -a, -um, fond of (g. gen.)
cŭpĭo, -īvi and -ĭi, -ītum, 3, desire
cŭr, adv. why? (also conj. in dep.
  sent.); nōn est cūr tĭmĕas, there
  is not (any reason) why you
  should fear
cūra, -ae, f. care
cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, take care;
  cūrā ut, or nē, ĕās take care to, or
  not to, go
curro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3, run
currus, -ūs, m. chariot
cursus, -ūs, m. running, course
custōdĭo, -īvi or -ĭi, -ītum, 4, guard
custos, custōdis, m. a guardian
Cyprus, -i, f. Cyprus

Damno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, condemn
Dārĭus, -i, m. Darius
dē, prep. (g. abl.) down from, from,
  concerning
dĕa, -ae, f. a goddess (dat. and abl.
  pl. dĕābus) see Par. 311
dēbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, owe; dēbŭi
  dăre, I ought to have given (223)
dēbĭlis, -e, adj. feeble
dĕcem, see Par. 81·

contentus. -a, -um (g. abl.) contented (278)

continĕo, -ŭi, -entum, 2, I hold together

contingo, -tĭgi, 3, befall ; contĭgit mĭhi, it was my good luck

contĭnŭo, adv. forthwith ; N.B. not continually

contĭo, -ĭŏnis, f. speech, harangue

contrā, prep. (g. acc.) against

contrăho, -axi, -actum, 3, draw together

contrārius, a, -um, contrary (189)

contŭmēlĭa, -ae, f. an insult

)nvălesco, -vălŭi, 3, recover from illness

convĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, I assemble

converto, -verti, -versum, 3, turn round ; conversus, being turned i.e. turning (himself)

convīcĭum, -i, n. reviling, abuse

convŏco, -āvi, -atum, 1, call together

cūpĭa, -ae, f. plenty ; cōpĭae, -ārum, f. pl. forces

cŏr, cordis, n. the heart

cŏram, prep. (g. abl.) in presence of

Cŏrinthĭus, -i, f. Corinth

Cornēlĭa, -ae, f. Cornelia

cornū, -ūs, n. a horn

cŏrōna, -ae, f. a crown

corpus, -ŏris, n. body

corrĭgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, correct

corrĭpĭo, -rĭpŭi, -reptum, 3, snatch away ; morbo correptus est, he was carried off by disease

cottīdĭe, see quŏtīdĭe

crās, adv. to-morrow

Crassus, -i, m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero

crĕātor, -ōris, m. creator [peated

crēber,- bra, -brum, frequent, re-

crēdĭbĭlis, -e, adj. credible [dat.)

crēdo, -dĭdi, -ditum, 3, believe (g.

crĕo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I create, make

Crēta, -ae, f. Crete

crīmen, -ĭnis, n. charge, accusation

crīnis, -is, m. hair

crŭcĭātus, -ūs, m. torture

crūdēlis, -e, cruel

crūdēlĭtas, -ātis, f. cruelty

crūs, crūris, n. leg

culpa, -ae, f. blame, fault ; see extrā

culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, blame

culter, -tri, m. knife

cum, prep. (g. abl.) with

cum, (sometimes wrongly spelt quum) conj. when, (Par. 151) since ; cum . . . tum not only . . . but also ; N.B. — cum is never interrogative : see quando

Cūmae, -ārum, f. pl. Cumæ, (a city)

cunctor, -atus, 1 (v. dep.) delay

cunctus, -a, -um, adj. all (together)

cūpĭdĭtas, -ātis, f. desire, passion

cūpĭdus, -a, -um, fond of (g. gen.)

cūpĭo, -īvi and -ĭi, -ītum, 3, desire

cūr, adv. why ? (also conj. in dep. sent.) ; nōn est cūr tĭmĕas, there is not (any reason) why you should fear .

cūra, -ae, f. care

cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, take care ; cūrā ut, or nē, ĕās take care to, or not to, go

curro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3, run

currus, -ūs, m. chariot

cursus, -ūs, m. running, course

custōdĭo, -īvi or -ĭi, -ītum, 4, guard

custos, custōdis, m. a guardian

Cyprus, -i, f. Cyprus

Damno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, condemn

Dārius, -i, m. Darius

dē, prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning

dĕa, -ae, f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. dĕābus) see Par. 311

dēbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, owe ; dēbŭi dāre, I ought to have given (223)

dēbĭlis, -e, adj. feeble

dĕcem, see Par. 81·

Děcember, -bris, -bre, *of December.*
See Appendix VI., p. 229

děcemvir, -viri, *m. decemvir, one of
ten commissioners*

děcět, děcŭit, děcērě, 2, *impers. v.
it becomes, befits,* Par. 220.

děcĭmus, -a, -um, Par. 81.

děcĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *I deceive*

děcŏro, -āvi, ātum, 1, *honour, dis-
tinguish*

děcus, -ŏris, *n. ornament, honour,
glory; Horace addresses his
patron as "my guardian and
glory* (děcus)"

dēděcět, děcŭit, děcērě, 2, *impers.
v. it misbecomes*

dēděcus, -ŏris, n. *disgrace, baseness*

dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3, *defend*

dēfensor, -ōris, *a defender*

dēflāgro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to be burnt
down*

dēfluo, -fluxi, 3, *flow down*

dēformis, -e, *ugly*

dējĭcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast down*

dēlecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *delight*

dēlectus, -ūs, *m. a levy*   [*out*

dēlěo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *destroy, blot*

dēlībero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *deliberate*

dēlĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum, *choose*

Dēlŏs, -i, *f. the isle of Delos, the
seat of an oracle of Apollo*

Delphi, -ōrum, *m. pl. Delphi, the
city containing the principal
oracle of Apollo*

dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3, *sub-
tract*

Dēmosthěnēs, -is, *m. Demosthenes*

dēmum, *adv. indeed;* id dēmum,
that, and nothing else; tum dē-
mum, *then, and not till then*

dēnārius, -ii, *m. a denarius, a
Roman coin worth about 9d.*

dēnĭquě (*adv.*) *finally, in short*

densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*

dens, -ntis, *m. tooth*

dēpello, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3, *drive
down*

dēplōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lament over,
deplore*

dēposco, -poposci, 3, *demand*

dērīsŭs, -ūs, *m. laughing-stock*

descendo, -scendi, -scensum, 3,
come, or go, down

descisco, -scīvi, -scītum, 3, *revolt*

dēsěro, -rui, -rtum, 3, *I abandon*

dēsīděro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *long for
(what is absent)*

dēsum, -fui, -esse, (*dat.*) *be want-
ing to, fall short, fail*

dētěgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *reveal, dis-
close*

dēterrěo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *frighten*

dētexo, -texŭi, -textum, 3, *finish
weaving, finish*

detīněo, -ui, 2, *detain, keep back*

dētrăho, -traxi, -tractum, *take
away, withdraw*

Dŏus, -i, *m. God*

dēvinco, -vīci, -victum, 3, *subdue*

dextra, -ae, *f. right hand*

Diāna, -ae, *f. Diana*

dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *say, speak;* dīcĭ-
tur Tullius, &c., *it is said that
Tullius,* &c. (Par 177)

dictĭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *say often*

dictum, -i, *a saying*

dĭes, -ēi, *m. (f. in poets) day*

diffĭcĭlis, -e, *difficult* (60)   [*trust*

diffīdo, -fīsus sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *dis-*

diffindo, -fīdi, -fissum, 3, *cleave
asunder*

dīgěro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *arrange*

dĭgĭtus, -i, *m. finger*   [*authority*

dignĭtas, -ātis, *f. dignity, worth,*

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy* (*g. abl.*)

dīlābor, -lapsus, 3, *slip away in
different directions*

dīlĭgens, -ntis, *adj. diligent, careful*

dīlĭgenter, *adv. carefully*

dīlĭgentĭa, -ae, *f. diligence*

dīlĭgentissīmē, *adv. most carefully*

dīlĭgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *love, esteem*

dīmĭco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight (a
battle)*

dīmĭdĭum, -i, *n. half*

dīmitto, -īsi, -issum, 3, *I let go, dismiss*

Dĭŏnȳsĭus, -ii, *m. Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse*

dīrĭpĭo, -rĭpŭi, -reptum, 3, *plunder*

discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *depart*

discĭplīna, -ae, *f. discipline*

discĭpŭlus, -i, *m. pupil*

disco, dĭdĭci, 3, *learn*

discordĭa, -ae, *f. discord*

displĭcĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, (g. dat.) 2, *displease*

dispŭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *discuss*

dispŭtātĭo, -ōnis, *f. discussion*

dissĭmĭlis, -e, *adj. unlike; g. gen. or dat. (see Par. 66, 60)*

distrăho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw asunder*

distrĭbuo, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *distribute*

dĭū, *adv. long, for a long time*

diūtius, *adv. longer*

dīversus, -a, -um, *diverse, different*

dīvĕs, -ĭtis, *rich   [parate*

dīvĭdo, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3, *divide, se-*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine*

dīvĭtĭae, -ārum, *f. pl. riches*

do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1, *give; do litteras, I date a letter*

dŏcĕo, -ŭi, -ctum, 2, *I teach (g. two acc.) See Par. 312*

doctē, *adv. learnedly, skilfully*

doctrīna, -ae, *f. learning*

doctus, -a, -um, *learned*

dŏlĕo, -ŭi, 2, *grieve*

dŏlor, -ōris, *m. pain, grief*

dŏlus, -i, *m. craft, treachery ; per dŏlum, treacherously*

dŏmestĭcus, -a, -um, *domestic*

dŏmĭcĭlĭum, -ii, *n. an abode*

dŏmĭna, -ae, *f. mistress*

dŏmĭnātus, -ūs, *m. rule, sovereignty*

dŏmĭnus, -i, *m. master, owner*

dŏmo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 1, *tame, subdue*

dŏmus, -i, *f. house, home; dŏmi, at* home; dŏmum, homeward, Pars. 249, 265*

dōno, -avi, -ātum, 1, *present, g. acc. and dat. like* do*; or else acc. and abl. ; dōno ĕum ĕquo, I present him with a horse*

dōnum, -i, *n. gift*

dormĭo, -īvi or ii, -ītum, 4, *sleep*

dorsum, -i, *n. back*

dŭbĭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *doubt*

dŭbĭus, -a, -um, *adj. doubtful ; nōn dŭbĭum est quīn, it is not doubtful that, i.e., there is no doubt that (foll. by Subjunct.)*

dŭcenti, -ae, -a, *see* Par. 81 [(237)

dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *lead, marry*

dulcis, -e, *sweet, delightful*

dum, *conj.* (Par. 272) *while*

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*

dux, dŭcis, *c. leader, general*

Ē, ex, *prep.* (g. abl.) *out of, from ; ex imprŏbo, fīs imprŏbĭor, from bad, you are becoming worse*

ĕbur, ĕbŭris, *n. ivory*

eccĕ, *interject. lo ! behold !*

ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3, *eat*

ĕdŭco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *educate*

ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead out*

effĕro, extŭli, ēlātum, efferrĕ, 3, *irr. v. I carry out*

efflōresco, -flōrŭi, 3, *blossom*

effŏdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3, *scoop out, strike out*

effŭgio, -fūgi, 3, *escape (g. acc.)*

ĕgĕo, -ui, 2, *to need (g. abl.)*

ĕgo, *see* Par. 90

ēgrĕgĭus, -a, -um, *adj. excellent, eminent*

eiusmŏdi, *see* mŏdus

ējĭcĭo, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast out*

ēlĕgans, -antis, *adj. elegant, exquisite*

ēlĕgantĭa, -ae, *f. tastefulness*

ĕlĕphas, ĕlĕphantis, *m.* (also ĕlĕphantus, -i, *m.*) *elephant*

ēlĭcĭo, -lĭcui, -lĭcĭtum, 3, *draw forth*

ēlĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *choose*

ēlŏquens, -entis, *adj. eloquent*

ĕlŏquentĭa, -ae, *f. eloquence*

ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *improve*

ēmigro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I depart from*

ēmĭnŭs, *at a distance* [*military term opp.* to comminus (cum, mănus), *hand to hand*]

ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, *I buy*

ēnarro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I relate*

ĕnim, *conj. for (differs from* nam *in never standing first in a clause)*

ēnītor, -īsus or ixus, 3, *v. dep. strive hard*

ensis, -is, *m. sword*

ĕo, *adv. abl. of* ĭs, *by so much; (with compar.)* eo mĕlĭus (*by*) *so much the better*; in eo (166)

ĕo, ĭvi, ĭtum, īre, *go,* Par. 241

ĕpistŏla, -ae, *f. letter, epistle (perhaps better,* ĕpĭstŭla)

Epămīnondas, -ae, *m. Epaminondas, a Theban patriot and general*

Ĕphĕsus, -i, *f. Ephesus*

ĕquĕs, -ĭtĭs, *m. horse soldier*

ĕquester, -tris, -e, *equestrian*

ĕquĭdem (Par. 139) *for my part*

ĕquĭto,-āvi, -ātum, 1, *ride*

ĕquĭtātus, -ŭs, *m. cavalry*

ĕquus, -i, *m. a horse*

ergā, *prep. (g. acc.) towards (only of the feelings)* Par. 183

ēripio, -rĭpui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away (g. acc. and dat.,* 192)

erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err, wander*

error, -ōris, *m. error, fault*

ērŭdĭo, -īvi or -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *train up, educate*

ērŭdītus, -a, -um, *adj. trained, educated*

ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst, rush forth*

ĕt, *conj. and;* et...et, *both...and; even,* (see Par. 12, 32, 153)

ĕtĭam, *conj. also, even* (141); *(mostly before the word it modifies);* nōn sōlum...sed ĕtĭam, *not only ...but also*

Euphrātēs, -is, *m. the Euphrates*

Eurīpĭdēs, -is, *m. Euripides*

Eurōpa, -ae, *f. Europe*

ēvādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, *escape*

ēvĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *to return*

ēventŭs, -ŭs, *m., event, result*

ex or ē, *prep. with abl. out of, from;* ex ĭtĭnĕre, *on a journey*

exalbesco, -albui, 3, *turn pale*

exaudio, -īvi, -ītum, 4, *catch the sound of (g. acc.)*

excēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I depart from*

exclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I cry out*

excŏlo, -cŏlui, -cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully;* agri exculti frūmento, *lit. fields richly cultivated with corn, i.e. fields with rich corn-crops*

excūsātĭo, -ōnis, *f., excuse*

excūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to excuse*

excŭtĭo, -cussi, -cussum, 3, *shake off*

exemplum, -i, *n. example*

exēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum, 3, *eat out, gnaw away;* exēsus pūmex, *weather-hollowed rock*

exĕo, -īvi or ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *I go out*

exercĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *exercise*

exercĭtus, -ŭs, *m. army*

exhaurio, -hausi, -haustum, 4, *drain off, drink off*

exĭgŭus, -a, -um, *scanty, little*

exīlĭum, *see* exsīlium

exĭtĭum, -ĭi, *n. destruction*

exordĭor, -orsus, 4, *(v. dep.), begin a web; hence* exorsa, -ōrum, *n. pl. a beginning*

expecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *await*

expello, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3, *I drive out* [*awakened*

expergiscor, experrectus, 3, *I am*

expĕrĭentĭa, -ae, *f. experience*

expĕrĭor, -pertus, 4, *dep. try, experience*

expers, -rtis, *destitute of* (g. gen.)

expěto, -īvi, -ītum, 3, *seek out*

explōrātor, -ōris, m. *spy, scout*

explōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *investigate*

expōno, -pŏ-ui, -pŏsĭtum, 3, *put forth, disembark*

expugno, -āvi, ātum, 1, *take by storm*   [*destroy*

exscindo, -scĭdi, -scissum, 3, *rend,*

ex-sĭlio, -sĭlui, -sultum, 4, *leap forth*

exsĭlium, -i. n. *exile*

exstrŭo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *build up*

extĭmesco, -tĭmŭi, 3, *take alarm at* (acc.)

extrā, *prep.* (g. acc.) *outside of*; extrā culpam, *free from blame*

extrăho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw out*

extrēmus, -a, -um, *last*, Par. 69

exulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *exult*

exŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *strip off*

Făber, -bri, m. *workman, artificer*

Făbius, -ii, m. *Quintus Fabius Maximus, called* Cunctātor, *because by "delaying action" he restored success to Rome in the Second Punic War*

făbŭla, -ae, f. *story, fable*

făcies, -ēi, f. *face*

făcĭlĕ, *adv. easily*; comp. făcĭlius

făcĭlis, -e, *adj. easy* (60)   [*crime*

făcĭnus, -ŏris, n. *daring deed,*

făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕrĕ, 3, *make, do*; fāc (ut) vĕnĭas, *cause that you,* i.e. *take care to, come*; (*with* assis, flocci) *I value* (284)

factum, -i, n. *deed*

fallāx, -ācis, *deceitful*

fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, 3, *deceive*; fidem fĕfellit, *he broke his word*; non f. ŏpīnĭŏnem, *it did not deceive our expectation*

falsus, -a, -um, *false*

fāma, -ae, f. *fame, reputation*; Fāma, the *goddess Fame*

fămĭlĭāris, -e, *belonging to the household*; rēs f. *one's property, estate*

fămēs, -is, f. *hunger*

fās, n. indecl. *divine law, heaven's will*; contrā jūs fāsque, *against human and divine law*

fascis, -is, m. *bundle, faggot*; fascēs, *the rods carried before consuls*

fătĕor, fassus, 2, *dep. confess*

fātum, -i, n. *fate*

faux, -cis, f. *jaw*

făvĕo, fāvi, fautum, 2, *favour* (g. dat.)

febris, -is, f. (-im or -em, -ī or -ĕ), *fever*

fēlīcĭtĕr, *adv. luckily, prosperously*

fēlix, -īcis, *happy, fortunate*

fēmĭna, -ae, f. *a woman*

fĕra, -ae, f. *a wild beast*

fĕrax, -ācis, *fruitful*

fĕrē, *adv. almost, commonly*; nēmo fĕrē, *hardly anyone*

fērĭtas, -ātis, f. *savageness*   [*peace*

fĕrio, 4, *strike*; f. pācem, *I make*

fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *bear, carry, endure*; fertur Gaius dixisse, *it is reported that Gaius said*

fĕrox, -ōcis, *adj. fierce, spirited*

ferrum, -i, n. *iron, sword*

fertĭlis, -e, *fertile*

fĕrus, -a, -um, *savage, wild*

fessus, -a, -um, *weary*

fētus, -ūs, m. *offspring*

ficus, -ūs, f. *a fig*

fīdēlis, -e, *adj. faithful*

fĭdes, -ĕi, f. *faith*; servo fĭdem, *I keep my word*

fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdere, 3, (g. dat. or abl.) *I trust*

fīdus, -a, -um, *adj. faithful*

fīgo, fixi, fixum, 3, *fix*

fīlĭa, -ae, f. *a daughter*

fīlĭus, -ii, m. *a son*

fingo, finxi, fictum, 3, *feign*

fīnĭo, -īvi, -ii, -ītum, 4, *I end*

fīnis, -is, m. *end, boundary* (pl. *territories*)

fīnĭtīmus, -a, -um, *bordering on*

fīo, factus sum, fĭĕrī, 3, *v. irr.* to become, be made (258)

firmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *strengthen*

firmus, -a, -um, *adj. strong*

Flaccus, -i, *m. the surname of Quintus Horatius Flaccus, commonly called Horace*

flāgĭtĭum, -i, *n. disgraceful crime*

fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2, *weep*

flo, flāvi, flātum, 1, *blow*

floccus, -i, *m. the down of wool; hence* nōn flocci facĭo, *I do not value at a feather* (281)

flōrens, -ntis, *adj. flourishing*

flōrĕo, -ŭi, 2, *I bloom, flourish*

flōs, flōris, *m. flower*

fluctŭs, -ūs, *m. wave, billow*

flūmen, -ĭnis, *n. current, river*

fluo, -xi, 3, *flow (fut. part. act.* flūxūrus)

flŭvĭus, -ii, *m. a river*

fŏdĭo, fōdi, fossum, 3, *dig*

foedo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *defile*

foedus, -ĕris, *n. treaty*

foedus, -a, -um, *foul, shameful*

fons, -ntis, *m. fountain, source*

fŏre, *fut. inf. of* sum (Par. 212); fŏrem, fŏret, &c. *see* sum

fŏras, *adv. (motion) out of doors;* fŏris, *adv. (rest) out of doors*

fŏrēs, -um, *f. pl. doors*

formīdo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dread*

formīdo, -ĭnis, *f. terror*

fortassĕ, *adv. perhaps (mostly refers to the future, unlike* fortĕ *below)*

fortĕ, *adv. by chance, once upon a time, never refers to the Fut., except in the phrases,* sī fortĕ, nĭsi fortĕ, nē fortĕ

fortis, -e, *brave, strong;* -tissĭmē, *adv. very bravely;* -tĭter, *adv. bravely*

fortūna, -ae, *f. fortune;* fortūnae nostrae pĕnēs tē sunt, *our fortunes are in your hands*

fŏrum, -i, *n. market-place, forum*

fossa, -ae, *f. ditch*

frango, frēgi, fractum, 3, *break*

frāter, -tris, *m. brother*

fraus, fraudis, *f. deceit, mischief*

frĕmo, -ŭi, ĭtum, 3, *murmur*

frīgĭdus, -a, -um, *cold*

frīgus, -ŏris, *n. cold*

frons, -ndis, *f. foliage*

frons, -ntis, *f. the forehead, brow*

fructus, -ūs, *m. fruit, advantage*

frūges, -um, *f. pl. fruits, a crop*

fruor, frūĭtus *or* fructus, 3, *dep. enjoy* (207, 256)

frūmentum, -i, *n. corn (mostly harvested);* frūmenta, -orum, *corn (mostly in the fields)*

frustrā, *adv. in vain*

frŭtex, -ĭcis, *m. shrub*

fŭga, -ae, *f. flight*

fŭgĭo, fūgi, 3, *flee*

fŭgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *put to flight*

fulcĭo, fulsi, fultum, 4, *prop up*

fulgĕo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine*

fulgur, -ŭris, *n. lightning (that shines); in poets used for* fulmen

fulmen, -ĭnis, *n. lightning (that strikes)*   [*rout*

fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3, *pour, scatter*

fundus, -i, *m. farm*

fūnestus, -a, -um, *fatal, deadly*

fungor, functus, 3, *v. dep. I discharge* (207)

fūnis, -is, *m. rope*

fūnus, -ĕris, *n. a funeral*

fūr, fūris, *m. thief*

fŭror, -ōris, *m. madness, rage*

Gādes, -ĭum, *f. pl. Cadiz*

Gaius, *gen.* Gāi, *m. (less correctly* Caius, Caii) *Gaius, a Roman praenomen or fore-name*

Gallĭa, -ae, *f. Gaul*

Gallus, -i, *m. a Gaul*

gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2, *I rejoice*

gaudĭum, -i, *n. joy*

gĕlĭdus, -a, -um, *ice-cold*

gĕlŭ, -ûs, n. *frost*

gĕner, -ĕri, n. *son-in-law*

gens, gentis, f. *nation*

gĕnŭ, -ûs, n. *knee*

gĕnus, -ĕris, n. *kind, race*

Germanus, -a, -um, *German*

gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3, *carry on;* rem bĕnĕ gero, *I succeed;* bellum gĕro, *I wage war*

glăcies, -ĕi, f. *ice*

glădĭător, -ōris, m. *gladiator*

glădĭus, -ii, m. *a sword*

glans, -ndis, f. *acorn*

Gracchus, -i, m. *Gracchus, the name of two brothers, both of whom brought forward Agrarian laws in Rome*

grăcĭlis, -e, *slender,* 60

Graecĭa, -ae, f. *Greece*   [*Greek*

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj. Grecian,*

grāmen, -ĭnis, n. *grass*

grandis, -e, *large*

grānum, -i, n. *a grain*

grātĭa, -ae, f. *favour,* in grātĭam rĕdire, *to be restored to favour*: (*abl. sing.*) *for the sake of;* grātĭas ăgĕre, *to return thanks*

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, grateful*

grăvis, -e, *heavy, severe*

grăvĭter, *adv. heavily, severely, seriously;* hōc g. tŭli, *I was vexed at this*

grăvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *weigh down*

grex, grĕgis, m. *flock*

grus, grŭis, c. *crane*

gŭberno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *govern*

gusto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *taste*

guttur, -ŭris, n. *throat*

Hăbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *have;* hăbĕo ĭn ănĭmo, *I purpose*

hăbĭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dwell*

haerĕo, haesi, haesum, 2, *stick fast;* (*of the voice*) *falter*

Hannĭbal, -ālis, m. *Hannibal*

hărŭspex, -ĭcis, m. *soothsayer*

hasta, -ae, f. *spear*

haud, *adv. not* (*rarely with verbs and adj. except haud scĭo ăn, haud dŭbĭum est, &c.*)   [*land*)

Helvētĭa, -ae, f. *Helvetia* (*Switzer-*

Helvētĭus, -a, -um, *adj. Helvetian*

herba, -ae. f. *herb*

hercle !* (*an oath used as an exclamation*) *by Hercules, certainly*

hĕri, *adv. yesterday*

hesternus, -a, -um, *of yesterday*

hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl. *winter quarters;* hībernus, -a, -um, *adj. of winter, wintry*

hic, *pron. see Par.* 103 ; hic...ille, *the latter . . . the former, one . . . another;* trĭbus hīs mensĭbus, *within the next three months*

hic, *adv. here*

hĭemps, hĭĕmis, f. *winter*

hĭlāris, -e, *adj. cheerful*

hinc, *adv. hence, from this place*

histŏrĭa, -ae, f. *history;* Nātūrālis h. *the Natural History of Pliny*

histrĭo, -ōnis, *actor*

hŏdĭē, *adv. to-day*

Hŏmērus, -i, m. *Homer*

hŏmo, -ĭnis, m. *man* [1]

hŏnestus, -a, -um, *honourable* (*this word never means "honest"*)

hŏnor, -ōris, m. *an honour, office;* ĭn hŏnōre est, *it is held in honour*

hōra, -ae, f. *hour*

hordeum, -i, n. *barley*

Hŏrātĭus, -ii, *Horace*

hortor, -ātus, 1, v dep. *exhort*

hortus, -i, m. *a garden*

hostĭa, -ae, f. *a victim*

hostis, -is, m. *the enemy*

hūc, *adv. hither;* often, though not perhaps with strict correctness, rendered in modern English, "here"

---

[1] Hŏmo means *a human being,* and is occasionally (but very rarely) used of women : vir means a *good* or *brave* man.

hūmānĭtās, -ātis, *f. courtesy, kindness*

hūmānĭtŭs, *adv. after the manner of men; (hence used of misfortunes)* ălĭquid ei h. accĭdit, *he died*

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj. human, gentle, courteous*

hŭmĭlis, -e, *low, low-minded* (60)

hŭmus, -i, *f. ground;* hŭmi, *on the ground*

I, *imperative of* ĕo

ĭbi, *adv. there*

ictus, -ūs, *m. a blow;* sub ictum venīre, *to come within striking distance*

ĭgĭtur, *conj. therefore, then; differs from* ĭtăquŏ *in not standing first in a clause (in the best authors)*

ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant;* tĭbi ignāro prŏfui, *I helped you without your being aware of it*

ignāvē, *adv. indolently*

ignāvĭa, -ae, *f. sloth, cowardice*

ignāvus, -a, -um, *slothful, cowardly*

ignĕus, -a, -um, *adj. fiery*

ignis, -is, *m. fire, abl.* igni (*except in poets*)

ignŏrātĭo, -ōnis, *f. ignorance*

ignosco, -nŏvi, -nōtum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *pardon*

illātūri, *see* ĭnfĕro

ĭllĕ, (103) Ălexander ĭlle, *the great, well-known, &c.,* Alexander

illĕcĕbrae, -ārum, *f. pl. allurements*

illūc, *adv. thither*

ĭmāgo, -ĭnis, *f. image, likeness*

imbellis, -e, *unwarlike*

imber, -ris, *m.* (*Abl.* -i), *shower*

ĭmĭtor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. imitate*

immĕmor, *gen.* -ōris, *unmindful*

immortālis, -e, *adj. immortal*

immortālĭtās, -ātis, *f. immortality*

impăr, *gen.* -ăris, *unequal*

impăvidus, -a, -um, *fearless*

mpello, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3, *impel*

impendeo, (*no Perf. or Sup.*) 2, *impend*

impĕrātor, -ōris, *m. general*

impĕrītus, -a, -um, (*g. gen.*) *unskilful in*

impĕrĭum, -ĭi, *n. command, empire*

impĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, (*g. dat.*) *give orders to;* i. tĭbi frūmentum, *I exact corn from you; foll. by* ut (143)

impĕtus, -ūs, *m. attack, onset*

impĭger, -gra, -grum, *active*

implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *implore*

impōno, -pŏsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3, *impose (a task, tribute, &c.) on,* Par. 192

imprŏbus, -a, -um, *adj. dishonest, wicked, bad*

imprūdens, -ntĭs, *ignorant;* i. fēci, *I did it ignorantly*

imprūdentĭa, -ae, *f. ignorance, imprudence*

ĭn, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *into, towards;* (*g. abl.*) *in*

ĭnānis, -e, *idle, empty* [tion

incendĭum, -i, *n. a fire, conflagra-*

incendo, -di, -sum, 3, *set fire to, burn*

incertus, -a, -um, *adj. uncertain*

incĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *begin*

incŏla, -ae, *m. inhabitant*

incŏlo, -ui, -ultum, 3, *inhabit*

incŏlŭmis, -e, *safe*

incŏlŭmĭtās, -ātis, *f. safety*

increpo, -crēpŭi, -crēpĭtum, 1, *reproach*

incūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with*

indĕ, *adv. thence, thereupon;* indĕ ā pŭĕrĭtĭā, *even from boyhood*

Indi, -ōrum, *m. pl. Indians*

indĭco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *point out*

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*

indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*

indulgĕo, -si, -tum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *indulge*

industrĭus, -a, -um, *adj. industrious, busy*

ĭnĕo, -ivi or -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *go into, enter, begin*

ĭneptē, *adv.* (ĭn-aptē, *unfitly*), *foolishly, without tact*

ĭneptus, -a, -um, *silly*

ĭners, -tis, *adj. helpless, sluggish*

infāmĭa, -ae, *f. infamy*

infāmis, -e, *adj. infamous*

infectus, -a, -um, *unaccomplished; rē infectā, (abl. abs.) the affair being unaccomplished, i.e. with nothing done* (Par. 197)

infēlĭcĭter, *adv. unluckily; pugnātum est i. we have been defeated*

infēlix, -īcis, *unfortunate, unhappy*

infĕrĭor, -ĭus, *comp. of* infĕrus, *adj. lower, inferior*

infĕro, intŭli, illātum, inferrĕ, 3, *v. irr.; bellum i. tĭbi, I declare war against you*

infīnītus, -a, -um, *adj. unbounded, infinite*

infirmĭtas, -ātis, *f. weakness*

infirmus, -a, -um, *infirm, weak*

infrā, *prep. (g. acc.) below*

ingens, -ntis, *huge, great*

ingĕnĭum, -i, *n. disposition*

ingrātus, -a, -um, *displeasing, ungrateful*

ingrĕdĭor, -gressus sum, 3, *v. dep. enter*

ĭnhaerĕo, -haesi, -haesum, 2, *stick fast*

ĭnhŏnestus, -a, -um, *dishonourable*

ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, -ae, *f. enmity*

ĭnĭmīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile; ĭnĭmīcus, -i, m. a private enemy; opp. to* hostis, *an enemy of the state*

ĭnĭtĭum, -i, *n. a beginning*

injĭcĭo, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast (fear, &c.) into, inspire*

injūcundus, -a, -um, *disagreeable*

injustē, *adv. unjustly*

injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*

innŏcens, -ntis, *innocent*

innŭmĕrus, -a, -um, *adj. innumerable*

ĭnops, -ŏpis, *destitute*

inquăm, inquit, *see Defective Verbs, Appendix II., p. 215*

insānĭo, -ivi, -ītum, 4, *I am mad*

insĕquor, -sĕcūtus, 3, *follow after, pursue*

insĭdĭae, -ārum, *f. snares, an ambush; per insĭdĭas, insidiously*

insignis, -e, *distinguished, noted*

insŏlens, -ntis, (g. gen.) *unaccustomed to*

instĭtŭo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *I appoint, institute*

instrūmentum, -i, *n. an instrument*

instrŭo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *arrange, draw up*

insuētus, -a, -um, *untrained to (g. gen.)*

insŭla, -ae, *f. island*

insum, -fui, -esse, *v. irr. (g. dat.) I am in*

intellĕgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *understand, hear, perceive (less correctly* intellĭgo)

inter, *prep. (g. acc.) between, among; inter vēnandum, during hunting; haec inter sē rēpugnant, these things are inconsistent with one another*

interclūdo, -ūsi, -ūsum, 3, *I cut off; i. hostes commeātu, I cut off the enemy from supplies*

interdum, *adv. sometimes*

intĕrĕo, -ivi or -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *perish*

intĕrest, -fŭit, -esse, (v. impers.) *it makes a difference, it concerns,* Par. 329

interfĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *slay*

intĕrĭtus, -ūs, *m. destruction*

interjăcĕo, -jacui, 2, *lie between*

interrŏgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask, question*

intersum, -fŭi, -esse, (q. dat.) *I am among, I take part in*

intervěnio, -věni, -ventum, 4, *interrupt, (q. dat.)* (192)

intrā, *prep. (g. acc.) inside, within*

intro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enter*

introěo, -ĭvi *or* -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *go into, enter*

intŭěor, -ĭtus -sum, 2, *v. dep. look upon, into*

ĭnūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3, *brand*

inūtilis, -e, *useless*

inūtĭlĭter, *adv. uselessly, in vain*

invādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3, *attack*

invěnio, -věni, -ventum, -ae 4, *light on, find, find out* [*dat.*

invĭděo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *enry, g.*

invĭdĭa, -ae, *f. enry, ill-will*

invĭdus, -a, -um, *enrious*

invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling; (used as adj. but with adv. force)* invītus fēci, *I did it unwillingly*

ipsě, *see Par.* 105, 308

Ĭra, -ae, *f. anger*

ĭrācundus, -a, -um, *angry*

ĭrascor, ĭrātus, 3, *v. dep. I am angry*

irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst into, rush into*

irrŭo, -rŭi, 3, *rush in*

ĭs, ĕa, ĭd, *see p.* 46; nōn ĭs sum qui mentiar, *I am not the man to lie,* 303a

istě, -a, -ud, *pron. adj. that of yours;* iste, *that fellow*

istūc, *adv. thither, where you are*

ĭtā, *in that way, thus, so*

Ĭtālĭa, -ae, *f. Italy*

ĭtăque, *and so, thereupon;* ĭtăque, *(differing from* ĭgĭtur*), stands first in a clause*

Ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n. journey, road, way;* ex ĭtĭnĕrě, *on a journey*

ĭtĕrum, *adv. a second time, again*

Jăcěo, -ŭi, 2, *lie (on the ground)*

jăcĭo, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw*

jactātĭo, -ĭōnis, *f. boasting*

jacto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *boast*

jactŭs, -ūs, *m. cast, shot, fire;* intrā tēli jactum, *within shot;* sŭb jactu, *under fire*

jam, *adv.* (1) *already;* (2) *by this time;* cum jam *often means* "*just when,*" *or* "*at last when*"; non jam, *no longer*

jamdūdum *or* **jamprīdem**, *adv. this long while;* j. cŭpĭo, *I have been this long while desiring* (324)

Jānŭārĭus, -ĭa, -ĭum, *of January*

jŏcor, -ātus, 1, *(v. dep.) jest*

Jŏvis, *see* Juppiter

jŭběo, jussi, jussum, 2, *I order, (g. acc. and inf.) bid*

jūcundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*

Jūdaea, -ae, *f. Judaea*

jūdex, -ĭcis, *m. judge;* mē jūdice, *in my judgment, lit. I being a judge* (Par. 197)

jūdĭcĭum, -i, *n. judgment*

jūdĭco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *judge*

jŭgŭlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cut the throat of, butcher*

jŭgum, -i, *n. yoke; to be* "*sent under the yoke*" *was the sign of defeat*

jungo, -nxi, -nctum, 3, *join;* ponto jungěre, *to bridge over*

jūnĭor, -ōris, *younger*

Jūno, -ōnis, *f. Juno, a goddess*

Jūppĭter, Jŏvis, *m. Jupiter*

jūro, -āvi, ātum *or* jūrātus sum, 1, *I swear;* j. in lēgem, *I swear (obedience) to a law;* j. in verba eius, *in accordance with his words*

jūs, jūris, *n. right, law;* jūrě, *(adv. abl.) by right, rightly* (182)

jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n. an oath*

jussum, -i, *n. command*

justě, *adv. justly;* justĭus, *more justly*

justĭtĭa, -ae, *f. justice*

justus, -a, -um, *just*

jŭvěnis, -is, *m. young man*

jŭventūs, -ūtis, f. *youth*

juxtā, *prep. (g. acc.) near, hard by, next to*

Lăbīenus, -i, m. *Labienus*

lăbor, -ōris, m. *labour*

lābor, lapsus, 3, v. dep. *I glide, pass away, fall*

lăc, lactis, n. *milk* [or *Sparta*

Lăcĕdaemon. -ŏnis, f. *Lacedaemon*

Lăcĕdaemŏnii, -ōrum, m. *the Lacedaemonians*

lăcrĭma, -ae, f. *a tear*

lăcus, -ūs, m. *a lake*

laedo, laes-i, -sum, 3, *hurt (g. acc.)*

laetītĭa, -ae, f. *joy*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*

lăpis, -ĭdis, m. *stone*

lăpĭdĕus, -a, -um, *adj. of stone*

lātē, *adv. widely, wide*

lătĕo, -ui, 2, *lie hid, lurk*

lātex, -ĭcis, m. *water*

Lătīnus, -a, -um, *Latin*

lătĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f. *breadth*

Lātōna, -ae, f. *Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana*

latro, -ōnis, m. *a robber*

latrōcĭnĭum, -i. n. *robbery*

lātūrus, *fut. part. of fĕro*

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*

laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*

laus, laudis, f. *praise*

lăvo, -lāvi, lăvātum, 1, *wash* [1]

lectus, -i, m. *bed*

lēgātus, -i, m. *ambassador, lieutenant*

lēgĭo, -ĭōnis, f. *legion, from 4,000 to 6,000 men*

lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, *gather, read*

lēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bequeath*

Lemnos, -i, f. *the isle of Lemnos*

lĕo, leōnis, m. *lion*

Lĕōnĭdas, -ae, m. *Leonidas*

lĕpus, -ōris, m. *a hare*

Lesbos, -i, f. *Lesbos*

lĕvis, -e, *light, fickle, empty*

lēx, lēgis, f. *law*

lĭbenter, *adv. willingly*

lĭber, -bri, m. *book*

lĭber, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *free;* lĭberrima ōrātĭo, *very frank speech* (61)

lībĕrē, *adv. freely*

lībĕri, -ōrum, m. pl. *children*

lībĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I free, deliver (g. abl. of thing)*

lībertas, -ātis, f. *freedom, liberty*

lĭbet (lĭbŭit *and*) lĭbĭtum est, 2, v. impers. *(g. dat.) it pleases*

Lĭbya, -ae, f. *Africa*

lĭcet, lĭcŭit *and* lĭcĭtum est, lĭcēre, 2, v. impers. *(g. dat.) it is lawful, allowed; (used with Inf; or with Subjunct. with* ut *omitted)* lĭcet omnes frĕmant, *let them all murmur;* N B. *after* lĭcet mĭhĭ esse, *the Adj. may either be dat.* (Par. 24), *or attracted into the Acc., to agree with me "understood,"* lĭcet mĭhĭ (mē) esse bĕātum

Lĭcīnĭus, -i, m., *Licinius*

lĭctor, -ōris, m. *a lictor*

lignĕus, -a, -um, *wooden*

līlĭum, -i, n., *lily*

lingŭa, -ae, f. *tongue, language*

lĭquet, lĭquēre, 2, v. impers. (Par. 222) *it is clear, evident*

-littĕra, -ae, f. *a letter of the alphabet*

littĕrae, -ārum, f. pl. *letters, learning, also an epistle, letter*

lītus, -ōris, n. *a shore*

Lĭvĭus, -i, m. *Titus Livius the historian, commonly called Livy*

lŏcus, -i, m. *a place*

longē, *adv. far, far off* [tance

longinquĭtās, -ātis, f. *length, distance*

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj. long, distant*

---

[1] Also lautum and lōtum; this verb is never intransitive.

longĭtūdo, -dĭnis, *f. length*   [*far*
longĭus, *adv. comp. farther, too*
longus, -a, -um, *long;* nāves
    longae, *ships of war*
lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3, *dep. speak*
lūcescit (illuxit), lūcescĕre, 3, *v.
    impers. it becomes light*
lūdo, -si, -sum, 3, *I play*
lūdus, -i, *m. play, game*
lūna, -ae, *f. the moon*
lūpus, -i, *m. wolf*
luscĭnĭa, -ae, *f. nightingale*
lux, lūcis, *f. light, dawn*
lyra, -ae, *f. lyre*

Măcĕdo, -ŏnis, *m. a Macedonian*
măcer, -cra, -crum, *lean*
măcŭla, -ae, *f., spot*
măgis, *adv.* (*sup.* maxĭmē), *rather,
    in a higher degree, more*
măgister, -tri, *m. master, teacher*
măgistrātus, -ūs, *m. magistrate,
    magistracy*
măgnĭfĭcus, -a, -um, *adj. magni-
    ficent;* (*for superl. see Par.* 68*a*)
măgnŏpere, *adv. greatly, earnestly*
măgnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
măjestas, -ātis, *f. lit.* "*sovereignty*";
    condemnāri măjestātis, *to be
    found guilty (on the charge) of
    (impairing) sovereignty, i.e. of
    treason* (290)
măjor, -ōris, *Par.* 68
măjōres, -um, *m. pl. ancestors*
mălĕ, *adv. comp.* pējus, *sup.* pessĭ-
    mē, *badly, ill*
mălĕdictum, -i, *n. slander, curse*
mălĕvŏlus, -a, -um, *ill-wishing,
    malevolent* (*superl.,* Par. 68*a*)
mālo, mālui, mallĕ, *irr. v. I am
    more willing, I prefer, I had
    rather* (p. 130)
mālum, -i, *n. an apple*
mălum, -i, *n. evil*
mālus, -i, *f. an apple tree*
mălus, -a, -um, *bad, evil*   [*mission*
mandātum, -i, *n. a charge, com-*

mănĕo, -nsi, -nsum, 2, *remain*
mănĭfestus, -a, -um, *evident, mani-
    fest*
mănĭpŭlus, -i, *m. a maniple*
mansi, *see* mănĕo
mănus, -ūs, *f. a hand*
Mărăthon, -ōnis. *f. Marathon*
Marcus, -i, *m., Marcus; see* Crassus
măre, -is, *n. sea* (*see* terra)
margărĭta, -ae, *f. a pearl*
mărīnus, -a, -um, *adj. of the sea*
marmor, -ōris, *n. marble*
Martius, -a, -um, *of March,* p. 229
māter, -tris, *f. mother*
mātĕrĭa, -ae, *f. materials, timber*
mātrĭmōnium, -ii, *n. matrimony,*
    duxit eam in mātrĭmōnium, *he
    married her (always of man
    marrying women, see* nūbo)
mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe*
maxĭmē, *adv. very greatly, especially*
maxĭmus, -a, -um, *see* Par. 68
Maxĭmus, -i, *m. Maximus,* "*the
    greatest*"; *see* Făbĭus
mĕdĭcīna, -ae, *f. medicine*
mĕdĭcus, -i, *m. physician*
mĕdĭtor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. meditate
    on, study*
mĕdĭus, -a, -um, *middle (of);*
    mĕdĭos in hostes, *into the midst
    of the enemy*
mĕlĭor, *neut.* -ius, *see* Par. 68
mĕmĭni, *v. def.; see* p. 215
mĕmor, -ōris, *mindful* (*g. gen.*)
mĕmŏrābĭlis, -e, *adj. memorable*
mĕmŏrĭa, -ae, *f. memory, recollection*
mendācĭum, -i, *n. lie, falsehood*
mendax, -ācis, *adj. lying, deceitful*
Mĕnēnĭus, -ii, *m. Menenius Agrippa,
    author of the fable of the Belly
    and the Other Members*
mens, mentis, *f. mind*
mensĭs, -is, *m. month*
mentior, -ītus, 4, (*v. dep.*) *tell a lie*
mercātor, -ōris, *m. merchant*
mercēs, -cēdis, *f. pay, wage, re-
    ward*

Mercŭrĭus, -i, m. *Mercury*

mĕrĕo (*also* mĕrĕor, mĕrĭtus, 2, v. dep.) -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *I deserve;* dē pātrĭā bĕnĕ mĕrĭtus est, *he has deserved well of his country*

mergo, mersi, mersum, 3, *plunge*

mĕrīdĭes, m. *mid-day*

messis, -is, f. *harvest*

mētallum, -i, n. *a metal;* mĕtalla, -ōrum, n. pl. *mines ;* damnāri in m. *to be condemned to the mines.*

mētĭor, mensus, 4, (v. dep.) *measure*

mĕto, messŭi, messum, 3, *reap*

Mettus, -i, m. *Mettus, an Alban, torn in pieces by Tullus Hostilius*

mĕtŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *I fear*

mĕtus, -ūs, m. *fear*

mĕus, -a, -um, pronom. adj. *my, mine*

mi, masc. voc. of mĕus   [*part*

migro, -āvi, -ātum, 1. *migrate, de-*

mīlĕs, mīlĭtis, m. *soldier*

mīlĭa, (80) n. pl. (*sometimes for* mīlĭa passuum, see passus)

mīlĭtāris, -e, *military;* rēs m. *military affairs,* i.e. *warfare*

mīlĭtĭae, adr. *in war*

millĭens, *a thousand times*

mille, milĭa, see Par. 80

mĭna, -ae, f. *threat*

mĭnĭmē, adv. *by no means, in the least degree;* mĭnĭmus, -a, -um (68)

mĭnister, -tri, m. *a servant*

mĭnor, see Par 68

mĭnŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *diminish*

mĭrandus, -a, -um, *wonderful*

mĭror, -ātus, 1, (v. dep.) *wonder at, admire*

mĭrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*

miscĕo, miscŭi, mixtum, 2, *mix, throw into confusion*

mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *wretched*

mĭsĕrĕor, -sertus *or* -sĕrĭtus, 2, dep. *pity* (g. gen.) (203)

mĭsĕret, mĭsĕrĭtum est, 2, v. impers., see Par. 219

mĭsĕrĭa,-ae, f. *misery*

mĭsĕrĭcordĭa, f. *pity*   [(g. acc.)

mĭsĕror, -atus, 1, *show pity to*

mītesco, 3, *become mild*

mītis, -e, adj. *mild*

mitto, mīsi, missum, 3, *send*

mŏdestĭa, -ae, *modesty*

mŏdo, adv. *only;* sī, *or* dum, mŏdo, *if,* or *provided, only;* mŏdo nunc, *only just now*

mŏdus, -i, m. *measure, manner;* praeter mŏdum, *beyond measure;* nullo modo, *in no way;* eiusmodi, *of that kind*

moenĭa, -ĭum, n. pl. *fortifications*

mŏlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*

mollĭo, -īvi *or* -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *soften*

mollis, -e, adj. *soft, mellow*

mŏnĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *advise, warn.*

mons, -ntis, m. *mountain*

monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *show, point out*

mŏnŭmentum, -i, n. *monument*

mŏra, -ae, f. *delay*

morbus, -i, m. *disease*

mŏrĭor, mortŭus, 3, v. dep. *die (fut. part.* mŏritūrus, *about to die)*

mŏror, mŏrātus, 1 (v. dep.) *delay*

mors, -tis, f. *death*

morsŭs, -ūs. m. *bite*

mortālis, -e, adj. *mortal*

mortŭus, -a, -um, *dead*

mōs, mōris, m. *manner, custom;* mōres, -um, pl. *conduct, morals ;* nōn nostri mōris est, *it is not (characteristic of) our custom*

mōtŭs, -ūs, m. *motion, movement*

mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *more, affect;* bellum, *or* arma, mŏveo, *I stir up or commence war*

mox, adv. *soon*

mŭlĭer, -ĕris, f. *woman, wife*

multĭplex, -plicis, *manifold;* m. fētus, *many young ones at a time*

multĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f. *multitude*

multo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *punish (with death, fine, &c.)*

multus, -a, -um, *much, many ;*

multa nox, *a late (hour of) night*; multum *adv.*, multum intĕrest, *it makes a great differ-ence*; multo (*adv. with compar.*) (*by*) *much*; multo fēlicĭor, (*by*) *much more happy*

Mummĭus, -ii, *m. Mummius, the destroyer of Corinth*

mundus, -i, *m. the universe*

mūnĭfĭcus, -a, -um, (68a) *liberal*

mūnīmentum, -i, *n. a fortification*

mūnĭo, -īvi or -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *fortify*

mūnus, -ĕris, *n. a gift, duty, function*

murmŭr, -ŭris, *n. murmur*

mūrus, -i, *m. wall*

mūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *change*

Mȳcēnae, -ārum, *f. pl. Mycenae, the chief city of Greece in the Trojan times*

myrtus, -i *and* -ūs, *f. myrtle*

Nactus, *see* nanciscor

nam, *conj. for; differs from* ĕnim *in standing first in a clause*

nanciscor, nactus *and* nanctus, *inf.* nancisci, 3, *obtain* (*v. dep.*)

narro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *relate*

nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep. I am born* N.B. nascor *means "I am being born"*; dĕcem annos nātus est, *he is ten years old*

Nāso, -ōnis, *m. Publius Ovidius Naso, commonly called Ovid*

nātu, *adv. abl. by birth*

nātūra, -ae, *f nature*

nātūrālis, *see* histŏria

nātus, -a, -um, *part. and adj. born, aged*; vĭgintī annos n., *twenty years old*

nauta, -ae, *m. a sailor*

nāvālis, -e, *adj. naval*

nāvĭgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *sail*

nāvis, -is, *f. ship*

-nĕ, *enclitic, asks a question* (100)

nē, *conj. that not, lest* (131); nē

quĭs, *that no one* (294); (*with perf. subj.*) (*do*) *not* (129)

Nĕāpŏlis, -is, *f.* (*acc.* -im), *Naples*

nĕc, *see* nĕquĕ

nĕcessārĭus, -a, -um, *adj. necessary*

nĕcesse, *adv. necessarily;* (*used as adj.*) nĕcesse est, *it is necessary*, (*foll. by acc. and inf. or ut*)

nĕco, nĕcāvi, nĕcatum, 1, *kill*

nĕfandus, -a, -um, *unspeakable, monstrous*

nĕfās, *n. indecl. wickedness;* n. dictu, *monstrous to relate!*

neglĕgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *neglect*

nĕgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I deny*

nĕgōtĭum, -i, *n. business*

nēmo, nullīus, *m. nobody, no one* Par. 92; n. nōn gaudēbat, *there was no one that did not rejoice*

Nĕoptŏlĕmus, -i, *m. Neoptolemus*

Neptūnus, -i, *m. Neptune*

nēquam, *indecl. adj. comp.* nēquĭor, *sup.* nēquissĭmus, *worthless*

nĕquĕ, *or* nĕc, *conj. and not; when repeated,* neither...nor

nĕquĕo, -īvi *or* -ĭi, -ĭtum, -ĭre, 4, *I am unable, cannot; imperf.* nē-quībam; *fut indic.* nēquībo; *pres. part.* nēquĭens, *gen.* nēquĕuntis

nēquiquam, *adv. in vain*

nēquissĭmus, *see* nēquam

Nĕro, -ōnis, *m. Nero*

nescĭo, -īvi *or* -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *I am ignorant of, do not know;* nescĭo ăn ventūrus sĭt, *i.e.* nescĭo (utrum afŭtūrus sit) an (pŏtĭus) ven-tūrus sĭt, *I do not know whether he will be absent or whether he will rather come, i.e. I think he will come,* Par. 302

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* -īus, *dat.* -ī), *neither of two, see* Par. 85

nēve, *adv. or not, nor; or* (*after neg.*) ne affirmāvĕris nēve nĕgā-vĕris, *say neither 'yes' nor 'no'*

nīdus, -i, *m. a nest*

nĭger, -gra, -grum, *black*

nĭhil, or nīl, *n. indecl. nothing;*
(*from* nĭhĭlum) *nĭhĭli te făcio, I*
esteem you of no account; nĭhĭlo
mĭnŭs, *none the less* (277)

Nīlus, -i, *m. the Nile, a river in*
Egypt

nī, *conj. a form of* nĭsī

nĭmĭs, *adv. too, too much*

Nĭŏba, -ae, *f.* Nĭobe

nĭsī, *conj. if...not, unless* (*has the*
same constr. as sī, 125, 293-5);
after nĭhil *and* quid, nĭsī *means*
"*but*" *or* "*except*," *and has the*
same constr. as quam (62)

nītor, nīsus *and* nixus, 3, *strive*
(143)

nix, nĭvis, *f. snow*

no, nāvi, nātum, 1, *swim*

nōbĭlis, -e, *adj. distinguished,*
noble

nŏcĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *hurt*

nōlo, nōlŭi, nolle, *v. irreg. I am*
unwilling, I do not wish; nōli
vēnĭre, *do not come;* ĭdem nolle,
to dislike the same thing, p. 128

nōmen, -ĭnis, *n. name*

nōmĭno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *name*

nōn, *adv. not*

nondum, *adv. not yet*

nōnne? *interr. adv. expects the*
answer "*yes*"; *sometimes a conj.*
whether, Par. 135

nonnullus, -a, -um, *adj. some*

nosco, nōvi, nōtum, 3, *I gain*
knowledge of; hence perf. nōvi, *I*
have gained knowledge of; i.e. I
know

noster, -stra, -strum, *pronom. adj.*
our, ours; nostri *often means*
"*our men;*" nostri *is also gen.*
of nōs (93), *and* nostrum *part.*
gen.

nosti *for* nōvisti, *see* nosco

nŏta, -ae, *mark, stigma*

nōtus, -a, -um, *adj. known*

nŏvus, -a, -um, *adj. new*

nox, noctis, *f. night*   [jurious

noxĭus, -a, -um, *adj. hurtful, in-*
nūbēs, -is, *f. cloud*

nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3, *she marries*
(*g. dat.*); *not used of men marry-*
ing; see mātrĭmōnium

nullus, -a, -um, *adj. no, none; gen.*
sing. -īus, *dat.* -ī, (85)

num? *interr. adv. expects the*
answer "*no*"; (*sometimes conj.*)
whether, Par. 135

nŭmĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I count*

nŭmĕrus, -i, *m. number*

Nŭmĭda, -ae, *m a Numidian*

nunc, *adv. now, at the present time*

nunquam, *adv. never*

nuntĭo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bring word*

nuntĭus, -i, *m. messenger*

nūper, *adv. lately*

nūtrĭo, -īvi *and* -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *nourish*

nux, nŭcis, *f. nut*

Ŏb, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *on account of, in*
front of

obdormio, -ivi, -ītum, 4, *fall asleep*

ŏbēdĭo, -īvi *and* -ĭi, -ītum, 4, (*g.*
dat.) *obey*

ŏbĕo, -īvi *or* -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *I meet,*
esp. meet death, I die

oblātus, *see* offĕro

oblectātĭo, -ĭōnis, *f. delight*

oblĭno, -lēvi, -lĭtum, *besmear, defile*

oblīviscor, -lītus, 3, *dep. forget*
(*g. gen.*) 203

obscūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *darken,*

obscūrus, -a, -um, *adj. obscure, dark*

obsĕcro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *beseech*
(*foll. by* ut)   [respect

observo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I observe,*

obses, -ĭdis, *m. hostage*

obsĭdĕo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2, *block-*
ade, besiege

obsĭdĭo, -ōnis, *f. a siege, blockade*

obsto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 1, *oppose,*
prevent (*g. dat.*); *nothing prevents*
your coming, nĭhil obstat (tĭbi)
quōmĭnus vēnĭas

obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3, bind (by oath)

obsum, obfui or offui, obesse, v. irreg. (g. dat.) I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure

obtempĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, comply with, obey (g. dat.)

obtĭnĕo, -tĭnui, 2, keep, hold

occāsĭo, -ōnis, f. opportunity

occĭdens, -tis, m. the west, the setting (sun)

occĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum, 3, fall; occĭdit spēs nostra, our hope has perished; occĭdĭmus, we are undone

occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum 3, slay, kill

occŭpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, seize upon

occŭlo, -cŭlŭi, -cultum, 3, hide

occumbo, -cūbŭi, -cūbĭtum, 3, fall down

ocĕănus, -i, m. the ocean

ŏcŭlus, -i, m. eye

ōdi, ōdisse, v. dep. hate: see p. 215; ŏdĭum, -ii, n. hatred; hic mihi ŏdĭo (268) est, this man is hateful to me (lit. for hatred)

ŏdor, -ōris, m. a smell, scent

offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irreg. I present

ōlim, adv. formerly

ōmen, -ĭnis, n. an omen　　　[drop

ōmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, omit,

omnīno, adv. altogether; (the position alters the meaning) o. nōn bŏnus, not at all good; 2, nōn o. bŏnus, not altogether good

omnis, -e, all, the whole; (not "every," except in the pl.)

ōnus, -ĕris, n. a load, burden

ŏpĕra, -ae, f. pains, labour; hīs ŏperam do, I pay attention to these things　　　　　　　[tion

ŏpīnĭo, -ōnis, f. opinion, expecta-

ŏportet, -ŭit, 2, v. impers. it behoves, is necessary; ŏportŭit tē tăcēre, you ought to have been silent (Par. 223)

oppĭdum, -i, n. town

oppōno, -ōsŭi, -ĭtum, 3, I set against; oppōno me tibi, I oppose you (192)　　　　　　[power

opprĭmo, -pressi, -pressum, 3, over-

oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, assault

optĭmus, (68) best, excellent; optĭmē, adv. excellently　　　　[sire

opto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I wish, de-

ŏpŭlentus, -a, -um, adj. wealthy

ŏpus, -ĕris, n. work; opus est (g. abl.) there is need of

ōra, -ae, f. the coast

ōrācŭlum, -i, n. an oracle

ōrāre causam, to plead a cause

ōrātĭo, -ōnis, f. an oration, speech

ōrātor, -ōris, m. an orator

ordĭor, -orsus, 4, v. dep. I begin

ordo, -ĭnis, m. rank, order; ordĭnem equestrem, the order of the knights

ŏrior, ortus, ŏrīri, 3, v. dep. rise ✣

orno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, adorn

oro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, entreat, pray; ōrāre causam, to plead a cause

ortus, see orior

ōs, ōris, n. mouth; in ore omnium est, it is the talk of everybody

ōs, ossis, n. bone

ōvum, -i, n. egg　　　　　　　..

Păciscor, pactus, 3, (v. dep.), make an agreement

paenĕ, adv. almost

pălam, (adv. and prep. g. abl.) publicly, in the presence of

Pallăs, -ădis, f. Pallas Athene, not to be confounded with Minerva

pallĭum, -ii, n. a cloak

pando, pandi, passum, 3, lay open; passo crīne, with dishevelled hair

pānis, -is, m. bread

păpāver, -ĕris, n. poppy

păpilĭo, -ōnis, m. butterfly

par, păris, equal; non est solvendo par, he is not equal to paying, i.e. he is insolvent

părātus, -a, -um, *adj. prepared*
  p. ad pugnandum, *p. to fight*
parco, p'perci, parcītum *or* par-
  sum, 3, *(g. dat.) spare;* paucis
  parsum est, *few were spared*
părens, -ntis, *c. parent*
pārĕ°, -ŭi, -ītum, 2, *(g. dat.) obey*
părĭo, pĕp῾ĕri, partum, 3, *(g. acc.)
  bring forth, give birth to*
păriter, *adv. equally*
păro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *prepare, get*
pars, -tis, *f. part*
parsum, *see* parco
partĭor, -ītus 4, *dep. share, divide*
partus, -ŭs, *m. birth*
parum, *adv. too little;* used for
  "not"; (used as a noun g. part.
  gen.) p. virium, *too little strength*
parvus, -a, -um, *small, little*
pasco, pāvi, pastum, 3, *feed;* ŏves
  pascebantur, *sheep were grazing*
passus, -ūs, *m. a pace (about 5 feet);*
  mille passus, *a mile*
pastor, -ōris, *m. shepherd*
păteo, -ŭi, 2, *extend;* it extends for
  ten miles, pătet *in foll. by acc.*
păter, -tris, *m. father*
pătiens, -ntis, *(g.gen.) patient (of)*
pătĭenter, *adv. patiently*
pătĭor, passus, 3, *endure, suffer*
Patres, -um. *m. pl. Fathers, a name
  given to the Roman Senators*
patria, -ae, *f. a native land, country*
patrimōnĭum, -ii, *n. patrimony*
paulisper, *adv. for a short time*
paucus, -a, um *(mostly pl.) few*
pauper, -ĕris, *poor*
paupertas, -ātis, *f. poverty*
păvidus, -a, -um, *fearful*
păvo, -ōnis, *m. peacock*
păvor, -ōris, *m. terror, trembling*
pax, pācis, *f. peace*
peccātum, -i, *n. fault*
pecco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *err, sin*
pēcūnĭa, -ae, *f. money, sum of money*
pēdes, -ītis, *m. foot-soldier*
pĕdītātus, -ūs, *m. infantry*

pejor, *see Par. 68*
pĕlăgus, -i, *n. sea*
pellis, -is, *f. skin (of animals)*
pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 3, *drive*
pendo (page 209) *hang, weigh,
  value* (283)
pĕnĕs, *prep. (g. acc.) in the hands of*
penna, -ae, *f. feather, wing; (of
  fishes) fin*
per, *prep. (g.acc.) through, by means
  of;* per dŏlum, *treacherously*
percĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *perceive*
percussĭo, -ĭonis, *f. striking;* p.
  dĭgĭtōrum, *the snapping of one's
  fingers*
perdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3, *destroy*
perdŏmo, -ŭi, ĭtum, 1, *thoroughly
  tame, subdue*
pĕrĕo, -ĭi *or* -īvi, ĭtum, 4, *perish*
perfectus, -a, -um, *adj. finished,
  perfect*
perfĕro, -tŭli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.
  tr. endure*
perfĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *perform*
perfĭdĭa, -ae, *f. perfidy*
perfĭdus, -a, -um, *perfidious,
  treacherous*
Perĭclēs, -is, *m. Pericles*
pĕrīculum, -i, *n. danger* [gen.)
pĕrītus, -a, -um, *adj. skilful in (g.*
perlĕgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *I read
  through*
permagnus, -a, -um, *very great*
permŏvéo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2, *rouse,
  stir*
permulti, -ae, -a, *very many*
pernĭcĭōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*
perpĕtŭus, -a, -um, *adj. continual*
perrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst
  through*
Persă, -ae, *m. a Persian*
persaepĕ, *adv. very often*
perspĭcĭo, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *see
  through, discern*
persuādĕo, -āsi, -āsum, 2, *(g. dat.)
  persuade* (143); persuāsum est
  mihi, *I am persuaded*

pertaesum, *see* taedet

perterreo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *alarm*

pertĭmesco, -tĭmŭi, 3, *become fearful*

pervĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *arrive*

perversus, -a, -um, *wilful, perverse*

pēs, pĕdis, m. *foot*

pessĭmus, *see* Par. 68

pestis, -is, f. *plague*

pĕto, -īvi & -ĭi, ĭtum, 3, *seek*

Phăëthon, -ontis, m. *Phaëthon, a son of Apollo the Sun-god*

Phīdĭās, -ae, m. *Phidias, an Athenian sculptor* (1st decl.)

Phĭlippus, -i, m. *Philip (of Macedonia)*

Phĭloctētēs, -ae, m. *Philoctetes*

phĭlŏsŏphĭa, -ae, f. *philosophy*

phĭlŏsŏphus, -i, m. *philosopher*

Phoebus, -i, m. *Phoebus Apollo, the Sun-god;* Phoebēus -a, -um, *adj. belonging to Phoebus Apollo*

pĭger, -gra, -grum, *slothful*

pĭgĕt, pĭgŭit *and* pĭgĭtum est, pĭgēre, 2, v. *impers. it vexes*

pingo, -nxi, -pictum, 3, *I paint, embroider*

pinguis, -e, *fat*

pinna, *see* penna

pīnus, -ūs *and* -i, f. *pine-tree*

pĭrum, -i, n. *a pear*

pĭrus, -i, f. *a pear-tree*

piscātor, -ōris, m. *fisherman*

piscis, -is, m. *a fish*

plăcĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, g. dat. *please;* plăcuit, *or* plăcĭtum est, nobis vēnīre, *to come pleased us, i.e., we resolved to come*

plăcet, -ŭit *or* -ĭtum est, -ēre, 2, v. *impers. it pleases*

plăcĭdus, -a, -um, *adj. quiet*

plānē, adv. *altogether*

plānĭtĭes, -ĭei, f. *level space*

planta, -ae, f. *a sprout, plant*

Plāto, -ōnis, m. *Plato*

plebs, plēbis, f. *the common people*

plēnus, -a, -um, *full, g. gen. or* abl.; vīno plēnus, *filled with wine, i.e. intoxicated*

plērique, plēraeque, plērique, *most*

plērumque, adv. *for the most part*

Plīnĭus, -ii, m. *Pliny*

plŭit, plŭit *or* plŭvit, plŭĕre, 3 v. impers. *it rains*

plūrĭmus, see Par. 68

plūs, -ūris, *more;* (neut. pl. often used as noun) he spoke no more, nec plūra dixit, see Par. 72

poenĭtentĭa, -ae, f. *penitence*

poena, -ae, f. *penalty;* dăre poenas (pl.) culpae, *to pay the penalty of a fault*

poenĭtet, -ĭtŭit, -ĭtēre, 2, v. impers. *it repents (me),* see Par. 219

pŏēta, -ae, m. *poet*

pollex, -ĭc's, m. *thumb (with which the lyre was twanged)*

pollĭcĕor, -ĭtus, 2, *promise* (280)

Pompēĭus, -ēĭi, m. *Pompey, the rival of Caesar*

pōmum, -i, n. *fruit*

pondus, -ĕris, n. *weight*

pōnĕ, prep. (g. acc.) *behind*

pŏno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3, *place, lay aside*

pons, -ntis, m. *a bridge*

pontĭfex, -ĭcis, m. *a high priest*

Pontĭus (Pĭlātus), -i, m. *Pontius Pilate*

porcus, -i, m. *pig*

porta, ae, f. *a gate*

porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *carry*

portus, -ūs, m. *harbour*

Pōrus, -i, *an Indian king conquered by Alexander the Great*

posco, poposci, 3, *demand*

possum, pŏtŭi, posse, v. irreg. *I am able, can* (see pp. 126, 127)

post, prep. (g. acc.) *after;* adv. (313) multis post annis, *many years afterwards* (N.B. never used like the conj. postquam)

posteā, adv. *afterwards*

postis, -is, *m. door-post*

postpōno, -pōsui, -pōsĭtum, 3, *place after (g. acc. and dat.)*

postquam, *conj. when, after*

postrēmus, *see Par. 69*

postŭlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I demand*

pŏtens, -entis, *adj. powerful*

pŏtentĭa, -ae, *f. power*

pŏtestas -ātis, *f. power, authority*

pŏtĭor, -ītus, 4, *v. dep. (g. abl.) I make myself master of, obtain*

pŏtius...quam, *rather...than;* vel pŏtius, *or rather (used when a writer slightly corrects his own statement)*

prae, *prep. (g. abl.) before, in comparison with, by reason of, see Par. 178*

praebĕo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2, *I exhibit, afford:* p. exemplum, *set an example;* p. fructum, *put forth fruit*

praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*

praeceptum, -i, *n. precept, instruction, lesson* [*famous*

praeclārus, -a, -um, *renowned,*

praeda, -ae, *f. booty*

praedĭum, -i, *n. farm*

praeĕo, -īvi *or* -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *I go before;* p. verba, *dictate words*

praefĕro, -tŭli, -lātum, *prefer*

praeficĭo, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *set in command over (acc. and dat.)*

praemitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *I send on before*

praemĭum, -i, *n. reward*

praesens, -entis, *present;* praesentem ĕum laudāvi, *I praised him in his presence*

praesidĭum, -i, *n. guard, garrison*

praestans, -antis, *excellent*

praesum, -fŭi, -esse, *v. irreg. (g. dat.) I am before, at the head of* [*yond*

praeter, *prep. (g. acc.) beside, be-*

praetĕrĕo, -īvi *or* -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *v. irreg. pass by*

praetĕrĭtus, -a, -um, *past*

praetor, -ōris, *m. the praetor*

praevĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *anticipate*

prāvus, -a, um, *perverse, depraved*

prĕmo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I press*

prĕtĭum, -i, *n. price, reward*

prīmārĭus, -a, -um, *adj. first rate, eminent*

prīmo, *adv. at first*

prīmus, -a, -um, *first* (71)

princeps, -ĭpis, *adj. and noun, first in rank, chief, emperor*

princĭpātus, -ūs, *m. sovereignty*

prior, -ōris, *superior, before* (71) *g. abl.*

pristĭnus, -a, -um, *adj. former, olden*

prius, *adv. sooner, before*

priusquam, *conj. until, before, sooner than* [*behalf of*

pro, *prep. (g. abl.) before, for, on*

prŏbē, *adv. rightly, properly*

prŏbĭtas, -ātis, *f. honesty, integrity*

prŏbus, -a, -um, *honest, upright*

prŏcella, -ae, *f. storm*

prŏcērēs, -um, *m. pl. nobles*

prŏcērus, -a, -um, *tall*

prōdĭtor, -ōris, *m. traitor*

prōdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3, *I hand down*

prōdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *bring forward*

proelĭum, -i, *n. battle*

prŏfecto, *adv. assuredly, indeed*

prŏfĕro, -tŭli, -lātum, -ferre, *v. irreg. extend*

prŏficiscor, -fectus, 3, *dep. set out*

prŏfundus, -a, -um, *adj. deep*

prōgigno, -gĕnŭi, -gĕnĭtum, 3, *bring forth, give birth to*

prōgrĕdĭor, -gressus, 3, *v. dep. advance*

prŏhĭbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *hinder, prohibit, keep off*

prōlēs, -is, *f. offspring*

prōmissum, -i, *n. a promise*

T

prōmissus, -a, -um, *hanging down, long (of hair)*

prōmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *promise*; p. mē ventūrum, *I promise to come (never p. vēnīre)* (280)

promptus, -a, -um, *ready*

prŏpĕ, *prep. (g. acc.) near*

prŏpĕ, *adv. near at hand, nearly*; p. ăbest a nōbīs, *he is close to us*

prŏpĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *hasten*

prŏpinquus, -a, -um, *adj. near*

proptĕr, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of*; more rarely, *near* (183)

prōpulso, -avi, -atum, 1, *repel*

Prōserpĭna, -ae, f. *Proserpine*

prosper, -pĕra, -pĕrum, *prosperous*

prōsum, -fūi, prodesse, (g. dat.) *I am of use*; non prōdest hōc dīcĕre, *it is of no use to say this* (191)

prōtendo, -tendi, -tensum *or* -tentum, 3, *extend*

prout, *conj. according as*

prōvĭdĕo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*

prōvĭdus, -a, -um, *provident, foreseeing*

prōvincia, -ae, f. *a section of the Roman Empire called a "province"*

prōvŏco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *challenge, provoke*

proxĭmus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last (Par. 69)*

prūdens, -ntis, *prudent*

prūdentĭa, -ae, f. *knowledge, prudence*

pūblĭcus, -a, -um, *public*

pŭdet, -ŭit, *or* pŭdĭtum, -ĕre, 2, *v. impers. it shames (Par. 219)*

pŭella, -ae, f. *girl*

pŭer, -ĕri, m. *boy*

pŭerĭtĭa, -ae, f. *boyhood*

pugna, -ae, f. *battle*

pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*

pulli, -ōrum, m. pl. *chickens*

pūmex, -ĭcis, m. *pumice-rock*

Pūnĭcus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*

pūnĭo, -īvi *and* -ii, -ītum, 4, *punish*

pŭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think*

putresco, 3, *putrefy*

Pygmălīon, -ōnis, m. *Pygmalion*

Pythăgŏras, -ae, m. *Pythagoras*

Quadringenti, *see Par. 81*

quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3, *seek, ask*; quaerēbam mēcum, *I was enquiring with myself*; *I asked him why*, &c., quaesīvi, ăb, ē, *or* dē, eo cūr, &c.

quaestŭs, -ūs, m. *gain, profit*

quālis, -e, *pron. adj. of what sort? what sort of? of which sort? as*

quam, *conj. or adv. than* (62) *(aft. comp.)*; hōc, quam turpe est! *how base it is!* as, nōn tam vălĭdus est quam frāter eius, *he is not so strong as his brother*; quam cēlerrĭmē, *as quickly as possible* (327); quam qui, *or* ut (319)

quamdĭu, *conj. as long as*

quamquam, *conj. although (mostly with indic.)* (323)

quamvīs, *conj. however much, 'although (with subjunctive)* (323)

quando? *interr. adv. when? also used in dependent questions* (155)

quantus, -a, -um, *adj. how great a*; tantus...quantus, *so great a...as*; *(used as a Noun)* quantum pĕcūniae, *as much (of) money*; *adv. how much*; quantum intĕrest, *how great a difference is there!* quanti? *at how great a price? see Par. 283, 284*

quārē? *interr. adv. and conj. why? on what account?*

quartus, *see Par. 81*

quăsi, *adv. as if, just as*

quăterni, -ae, -a, *four a-piece* (314)

quătĭo, *no perf.*, quassum, 3, *shake, toss*

quattuor, *see Par. 81*

-que, *conj. and ; used to combine two
words of similar meaning into one
phrase,* senatus populusque (87)

quercus, -ūs, *f. an oak* [*plain*

quĕror, quĕ-tŭs, 3 (*v. dep.*) *com-*

qui, *rel. pron.* (107) ; *often precedes
(never follows)* cum, *and must
then be rendered demonstratively ;*
quod cum intellexissem, *when I
perceived this ;* qui *after* quam
(319) : qui *foll. by subjunct.*(298) ;
idem qui (319) ; *see also* quo

quiā, *conj. because*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *pron.
adj.*(*neut. pron.* quiddam), *a cer-
tain* (310a) ; cardo quidam, *a
kind of hinge ; see Eng. Vocab.
"A"*

quidem, *conj. or adv.* (67, 189)
*on the one hand, it is true, in-
deed ;* quidem..autem (*or* vēro
or sĕd), *on the one hand ..but on
the other hand ;* nĕ...quidem,
not even (141) ; q. *sometimes
merely emphasizes a word, e.g.*
nunc quidem rides, "*Now you
laugh (but soon you will weep)*"

quid (*or* quic) quam, *see* quisquam

quilĭbet, quaelibet, quodlibet
(*pron. adj.*) *any you please ;*
quolibet tempore, *at any time he
pleases* (*pron. neut.* quidlibet)

quīn (*i.e.* qui nōn, *or* quō nōn)
conj. that not, (*with* subj.) (145,
300) nēmo est quin rident, *there
is no one that does not laugh ;
see also* obstat *and* dŭbium, *with
which it means " but that"*

quinquĕ, *see* Par. 81 ; quinquiens,
adv. five times ; quintus, *see* Par.
81

quis, quae, quid, *who ? see* Par.110,
111 ; (*after* sī, nĕ, num) *any
one*

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam ? *em-
phatic inter. pron. who ? which ?
what ?*

quisquam, quaequam, quodquam
(*pron. neut.* quicquam) *anyone*
(*used in neg. and compar. sen-
tences, and in questions that
expect the answer "no"*) (309)

quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quodquĕ, (*pron.
neut.* quidquĕ *or* quicquĕ) *each,
every ;* fortissĭmus quisquĕ, *each
bravest man, i.e. all the bravest
men ;* sŭam quisquĕ dŏmum
rĕdiērunt, *they returned, each to
his own home (where* quisquĕ *is
not nom. to* r., *but in Apposition
to the nom. to* r.) (140, 310)

quisquis, quaequae, quodquod
(*adj.*), *whoever ; (pron. neut.*)
quidquid *or* quicquid, *whatever ;*
quidquid āmīcōrum, *whatever
(of) friends* (*part. gen.*)

quīvīs, quaevis, quodvīs (*pronom.
neut.* quidvīs) *any you like ;* nōn
cuiusvis est, *it is not every one's
luck* (310)

quō, *adv.* (*rel. and interr.*) *whither*

quo, *conj.* and *adv.* (1) quo cītius,
ĕo mēlĭus, *by how much the
quicker, by so much the better ;*
(2) (*with compar.*) *in order that*
(303) ; quōcum (179)

quŏd, *conj. because, that* (*sometimes
foll. by subjunct.,* 293a)

quōmĭnus, *conj. that not,* Par. 144 ;
quid obstat q. vĕnias ? *what
prevents you from coming ?*

quōmŏdo ? *in what manner ? how ?*
(*also used in dependent quest.*)

quondam, *adv. formerly*

quŏniam, *conj. since*

quŏquĕ, *see* quisquĕ

quŏquĕ, *conj. also, too ; (always
after the word it modifies)*

quŏt, *indecl. adj. how many*

quōtĭdĭē (*more correctly spelt* cotti-
dĭē), *adv. every day*

quōtiens, *adv. how many times ;*
quŏtiens...tŏtiens, *as many times
as...so many times*

quŏtus, -a, -um ? *what (in number)?*
hōra est ? *what o'clock is it?*

quŏtusquisque, *pron.* q. est qui
vēlit ! *how few there are who
wish !* (*sometimes in two words,
e.g.* quŏtus ĕnim quisque)

quum, *an incorrect form of* cum

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, 3, *shave*

Rādix, -īcis, *f. root*

răpāx, -ācis, *adj. rapacious*

răpĭdus, -a, -um, *rapid*

răpĭo, -ŭi, raptum, -ĕre, 3, *seize*

rārō, *adv. seldom, rarely*

rārus, -a, -um, *adj. rare*

rătĭo, -iōnis, *f. reason*

rătus, -a, -um, *thinking; see* reŏr

rĕcĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *take
back;* sē rĕcĭpiunt in castra,
they retreat to the camp

rĕcĭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I read aloud*

rĕclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry shame,
protest*

rĕcordor, -ātus, 1, *call to mind*
(*gen., but more often acc.*)

rĕcrĕo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *refresh*

rectē, *adv. rightly*

rectus, -a, -um, *adj. straight, right*

rĕcŭpĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recover,
get back*　　　　　　[*fuse*

rĕcūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *object, re-*

reddo, reddĭdi, reddĭtum, 3, *restore,
render*

rĕdĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *return*

rĕdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3, *bring
back*

rĕfĕro, rĕtŭlī or rettŭlī, rĕlātum, 3,
*v. irreg. I bring back, report,
relate, reply; sometimes means
"refer;"* dē hāc rē ad Patres rĕlā-
tum est, *a reference was made to
the Senate on this point*

rĕfert (or rē-fert) *it matters, is of
importance* (*conjugated like* fĕro,
but impersonal); illud magni
rĕferre reŏr, *I think that is of
great importance* (329)

rĕgĕro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *cast up,
or back*

rēgīna, -ae, *f. a queen*

rĕgĭo, -ōnis, *f. region, district*

regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *reign*

regnŭm, -i, *n. a kingdom*

rĕgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I rule*

Rēgŭlus, -i, *m. Regulus*

rĕlĭgĭo, -ōnis, *f. religious scruple,*
id rĕlĭgĭōni hăbĕo, *I consider this
sacrilege,* lit. *for a religious
scruple* (268) [*poets,* rellĭgĭo]

rĕnuntĭo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bring back
word*

rĕlinquo, -līqui, -lictum, 3, *leave,
quit*

rĕmĭniscor, 3, *I remember* (203)

rĕnŏvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *make new
again, restore*

rĕor, rătus, rēri, (*v. dep.*) *suppose,
think*

rĕpĕrĭo, reppĕri, rĕpertum, 4, *find*
(*after search*); *see* invēnĭo

rĕplĕo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2, *fill up*

rēs, rēi, *f. thing;* rem bĕnĕ gĕro,
I succeed; rēs Rōmānā, *the
affairs* (*or fortunes*) *of Rome;* r.
mīlĭtāris, *military matters;* r.
fămĭlĭāris, *one's household affairs,
property;* r. frūmentārĭa, *forage;*
rū ipsa, *or* rē, *in fact* (*adv. abl.*)

rescindo, -scĭdi, -scissum, 3, *tear
open,* or *down; break down* (*a
bridge*)

rĕsisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3, (*g. dat.*)
resist; mĭhĭ rĕsistĭtur, *I am
being resisted*　　　　　　[*gard*

respĭcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *re-*

respondĕo, -di, -sum, 2, *answer*

responsum, -i, *n. answer*

rēs-publica, rēi-publĭcae, *f., the
republic, the country; politics*

restĭtŭo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *restore*

resto, -stĭti, 1, *remain;* spēs ūnă
restat, *one hope remains*

rēte, -is, *n. a net*

rĕtexo, -texŭi, -textum, 3, *unweave*

rĕtĭneo, -tĭnui, -tentum, 2, *keep back*

rĕus, -i, *m. the accused, defendant;* rĕus factus sum, *I was accused*

rĕvŏco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recall*

rĕverto, -ti, -sum, 3, *turn back, return (in the Pres. and Pres. derived tenses the Act form is rare:* use rĕvertor)

rĕvertor, -versus, 3, *v. dep. I turn back, return*

rex, rēgis, *m. king*

Rhēnus, -i, *m. the Rhine*

rhētŏrĭca, -ae, *f. rhetoric*

Rhŏdānus, -i, *m. the Rhone*

Rhŏdus, -i, *f. Rhodes*

rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2, *laugh; laugh at (g. acc.)*

rīpa, -ae, *f. bank, shore*

rīsŭs, ūs, *laughter, a laugh*

rōbur, -oris, *n. strength*

rŏgātĭo, -ĭōnis, *f. (see rŏgo) a bill proposed to the people;* ferre rŏgātĭōnem, *to bring forward a bill*

rŏgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask; (used of asking the people whether they will pass a bill) hence* rŏgāre lēgem, *to bring forward a bill*

Rōma, -ae, *f. Rome*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*

Rōmūlus, -i, *m. Romulus*

rŏsa, -ae, *f. a rose*

rŭbeo, -ui, 2, *blush*

rŭber, -bra, -brum, *red*

rŭbēta, -ōrum, *n. pl. bramble-beds;* rŭbus, -i, *m. bramble*

rŭdis, -e, *raw, ignorant (g. gen.)*

rūpēs, -is, *f. a rock*

rūs, rūris, *n. country;* rūri (Par. 265) *in the country*

rustĭcus, -a, -um, *rustic*

Săcer, -cra, -crum, *sacred*

săcerdōs, -ōtis, *m. priest*

saepĕ, *adv. often*

saepĕnŭmĕro, *adv. oftentimes*

saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4, *hedge in, fence round*

saepissĭmē, *adv. very often*

saevus, - a, -um, *cruel, fierce*

săgācĭtās, -ātis, *f. keen scent, sagacity;* săgax, -ācis, *sagacious*

săgitta, -ae, *f. an arrow*

salto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dance*

salūber, -bris, -bre, *healthful*

sălūs, -ūtis, *f. safety*

salūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *salute*

salvĕo, -ēre, 2, *I am well;* salvē, *be well,* i.e. *good morning !*

salvus, -a, -um, *adj. safe*

Samnītes, -ium, *m. pl. the Samnites*

sancĭo, sanxi, sanctum, 4, *enact;* sancio nē quĭs absit, *I enact that no one shall be absent*

sānē, *adv.* (lit. *soberly, in sober earnest*) *certainly*

sanguis, -ĭnis, *m. blood*

sāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *heal*

sānus, -a, -um, *healthy*

săpĭens, -ntis, *wise;* săpĭenter, *adv. wisely*

săpĭentĭa, -ae, *f. wisdom*

săpĭo, -īvi and -ĭi, 3, *savour of (g. acc.); am wise*

sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4, *patch, mend*

sătis, *adv. enough, sufficiently;* (used as a noun) sătis patriae dătum est, *enough has been given to the claims of your country*

saxum, -i, *n. rock*

scĕlus, -ĕris, *n. crime*

scēna, -ae, *f. the stage of a theatre*

scĭentĭa, -ae, *f. knowledge*

scindo, scĭdi, scissum, 3, *rend, tear*

scĭo, -ĭi or -īvi, -ītum, 4, *I know*

Scīpĭo, -ōnis, *m. Scipio·*

scrība, -ae, *m. scribe, clerk*

scrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3, *write;* s. lēges, *I draw up laws*

scriptor, -ōris, *m. a writer, author*

scūtum, -i, *n. shield*

Scȳtha, -ae, *m. a Scythian*

sē, *see* Par. 94, 218, 305, 306 ; sē-cum, *see* Par. 179.

sĕcundus, -a, -um, *second, prosperous;* sĕcundum, *prep. (g. acc.) following, in accordance with*

sĕcūris, -is, *f.* (acc. -im), *axe; the axes and rods* (fasces) *were the signs of the consul's office*

sĕd, *conj. but (on the other hand);* non sōlum...sed ĕtiam, *not only... but also*

sĕdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I sit*

sēdēs, -is, *f. seat, abode*

sēdĭtĭō, -ōnis, *f. rebellion, sedition*

sĕgĕs, sĕgĕtis, *f. cornfield, harvest*

sĕgnĭtiēs, -ēi, *f. slothfulness*

sĕmĕl, *adv. once (for all)*

semper, *adv. always, ever*

senātōrius, -a, -um, *senatorial*

sĕnātus, -ūs, *m. the senate*

sĕnectūs, -ūtis, *f. old age*

sĕnex, sĕnis, *m. old man*

sĕnior, *see* Par. 69

sensus, -ūs, *m. a sense*

sententia, -ae, *f. opinion*

sentĭo, -si, -sum, 4, *feel, perceive*

sĕpĕlĭo, sĕpĕlĭvi *and* -ĭi, sĕpultum, 4, *bury*

September,-bris,-bre, *of September; see* Par. 84; septuāgēsimus (81)

sĕquor, sĕcūtus, 3, *v. dep. follow*

sĕrēnus, -a, -um, *adj. clear*

sermo, -ōnis, *m. a discourse*

sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3, *plant, sow*

sēro, *late;* sērĭus, *too late*

serpens, -ntis, *f. serpent*

sertum, -i, *n. garland*

sērus, -a, -um, *late*

servĭo, -ii, -ītum, 4, *I am a slave to, I serve (g. dat.)*

servĭtūs, -ūtis, *f. slavery*

servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *watch, preserve; s.* fidem, *I keep my word*

servus, -i, *m. slave*

sēsē, *an emphatic form of* sē

seu, *conj. whether;* seu...seu, *whether...or; (not used like* utrum an...in *dep. sentences)*

sĕvērus, -a, -um, *adj. severe*

sī, *conj. if* (125) ; sī quis, sī quī, *'if any man, any men* (294); *with pres. and imperf. subj.* (295)

sic, *adv. thus, so*

Sĭcĭlĭa, -ae, *f. Sicily*

sīdus, -ĕris, *n. star*

signum, -i, *n. a sign, signal*

sĭlentĭum, -ii, *n. silence*

silva, -ae, *f. a wood*   [66, 60

sĭmĭlis, -e, *(g. gen. or dat.) like,*

sĭmŭl, *adv. at the same time;* simul ...simul, *at once...and*

sĭmŭlāc, *adv. as soon as*

sĭmŭlācrum, -i, *n. an image, statue*

sĭmŭlātĭo, -ōnis, *f. a pretence*

sĭmŭlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *pretend*

sĭne, *prep. (g. abl.) without*

singŭli, -ae, -a, *one a-piece, one by one* (77, 314)

sĭnister, -tra, -trum, *left*

sĭno, sīvi, sĭtum, 3, *suffer*

sĭnūs, -ūs, *m. a fold (of the garment, especially about the breast); pocket*

sĭtis, -is, *f.* (acc. -im) *thirst;* sĭtī mŏri, *to die of* (lit. *with*) *thirst*

sīve, *conj. whether;* sīve...sīve, *whether...or, (not used like* utrum...an *in Dependent Questions);* sīve lŏquor, sīve tăcĕo, patri nōn plăcĕo, *whether I speak or hold my tongue, I cannot please my father.*

sŏcer, -ĕri, *m. father-in-law*

sŏcius, -i, *m. a partner, ally, companion*

Sōcrătēs, -is, *m. Socrates*

sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*

sŏlĕo, -ĭtus sum, -ēre, 2, *v. n. I am accustomed*

sŏlĭtus, -a, -um, *customary*

Sŏlōn, -ōnis, *m. Solon*

sollertĭa, -ae, *f. skill, subtlety*

sŏlum, -i, *n. ground, soil*

sōlum, *adv. only, alone*

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj. gen. sing.* -īus, *dat.* -ī, *alone*

solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, 3, *I loosen, pay ;* s. fāmem, *I break my fast ;* impar solvendo sum, *I am not equal to paying,* i.e. *insolvent*

somnus, -i, m. *sleep*

sōnitus, -ūs, m. *a sound, noise*

sons, sontis, *guilty*

sōnus, -i, m. *sound*

Sŏphŏclēs, -is, m. *Sophocles*

sōpor, -ōris, m. *slumber*

sŏror, -ōris, f. *sister*

sors, -tis, f. *lot, fate*

sortior, sortītus, 4, *dep. draw lots*

Sparta, -ae, f. *Sparta*

spĕciēs, -ēi, f. *appearance* (182)

specto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *look at*

spĕcŭlor, -ātus, 1, v. dep. *I spy out*

spĕcus, -ūs, m. *cave*

sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3, *despise*

spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I hope*

spēs, -ēi, f. *hope*

spīro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *breathe*

spīritus, -ūs, m. *breath*

splendĭdus, -a, -um, *splendid, bright*

splendor, -ōris, m. *brightness* —

spŏlia, -ōrum, n. pl. *spoils*

spondĕo, spŏpondi, sponsum, 2, *pledge, promise to pay, betroth*

sponte (*adv. phrase*) mĕā, tuā, &c., *of my, your,* &c., *own accord*

stătim, *adv. immediately*

stătio, -ōnis, f. *a post, station*

stătus, -ūs, f. *statue*

stătuo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *determine*

stella, -ae, f. *a star*

sterto, -tui, 3, *snore*

stīpendium, -ii, n. (*military*) *pay*

sto, stĕti, stătum, 1, *I stand, abide by* (*with abl. or* in *and abl*) stāre prōmissis, *to abide by one's promises ;* ā Tullio stāre, *to side with Tullius ;* magno prētio stat, *it costs a great price*

strēnŭē, *adv. vigorously*

strēnŭus, -a, -um, *vigorous* (68*b*)

strĕpĭtus, -ūs, m. *noise, din*

struo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *pile up, construct*

stŭdĕo, -ūi, 2, *I am eager, zealous*

stŭdiōsus, -a, -um, *adj. zealous, eager after* (g. gen.)

stŭdium, -ii, n. *zeal, a pursuit, study*

stultĭtia, -ae, f. *folly*

stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*

suādĕo, -āsi, -āsum, 2, (g. dat.) *advise, persuade*

suāvis, -e, *adj. sweet, delightful*

sŭb, *prep.* (g. abl. or acc.) *up to, under ;* (*of time*) *about* (180)

subĕo, -ii, -itum (243), *go up to*

sŭbĭto, *adv. suddenly*

sŭbĭtus, -a, -um, *sudden*

subsĕquor, -cūtus, 3, *follow up*

subsum, *no perf., v. irreg. I am under, amongst*   [dat.] *help*

subvĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, (g.

succēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *follow, turn out ;* res mihī bĕnĕ successit, *the matter turned out well for me*

Suēvi, -orum, *the Suevi*

sufficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *suffice* (g. dat.)

sum, *I am,* p. 79, Par. 268, 142*d*

sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *take, assume*

summus, -a, -um, (69) *highest, utmost ;* summā cĕlĕrĭtātĕ, *with all speed ;* summus mons, *the highest part of the mountain*

sŭper, *prep.* (g. acc. or abl.) *over, upon, concerning* (180)

sŭperbia, -ae, f. *pride*

sŭperbus, -a, -um, *proud*

sŭpĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *overcome*

sŭpersum, -fui, -esse, v. irreg. *I remain over, survive* (g. dat.)

sŭpĕrus, -a, -um, *adj. upper* (69)

suppĕdito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *supply*

supplex, -icis, *adj. suppliant* (47,48)

supplicium, -ii, n. *punishment*

suprā, *prep.* (g. acc.) *above*

suprēmus, -a, -um, *superl.* of sŭ-
   pĕrus, *highest ;* (*of time*) *last*

surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3, *rise*

suscĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *under-
   take*

suspĭcĭo, -ŏnis, f. *suspicion*

sustento, 1, *sustain*

sŭus, -a, -um, (98 and p. 328) ; suis
   impĕrat, *he orders his* (*men*) (34)

Sўria, -ae, f. *Syria*

Tăbernācŭlum, -i, n. *tent*

tābesco, -ui, 3, *I decay*

tăcĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *I am silent*

taedĕt, -dŭit or pertaesum est, *v.
   impers. it disgusts, wearies* (219)

taeter, -tra, *um, foul*

tălentum, *a talent,* i.e. *a sum
   of mon̄*   *£240*

tālis, -e, o *t, such*

tam, *adv.* s   *degree, such ;*
   tam prāvi   *depraved
   conduct ; very, h... m longum
   iter, this very long journey* (228)

tămen, *conj. yet, however*

tamquam, *conj. just as ;* tē t. thē-
   saurum hăbĕo, *I consider you as
   a treasure;* t. sī consul esset,
   just as if he were consul

tandem, *at last ;* cur (or quid) tan-
   dem ? *why indeed ? pray why ?*

tantum, *adv.* (so much *and no more,
   hence*) *only ;* nōminĕ tantum
   mĭhĭ nōtus est, *he is known to
   me by name and no more ;* ūnus
   tantum, *only one*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great* (a) ; (as
   a noun) tantum pĕcūniae, *so
   much* (of) *money ;* (*often used,
   after a Pron., for* "*great*") haec
   tanta cŭlămĭtās, *this great calam-
   ity ;* tanti, *see* Par. 283, 284 ; tan-
   tum...quantum, *as much...as*

tărdus, -a, -um, *slow*

Tarquĭnĭus, -i, m. *Tarquin*

Tartărĕus, -a, -um, *Tartarean, be-
   longing to Tartarus, the region*

*of the punishment of the wicked
   dead*

Taurus, -i, m. *Mount Taurus*

taurus, -i, m. *a bull*

tĕgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I cover*

tellūs, -ūris, f. *earth, the goddess
   Earth*

tēlum, -i, n. *dart, missile*   [ness

tĕmĕrĭtās, -ātis, f. *recklessness, rash-*

tempestās, -ātis, f. *tempest*

templum, -i, n. *temple*

tempus, -ŏris, n. *time ;* tempŏri
   cēdĕre, *to yield to circumstances*

tĕnĕo, -ŭi, tentum, 2, *I hold, re-
   tain*

tĕner, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *tender, soft*

tĕnŭis, -e, *thin*

tĕnŭs, *prep.* (*g. abl.*) *as far as ;
   follows its case*) ; verbo tĕnus,
   so far as words go

tergum, -i, n. *back ;* terga dant
   mĭhĭ, *they flee before me*

terni, -ae, -a, *three a-piece* (314)

tĕro, -trīvi, tritum, 3 *rub, waste ;*
   tempus tĕrĭmus, *we are wasting
   time*

terra, -ae, f. *the earth, land ;* terrā
   mărīque, *by sea and land* (ad-
   verbial local abl.)

terrĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *terrify,
   frighten*

terror, -ōris, m. *terror, alarm*

tertius, -a, -um, *see* Par. 81

testāmentum, -i, n. *will, testament*

testis, -is, m. *witness*

testor, -ātus, 1, *testify*

Thĕmistŏclēs, -is, m. *Themistocles*

Thrās, Thrācis, m. *a Thracian ;*
   Thrācum est, *it is the mark of,*
   i.e. *like, Thracians*

Tĭbĕrĭus, -ii, m. *Tiberius, the name
   of the second Roman emperor,
   Tiberius Caesar*

tignūrius, -a -um, *having to do with
   beams ;* făber t. *builder, carpenter*

tigris, -is, or -ĭdis, c. *a tiger,
   tigress*

tĭmĕo, -ŭi, 2, *fear*

tĭmĭdus, -a, -um, *adj. timid*

tĭmor, -ōris, *m. fear*

tŏlĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *endure*

tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, 3, *raise, toke away;* tollunt rīsum, clāmōrem, &c. *they raise a laugh, shout, &c.*

Tŏnans, -ntis, *m. the Thunderer, a name of Jupiter*

tŏnat, -ŭit, -āre, 1, *v. impers. it thunders*

tonsor, -ōris, *m. barber*

torrĕo, torrui, tostum, 2, *parch, roast*

tot, *indecl. adj. so many;* hac tot cālāmĭtātes, *these numerous calamities*

tŏtiens, *adv. so many times*

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj. whole, all* (85)

trabs, trăbis, *f. beam*

tracto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I handle, deal with*

trādo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3, *deliver;* trădĭtum est, *it has been handed down*

trādūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead across*

trăho, -axi, -actum, 3, *I draw, drag*

trajĭcio, (*also spelt* trāĭcĭo) *same as* transjĭcio; (1) *throw across, carry across,* trājĭcio exercĭtum, *I lead an army across;* (2) *carry myself across, i.e. cross,* trājĭcio flūmen, *I cross a stream*

tranquillus, -a, -um, *adj. calm*

trans, *prep. g. acc. across*

Transalpīnus, -a, -um, *beyond the Alps* [over

transĕo, -ii, -ĭtum, 4, (241) *cross*

transfīgo, -fixi, -fixum, 3, *transfix*

transjĭcio, *see* trajĭcio

transversus, -a, -um, *turned across;* t. dĭgĭtus *or* unguis, *a finger's, or nail's breadth* [piece

'trĕcēni, -ae, -a, *three hundred a-*

trĕcenti, -ae, -a, *three hundred*

trĕmo, trĕmui, tremĭtum, 3, *tremble*

trēs, tria, *see Par.* 68

trĭbūnus, -i, *m. tribune*

trĭbŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *give, assign*

trĭbus, -ūs, *f. tribe*

trĭbūtum, -i, *n. tribute*

triennium, -i, *n. three years*

trīni, -ae, -a, *three (used with nouns like* littĕrae) (318)

tristis, -e, *sad*

trĭumpho, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enjoy a triumph, i.e. a triumphal procession granted by the Romans to distinguished generals*

Trōja, -ae, *f. Troy*

Trōjānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*

tū, *see p.* 45

tūba, -ae, *f. trump*

tŭĕor, tŭĭtus, 2, *v. dep. gaze on, guard, protect*

Tullia, -iae, *f.*

Tullius, -i,

tum, *adv. conj. then during that time;* cum...tum, *not only ...but also* (317)

tŭmĭdus, -a, -um, *swelling, swollen*

tunc, *adv. then, at that time*

turba, -ae, *f. crowd*

turbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *disturb, throw into confusion;* turbātum est, *a riot was made*

turbŭlentus, -a, -um, *turbulent*

turdus, -i, *m. thrush*

turpis, -e, *base, disgraceful*

turpĭtūdo, -ĭnis, *f. disgrace*

turris, -is, *f. tower*

tussis, -is, *f.* (acc. -im, abl. -i,) *cough*

tuto, *adv. safely ;* -us, -a, -um, *safe*

tŭus, -a, -um, *pron. adj. thy, thine*

tyrannus, -i, *m. despot, tyrant*

Ŭbi, *adv. where*

ulciscor, ultŭs, 3 (*v. dep.*) *avenge*

ullus, -a, -um, *adj.* (gen. sing. -ŭs, dat. sing. -ī), *any* (85, 87, 309)

ulmus, -i, *f. elm*

ultĭmus, -a, -um, *see Par. 69*

ultrā, *prep. g. acc. on the farther side of, beyond*

Ŭlyssēs, -is, *m. Ulysses*

uncĭa, -ae, *f. inch*

unda, -ae, *water*

unguis, -is, *m. nail*

unquam, *adv. at any time, ever*

ūnā, *at the same time or place; together*

ŭnĭcē, *adv. singularly*

ūnus, -a, -um, *adj. (74), one; in tē ūno, in you alone (96); spēs quam ūnam hăbŭi, the only hope I had; omnes ăd ūnum, all to a man*

urbs, urbis, *f. city*

uro, ussi, ustum, 3, *burn*

ŭt, *conj. that, in order that; often rendered by Eng. " to " (Par. 143); ut non (when to be used for nē) Par.296; (with indic., "when," " as ")*

ŭter, -ră, -rum (gen. -rĭus, dat. -rī), *which of two? u. hōrum, which of these two (85)? ŭterquē, utrăque, utrŭmque, either, both; dux ūterquē (sing.) both leaders*

ūtĭlis, -e, *useful*

ūtĭlĭtăs, -ātis, *f. utility, service*

ŭtĭnam !conj. O that, would that ! (g. subj., see Par. 330)

ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep. I use (207)*

utrimque, *adv. on both sides*

utrum, *conj. whether (171, 174)*

uxor, -ōris, *f. a wife*

Văcŭus, -a, -um, *empty of (g. abl.)*

valdē (*i.e. validē*) *adv. strongly, exceedingly*

vălĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *I am in good health; vălēte, farewell !*

vălētūdo, -ĭnis, *f. health*

vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong*

vallis, -is, *f. a valley*

vallum, -i, *n. the camp palisade composed of* valli (*see* vallus)

vallus, -i, *the stake borne by each Roman soldier for the formation of the vallum* [*hood*

vānĭtăs, -ātis, *f. emptiness, false-*

vărĭus, -a, -um, *different, various*

vastus, -a, -um, *vast*

vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lay waste*

-vĕ, *conj. or (an enclitic form of* vĕl)

vectĭgăl, -ālis, *n. a tax*

vĕhĕmens, -ntis, *rehement, warm*

vĕhĕmenter, *adv. vehemently, warmly; -issĭmē, very warmly*

vĕhĕmentĭa, -ae, *f. vehemence, passion* [*ride*]

vĕho, -xi, -ctum, 3, *carry (pass.)*

vĕl, *or (if you like), Par. 157a; hic discessus vĕl pŏtĭus fūga, this departure or rather (if you will have strict correctness) flight; even, hŭc vĕl pŭĕro făcĭlĕ est, this is easy even for a boy (141a); (with superl.) very, Stoĭcōrum vĕl maxĭmus est, he is the very greatest of the Stoics*

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj. swift*

vēnātor, -ōris, *m. hunter*

vendo, -dĭdi, -ditum, 3, *sell*

vĕnēnātus, -a, -um, *poisoned*

vĕnēnum, -i, *n. poison*

vĕnĕror, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. reverence, worship*

vĕnĭa, -ae, *f. pardon, dăre veniăm ei, to pardon him*

vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4, *I come*

vēnor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. I hunt*

venter, -tris, *m. the stomach*

ventĭto, -āvi, 1, *v. freq. I come frequently*

ventus, -i, *m. the wind*

Vĕnŭs, -ĕris, *f. Venus*

vēr, vēris, *n. the spring*

verber, -ĕris, *n. lash, stripe*

verbum, -i, *n. word; verbo tĕnus, so far as words go*

vērē, *adv. truthfully, accurately*

vĕrĕor, -ĭtus, 2, *fear, reverence (301)*

Vergĭlĭus, -i, m. *Virgil*

vērĭsĭmĭlis, -e, adj. *likely, probable*

vērĭtās, -ātis, f. *truth*

vēro, conj. *however, truly* (139a)

versus, -ūs, m. *line, verse*

versŭs, prep. with acc. *towards* (only of place or direction)

vertĕx, -ĭcis, m. *top*

verto, verti, versum, 3, *turn; in* fŭgam vertĕre, *to put to flight*

vērus, -a, -um, *true* [abl.]

vescor, 3, v. dep. *feed on* (g.

vesper, -pĕri, m. *evening*

vespĕrascit, -āvit, -nscĕro, v. impers. *evening approaches*

Vesta, -ae, f. *Vesta, the goddess of fire and the hearth*

‥stālis, -e, *Vestal, belonging to Vesta*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*

vestīmentum, -i, n. *clothing*

vestĭo, -īvi or -ĭi, -ītum, 4, *clothe*

vestis, -is, f. *clothing, garment*

vestītus, -ūs, m. *clothing*

vĕtus, vĕtĕris, *old* (61)

vexo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I vex, harass*

vī, see vīs

vīa, -ae, f. *way, road*

victor, -ōris, m. *conqueror*

victōrĭa, -ae, f. *victory*

victus, -a, -um, pass. part. of vinco

vīcus, -i, m. *village*

vĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *see* (in passive) *seem, appear;* quid tĭbĭ vĭdētur? *What seems* (good) *to you, i.e. what do you think?*

vĭgĭl, gen. -ĭlis, *watchful* (47)

vĭgĭlĭa, -ae, f. *night watch; the night from 6 P.M to 6 A.M. was divided into four "watches"*

vĭgĭlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I watch, I am awake*

vīlis, -e, adj. *cheap, common*

vincĭo, -nxi, -nctum, 4, *bind*

vinco, vīci, victum, 3, *conquer*

vincŭlum, -i, n. *a chain, bond*

vīnētum, -i, n. *vineyard, vines*

vīnum, -i, n. *wine*

vĭŏla, -ae, f. *violet*

vĭŏlentĭa, -ae, f. *violence*

vīres, -ĭum, f. pl. *strength;* see vīs

Virgĭlĭūs, -ii, see Vergĭlĭus

virga, -ae, f. *rod, stick*

virgo, -ĭnis, f. *maiden*

vir, vĭri, m. *hero, man*

virga, -ae, f. *twig, rod, stick*

vĭrĭdis, -e, *green*

virtūs, -ūtis, f. *valour, virtue*

vīs, irreg. see Par. ·311 ; *force, violence, power, efficacy;* pl. vīres, *strength;* see also vŏlo, p. 238

viso, -vīsi, 3, (v. freq.) *come to see, visit*

vīsus, -ūs, m. *sight*

vīta, -ae, f. *life*

vĭtĭōsus, -a, -um, *full of vice, vicious*

vītis, -is, f. *vine*

vĭtĭum, -i, n. *vice, fault;* dăre vĭtĭo, *to impute as a fault* (Par. 268)

vīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *avoid*

vĭtŭpĕro, -āvi, -ātum, *revile*

vīvo, vixi, victum, 3, *live*

vix, adv. *scarcely*

vŏlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I fly*

vŏlo, vŏlŭi, vellĕ, v. irreg. *I wish, am willing;* ĭdem vellĕ, *to wish for the same thing* (pp. 128–130)

vŏluntas, -ātis, f. *a wish, will*

vŏluptas, -tātis, f. *pleasure*

vŏro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *devou*

vos, see p. 45.

vox, vōcis, f. *a voice*

Vulcānus, -i, m. *Vulcan*

vulnĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *wound*

vulnus, -ĕris, n. *a wound*

vulpes, -is, f. *fox*

vultur, -ŭris, m. *a vulture*

vultus, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks*

Xĕnŏphōn, -ontis, m. *Xenophon*

Xerxēs, -is, m. *Xerxes*

APPENDIX XI.

VOCABULARY—II.

ENGLISH INTO LATIN.[1]

A (i.e. *a certain*), quīdam, quae-dam, quoddam (*pron. neut.* quid-dam); *a man said to me*, quīdam mĭhī dixit; *he had a wonderful power of speaking*, erat hŏmĭni mīra quaedam dīcendi făcultas

ability (*mental*), ingĕnium, -i, n.

able, to be, possum, pŏtui, posse; *see* Par. 229

abode, sēdēs, -is, f.

abound, ăbundo, 1

about (*around*), circum (*g. acc.*; *also adv.*); (*concerning*) dē (*g. abl.*); (*nearly*) fĕrē

above, sŭper (*g. acc. and abl.*); *from above*, dēsŭper, *adv.*

abroad (*rest*) fŏris; (*motion*) fŏrās

absent, to be, absum, āfui, ăbesse; *absent*, adj. absens, -ntis

abstain from, abstĭneo, -ui, -tentum, 2 (*g. abl.*)

abundantly, ăbundanter

accept, accĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3

acceptable, grātus, -a, -um

accident, cāsus, -ūs, m.; *by accident*, cāsu; fortĕ (*adv.*)

accompany, cŏmĭtor, 1, *dep.*

accomplish, perfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3; *without accomplishing any-thing*, rē infectā

accord, of his, my own accord, sponte suā, meā, &c.

accordingly, ĭtăque, ĭgĭtur (*adv.*). N.B. ĭgĭtur *should not stand first in a clause*

account, on account of, propter, *or* ŏb, *prep. g. acc.*; *on that account*, ŏb id, ĭdeo

accurate (*of things, not persons*), accūratus, -a, -um

accusation, crīmen, -ĭnis, n.

accuse, accūso, 1

accused (*man*), *the*, reus, -i, m.

accuser, accūsātor, -ŏris, m. [*dep.*

accustomed, to be, sŏleo, sŏlĭtus, 2,

Achilles, Achillēs, -is, m.

acknowledge, agnosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum, 3

acquainted with, to be, *see* to know

acquire, to, ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3, *dep.*

acquit, absolvo, -vi, -ūtum, 3; (*with g. of charge*, Par. 290)

acre, jūger, -eris, n.

across, trans (*g. acc.*)

act, an, factum, -i, n.; *act, to,*
  ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3
Actium, Actium, -i, n.
active, strēnuus, -a, -um
actor, an, mĭmus, -i, m.
adapted, aptus, -a, um
add, addo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3
address, allŏquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
admire, admīror, 1, dep.
admiration, admīrātio, -ōnis, f.
admit, admitto, -mī-i, -missum, 3 ;
  (confess) confĭteor, -fessus, 2,
  dep.
admonish, admŏneo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2
adorn, orno, 1
advance, to, prōgrĕdior, -gressus,
  3, dep.; prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum,
  3
advantage, commŏdum, -i, n.
adverse, adversus, -a, -um; inīquus,
  -a, -um
adversity, rēs adversae
advice, consĭlium, -i, n. ; *by my,*
  his, advice, mē, eo, auctōre (197)
advise, admŏneo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2 (143)
Aetna, Aetnı, -ae, f.
affair, rēs, rei, f.
affection, cārĭtās, -ātis, f. ; *filial*
  affection, piĕtās, -ātis, f.
affectionate, cārus, -a, -um ; pius,
  -a, -um
affirm, assĕvēro, 1 ; affirmo, 1
afflict, ango, 3 ; vexo, 1
afford, praebeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2
afraid, to be, tĭmeo, 2 ; vereor,
  vĕrĭtus, 2, dep. *(constr.* Par. 301)
Africa, Africa, -ae, f.
after, post *(g. acc.); after (conj.),*
  postquam, (1) *foll. by perf.,*
  except where (2) *the interval is*
  defined ; (1) *after he had come,*
  postquam vēnit; (2) *ten days*
  after he had come, decimo die
  postquam vēnerat
afterwards, postĕă; *a few days after-*
  wards, paucis post diēbus (313)
again, rursus, (ĭtĕrum, *a second*

time); again and again, ĭtĕrum
  atque ĭtĕrum
against, contrā, adversus, in *(all*
  g. acc.); he was sent against the
  enemy, missus est adversus
  hostes ; *against the laws,* contrā
  jūs; *against one's will,* invītus, -a,
  um ; *she came a.* &c. invīta vēnit
Agamemnon, Ăgămemnon, -ŏnis, m.
age, aetās, ātis, f. ; *old age,* sĕnec-
  tūs, -ūtis, f ; *age, an,* saecŭlum,
  -i, n.
Agesilaus, Ăgēsĭlāus, -i, m.
ago, ăbhinc *(with acc. or abl.);*
  two years ago, ăbhinc biennio,
  or biennium
agree, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4
  (foll. by dat., or cum)
agreeable, jūcundus, -a, -um
agreement, consensus, -ūs, m.
Ah ! interject. O ! *foll. by acc. ;*
  Ah, the lucky fellow ! O fēlicem
  hominem !
aid, auxĭlium, -ii, n.; *aid, to,*
  subvĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
air, aër, aĕris, m.
Ajax, Ăjax, -jăcis, m.
alas ! heu ! *or* ēhou !
Alban, Albānus, -a, -um
Alexander, Ălexander, -dri, m.
alliance, sociĕtās, -ātis, f.
alien, ăliēnus, -a, -um
alike, părĭter
alive, vīvus, -a, -um
all, omnis, -e; *(all) men,* omnes ;
  from all sides, undĭque ; *all the*
  best citizens, optĭmus quisquĕ
  cīvium; *all the food we had,*
  was consumed, quidquid cĭbi
  nōbīs fuĕrat, consumptum est
allow, sino, sīvi, sĭtum, 3
allure, allĭcio, -lexi, -lectum, 3 -
ally, sŏcius, -i, m.
almost, paenĕ, fērĕ
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um
  (85); *Cato alone thought other-*
  wise, Catōni ūni ălĭter vīsum est

along (*prep.*), per (*g. acc.*)

Alps, Alpes, -ium, f. pl.

already, jam

also, (1) ĕtiam, *mostly before*, (2) quŏquĕ, *always after, the word modified*; *not only...but also*, nōn sōlum...sēd ĕtiam, *or*, cum ...tum

altar, āra, -ae, f.

altogether, omnīno

always, sempĕr

ambassador, lēgātus, -i, m.

ambush, insĭdiae, -ārum, f.

amiss, *something amiss has happened to him*, ălĭquid eī incommŏdi accĭdit

among, inter (*g. acc.*); *among the Romans*, apud Romanos; *they are fighting amongst one another*, inter sē pugnant

ancestors, majōres, -um, m. pl.

ancient, antīquus, -a, -um; priscus, -a, -um; vĕtus, -ĕris; *among the ancients*, ăpud antīquos

and, et; atquĕ, -que (Par. 37); *and no one, never, nothing, &c.*, nec quisquam, unquam, quidquam, &c.

anger, īra, -ae, f.; *in or with a.*, īrācundē, summā īrā, *or* cum īrā (Par. 276)

angry, to be, īrascor, īrātus, 3, dep.; *angry*, īrātus, -a, -um

animal, ănĭmal, -ālis, n.; *wild animal*, fĕra, -ae, f.

announce, nuntio, 1

annually, quŏtannīs

another, ălius, -a, -ud; *the other*, alter, -ĕra, -ĕrum, (Par. 86)

answer, to, respondeo, -di, -nsum, 2 (*g. dat. of pers.*); *answer, an*, responsum, -i, n.; *to make answer*, respondēre; *I was answered*, responsum est mĭhī

Antonius, Antōnius, -i, m.

any, any one (*in neg. compar. and interrog. sentences*), quisquam *or*

ullus (309); (*with* num, sī, nĕ) quĭs (294); *any* (*you please*), quīlĭbet, quaelĭbet, quodlĭbet, (*pron. neut.* quidlĭbet); *the enemy can attack us at any time* (*they please*), quōlĭbet tempŏre

anywhere, usquam

apiece, . (*trans. by distributive numeral, see Par. 77*), *he gave us three denarii apiece*, nōbīs ternos dēnārios dĕdit

Apollo, Apollo, -ĭnis, m.   [-ni, 2

appear, vĭdeor, vīsus, 2; appāreo,

appearance, spĕcies, -ei, f.

appease, plāco, 1

apple, pōmum, -i, n.; mālum, -i, n.

appoint, constĭtuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

approach, to, ădeo, -ii, -ĭtum, (*foll. by acc.*); accēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, (*foll. by* ad); *an*, ădĭtus, -ūs, m.

approve, prŏbo, 1; *a man of approved excellence*, vir spectātae (*or, more often*, -ā) virtūtis (*or* -ē)

apt, aptus, -a, -um

Archimedes, Archīmēdēs, -is, m.

ardour, ardor, -ōris, m.

Argos, Argi, -ōrum, m.

Arion, Ariōn, -ŏnis, m.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, m.

arise, ŏrior, ortus, 4, dep.; (*from bed, seat, &c.*) surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3

Aristippus, Aristippus, -i, m.

arm, an, brāchium, -i, n.; *arm, to*, armo, 1

armed, armātus, -a, -um

arms (*military*), arma, -ōrum, n.

army, exercĭtus, -ūs, m. , [*adv.*]

around, circum (*prep. g. acc., and*

Arpinum, Arpīnum, -i, n.

arrange, dīgero, -gessi, -gestum, 3

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.

arrive, pervĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*foll. by* ad); *we arrived at Rome*, Rōmam pervēnĭmus(249)

arrow, săgitta, -ae, f.

art, ars, -tis, f.

as, ut; as if, tanquam, quăsi; as
long as, dōněc; as far as, těnus
(g. abl.); as, (often trans. by
Apposition), you do many things,
as a boy, which you will not do,
as an old man, multa, puer, făcis,
quae, sěněx, non făcles; as
quickly as possible, quam cěler-
rīmē: (sometimes rel. pron.) he
is the same as he always was,
ĭdem est qui (or ac) semper fuit;
for the same price as, i.e., for
which, ĕodem prětio quo; ("as"
is sometimes rend. by the dat. of
purpose) he sent a legion as
reinforcement, mīsit lěgiōnem
subsĭdio (266); as much money
as, tantum pěcūniae quantum

ascend, ascendo, -ndi, -nsum, 3

ascertain, cognosco, cognōvi, cog-
nĭtum, 3; compěrio, compěri,
compertum, 1

ashamed, to be, pŭdet, -uit, 2
(impers.); I am ashamed of do-
ing, having done, pŭdet me
făcěre, fěcisse (219)

Asia, Ăsia, -ae, f.

ask, to, (1) meaning question, rŏgo,
1; interrŏgo, 1; quaero, -sīvi,
-sītum, 3 (with ex, dē, or ā); (2)
meaning beg, rŏgo, 1; ōro, 1
(143); (peace) pācem pĕtere; he
was asked his opinion, senten-
tiam rŏgātus est

ass, ăsĭnus, -i, m.

assassin, sīcārius, -i, m.

assault, to, oppugno, 1; assault,
an, impĕtus, -us, m.

assemble, convěnio, -vēni, -ventum,
4 (intrans.); convŏco, 1 (trans.)

assembly, concĭlium, -ii, n; con-
ventus, -us, m.

assist, subvěnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
(g. dat.)

assistance, auxĭlium, -i, n.

assume (take), sumo, sumpsi,
sumptum, 3

astonishment, admīrātio, -ōnis, f.

at, ăpud (g. acc.); ăd (g. acc.);
at all, omnīno; at least, saltem;
at last, at length, tandem, ăli-
quando; at once, sĭmul, stătim

Athens, Ăthēnae, -ārum, f. pl.

Athenian, Ăthēniensis, -e

attack, to, aggrĕdior, -gressus, 3,
dep.; oppugno, 1 (to attack a
town); attack, an, impĕtus, -us, m.

attempt, to, cōnor, 1, dep. (this v.
is an acc. to the rule (143) about
v. of "striving"; it is foll. by
inf.); attempt, an, cōnātus, -ūs,
m.   [dat.

attention, to pay, ŏpĕram dăre, g.

Attica, Attĭca, -ae, f.

attract, trăho, -xi, -ctum, 3

audacity, audācia, -ae, f.

augur, augur, -ŭris, m.

augury, augŭrium, -i, n; ōmĕn,
-ĭnis, n.

Augustus, Augustus, -i, m.

auspice, auspĭcium, -i, n.

author, auctor, -ōris, m.

authority, auctōrĭtās, -ātis, f.

autumn, auctumnus, -i, m.

auxiliaries, auxĭlia, -ōrum, n.

avail, vălĕo, -ui, 2; threats? what
avail, quid vălent mĭnae?

avarice, ăvārĭtia, -ae, f.

avaricious, ăvārus, -a, -um

avenge, ulciscor, -ultus, 3, dep.

avoid, vīto, 1; fŭgio, fūgi, 3

await, I, expecto, 1; death awaits
us, mors nōs mănet

awake, expergiscor, -perrectus, 3,
dep.

aware of, gnārus, -a, -um (g. gen.)

awful, dīrus, -a, -um

axe, secūris, -is, f.; acc. -em or
-im, abl. -i

Bacchus, Bacchus, -i, m.

back, tergum, -i, n.; the enemy

turn their backs, i.e. flee, terga
dant ; *drive back*, see *drive*

bad, mălus, -a, -um ; *badly*, mălĕ ;
bad men, imprŏbi

baggage, impědīmenta, -ōrum, n.

Balbus, Balbus, -i, m.

banish, pello, pepŭli, pulsum, 3 ;
expello, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3

bankrupt, impar solvendo, i.e. *un-
equal to paying*

banquet, ĕpŭlum, -i, n. ; pl. epulae,
ārum, f. (the sing. mostly means
a public banquet)

barbarian, barbărus, -a, -um

barbarous, fĕrus, -a, -um

barber, tonsor, -ōris, m.

bargain, to make a, păciscor, pac-
tus, 3, dep.

barn, horreum, -i, n.

barren, stĕrīlis, -e

base, turpis, -e

baseness, turpĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.

battle, proelium, -i, n. ; pugna,
-ae, f. ; *see* Cannae

beak, rostrum, -i, n.

bear, to, fĕro, -tŭli, -lātum, ferre

beard, barba, -ae, f.

beast, bestia, -ae, f. ; *of burden*,
jūmentum, -i, n.

beat, caedo, ŏccīdi, caesum, 3

beaten, to be, vāpŭlo, 1

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum

beauty, forma, -ae, f. ; pulchrĭtūdo,
-ĭnis, f.

because, quia, quod

become, fio, făctus, fĭĕri (258) ; *it
becomes me*, děcět mē (220)

bed, lectus, -i, m.

beech-tree, făgus, -i, f.

befall (amiss), accĭdo, -ĭdi, 3 ;
(good) contingo, -tigi, -tactum,
3 *(both g. dat.)*

befit, děcet, -uit, 2, impers.

before, (prep.) antĕ *(g. acc.)* ; *in the
presence of*, cōram, *(g. abl.)* ; *(conj.)*
priusquam, antĕquam ; *before-
hand, (adv.)* anteā, antĕ ; *a few*

years before, paucis antĕ annis ;
the day before, see " *day* " ; *before
the last*, extrēmis prior

beg, ōro, 1 ; *beggar*, mendīcus, -i, m.

begin, incĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 ;
(a battle), ĭneo, ĭnii, ĭnĭtum,
ĭnīre ; *before a pass. inf. use*
coepi, coeptus sum, coepisse, *v.
def.* ; *the city began to be be-
sieged*, urbs coepit (*or* coepta
est) obsidēri

beginning, ĭnĭtium, -i, n.

behind, post *(g. acc.)*

behold, aspĭcio, -exi, -ectum, 3 ;
vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2

behoves, it, ŏportet, -uit, 2

believe, crēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3 *(g.
dat. of person)* ; *I believe that he
will come*, crēdo eum ventūrum
esse ; *I believe him*, crēdo ei

Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, m.

belly, venter, -tris, m.

below, infrā *(g. acc.)*

benefactor, bĕnĕfactor, -ōris, m.

benefit, to, bĕnĕfăcio, -fēci, -factum,
3 ; prōsum, -fui, esse *(dat.)* ;
benefit, a, bĕnĕfactum, -i, n.

benevolence, bĕnĕvŏlentia, -ae, f.

benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um (68a)

beseech, ōro, 1 (143)

beside, iuxtā *(g. acc.)* ; praeter *(g.
acc.)* ; *besides (prep.)* praeter
(g. acc.) (183) ; *(adv.)* praetěreā

besiege, obsĭdeo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2

best, optĭmus, -a, -um ; *I do my
best to write*, ĭd ăgo ŭt scrībam

betake, confĕro, -tŭli, -ferre, cŏllā-
tum ; rĕcĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 ;
he betook himself to Corinth, Cŏ-
rinthum se contŭlit

betray, prōdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

betroth, spondeo, spŭpondi, spon-
sum, 3

better, mĕlior, -us

between, intĕr *(g. acc.)*

bewail, plōro, 1

beware, căveo, căvi, cautum, 2

beyond, ultrā (*g. acc.*); praeter (*g. acc.*)

big, see *large*

bind, vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4; (*by oath*) jūre-jūrando obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3

bird, ăvis, -is, f.

birth, partus, -ūs, m.; *noble birth*, nōbĭlĭtās, -ātis, f.

bite, a, morsus, -ūs, m.; *to bite*, mordeo, mŏmordi, morsum, 2 [-a, -um

bitter, ăcerbus, -a, -um: ămārus,

black, nĭger, -gra, -grum; *gloomy*, āter, -tra, -trum [po, 1

blame, culpa, -ae, f.; *to blame*, cul-

blind, caecus, -a, -um

blindness, caecĭtās, -ātis, f.

blood, sanguis, -ĭnis, m.

blot out, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2

blow, ictus, -ūs, m.; *to blow, v. intr.* flo, flāvi, flātum, 1

blush, ērŭbesco, -ui, 3

boar, ăper, -pri, m.

boast, glōrior, 1, dep.; jacto, 1

boasting, jactātio

body, corpus, -ŏris, n.; *dead body*, cădāver, -ĕris, n.

Boeotia, Boeōtia, -ae, f.

bold, audax, -ācis: fortis, -e

bone, ŏs, ossis, n.

book, lĭber, -bri, m. ⌐ ‘⌐·‑

booty, praeda, -ae, f.

border, fīnis, -is, m.

bordering-on, fīnĭtĭmus,-a,-um (112)

born, to be, nascor, nātus, 3, dep.; *born of low parentage*, hŭmĭlĭbus părentĭbus nātus. N.B. nascor *means, I am being born*, nātus sum, *I am born*

bosom, sĭnus, -ūs, m.

both, (*adj.*) ambo, -ae, -o, ŭterque, -traque,-trumque; *both of us*, nōs ambo *or* ŭterque nostrum; (*conj.*) *both...and*, ĕt:..ĕt, (12) *or* cum... tum, (317)

bottom, īmus, -a, -um, *adj.*

bound, boundary, fīnis, -is, m.; termĭnus, -i, m.

bow, arcus, -ūs, m. (53)

boy, puer, -ĕri, m; *boyhood*, puĕrĭtia, -ae, f.; *from his b., from a boy*, indĕ ā puĕrĭtiā, *or* puĕro

branch, rāmus, -i, m.

brave, fortis, -e; *bravely*, fortĭter

bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

bread, pānis, -is, m.

break, frango, frēgi, fractum, 3; rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3; *break out*, ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3; *break down* (*a bridge*), inter-rumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3

breast, pectus, -ŏris, n. [m.

breath, ănĭma, -ae, f.; hālĭtus, -ūs,

breed, to, ălo, -ui, altum, 3

bribery, ambĭtus, -ūs, m.

bridge, pons, -ntis, m.; *to bridge, (a river)*, flŭvium ponte jungĕre

bright, clārus, -a, -um; splendĭdus, -a, -um

bring, affĕro, attŭli, allātum, af-ferre; *I will bring you help*, fĕram tĭbi auxĭlium; *bring back*, rĕdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3; *bring in*, infĕro, -tŭli, -illā-tum, inferre; *introdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3; *bring up* (*educate*), ēdūco, 1; *bring back word*, rĕnuntio, 1

briskly, ălacriter

Britain, Brĭtannia, -ae, f.

Briton, a, Brĭtannus, -i, m.

brother, frāter, -tris, m.

brow, frons, -ntis, f.

Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.

build, aedĭfĭco, 1; *building*, aedĭfĭcium, -i, n.; *to see to the build-ing of a temple*, cūrāre templum aedĭficandum

bulk, magnĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.

bull, taurus, -i, m.

burden, ŏnus, -ĕris, n.

burn, ūro, ussi, ustum, 3 (*trans.*); (*a house, city, &c.*) incendo,

incendi, incensum, 3 (*trans.*);
ardeo, ursi, arsum, 2 (*intrans.*);
a burning, incendium, -i, n.

burst into, irrumpo, -rŭpi, -ruptum,
3, *foll. by* in *and acc.*

bury, sĕpĕlio, -ivi, sĕpultum, 4

bush, dūmus, -i, m.

bushel, mŏdius, -ii, m.　　　　[n.

business, rēs, rei, f. ; nĕgōtium, -i,

but, (i) *coord. conj.* sĕd (*comes first
in a clause, means* on the other
hand ; *but still* ; *but yet*) ; autem
(*never comes first in a clause,
means* in the second place), vēro
(139a) ; (ii) *subord. conj.* quīn ;
I doubt not but he will come, nōn
dŭbĭto quīn ventūrus sit

but (*prep.*), praetĕr ; *no one but
Tullius was present*, praetĕr Tul-
lium nēmo ădĕrat ; *but some-
times, in negatives and questions
that expect a neg. answer*, nĭsī
(*coupling nouns in the same case,
like* quam, 62) ; *what is filial
affection but gratitude towards
parents?* quid est pĭĕtās nĭsī
grāta ergā pārentes vŏluntās ?

but (*a neg. rel. pron.*, that not),
(i) nom., *there was no one but
hated you*, nēmo ĕrat quīn tē
ōdi-set ; (2) abl., *not a day
passed but I wept*, dies fērē
nullus fuit quīn (*i.e.* quo nōn)
flērem

butterfly, păpĭlio, -ōnis, m.

buy, ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3

buyer, emptor, -ōris, m.

by, ā, ăb (Par. 178); *by this time*, jam

Caesar, Caesar, -ăris, m.

calamity, călămĭtās, -ātis, f.

call, vŏco, 1 ; *call together*, con-
vŏco, 1 ; (*address*) appello, 1 ;
do you call me an enemy? num
mē ĭnĭmīcum appellas ?

calm, plăcĭdus, -a, -um

Camillus, Cămillus, -i, m.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.

Campania, Campānĭa, -ae, f. N.B
a district, not a city.

can (*see* able) *you can come*, vĕnīre
pŏtĕs ; *it cannot be that you
would venture on this*, fiĕri nōn
pŏtest ŭt hōc audeās

Cannae, Cannae, -ārum, f. ; *of
Cannae*, Cannensis, -e, adj. ; *the
battle of C.*, proelium Cannense,
or p. Cannis pugnātum

capital, căput, -ĭtis, n.

Capitol, Căpĭtōlium, -i, n.

captive, *adj.* captīvus, -a, -um

capture, *a*, captīvus, -i. m.

capture, to, căpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Capua, Căpua, -ae, f.

carcass, cădāver, -ĕris, n.

care, cūra, -ae, f. ; *take care of* cūro,
1, *g* acc. ; *take care to*, cūrā ut

carefully, dīligenter

careless, neglĕgens, -ntis

carelessness, incūria, -ae, f. ; neglĕ-
gentia, -ae. f.

carry, porto, 1 (*on one's shoulders*);
vĕho, vexi, vectum, 3 (*of horses*);
ferre, tŭli, lātum (*a letter*)

carry off, aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum,
auferre ; (*a victory*) rĕporto, 1

carry on, to, *a war*, bellum gĕrĕre,
gessi, gestum, 3　　　　· ·

Carthage, Curthāgo, -ĭnis, f.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um

cast, jăcio, jēci, jactum, 3

cast away, abjicio, abjēci, abjec-
tum, 3 ; *cast down*, dēmitto,
-mīsi, -missum, 3

cat, fēlis, -is, f.

catch, căpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Catiline, Catĭlīna, -ae, m.

Cato, Căto, -ōnis, m.

cattle, armenta, -ōrum, n. pl.

cause, causa, -ae, f.

cause, to, efficio, fēci, fectum, 3 :
you caused me sorrow, tristĭtiam
mĭhī attŭlisti

cautiously, cautē

cavalry, ĕquĭtes, -um, m. pl.; ĕquĭtātus, -ūs, m.

cease, dēsĭno, -sīvi or -sii, 3

celebrated, praeclārus, -a, -um

centurion, centŭrio, -ōnis, m.

century, centŭria, -ae, f.

Ceres, Cĕrēs, Cĕrĕris, f.

certain, certus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*); *a certain person*, quīdam; *à c. fixed day*, certus quīdam dies; (*meaning "kind of"*) quīdam; *there is a c. pleasure*, est quaedam vŏluptas (310a)

certainly, certē, prŏfecto   [-i, n.

chain, cătēna, -ae, f.; vincŭlum,

challenge, to, prŏvŏco, 1

chance, cāsus, -ūs, m.; *by c.*, fortĕ

change, to, mūto, 1

charge, (*accusation*), crīmen, -ĭnis, n.; (*onset*) impĕtus, -ūs, m.; *let us charge the enemy*, impĕtum făcĭāmus in hostem   [-i, n.

chariot, currus, -ūs, m.; essēdum,

charioteer, aurīga, -ae, m.

charm, to, dēlecto, 1

chastise, to, castīgo, 1

cheap, vīlis, -e

cheer, be of good cheer, ērĭgĭte (ērĭgo, -rexi, -rectum, 3) ănĭmos; ădeste ănĭmis

cheese, cāseus, -i, m.

cherish, fŏveo, fŏvi, fōtum, 2; cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, 3

cherry, cĕrăsum, -i, n.

chew, mando, -di, -sum, 3

chicken, pullus, -i, m.

chide, culpo, 1   [-ĭpis, m.

chief, dux, dŭcis, m.; princeps,

chief men, primōres, -um, m. pl.

chiefly, maximē; imprīmīs

child, puer, -eri, m., *or* puella, -ae, f.

children, lībĕri, -ōrum, m.

choice (of style), ēlĕgans, -ntis

choiceness of style, ēlĕgantia, -ae, f.

choose, ēlĭgo, -lĕgi, -lectum, 3

Christian, a, Christiānus, -i, m.

Cicero, Cĭcĕro, -ōnis, m.

Cincinnatus, Cincinnātus, -i, m.

circuit, ambĭtus, -ūs, m.

circumstance, rēs, rei, f.

citadel, arx, -cis, f.; *gen. pl.* arcĭum (40)

citizen, cīvis, -is, m.

city, urbs, -bis, f.; *the city of Carthage*, Carthāgo urbs   [1

claim, posco, pŏposci, 3; vindĭco,

clamour for, postŭlo, 1

claw, unguis, -is, m.

Claudius, Claudius, -i, m.

clear, clārus, -a, -um; *to explain clearly*, lūcŭlenter explĭcāre

clear, it is, lĭquet, 2, impers. (222)

clemency, clēmentia, -ae, f.

clerk, scrība, -ae, m.

climb, scando, -di, -sum, 3

close, claudo, -si, -sum, 3

close to, prŏpe (*g. acc.*); *he is close at hand*, prŏpe ā nōbīs ăbest

close quarters, at, commĭnus

clothe, vestio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4

clothing, vestītus, -ūs, m.

cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.

Clytemnestra, Clŷtemnestra, -ae, f.

coast, lītus, -ŏris, n.; ōra, -ae, f.

cobbler, sūtor, -ōris, m.

Codrus, Codrus, -i, m.

cock, gallus, -i, m.

cohort, cŏhors, -rtis, f.

coin, nummus, -i, m.

cold, frīgus, -ŏris, n.

cold, frīgĭdus, -a, -um

colleague, collēga, -ae, m.

collect, collĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3

colony, cŏlōnia, ae, f.

colour, cŏlor, -ōris, m.

column, (*of men*) agmen, -ĭnis, n.

come, vĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4

command, (military) impĕrĭum, -i, n.; *commands*, jussa, -orum, n. pl.; *at the command of Tullius*, Tullĭo jŭbente (197)

command, to, impĕro, 1; praesum, fui, -esse (*both g. dat. of person*); jŭbeo, jussi jussum, 2

command of, to be in, praesum, -fui, -esse (*g. dat.*)

commander, impĕrātor, -ōris, m.; dux, dŭcis, m.   [3

commit, committo, -mīsi, -missum,

common, commūnis, -e.

common-people, plebs, plēbis, f.; vulgus, -i, n.

commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, f.

companion, cŏmĕs, -ĭtis, m.

compare, compăro, 1; confĕro, contŭli, collātum, conferre

compassion, mĭsĕrĭcordia, -ae, f.

compel, cōgo, coēgi, coactum, 3 (inf-, or ut, or ad *with gerund.*)

complain, quĕror, questus, 3, dep.

complaint, quĕrēla, -ae, f.   [3

complete, to, confĭcio, -fēci, -fectum,

conceal, cēlo, 1 (*g. two acc.,* 312)

concede, concēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3

conceive a hope, vĕnīre in spem

concerning, dē (*g. abl.*)

concerns, it, see "*important*

conciliate, concĭlio, 1

concord, concordia, ae, f.

concourse, concursus, -ūs, m.

condemn, damno, 1; condemno, 1; *to condemn to death,* căpĭtis damnāre

condition, condĭcio, -ōnis, f.

conduct, to, a war, bellum gĕrĕre

conduct, mōres, -um, m. pl.

confer, confĕro, contŭli, collātum, conferre; *to c. a benefit on you,* bĕnĕfĭcium in tē c.

conference, collŏquium, -i, n.

confess, fătĕor, fassus, 2, dep.; confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.

confession, confessio, -ōnis, f.

confidence, fĭdēs, -ei, f.

confirm, confirmo, 1

conflagration, incendium, -i, n.

congratulate, grātŭlor, 1, dep. (*g. dat.*); *I c. you that,* g. tĭbi quod

conquer, vinco, vīci, victum, 3; sŭpĕro, 1

conquered, victus, -a, -um; *the conquered,* victi m. pl.

conqueror, victor, -ōris, m.

conquest, victōria, -ae, f.   [*gen.*)

conscious, conscius, -a, -um (*g.*

consciousness, conscientia, -ae, f.

consecrate, consecro, 1

consent, to, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (*dat.,* or cum)

consent, consensus, -ūs, m.

consider, pŭto, 1

consist, consto, -stĭti, -stātum, 1; *foll. by ex or ē, the legions consisted of ten cohorts each,* lĕgiōnes ē dēnis cŏhortĭbus constitĕrunt

consolation, sōlātium, -i, n.

console, sōlor, 1, dep.

conspiracy, conjūrātio, -ōnis, f.

conspire, conjūro, 1

conspirator, conjūrātus, -a, -um, *used as a noun*

constancy, constantia, -ae f.

consul, consŭl, -ŭlis, m.

consulate, consŭlātus, -ūs, m.

consult, consŭlo, -sului, -sultum, 3; *to c. Tullius,* consŭlĕre Tullium, *to c. T.'s interests,* consŭlĕre Tullio

consume, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3

contemplate, contemplor, -ātus sum, 1

contend, contendo, -di, -tum, 3

content, contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)

contest, certāmen, -ĭnis, n.

contradict, contrādīco, -dixi, -dictum, 3 (*g. dat.*)

contrary, contrārius, -a, -um (189)

contrary, on the, contrā (*adv.*)

contrary-to, contrā (*g. acc.*)

conversation, sermo, -ōnis, m.: collŏquium, -i, n.   [3. dep.

converse, to, collŏquor, collŏcūtus,

convey, vĕho, vexi, vectum, 3

cook, cŏquus, -i, m.

cook, to, cŏquo, coxi, coctum, 3

copper, aes, aeris, n.

Corinth, Cŏrinthus, -i, f.
Corinthian, Cŏrinthius, -a, -um
Coriolanus, Cŏrĭŏlānus, -i, m.
Corioli, Cŏrĭŏli, -ōrum, m. pl. *the small town of Corioli was burned*, C., oppĭdum parvum, incensum est
corn, (*harvested*) frūmentum, -i, n. ; *to sow corn*, frūmenta sĕrĕre
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
corpse, cădāver, -ĕris, n.
correct, corrĭgo, -rexi, -rectum, 3
corrupt, corrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3
cost, prĕtium, -i, n. ; *expense*, sumptus, -ūs, m.
cost, to, sto, stĕti, stātum, 1, consto, -stĭti, -stātum, 1, (*both g. abl. of definite, gen. of indef. price*) *this cost me more*, hōc mĭhi plūris constĭtit ; *this will cost you much blood*, hōc vōbis multo sanguĭne stābit
costly, sumptuōsus, -a, -um
cottage, căsa, -ae, f.
cover, tĕgo, texi, tectum, 3
covet, cŭpio, -īvi, -ītum, 3
covetous, cŭpĭdus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)
couch, lectus, -i, m., cŭbīle, -is, n.
could (see *able*), *you could have come*, vĕnīre pŏtŭisti
council, concĭlium, -i, n.
counsel, consĭlium, i, n.
count, nŭmĕro, 1
countenance, vultus, -ūs, m.
country, terra, -ae, f. ; *the country* (*as distinct from the city*), rūs, rūris, n. *see Par. 265 and 249* ; *one's own, his, my, your, country*, patria, -ae, f. ; *let us die for our country*, prŏ pătriā mŏriāmur ; *this is for the good of the country*, hōc est ē rē-publĭca ; *a rough country*, i.e. *district*, rĕgio aspĕra
countrymen, cīves, -ium, m. pl.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
course, cursus, -ūs, m.

courtesy, hūmānĭtas, -ātis, f.
cover, tĕgo, -xi, -ctum, 3
coward, cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
crafty, callĭdus, -a, -um
crane, grus, gruis, c. ; *mostly* f.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, m.
create, creo, 1
creature, ănĭmal, -ālis, n.
credible, crēdĭbĭlis, -e.
credit, fĭdēs, -ei, f.
Crete, Crēta, -ae, f.
crime, scĕlus, -ĕris, n.; *monstrous*, c. flāgĭtĭum, -i, n.
crocodile, crŏcŏdīlus, -i, m.
Croesus, Croesus, -i, m.
cross, crux, crūcis, f.
cross, to, trājĭcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3 ; transeo, -īvi *or* -ii, ĭtum, 4
crowd, turba, -ae, f.
crown, cŏrōna, -ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e. ; saevus, -a, -um
cruelty, crūdēlĭtās, -ātis, f. [C
crush, opprĭmo, -pressi, -pressum,
cry, (*shout*) clāmo, 1
cry, a, clāmor, -ōris, m.
cultivate, cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, 3
cunning, callĭdus, -a, -um
cup, călix, -ĭcis, m.
cure, rĕmĕdium, -i, n.
cure, to, sāno, 1 (*acc.*) ; mĕdeor, 2 *v. dep.* (*dat.*)
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut, caedo, cĕcīdi, caesum, 3 ; *cut off, to, the enemy from supplies*, interclūdĕre, (-clūsi, -clūsum, 3) hostes commeātū (*or* -ĭbus)
cut to pieces, concīdo, -di, -sum, 3
Cyclops, the, Cyclōpes, -um, m. pl.
Cyprus, Cyprus, -i, f.
Cyrus, Cȳrus, -i, m.

Dagger, pūgio, -ōnis, m.
daily, adv. quŏtīdĭē (*better spelt* cŏtīdĭē)
dance, salto, 1
danger, pĕrĭcŭlum, -i, n.

dangerous, pĕrīcŭlōsus, -a, -um

Danube, Ister, -tri, m.

Daphne, Daphnē, -ēs, f.

dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2, dep.

Darius, Dārīus, -i, m.

dark, obscūrus, -a, -um ; pullus, -a, -um

darken, obscūro, 1

darkness, cālīgo, -inis, f. ; tĕnĕbrae, -ārum, f.

dart, tēlum, -i, n. ; jăcŭlum, -i, n.

daughter, filia, -ae, f.

dawn, prīma lux ; māne, indecl. ; *before dawn*, antĕ lūcem

dawn, to, illūcesco, illuxi, 3

day, dies, -ēi m. ; *by day*, diē ; *daybreak*, prīma lux ; *the-day-before* (*adv. used as a prep.*) prīdiē Kălendas ; (*used as a conj. with quam*) *the day before I came*, prīdiē quam vēni ; *two days*, bīduum, -i, n. ; *three days*, trīduum, -i, n.

dead, mortuus, -a, -um

dead body, cādāver, -ĕris, n.

deaf, surdus, -a, -um

dear, cārus, -a, -um

death, mors, mortis, f. ; *he was put to death*, morte affectus est ; *he was condemned to death*, căpĭtĭs damnātus est

debt, aes ălĭēnum

deceit, dŏlus, -i, m. ; fallācia, -ae, f.

deceitful, fallāx, -ācis

deceive, dēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 ; fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, 3

decide, to, (*judge*) jūdĭco, 1 ; *they decided to return*, constĭtuērunt rĕdīre

declare, dīco, dixi, dictum, 3 ; *to declare war against*, bellum indīcĕre, g. dat.

decree, to, dēcerno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3

decree, a, dēcrētum, -i, n. ; ēdictum, -i, n.

deed, factum, -i, n. ; făcĭnŭs, ŏris, n.

deem worthy, dignor, 1, dep.

deep, altus, -a, -um

deer, dāma, -ae, f.

defeat, a, clādes, -is, f.

defeat, to, vinco, vīci, victum, 3

defence, praesĭdium, -i, n.

defend, dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3

defendant, reus, -i, m.

defile, polluo, -ui, ūtum, 3

deity, nūmen, -ĭnis, n.

delay, mŏra, -ae, f.

delay, to, mŏror, 1, dep. ; cunctor, 1, dep.

deliberate, dēlībĕro, 1

delight, gaudium, -i, n. ; *to delight*, dēlecto, 1, v. tr. (*g. acc.*)

deliver (*hand over*), trādo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3 ; (*free*) lībĕro, 1 (*g. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing*)

Delos, Dēlos, -i, f.

demand, posco, pŏposci, 3

Demosthenes, Dēmosthĕnēs, -is, m.

denarius, dēnārīus, -ii, m.

deny, nĕgo, 1

depart, discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3

departure, discessus, -ūs, m.

deplore, plōro, 1

depraved, prāvus, -a, um

deprive, spŏlio, 1 ; prīvo, 1 (279)

descend, descendo, -di, -sum, 3 ; *he was descended from kings*, ā rēgibus ortus ĕrat

desert, dēsĕro, -rui, -rtum, 3 ; rĕlinquo, -līqui, -lictum, 3

deserter, transfŭga, -ae, m.

deserve, mĕreor, mĕrĭtus, 2, dep.

design, consilium, -i, n.

desire, cŭpĭdo, -ĭnĭs, f. ; *to desire*, cŭpio, -īvi, -ītum, 3 ; opto, 1 ; vŏlo (*all generally foll. by Infinitive*)

desirous, cŭpĭdus, -a, -um ; stŭdĭōsus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*) *sometimes with gerundive*

desist from, dēsisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3

despair, to, despēro, 1 ; *despair*, despērātio, -ōnis, f.   [tum, 3

despise, contemno, -tempsi, temp-

despoil, spŏlio, 1 ; *I despoil you of liberty*, s. tē lībertāte

destroy, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum ; perdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

destructive, pernĭciōsus, -a, -um

detain, dētĭneo, -ui, -tentum, 2

determine, stătuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

devastate, vasto, 1

devoid of, expers, -rtis, *adj.* (*g. gen.*)

devote, dēvŏveo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2

devour, dēvŏro, 1

Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.

dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.

dictatorship, dictatūra, -ae, f.

die, mŏrior, mortuus, 3, dep. ; *he died*, ŏbiit (mortem)

difference, discrīmen, -ĭnis, n. ; *it makes a great difference*, multum intĕrest ; *how great a difference there is !* quantum intĕrest !

difficult, diffĭcĭlis, -e (60)

difficulty, diffĭcultas, -atis, f. ; *with difficulty*, vix ; *with very great difficulty*, difficillimē

dig, fŏdio, fōdi, fossum, 3 ; *dig up*, effŏdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3

dignity, dignĭtās, -ātis, f.

diligent, strēnuus, -a, -um ; dīlĭgens, -ntis

diminish, mĭnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

dine, cēno, 1, *dep. particip.* cēnatus (*less correctly* coeno)

Dionysius, Diŏnȳsius, -i, m.

direction ; in - the - direction - of the Rhine, Rhēnum versŭs

disagreeable, injūcundus, -a, -um

disappear, ēvānesco, -ui, 3 [-is, f.

disaster, damnum, -i, n. ; clădes,

discern, cerno, 3

discharge (*duty*), fungor, functus, 3 *dep.* (*abl.*) ; (*darts*), conjĭcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3

disciple, discĭpŭlus, -i, m.

discipline, disciplīna, -ae, f.

disclose, dētĕgo, -texi, -tectum, 3

discord, discordia, -ae, f.

discourse, sermo, -ōnis, m.

discover, invĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 ; rĕperio, repperi, repertum, 4

disease, morbus, -i, m.

disembark, (*trans. v.*) expōno, -pōsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3

disgrace, dēdĕcus, -ōris, n. ; *to disgrace*, foedo, 1

disgraceful, turpis, -e

dishevelled, passus, -a, -um

dismiss, dīmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3

displease, displĭceo, -ui, ĭtum, 2 (*q. dat.*)

displeasing, ingrātus, -a, -um

disposition, indŏlēs, -is, f. ; ingĕn-ium, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.

dispute, a, rixa, -ae, f. ; contentio,

dissemble, dissĭmŭlo, 1

dissembler, dissĭmŭlātor, -ōris, m.

dissension, dissensio, -ōnis, f.

distant, to be, absum, āfui, ăbesse

distasteful, to become, displĭceo, 2

distinguished, insignis, -e ; clārus, -a, -um

distribute, distrĭbuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

district, rĕgio, -ōnis, f.

distrust, diffīdo, -fīsus, 3, *or* parum crēdere, confīdere (*dat.*)

disturb, turbo, 1

disturbance, mōtus, -ūs, m.

ditch, fossa, -ae, f.

divide, dīvĭdo, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3

divine, dīvīnus, -a, -um

do, făcio, fēci, factum, 3 ; *I (can) easily do without wine*, vīno făcĭle căreo

dog, cănis, -is, c.

dolphin, delphīn, -īnis, m.

domestic, dŏmestĭcus, -a, -um

door, jānua, ae, f. ; fŏres, -um, f. pl.; *out of doors* (i) (*rest*) fŏris, (*motion towards*) fŏras

doubt, to, dŭbĭto, 1 ; *there is no doubt that*, nōn dŭbĭum est quīn, Par. 145 ; *I have no doubt that*, non dŭbĭto quīn ; *without doubt*, sĭnē dŭbio

doubtful, incertus, -a, -um ; dŭbius, -a, -um.

dove, cŏlumba, -ae, f.

downcast, dēmissus, -a, -um

down from, dē (*g. abl.*)

drachma, drachma, -ae, f.

drag, trăho, traxi, tractum, 3

draw (*a sword*), stringo, -nxi, ictum, 3 ; *draw along*, dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw back*, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw up* (*an army*), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3 ; *draw lots*, sortior, -tītus, 4, dep. ; *draw water*, I, aquam haurio, hausi, haustum, 4 ; *draw together*, contrăho, -traxi, -tractum, 3

dread, to, formīdo, 1

dreadful, dīrus, -a, -um

dream, a, somnium, -i, n. ; *dream, to*, somnio, 1

dress, vestītus, -ūs, m. ; vestis, -is, f.

drink, bibo, bĭbi, bibĭtum, 3 ; pōto, 1

drive, ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3 ; pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 3 ; *to drive into exile*, pellĕre in exĭlium ; *drive back*, rĕpello, reppŭli, rĕpulsum, 3 ; *drive out*, expello, expŭli, expulsum, 3 ; *drive down*, dēpello, dēpŭli, dēpulsum, 3

drop, a, gutta, -ae, f.

drown, mergo, mersi, mersum, 3

Druids, Druīdes, -um, m. pl.

drunk, ēbrius, -a, -um

dry, siccus, -a, -um ; ārĭdus, -a, -um

duck, ănas, -ātis, c.

duly, rītē

dutiful conduct, pĭetās, -ātis, f.

duty, offĭcium, -ii, n.

dwell, to, hăbĭto, 1

dwelling, dŏmus, -ūs, f.

dye, to, tingo, tinxi, tinctum, 3

Each, quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quodquĕ, *or, when used as n.*, quicquĕ, ; *foll. superl.*, suus., &c., (140,

165) ; (*of two*) ŭterquĕ (both are used in sing.)

eager, cŭpĭdus, -a, -um

eagle, ăquĭla, -ae, f.

ear, auris, -is, f.

early, mātūrē

earth, terra, -ae, f. ; tellūs, -ūris, f.

ease, ōtium, -i, n.

easily, făcĭlē ; *more e.*, făcĭlĭūs

east, the, ŏriens, -entis, m.

easy, făcĭlis, -e (60)

eat, vescor, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*) ; ĕdi, ĕdi, ēsum, 3

educate, ēdūco, 1

effect, mŏdus, -i, m ; *he spoke to this effect*, in hunc mŏdum ōrātiōnem hăbuit ; *effect, to*, efficio -fēci, -fectum, 3

egg, ōvum, -i, n.

Egypt, Aegyptus, -i, f.

Egyptian, Aegyptius, -a, -um

eight, octō, indcl.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um

eighty, octogintā, indcl.

either, (*conj.*) aut, vĕl (157a)

elder, sĕnior, -ōris, *adj. used as n.*; *also* mājor nātū (71)

elect, ēlĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3

elephant, ĕlĕphantus, -i, m ; ĕlĕphās, -antis, m.

eloquence, făcundia, -ae, f.

eloquent, făcundus. -a, um

else, (*when adj.*) ălius, -a, ŭd ; *or else* aut ; *elsewhere*, ălĭbī

embrace, to, amplector, -plexus, 3, dep. ; *embrace*, amplexus, -ūs, m.

emperor, princeps, -ĭpis, m.

empire, impĕrium, -i, n.

empty, văcuus, -a, -um

enact, sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4 ; ("*shall and* " *should*," *after this v., must be rend. by pres. and imperf. subj.*) *it has been enacted that no one shall ride in a carriage*, sanctum est nē quĭs currū vĕhātur

encourage, hortor, 1, dep.; stĭmŭlo, 1

end, to, fīnio, 4

end, fīnis, -is, m.

endeavour, cōnor, 1, dep. (foll. by inf.)

endowed with, praedĭtus, -a, -um (g. abl.)

endurance, pătientia, -ae, f.

endure, perfĕro, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre

enemy, hostis, -is, m.; (in war, mostly pl) the enemy's camp, hostium (not hostis) castra; a private enemy, inĭmīcus, -a, -um

energetic, strēnuus, -a, -um

engagement, certāmen, -ĭnis, n.; pugna, -ae, f.

England, Anglia, -ae, f.

enjoy, fruor, fruĭtus, 3, dep. (g. abl.)

enormous, ingens, -ntis

enough, sătis

enraged, īrātus, -a, -um

enter, intro, 1; ineo, -īvi or -ii, ĭtum, 4

enterprise, cōnātus, -ūs, m.

enticements, illĕcĕbrae, -arum, f. pl.

entirely, omnīno

entrails, viscĕra, -um, n.

entreat, ōro, 1 (143)

entrust, crēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

envious, invĭdus, -a, -um

envy, invĭdia, -ae, f.; envy, to, invĭdeo, -vīdi, visum, 3 (g. dat.)

Epaminondas, Epămīnondās, -ae, m.

Ephesus, Ephĕsus, -i, f.

E.icurus, Epicūrus, -i, m.

equal, pār, păris

equally, părĭter

equipped, instructus, -a, -um, part. of instruo

erect (build), exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; erĭgo, -rexi, -rectum, 3

err, erro, 1

error, error, -ōris, m.

escape, fŭga, -ae, f.; escape, to, ēvādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3; effŭgio, -fūgi, 3; escape the notice of, fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, 3 (g. acc.)

escort, dēdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3

especially, maxĭmē; praesertim

estimate, aestĭmo, 1

eternal, aeternus, -a, -um

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.

even, ĕtiam; vĕl (141 a); not even, nĕ—quidem (141); even a boy, vĕl puer; even now, ĕtiam nunc; even if, ĕtiam sī

evening, vesper, -ĕris and -ĕri, m.; in the evening, vespĕrĕ, or adv. vespĕri (not vespĕro)

event, ēventus, -ūs, m.

ever, unquam; (always) semper; if you ever come, sī quando vēneris; did you e. come? num quando (or ecquando) vēnisti?

every, every good man, omnes bŏni, or optĭmus quisquĕ (140); every day, quŏtīdiē (or cōtīdiē)

everywhere, passim [mălum, -i, n.

evil, mălus, -a, -um; an evil, examine, investīgo, 1

example, exemplum, -i, n.

exceedingly, valdē

excellence, virtūs, -ātis, f.

excellent, ēgrĕgius, -a, -um (68b); praestans, -ntis; optĭmus, -a, -um

except, prep. praetĕr (g. acc.); conj. nĭsī; why do you fight except to conquer? cur pugnas nĭsī ŭt vincās?

excessive, nĭmius, -a, -um

exchange, mūto, 1 [-ōnis, f.

excuse, excūso, 1; an e., excūsātio,

exercise, to, exerceo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2

exhort, cōhortor, -ātus, 1, dep.

exile, exĭlium, -i, n.; exile, an, exsul, -ŭlis, m.

expectation, exspectātio, -ōnis, f.; spēs, spei, f.

expediency, ūtĭlĭtas, -ātis, f.

expedient, ūtĭlĭs, -e

expense, sumptus, -ûs, m.

experience, experientia, -ae, f.; ūsus, -ûs, m.; *experience, to,* experĭor, -pertus, 4, dep.

explain, explĭco, 1

explore, explōro, 1

extend, pătĕo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*); pando, pandi, passum, 3 (*trans.*)

extent, spătĭum, -i, n.   [3

extinguish, exstinguo, -nxi, -nctum,

extraordinary, mīrus, -a, -um

extreme, extrēmus, -a, -um

extremely, valdĕ

exult, exulto, 1

eye, ŏcŭlus, -i, m.

Fabius, Făbĭus, -i, m.

fable, făbŭla, -ae, f.

face, făcĭes, -ei, f.; ŏs, ōris, n.; vultus, -ûs, m.

factions, partes, -ium, f.

fact, rēs, rei, f.; *facts must be clearly arranged,* rēs lūcŭlenter sunt dīgĕrendae

fail (fall short), dēsum, -fui, esse, (*g. dat.*); (*forsake*), dēfĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum, 3; *time fails me,* tempus mē dēfĭcit

faith, fĭdēs, -ei, f.   [-um

faithful, fĭdēlis, -e; fīdus, -a,

fall, to, cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3; (*in battle*) occĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum, 3

fall asleep, to, obdormĭo, -ii or -īvi, -ītum, 4

false (things), falsus, -a, -um; (*persons*), mendax, -ācis

falsehood, mendācĭum, -ii, n.

fame, fāma, -ae, f.

family, fămĭlĭa, -ae, f.; dŏmus, -ûs, f.

famine, fămēs, -is, f.

far, prŏcŭl; longĕ; *as far as,* tēnus (*g. abl. or gen.*, 178)

farm, praedĭum, -i, n.

farthing, as, assis, m.; *I do not care a farthing for you,* nōn assis tē făcĭo

"fasces," the, fascēs, -ium, m. pl. *the rods which were the signs of the consul's power*

fat, pinguis, -e

fate, fātum, -i, n.

father, păter, -tris, m.

fault, culpa, -ae, f.

favour, grātĭa, -ae, f.; *favour, to,* făvĕo, fāvi, fautum. 2 (*g. dat.*)

fear, tĭmor, -ōris, m.; mĕtus, -ûs, m.

fearful, păvĭdus, -a, -um

fear, to, tĭmeo, -ui, 2; mĕtuo, -ui, 3; vĕreor, vĕrĭtus, *dep.* 2

fearless, impăvĭdus, -a, -um

feast, ĕpŭlae, -ārum, f.

feather, penna, -ae, f.; plūmă, -ae, f.

features, vultus, -ûs, m.

feeble, infirmus, -a, -um

feed, (trans.) pasco, pāvi, pastum, 3; (*intrans.*) pascor, pastus,

feed on, vescor, 3 dep. (*g. abl.*)

feel, sentĭo, sensi, sensum. 4

feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, 3

fellow, hŏmo, -ĭnis, m.: *that fellow,* istĕ

fertile, fertĭlis, -e

fetch. see bring

fetter, compĕs, -ĕdis, f.   [-ē

fever, febris, -is f. (-im or -em, -i or

few, paucus, -a, -um, (*mostly pl.*); *very few,* perpauci

field, ăger, -gri. m.

fierce, fĕrox, -ōcis

fifth, fifty, see Par. 81

fig, fig-tree, fīcus, -i, and -ûs, f.

fight, pugna, -ae, f.

fight, to, pugno, 1

fill, complĕo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2

finally, dēnĭquĕ (*not to stand first in a clause*)

find, invĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *he was found guilty of,* damnātus est (*g. gen.*)

fine, multa, -ae, f.

fine, to, multo, 1

finger, dĭgĭtus, -i, m.

finish, confĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 ; pĕrăgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3

fire, ignis, -is, -m., *abl.* igni ; *under fire,* sub jactu, or jactum, tēli, (180)

firm, firmus, -a, -um

first, prīmus, -a, -um ; *at f. ;* pīmo (*adv.*) : *T. was the first to come* (or *who came*), Tullius prīmus vēnit

fish, piscis, -is, m.

fisherman, piscātor, -ōris, m.

fit, aptus, -a, -um ; ĭdōneus, -a, -um ; *for running,* aptus ad currendum (186)

five, quīnque, indcl. ; *five hundred,* quīngenti, -ne, -a

fix, fīgo, -xi, -xum, 3

fixed, certus, -a, -um ; *a certain fixed day,* certus quīdam diēs

flame, flamma, -ae, f.

flatter, ădūlor, 1, dep.

flee, fŭgio, fūgi, 3

fleet, classis, -is, f.

flesh, cāro, carnis, f.

flight, fŭga, -ae, f. ; *of a bird,* vŏlātus, -ns, m.

flight, put to, fŭgo, 1

flourish, flōreo, -ui, 2

flow, fluo, -xi, 3, *fut. part.* fluxūrus

flower, flōs, -ōris, m.

fly, a, musca, -ae, f.

fly, to, see flee ; (*of a bird*) vŏlo, 1

foe, hostis, -is, m.

follow, sĕquor, sĕcūtus, 3, dep.

follower, cŏmes, -ĭtis, m.

folly, stultĭtia, -ae, f.

food, cĭbus, -i, m.

fond of, studiōsus, -a, -um, (*g. gen.*)

fool, foolish, stultus, -a, -um

foolishly, stultē

foot, pēs, pĕdis, m.

foot-soldier, pĕdes, -ĭtis, m.

for (*conj.*) nam (*at the beginning of a clause*); ĕnim (*after the first word in a clause*) ; (*prep.*) pro, prae, (*g. abl.*) ; ob, (*g. acc.*) Par. 178 ; (*born, fit, useful, &c.*) *for acting,* ăd ăgendum ; *for a few days,* paucos diēs (262)

forbid, vĕto, -ui, -ĭtum, 1 ; prŏhĭbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2

force, vīs, *acc.* vim, *abl.* vi, f.

forced marches, magna ĭtĭnĕra

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f.

forehead, frons, -ntis, f.

foreign, externus, -a, -um ; pĕregrīnus, -a, -um

foresee, prōvĭdeo, -vīdi, -visum, 2

forest, silva, -ae, f.

forget, oblīviscor, oblītus, 3, dep. (*g. gen.*)

forgetful, immĕmor, -ōris (*g. gen.*)

form, forma, -ae, f.

former, prior, prius : *the former... the latter,* ille...hic

formerly, quondam, ōlim

fort, castrum, -i, -n. ; castellum, -i, n.

fortify, mūnio, -ivi *or* -ii ,-ĭtum 4,

fortitude, fortĭtūdo, -inis, f. ; *with fortitude,* fortĭter

fortunate, fēlix, -īcis

fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.

fortunes, they distrusted their f., rēbus suis diffīsi sunt

forty, quadrāgintā, indcl.

forum, fŏrum, -i, n.

found, condo, -ĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

founder, condĭtor, -ōris, m.

fountain, fons, fontis, m.

four, fourteen, &c. see Par. 81

four times, quăter

fourth, quartus, -a, -um

free, lĭber, -ĕra, -ĕrum : *f. from fault,* culpā văcuus (279)

free, to, lĭbĕro, 1, (*acc. & abl.*) *freed from debt,* aere ălĭēno lĭbĕrātus

freedom, lĭbertās, -ātis, f.

frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum

frequently, saepē

fresh, rĕcens, -ntis ; nŏvus, -a, -um

friend, ămīcus, -i, m.

friendly, ămīcus, -a, -um

friendship, ămīcĭtia, -ae, f.

frighten, terreo, -ui, 2

frog, rāna, -ae, f.

from, ā, ē, *or* ex, dē (*g. abl.*) ; *from boyhood,* indĕ a puĕro

from a distance, ēmĭnŭs

front, in, adversus, -a, -um

frost, gĕlū, *indcl.* n.

frugality, parsĭmōnia, -ae, f.

fruit, fructus, -ūs, m. ; *the fruits (of the earth),* frūgcs, -um, f. pl.

fruitful, fertīlis, -e ; fĕrax, -ācis

fulfil, perfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 ; expleo, -plēvi, -plĕtum, 2

full, plēnus, -a, -um (*g. gen. or abl.*)

funeral, fūnus, -ĕris, n. ; *funeral rites,* infĕriae, -arum, f.

furrow, sulcus, -i, m.

fury, fŭror, -ōris, m.

future, fŭtūrus, -a, -um

Găbii, Găbii, -ōrum, m. pl.

gain, quaestus, -ūs, m. ; lucrum, -i, n.

gain, to, (*a victory*) rĕportāre, 1 ; acquīro, quīsīvi, quīsītum, 3 ; păro, 1

gain possession of, pŏtior, -ītus, 4, dep. (*g. abl.*) *See* Par. 207.

Gallic, Gallĭcus, -a, -um

gallows, crux, crŭcis, f.

game, lūdus, -i, m.

garden, hortus, -i, m.

garland, sertum, -i, n.

garment, vestis, -is, f.

garrison, praesĭdium, -i, n.

gate, porta, -ae, f.

gather, lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3 ; collĭgo, lēgi, lectum, 3

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.

Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m.

gem, gemma, -ae, f.

general, dux, dŭcis, m. ; impĕrātor, -ōris, m.

generally, plērumque

gentleness, cōmĭtas, -ātis, f.

gently, lēnĭter

German, Germānus, -a, -um

Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.

get, păro, 1 ; ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3

giant, gīgās, -antis, m.

gift, dōnum, -i, n.

gird, cingo, -nxi, -nctum, 3

girl, puella, -ae, f.

give, do, dĕdi, dătum, 1

give back, reddo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

give birth to, părio, pepĕri, partum, 3 (*g. acc.*)

give orders to, impĕro, 1 (*g. dat.*)

give up, trādo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

glad, laetus, -a, -um

Glaucus, Glaucus, -i, m.

glitter, mīco, -ui, 1

gloomy, tristis, e

glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um

glory, glōria, -ae, f.

go, eo, -īvi *or* -ii, -ĭtum, 4 ; *I am going-to-die,* mŏrĭtūrus sum

go away, ăbeo, -ii, -ĭtum, 4

go by, praetĕreo, īvi *or* -ii,-ĭtum, 4

go forth, or out, exeo, -ii, -ĭtum, 4

go on, prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3

go under, sŭbeo, -ii, -ĭtum, 4

goat, căper, -pri, m.

god, deus, dei, m. ; nom. pl. *often* dii, *or* di

goddess, dea, -ae, f. Par. 311

gold, aurum, -i, n.

golden, aureus, -a, -um

good, bŏnus, -a, -um

goodwill, bĕnĕvŏlentia, -ae, f.

goose, anser, -ĕris, m.

govern, rĕgo, rexi, rectum, 3

government, impĕrium, -i, n.

grace, grātia, -ae, f.

grandfather, ăvus, -i, m.

grandson, nĕpōs, -ōtis, m.

grant (see *give*); *I grant him pardon,* do ei vĕniam

grape, ūva, -ae, f.

grass, herba, -ae, f.

grateful, grātus, -a, -um

gray, cānus, -a, -um

great, magnus, -a, -um ; *very great,* permagnus ; *with "this,"* tantus ; *this great slaughter,* haec tanta caedes

greatly, magnŏpĕre, valdē

greatness, magnĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.

Grecian, Greek. Graecus, -a, -um

Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.

greedy, ăvĭdus, -a, -um, ăvārus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*)

green, vĭrĭdis, -e

green, to grow, vĭresco, 3   [m.

grief, dŏlor, -ōris, m. : luctus, -ūs,

grieve, dŏleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*); ango, 3 (*trans.*)

groan, gĕmĭtus, -ūs, m.

groan, to, gĕmo, -ui, 3

ground, hŭmus, -i, f. ; *on the ground,* hŭmi

grove, lūcus, -i, m.

grow, cresco, crēvi, cretum, 3

guard, (*a single person*) custōs, -ōdis, m. ; (*a garrison*) praesĭdĭum, -i, n.

guard, to, custōdio, -īvi or -ii. -ītum, 4 : *guard strongly,* fir-māre praesĭdĭō

guest, hospĕs, -ĭtis, m.

guide, dux, dŭcis, m.

guide, to, dūco, duxi, ductum, 3

guile. dŏlus, -i, m.

guilt, culpa, -ae, f. ; scĕlus, -ĕris, n.

guilty, sons, sontis ; *to be found guilty of,* damnāri (*g. gen.*)

Habit, mōs, mōris, m.

hail, grando, -ĭnis, f.

hair, crīnis, -is, m. ; *not even a hair's breadth,* no transvorsum quidem unguem, lit. *a nail's breadth*

half, dīmĭdium, -i, n.

halt, consisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3

hand, mănus, -ūs, f. ; *right hand,* dextra; *left hand,* sĭnistra ; *I*

am at hand, adsum, -fui, -esse ; *it is in your hands,* pĕnes tē est (183)

hand down, trādo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum

hang, pendeo, pĕpendi, 2 (*intrans.*); pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, 3 (*trans.*)

Hannibal, Hannĭbal, -ălis, m.

happen, (of ill fortune) accĭdo, -cĭdi, 3 (*mostly foll. by* ŭt ; (*of good*) contingo, -tĭgi, 3

happy, (fortunate) fēlix, -īcis ; (*joyful*) laetus, -a, -um ; (*blessed*) bĕātus, -a, -um

harbour, portus, -ūs, m.

hard, dūrus, -a, -um

hare, lĕpus, -ōris, m.

harm, detrīmentum, -i, n.

harmful, noxius, -a, -um

harp, cĭthăra, -ae, f.

harvest, messis, -is, f.

Hasdrubal, Hasdrŭbal, -ălis, m.

haste, cĕlĕrĭtās, -ātis, f. ; *in haste,* cum cĕlĕrĭtāte, or cĕlĕrĭter, or summā cĕlĕrĭtāte (181) ; *make haste,* see *hasten*

hasten, festīno, 1 ; prŏpĕro, 1

hastily, i.e. *rashly,* tĕmĕrē

hate, ŏdium, -i, n.

hate, to, ōdi, def. 3 ; *see* App. II., page 215

hatred, see *hate*

have, hăbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2

hawk, accĭpĭter, -tris, m.

he, ille, -a, -ŭd ; is, ea, ĭd ; *he who,* qui (*is being often omitted, or placed after* qui, Par. 107)

head, căput, -ĭtis, n.

headlong, praeceps, -cĭpĭtis

health, sălūs, -ūtis, f.

healthy, sānus, -a, -um ; *healthful,* sălūber, -bris, -bre

heap, ăcervus, -i, m.

hear, audio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4

hearer, audĭtor, -ōris, m.

heart, cŏr, -dis, n.

hearth, fŏcus, -i, m.

heat, călor, -ōris, m.

heaven, cœlum, -i, m.

heavy, grăvis, -e

Hector, Hectŏr, Hectōris, m.

hedge round, to, saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4

heir, hērēs, -ēdis, m.

Helena, Hĕlĕna, -ae, f.

helmet, gălea, -ae, f.

help, auxilium, -i, n.

help, to, subvĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*g. dat.*)

Helvetii, the, Helvētii,-ōrum, -i, m.

hemlock, cĭcūta, -ae, f.

hence, hinc

herb, herba, -ae, f.

Hercules, Hercŭlēs, -is, m.

herd, pĕcŭs, -ōris, n.

here, hic : *often used for "hither" and then to be trans. by* hūc

hero, hērōs, -ōis, m. (*acc. pl.* -ōas)

hesitate, dŭbĭto, 1

hide, to, condo, -dĭdi, dĭtum, 3 ; abdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

hiding place, lătĕbra, -ae, f.

high, altus, -a, -um ; *to buy at a very high price*, permagnō ĕmĕre

highest, summus, -a, -um

hill, collis, -is, m.

himself, sē, sui, &c. *See Par.* 94

hinder, prŏhĭbeo, 2, *I hindered you from coming*, prŏhĭbui quomĭnūs vĕnīrēs

hinge, cardo, -dĭnis, m.

hire, condūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3

his, Par. 98, 218, 306, and p. 328

historian, auctor, -ōris, m.

hither, hūc ; *hitherto*, adhūc

hold, tĕneo, -ui, 2 ; hăbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2

holiday, fērĭae, -ārum, f.

hollow, căvus, -a, -um ; *to hollow*, căvāre

holy, săcer, -cra, -crum

home, dŏmus, -ūs, f. (Ex. LXXXIV.) ; *at home*, dŏmi (265)

Homer, Hŏmērus, -i, m.

honest, prŏbus, -a, -um

honesty, prŏbĭtas, -ātis, f.

honey, mĕl, mellis, n.

honour, hŏnor, -ōris, m.; *to be in great honour with the Romans*, in magno hŏnōre esse ăpŭd Rōmānos

honourable, hŏnestus, -a, -um

hoof, ungŭla, -ae, f.

hook, hāmus, -i, m.

hope, spēs, spei, f.

hope, to, spēro, 1 ; *do you hope to take the city ?* spērasne tē urbem captūrum esse ?

Horace, Hŏrātius, -ii, m.

Horatii, the, Hŏrātii, -ōrum, m.

horn, cornū, -ūs, n.

horrible, dīrus, -a, -um ; nĕfandus, -a, -um ; *h. to relate !* nĕfās dictū ! (246)

horse, ĕquus, -i, m.

horseman, ĕquĕs, -ĭtis, m.

hospitality, hospĭtium, -i, n.

host, hospes, -ĭtis, m.

hostage, obses, -ĭdis, m.

hostile, infestus, -a, -um

Hostilius, Hostĭlĭus, -i, m.

hound, cănis, -is, c.

hour, hōra, -ae, f.

house, dŏmus, -ūs, f. (311) : aedes, -ium, f. pl. ; *household*, fămĭlia, -ae, f.

how ? in what way ? quōmŏdo ? *to how great an extent*, quam, quantum ; *how great or much*, quantus, -a, -um ; *how many ?* quot ? *how often ?* quŏtiens ? *how long ?* quamdiu ? *how good, bad, &c.*, quam bŏnus, mălus, &c. ; *how few there are who use riches well !* quŏtus quisque est qui dīvĭtiis bĕnĕ ūtātur ! *for how much did you buy it ?* quanti ĭd ēmisti ? *how important it is !* quantum intĕrest *or* rĕfert (329)

however, tămen

huge, ingens, -tis
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
hundred, centum, *indecl.* (81)
hunger, fămes, -is, f.
hungry, to be, ēsŭrio, 4
hunt, vēnor, -atus, 1, dep.
hunter, huntsman, vēnātor, -ōris, m.
hunting, vēnātio, -ōnis, f.
hurl, conjĭcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3
hurt, to, nŏceo, 2 (*g. dat.*); laedo, -si, -sum, (*g. acc.*)
hurtful, noxius, -a, um
husband, mărītus, -i, m.
husbandman, agrĭcŏla, -ae, m.

I, ĕgo ; *see* page 45
Ida, Ĭda, -ae, f.
idle, ignāvus, -a, -um
idleness, ignāvia, -ae, f.
if, sī ; *if...not,* nĭsĭ (125, 295)
ignorant, ignārus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*); *ignorant of, to be,* ignōro, 1; nescio, -ii, 4 (*both g. acc.*); *are you ignorant that the man is here?* nescīsnĕ hŏmĭnem ădesse? *are you ignorant how,* &c., nescīsnĕ quōmŏdo, *foll. by subjunct.*
ill (*sick*), aeger, -gra, -grum ; (*subst.*) mălum, -i, n. ; *ill* (*adv.*), i.e. *badly,* mălē
illness, morbus, -i, m.   [nis, -e
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um ; insig-
image, ĭmāgo, -ĭnis, f.
imagine, pŭto, 1
imitate, ĭmĭtor, 1, dep.
immediately, stătim
immense, ingens, -ntis
immortal, -immortālis, e
immortality, immortālitas, -ātis, f.
impatient, ĭmpătiens, -tis
impede, ĭmpĕdio, -īvi or ii, ītum, 4
impel, impello, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3
impious, impĭus, -a, -um
implore, ōro, 1
important. It is important for Balbus, Balbi intĕrest; ("*should*," *after this v., is often rendered by*

pres. inf.) *it is imp. that Catiline should perish,* intĕrest Cătĭlīnam pĕrīre ; *it is i. for me,* meā intĕrest ; *see* Par. 329
importune, fătīgo, 1
impose, impōno, -pŏsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3 ; *I impose tribute on a nation,* trĭbūtum genti impōno
improve, to, ēmendo, 1   [er
impudent, ĭmpŭdens, -tis ; *-ly,* -ent-
impunity, with, impūnē
impute, he i. this to me as a fault, hōc mĭhi vĭtĭo dat, *or* vertit
in, in (*g. abl.*) ; *in the direction of,* versŭs (*foll. acc.*); *in the pages of,* ăpŭd (*g. acc.*); *in the power of,* pĕnes (*g. acc.*); *in the presence of,* cōram (*g. abl.*), *see* Par. 178–180 ; *in order to,* ŭt ; *in three days,* Par. 263 ; *in Gabii,* Par. 265 ; *in haste,* Par. 181.
increase, augeo, auxi, auctum, 2 (*trăns.*) ; cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3 (*intrans.*)
incredible, incrēdĭbĭlis, -e
incursion, incursĭo, -ōnis, f.
indeed, quĭdem ; *you i....but I,* tū quĭdem...ĕgo autem, (*or* vērō)
India, India, -ae, f.
indignation, see anger
indolence, ignāvia, -ae, f. [(*dat*)
indulge, indulgeo, -lsi, -ltum, 2
industrious, dīlĭgens, -ntis
infantry, pĕdĭtes, m. pl.; pĕdĭtātus, -ūs, m.
infirm, infirmus, -a, -um, -um
influence, mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2
inform, I informed him, certiorem eum fēci (*gen. or* dē.)
in front, adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*
inglorious, ĭnhŏnestus, -a, -um
inhabit, incŏlo, -colui, -cultum, 3 ; hăbĭto, 1
inhabitant, incŏla, -ae, m.
injure, nŏceo, -ui, 2 (*g. dat.*)
injury, injūria, -ae, f.
injustice, see (34) *unjust* (*things.*)

nocence, innŏcentia, -ae, f.
nocent, innŏcens, -tis ; insons,
-ntis ; *innocent of all fault*, omni
culpâ văcuus (279)
innumerable, innŭmĕrābĭlis, -e
inquire, quaero, quaesīvi, quae-
sītum, 3 ; rŏgo, 1
inquiry, quaestio, ōnis, f.
insolence, insŏlentia, -ae, f.   [3
inspect, inspĭcio, -spexi, -spectum,
insolent, insŏlens, -tis
instance, exemplum, -i, n.
instead of, prō (g. abl.)
instruct, ērŭdio, 4
instrument, instrūmentum, -i, n.
insufficient, impar, *gen.* impăris
insult, contŭmēlia, -ae, f.
insurrection, sēdĭtio, -iōnis, f.
integrity, prŏbĭtas, ātis, f.
intellect, ingĕnium, -i, n.
intention, consĭlium, -i, n.
inter, sĕpĕlio, -īvi *or* -ii, -pultum, 4
intercept, interclūdo, -si, -sum, 3
intercourse, consuētūdo, -ĭnis, f.
interest, *it is my i.*, meā intĕrest ; *it
is the i. of Tullius*, Tullii intĕrest
(*see Ex.* XCII.) ; (*interests*) *to
consult my*, Tullius's, *i.*, mihi,
Tullio, consŭlere
into, in (g. acc.) Par. 55.   [3
introduce, indūco, -duxi, -ductum,
invade, invādo, -si, -sum, 3
in turn, invĭcem
in vain, frustrā
inventor, inventor, -ōris, m.
investigate, explōro, 1
invite, invīto, 1
invoke, invŏco, 1
Ireland, Hībernia, -ae, f.
iron, (*subst.*) ferrum, -i, n. ; (*adj.*)
ferreus, -a, -um
island, insŭla, -ae, f.
it, *see page* 46, Par. 219–226
Italy, Itălia, -ae, f.
ivory (*subst.*) ĕbur, -ŏris, n.; (*adj.*)
ĕburnus, -a, -um
ivy, hĕdĕra, -ae, f.

Javelin, jăcŭlum, -i, n.
jaw, măla, -ae, f.
jest, jŏcus, -i, m. ; pl. -i *and* -a
join, jungo, -nxi, -nctum, 3
journey, ĭtĕr, itĭnĕris, n.; *to jour-
ney*, ĭter făcĕre ; *we shall have to
journey*, ĭter nōbĭs făciendum
ĕrit
joy, gaudium, -i, n.
joyful, laetus, -a, -um
joyfully, laetē
judge, jūdex, -ĭcis, m. ; *judge, to*,
jūdĭco, 1
judgment, jūdĭcium, -i, n.; *in my
judgment*, mē jūdĭcĕ
juice, jūs, jūris, n.
jump, to, salto, 1
jumper, saltātor, -ōris, m.
Juno, Jūno, -ōnis, f.
Jupiter, Juppĭter, Jŏvis, m.; *dat.,
acc., abl.*, Jŏvi, -em, -ĕ
just, justus, -a, -um
justice, justĭtia, -ae, f. ; jūs, jūris,
n.

Keen, ācer, -cris, -crĕ (44, 61)
keep, tĕneo, -ui, 2 ; servo, 1 ; *I keep
my word*, fĭdem praesto, -stĭti,
-stātum & -stĭtum, 1 ; *keep off*,
arceo, -ui, 2
keeper, custōs, -ōdis, m.
key, clāvis, -is, f.
kill, interfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
kind, bĕnignus, -a, -um
kind, gĕnus, -ĕris, n.; *a barren
kind of style*, jējūnı quaedam
ōrātio ; *see Ex.* LXXXIII. note
310a
kindness, bĕnignĭtas, -ātis, f.
kindle, incendo, -di, -sum, 3
kindly, bŭnignē
kindness, a, bĕnĕfĭcium, -i, n.
king, rex, rēgis, m.
kingdom, regnum, -i, n.
kiss, oscŭlor, 1, dep.
knee, gĕnū, -ūs, n.
knife, culter, -tri, m.

knight, ĕquĕs, -ītis, m.

know, scio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4 ; nŏvi, see nosco ; *I do-not-know*, nescio, -scīvi -scītum, 4

knowledge, scientia, -ae, f. ; *without his knowledge*, clam eo

known, nōtus, -a, -um ; *it is well known*, constat

Labienus. Lăbiēnus, -i. m.

labour, lăbor, -ōris, m.

lady, mūlier, -ēris, f.

lake, lăcus, -ūs, m.

lamb, agnus, -i, m.

lame, claudus, -a, -um

lament, lūgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2 (trans.) ; dŏleo, -ui, 2 (intrans.) [grief

lamentation, maeror, -ōris, m., see

lance, hasta, -ae, f.

land, terra, -ae, f. ; *lands (as possessions)*, ăger, -gri, m. ; fines, -ium, m. pl.; *land (adj.)* terrestris, -e

large, magnus, -a, -um (*for comp. and superl. see* Par. 68), *a l. sum of money*, grandis pĕcūnia

lashes, verbĕra, -um, n. pl.

last (*as opp. to first in a race*), extrēmus, *see* Par. 69; *at last*, tandem

lasting, pĕrennis, -e

late, sērus, -a, -um ; *late*, adv. sērō; *rather late, too late*, sērius

lately, nūper

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um

latter, hic ; *the former...the latter*, ille...hic

Latona, Lātōna, -ae, f.

laugh, rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2 ; *laugh at, mock (a person)*, irrīdeo, -si, -sum, 2 (*g. dat.*) ; (*a thing*) rīdeo (*g. acc.*), *gentler than* irrīdeo

laughing-stock, lŭdibrium, -i, n.

laurel, laurus, -i, f.

law, (*a statute*), lex, lēgis, f.; (*the laws*) jūs, jūris, n.; *the laws of men and God*, jūs et fās; *agai[nst] the laws*, contrā jūs   [n[...]]

lawful, *it is*, licet, -uit, 2, im[...]

lay aside, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3 ; *lay down*, dēpōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3 ; *lay waste*, vasto, 1

laziness, inertia, -ae, f.

lazy, segnis, -e; iners, -tis

lead, dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *lead out*, ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3

leader, dux, dŭcis, m.

leaf, frons, -dis, f.

lean, adj., măcer, -cra, -crum

leap, to, sălio, -ii or -ŭi, -saltum. 4 ; *leap across*, transīlio, -ui, -sultum, 4 ; *leap down*, dēsīlio, -sīlui, -sultum, 4 ; *leap out*, exsīlio, -sīlui, -sultum, 4, foll. ¹y dē or ē

learn, disco, dĭdĭci, 3.

learned, doctus, -a, -um; *learned in the law*, jūris perītus (287)

learning, doctrīna, -ae, f.   ["at"

least, mĭnĭmus, -at, -um ; *at l.*, see

leave, to, linquo, līqui, lictum, 3 ; rĕlinquo, -līqui, -lictum,- 3 ; *I leave (by will)*, lēgo, 1; *leave*, pŏtestās, -ātis, f.

left, rĕlīquus, -a, -um ; *left (hand)*, sĭnister, -tra, -trum

leg, crūs, crūris, n.

legion, lĕgio, -ōnis, f.

leisure, ŏtium, -i, n.; *leisure, to, have*, văco, 1

Lemnos, Lemnos, -i, f.

lend, crēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

length, longĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.; *length*, tandem

Lentulus, Lentŭlus, -i, m.

Leonidas, Leōnĭdas, -ae, m.

less, mĭnor, -is ; *it was sold for less* (Ex. LXX.), mĭnōris venditum est ; *it is less honourable*, mĭnus hŏnestum est

lest, nē

let; (*oft. rend. by subjunct.*) *let them love, hate, &c.*, ăment,

x

ŏdĕrint ; *let this be an example to you*, sīt tĭbĭ hōc exemplo ; . (*or by* făc ut, cūrā ut) *let your conduct be improved*, făc ut mōres tui ēmendentur ; *let them murmur*, lĭcet frĕmant (227)

letter, littĕrae, -arum, f. pl. ; *letter of the alphabet*, littĕra, -ae, f. ; ĕpistŏla (*or* ĕpistŭla) -ae, f.

level, aequus, -a, -um ; *level, to*, aequo, 1

levy, a, dēlectus, -ūs, m. ; *levy, to*, conscrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3

liar, mendāx, -ācis

liberate, lībĕro, 1 (*g. abl. of thing*)

liberty, lībertās, -ātis, f.

lictor, lictor, -ōris, m.

lie (*to tell lies*), mentior, -ītus, 4, dep.; *lie down*, jăceo, -ni, 2 ; *lie hid*, lăteo, -ni, 2 ; *lie in ambush, in wait for*, insĭdior, 1, (*g. dat.*)

life, vīta, -ae, f.

light, lux, lūcis, f.; lūmen, -ĭnis, n.; *light*, lĕvis, -e   [-ĭnis, n.

lightning, fulgŭr, -ŭris, n.; fulmen,

like, sĭmĭlis, -e ; *I like to walk*, me jŭvat, *or* mĭhĭ plăcet, ambŭlāre

likeness, sĭmĭlĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.

limb, membrum, -i, n.

limit, fīnis, -is, m.; līmĕs, -ĭtis, m.

line (*of battle*), ăcies, -ēi, f.

lion, leo, -ōnis, m.

lip, labrum, -i, n.

listen to, audio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4

little. parvus, -a, -um ; *I have too l. strength*, părum vīrium hăbeo ; *it matters l.* paulum rēfert

live, to, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3 ; (*dwell*) habĭtāre *or* vītam ăgĕre ; *I live on bread*, vescoor, (3, dep.) pāne (207)

load, ŏnus, -ĕris, n.

lofty, altus, -a, -um

log, lignum, -i, n.

long, longus, -a, -um ; *long, adv.* diu ; *longer, adv.* diūtius ; *how*

long ? quamdiu ? *I have long been desiring*, jamprīdem (*or* jamdūdum) cūpio ; *no longer*, non jam

look, look at, aspĭcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 ; *look for*, quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3 ; *look, a* (*of the human countenance*), vultus, -ūs, m.; *look round*, circumspĭcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3

lord, dŏmĭnus, -i, m.

lose, āmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 ; perdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

loss, damnum, -i, n.

lot, sors, -tis, f. ; *to draw lots about*, sortīri dē

lovable, ămābĭlis, -e

love, ămor, -ōris, m.; *love, to*, ămo, 1 ; dĭlĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3

loving, ămans, -tis

low, lowly, hŭmĭlis, -e

lower, infĕrior, -us ; *the lowest of the citizens*, cīvium infimi

luck, fortūna, -ae, f.

lucky, fēlix, -īcis ; faustus, -a, -um

luxury, luxūria, -ae, f.

Lydia, Lȳdia, -ae, f.

lying, mendāx, -ācis

lyre, lȳra, -ae, f.

Macedonians, the, Măcĕdŏnes, -ŏnum, m.

machine, māchĭna, -ae, f.

mad, insānus, -a, -um ; āmens, -tis ; *mad, to be*, fūro, 3 ; insānio, -īvi *or* -ii, 4   [-ae, f.

madness, insānia, -ae, f.; āmentia,

magic, măgĭcus, -a, -um :

magistrate, măgistrātus, -ūs, m.

maiden, virgo, -ĭnis, f.

make, făcio, fēci, factum, 3 ; *make peace*, păcem ferīre ; *make haste*, see *hasten*

man, (*hero, &c.*), vir, -i, m. ; (*human being*) hōmo, -ĭnis, m. ; *all to a man*, omnes ăd ūnum

manage, admĭnistro, 3

manifest, mănĭfestus, -a, -um

manner, mōs, mōris, m. ; mŏdus, -i, m.

many, multus, -a, -um, *very m.* permulti, or plūrimi ; *so m.* tot

marble, marmor, -ŏris, n. ; *(adj.)* marmŏreus, -a, -um

march, to, (set out) prŏficiscor, -fectus, 3, dep. ; contendo, -di, -tum, 3 ; *march, a,* iter, ĭtĭnĕris, n.

Marcius, Marcius, -i, m.

Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.

mark, signum, -i, n. ; nŏta, -ae, f. ; *it is the m. of,* est *(foll. by gen.);* *see Par.* 289.

Maro, Māro, -ōnis, m., Publius Vergĭlius Māro, *commonly called Virgil*

marriage, mātrĭmōnium, -ii, n.

marry (of men), dūco, duxi, ductum, 3 ; *(of women),* nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3 *(g. dat.)* ; *he married Tullia,* Tulliam duxit ; *she married Tullius,* Tullio nupsit

Mars, Mars, Martis, m.

marsh, pălūs, -ūdis, f.

master, dŏmĭnus, -i, m. ; *of a school,* măgister, -tri, m.

matter, rēs, rei, f.

matters, it, rĕfert, impers. (Ex. XCII.) ; *what does it matter?* quid rĕfert? *it matters little what you think,* paulum rĕfert quid (240a) sentĭas

may, he may come, to be rendered by licet, possum, fĭeri potest ut, *&c., according to the sense ; some-one may (be inclined to) say,* dixĕrit ăliquis

meadow, prātum, -i, n.

means, ōpes, -um, f. pl. ; cōpia, -ae, f.

meanwhile, intŏreā, ĭntĕrim

measure, mŏdus, -i, m. ; *beyond measure,* praeter mŏdum ; *to measure,* mētior, mensus, 4, dep.

meat, căro, carnis, f.

medicine, mĕdĭcĭna, -ae, f.

meditate, mĕdĭtor, -ātus, v. dep.

meet, to, occurro, -curri, -cursum, 3 *(dat.); to meet death,* ŏbīro mortem ; *(adv.)* obviam *(dat.); he met me,* obviam mihĭ factus est

memorable, insignis, -e

memory, mĕmōria, -ae, f.

Menenius, Mĕnēnius, -i, m.

mention, mentio, -ōnis, f.

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m

mercy, clēmentia, -ae, f.

merited, mĕrĭtus, -a, -um

message, nuntius, -i, m.

messenger, nuntius, -i, m.

metal, mĕtallum, -i, n.

Metellus, Mĕtellus, -i, m.

middle, midst, mĕdius, -a, -um ; *the middle of the night,* mĕdia nox ; *he rushed into the midst of the foe,* in mĕdios hostes ruit

might (i.e. had the right to) lĭcuit ; *you m. have come,* l. tibi vēnīre ; *(had the ability to)* pŏtuisti vēnīre

mighty, pŏtens, -tis ; ingens, -tis

migrate, mĭgro, 1

mildness, lēnĭtas, -ātis, f.

mile, a, mille păssus ; *three miles,* tria mīlia passuum

Miletus, Mīlētus, -i, f.

military, mīlĭtāris, -e

milk, lāc, -tis, n.

Milo, Mīlo, -ōnis, m.

mind, mens, -tis, f., ănĭmus, -i, m.

mindful, mĕmor, -ŏris *(g. gen.)*

mine, meus, -a, -um

mine, a, mĕtallum, -i, n. ; *he was condemned to the mines,* in mĕtalla damnātus est

mingle, misceo, -ui, -xtum, 2

mirth, laetĭtia, -ae, f.

misbecome, it misbecomes, dēdĕcet, -uit, 2, impers. (220)

miserable, mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum

misfortune, mălum, -i, n. ; călămĭ-
tās, -ātis, f.
mistake, error, -ōris, m.
mix, see *mingle*
mob, turba, -ae, f.
mock, lūdo, -si, -sum, 3
mockery, lūdibrium, -i, n.
modest, mŏdestus, -a, -um
modesty, mŏdestia, -ae, f.
moist, hūmĭdus, -a, -um
moisture, hūmor, -ōris, m.
money, sum of money,pĕcūnia,-ae,f.
monster, monstrum, -i, n.
monstrous, nĕfās (*indecl.*) ; (*used in
apposition to statements*) *the
woman (monstrous to relate!)
slew her son*, mŭlier (nefās dictu)
fīlium suum interfēcit
month, mensis, -is, m.
monument, mŏnŭmentum, -i, n.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
morals, mōres, -um, m. pl.
more,(*adj.*)plūs, plūris(72) ; *he said
no more*, nec plūra dixit ; (*adv.*)
măgis *with adj.* (*to a greater
degree*), plūs *with verbs* (*to a
greater extent*) ; *more than*, plūs-
quam (*adv.*) ; *it was not divided
into more than three parts*, non
plusquam in tres partes dīvīsum
est ; *let no ship have more than
thirty oars*, nulla nāvis plusquam
trīginta rēmis ăgātur ;   suprā
(*prep.*) ; *more than twenty thou-
sand fell that day*, caesa eo die
suprā mīlia vīginti
moreover, praetĕrĕā
morning, in the, mănĕ, (*adv. indecl.*)
mortal, mortālis, -e.
most, most men, plērique ; *most of
the sheep*, plēraeque ŏvium
mother, māter, -tris, f.
motion, mōtus, -ūs, m.
mound, agger, -ĕris, m.
mount, ascendo, -di, -sum, 3 ; con
scendo, -di, -sum, 3
mountain, mons, -tis, m.

mourn, lūgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2
mournful, maestus, -a, -m.
mourning, luctus, -ūs, m.
mouse, mus, mūris, c.
mouth, ōs, ōris, n.
more, mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2
much, multus, -a, -um ; (*adv.*)
multum, *sometimes used as a
noun*, Par. 71 ; *much, very much,
as* (*or so*) *much, money*, multum,
plūrĭmum, tantum, pĕcūniae ;
for how much did you buy it?
quanti id ēmisti? *with comp.*
e.g. (*by*) *much better*, multo
mēlior (274)
Mucius, Mūcius, -i, m.
multitude, multĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.
Mummius, Mummius, -i, m.
munificence, mūnĭficentia, -ae, f.
murder, caedēs, -is, f. ; *to murder*,
interfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 ;
trucīdo, 1
murmur, murmur, -ŭris, n. ; *to
murmur*, frĕmo, -ui, -ĭtum, 3 ;
let them murmur, lĭcet frĕmant
music, mūsĭca, -ae, f.
must (163), *and see* nĕcessĕ, ōportet
my, meus, -a, -um ; *voc.* mi
myrrh, myrrha, -ae, f.
myrtle, myrtus, -i, f.

Naked, nūdus, -a, -um
name, nōmen, -ĭnis, n. ; *to name*,
nōmĭno, 1 ; vŏco, 1
narrate, narro, 1
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nation, gens, -tis, f. ; pŏpŭlus, -i, m.
native, a, incŏla, -ae, m. ; *native-
land*, patria, -ae, f.
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
naval, nāvālis, -e
near, prŏpinquus, -a, -um ; (*prep.*)
prŏpē (*g. acc.*) ; ăd (*g. acc.*) ;
nearer, nearest, see Par. 69
nearly, fĕrē, paenĕ
necessary, nĕcessārius, -a, -um ; *it
is n. see* nĕcesse *and* ŏpus

necessity, nĕcessĭtas, -ātis, f.
neck, collum, -i, n.
need, to, ĕgeo, -ui, 2 (*abl.*) ; *there is no need of words*, non ŏpus est verbis
needle, ăcus, -ūs, f.
neglect, neglĕgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
negligence, incūria, -ae, f.
neighbour, neighbouring, vīcīnus, -a, -um ; fīnītĭmus, -a, -um
neither, (*pron.*) neuter, -tra, -trum, Par. 85 ; (*conj.*) nĕc, nĕque
nephew, nĕpōs, -ōtis, m.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
Nero, Nĕro, -ōnis, m.
nest, nīdus, -i, m.
net, rēte, -is, n.
never, nunquam ; *nevertheless*, tămen (*at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word*).
new, nŏvus, -a, -um ; *news*, nuntius, -i, m.
next, proxĭmus, -a, -um ; *on the next day*, postĕro (*more rarely* proxĭmo) dīe ; *we shall know all within the next five hours*, his quinquĕ hōris omnia comperta hăbēbimus
night, nox, nŏctis, f. ; *by n.* noctu
nightingale, phĭlŏmēla, -ae, f.
Nile, Nīlus, -i, m.
nine, nŏvem, indcl.
no (*adj.*), (*with things*) nullus, -a, -um ; (*with persons*) nēmo ; *no poet*, nēmo pŏēta ; *no one*, nēmo (Par. 92) ; *and no... nēque ullus ; and no one*, nĕc quisquam ; *there is no need of words*, nōn ŏpus est verbis ; *by no means all came*, nēquāquam omnes vēnērunt
no (*adv.*), *no longer*, nōn jam ; *no better i.e. better by nothing*, nĭhilo, *or* nēquāquam melior ; *he said no more*, nĕc plūra dixit
nobility, nōbĭlĭtas, -ātis, f.

noble, nōbĭlis, -e
noise, sŏnus, -i, m. ; clāmor, -ōris, m.
nor, nĕquĕ, nĕc
nose, nāsus, -i, m.
not, nōn ; *not even*, (141) ; *see also* 129, 143 ; *if . . . not*, nĭsī ; *not yet*, nōndum
nothing, nĭhil *or* nīl, n. indcl.
notice, ănĭmadverto, -ti, -sum, 3
notwithstanding, tămen
nourish, nūtrio, -ivi *and* -ii, -ītum, 4
novelty, nŏvĭtas, -ātis, f.
now, nunc ; *meaning* already *or* by this time, jam.
nowhere, nusquam
Numa, Nūma, -ae, m.
number, nŭmĕrus, -i, m.
nurse, nūtrix, -īcis, f.
nut, nux, nūcis, f.
nymph, nympha, -ae, f.

O! O! (*foll. by Acc.*, 205) ; *O that!* ūtĭnam (330)
oak, quercus, -ūs, f.
oar, rēmus, -i, m.
oath, jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, n.; (*military*) sacrāmentum, -i, n.
obedient, ŏbēdiens, -tis (*g. dat.*)
obey, pāreo, -ui, 2, (*g. dat.*)
obtain, păro, 1 ; compăro. 1 ; ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3, (*by entreaty*), impetro, 1 ; (*by lot*), sortior, -ītus, 4.
occasion, tempus, -ŏris, n.
ocean, ōcĕănus, -i, m.
odour, ŏdor, ōris, m.
of (282–90) ; *the town (of) Corioli*, Cŏrĭŏli oppĭdum ; *both of us wept*, ambo flēvĭmus ; *the top of the mountain*, summus mons
offer, offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offerre (238) ; *offering*, dōnum, -i, n.
office, mūnus, -ĕris, n.
offspring, prōles, -is, f.
often, saepĕ ; *how often*, qŭŏtĭēns
old, antīquus, -a, -um ; vĕtus, -ĕris ; *an old soldier*, vĕtus mīlĕs (61) ;

old age, sĕnectūs, -ūtis, f. ; *old man*, sĕnex, sĕnis, m.; *old woman*, ănus, -ūs, f. ; *older men*, sĕniōres, or mājōres nātu ; *older, oldest*, mājor, maximus nātu .

omen, ōmen, -ĭnis, n.

omit, ŏmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3

on, ĭn (*g. abl.*) ; (*upon*) sŭper ; *on account of*, ŏb, propter (*g. acc.*)

once, (*meaning "once for all"*) sĕmel ; (*formerly*) ōlim, quondam ; (*once upon a time*) fortĕ ; *at once*, stătim

one (*only one*), ūnus, -a, -um ; *one by one*, singŭli, -ae, -a ; *a certain one*, quidam (310*a*) ; *one...another*, ălius...ălius ; *the one... the other*, alter...alter (86)

only, (*adj.*) sōlus, -a, -um ; *only Tullius dissented*, ūni Tullio ăliter vīsum est ; *not only...but also*, non sōlum...sed ĕtiam, or cum...tum ; *he lived only ten years*, sōlos dĕcem annos vixit ; *if only*, sī mŏdo

onset, opprĭmo, -pressi, -pres-

open, to, ăpĕrio, -ui, -rtum, 4

opinion, sententia, -ae, f.

opponent, adversārius, -i, m.

opportunity, occāsio, -ōnis, f.

oppose, obsisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3 (*g. dat.*) ; *if* oppōno *is used, note that it means "I place against" ; he opposed the enemy*, oppŏsuit sēsē hosti [sum, 3

oppress, opprĭmo, -pressi, -pres-

or, (i) *in statements and commands*, vĕl, aut (157*a*) ; (ii) *in alternative questions* (171), ăn, *preceded by* utrum *or* -nĕ ; (*a*) (*Whether*) *do you prefer this or that?* Utrum hoc (*or* hocnĕ) ăn illud mavultis? (*b*) *I asked whether...or*, interrŏgāvi utrum...ăn ; *whether ... or not ...* annōn, *or* necnĕ

orator, ōrātor, -ōris, m.

order (*a command*), mandatum, -i,

n. ; jussum, -i, n.; *to give orders* (*in war*), impĕro, 1, *with dat.*, ut, *and subjunctive*; *to order*, jŭbeo, jussi, jussum 2 (*acc. and inf.*) ; impĕro, 1 (*g. dat. and ut.*) ; *order* (*a rank*), ordo, -ĭnis, m. ; *the order of the knights*, ĕquestris ordo ; *in order to*, ŭt

ornament, ornātus, -ūs, m.

other, ălius, -a, -ud ; *the other*, alter (86) ; *the wealth of others*, ăliēnae dīvĭtiae

ought, dēbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2 ; *you ought to fight*, pugnāre dēbes ; *you ought to have fought*, pugnāre dēbuisti (223)

our (87) noster; *our men* (34) nostri

out of, ē, ex (*g. abl.*); (*meaning "outside"*) extrā ; *out of shot*, extrā jactum ; *outer, adj.* extērior, *neut.* -ius (69) ; *outside*, *prep.* extrā (*g. acc.*)

over, sŭper ; *across*, trans (*g. acc.*)

overcome, sŭpero, 1

overthrow, see *overcome*

overturn, subverto, -verti, -versum, 3 [sum, 3

overwhelm, opprĭmo, -pressi, -pres-

owe, dēbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2

own (*see Par.* 98); *your* or *my own name*, tuum *or* meum, ipsius, nōmen (*where* ipsius *agrees with the gen.* tui *or* mei *implied in* tuum *or* meum)

owner, dŏmĭnus, -i, m.

ox, bōs, bŏvis, c. *See Par. 311*

Pace, passus, -ūs, m.

pain, dŏlor, -ōris, m.

paint, pingo, -nxi, -ctum, 3

painter, pictor, -ōris, m.

painting, pictūra, -ae, f.

palace, pălātium, -i, n.

Pallas, Pallās, -ădis, f.

palm, palma, -ae, f.; *to carry off the palm*, palmam ferre

panic, păvor, -ōris, m.

parched, āridus, -a, -um ; tostus, -a, -um

pardon, vĕnia, -ae, f. ; *I grant him pardon,* do ei veniam ; *to pardon,* ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, 3, g. dat.

parent, părens, -tis, c.

Paris (of Troy), Păris, -ĭdis, m.

parricide, parrīcīda, -ae, m.

part, pars, -tis, f. ; *it is the p. of an orator,* ōrātōris est (289) ; *to take part in a battle,* intĕresse praelio ; *for my part,* ĕquidem (139)

partner, sŏcius, -i, m.

pass, pass by, pass on, praetĕreo, -īvi or -ii, -ĭtum, 4

path, callis, -is, m.

past, praetĕrĭtus, -a, -um

patience, pătĭentĭa, -ae, f.

patient, pătĭens, -ntis (g. gen.)

patiently, pătĭenter

patrician, patrĭcĭus, -a, -um

pay, stīpendium, -i, n. ; *to pay,* solvo, -vi, -ūtum, 3 ; pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, 3 ; *pay attention,* ŏperam dare ; *pay penalty,* poenas dare ; *pay tribute,* trĭbūtum pendĕre ; *able to pay,* par (gen. păris) solvendo, i.e. *equal to paying*

peace, pax, pācis, f.

penalty, poena, -ae, f. ; *to pay penalty,* poenas dăre

penetrate, pĕnetro, 1

penitence, poenĭtentia, -ae, f. [m.

penny, dēnārius, -i, m. ; *as,* assis,

people, pŏpŭlus, -i, m.

perfidy, perfĭdĭa, -ae, f.

perform, perfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3

perfume, ŏdor, -ōris, m.

perhaps, fortasse, forsĭtan (forsĭtan gen. takes the subjunctive)

peril, pĕrīcŭlum, -i, n.

perish, pĕreo, -īvi or -ii, 4

permission, pŏtestas, -ātis, f.

permit, pătior, passus, 3, dep.

perseverance, persĕvērantia, -ae, f.

persevere, persĕvēro, 1

Persian, Persa, -ae, m.

person, hŏmo, -ĭnis, m.

persuade, persuādeo, -si, -sum (g. dat. of person) (i) *I p. him to come,* p. ei ut vĕniat ; (ii) *I p. him (or am persuaded) that this is true,* p. ei (or persuāsum est mihi) hōc vērum esse

Philip, Phĭlippus, -i, m.

Philoctetes, Phĭloctētes, -ae, m.

philosopher, phĭlŏsŏphus, -i, m.

philosophy, phĭlŏsŏphia, ae, f.

physician, mĕdĭcus, -i, m.

picture, tăbŭla, -ae, f.

pierce, transfīgo, -xi, -xum, 3

pig, porcus, -i, m.

pigeon, cŏlumba, -ae, f.

pile up, exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3

pilot, gŭbernātor, -ōris, m.

pine tree, pīnus, -ūs, f.

pious, pius, -a, -um, *no superl.*

pirate, praedo, -ōnis, m.

pitch (a camp), pōno, pōsui, pŏsĭtum, 3

pitiful, mĭserĭcors, -cordis

pity, mĭserĭcordia, -ae, f. ; *feel pity for,* mĭsĕreor, -sĕrĭtus or -sertus, 2, dep. (g. gen.) ; *shew pity to,* mĭsĕror, 1 (g. acc.)

place, lŏcus, -i, m. ; *plural,* loca, n. pl. ; *place, to,* pōno, pōsui, pŏsĭtum, 3 ; *place before,* antĕpono, -pōsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3 ; *virtūtem vŏluptāti antĕpōno, I p. virtue before pleasure*

plain, campus, -i, m.

plan, consilium, -i, n.

plant, planta, -ae, f. ; *plant, to,* sĕo *sow*

Plataea, Plătaeae, ārum, f. pl.

Plato, Plăto, -ōnis, m.

play, lūdus, -i, m. ; *play, to,* lūdo, -si, -sum, 3

plead, a cause, ăgĕro causam
pleasant or *pleasing,* grātus,-a, -um ;
    jŭcundus, -a, -um ; dulcis, -e
please, plăceo, -ui, -ĭtum 2 (*g. dat.*)
pleasure, vŏluptas, -ātis, f.
pledge oneself, to, I p. myself to
pay, spondeo (spŏpondi, spon-
    sum, 2) me solūturum esse
plot, dŏlus, -i, m.
plough, ărātrum, -i, n.; *plough, to,*
    ăro, 1
ploughman, ărātor, -ōris, m.
ploughshare, vōmer, -ĕris, m.
pluck, carpo, -psi, -ptum, 3
plunder, praedа, -ae, f.; *plunder,*
    to, dīrĭpio, -rĭpui, -reptum, 3
plunge, v. trans. mergo, -si, -sum,
    3 ; *he plunged into the water,* in
    ăquam (*or* aquā) sē mersit
Pluto, Plūto, -ōnis, m.
poem, carmen, -ĭnis, n.
poet, pŏëta, -ae, m.
point, on the point of, in eo ŭt,
    see Par. 166
point out, monstro, 1
poison, vĕnēnum, -i, n.
pollute, polluo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
pomp, pompa, -ae, f.
Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, m.
Pontius, Pontius, -i, m.
poor, (i.e. *not rich*) pauper, -ĕris (61)
poppy, păpāver, -ĕris, n.
populace, vulgus, -i, n. *or* m.
populous, frĕquens, -tis
porch, portĭcus, -ūs, f.
Porsena, Porsēna, -ae, m.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
portent, prōdĭgium, -i, n.
portion, pars, -tis, f.
portrait, effĭgies, -ei, f.
Porus, Pōrus, -i, m.
position, lŏcus, -i, m.
possess, hăbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2; (*land*)
    possĭdeo, possēdi, possessum, 2
possession of, to take, occŭpo, 1 ; *to*
    gain possession of, pŏtior, pŏtītus,
    4, dep. (*g. abl.*) see Par. 207

possible, it is p. that, fĭeri pŏtest ut
    (299) ; *as great as possible,* quam
    maxĭmus ; *as well as possible ;*
    quam optĭmē
posterity, postĕri, -ōrum, m. pl.
pour, fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3
poverty, paupertas, -ātis, f.
power, pŏtestas, -ātis, f.; *in the*
    power of, pĕnĕs (*g. acc.*)
powerful, pŏtens, -tis
practice, usus, -ūs, m.
practise, exerceo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2
praetor, praetor, -ōris, m.
praise, laus, -dis, f. ; *praise, to,*
    laudo, 1
pray, ōro, 1 ; prĕcor, 1, dep. (*foll.*
    by ut)
prayers, prĕces, -um, f.
precept, praeceptum, -i, n.
precious, prĕtiōsus, -a, -um
predict, praedīco, -dixi, -dictum, 3
prefer, mālo, -ui, -malle, *foll. by*
    quam, page 230; antĕpono,
    -pŏsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3 (*g. acc. and*
    dat.)
preparation ; I have made every p.,
    omnia părāvi
prepare, păro, 1
presence of, in the, cōram (*g. abl.*)
present, to be, adsum, -fui, -esse (*g.*
    dat.)
present, a, dōnum, -i, n.; mūnus,
    -ĕris, n.; *present, to,* dōno, 1
    (*g. acc. and dat. or abl. and*
    acc.); *I p. you with a horse,*
    ĕquo tē dōno
preserve, servo, 1
press, prĕmo, pressi, pressum, 3
pretence, spĕcies, -ei, f.; sĭmŭlātio,
    -ōnis, f.
pretend, sĭmŭlo, 1
prevent, prŏhĭbeo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2 ;
    impĕdio, -īvi *or* -ii, ĭtum, 4 ;
    obsto, -stāre, -stĭti, -stātum, *g.*
    dat.; what prevents you from
    coming ? quid obstat (*or* prŏhĭ-
    bet) quōmĭnus vĕnĭas ?

previously, antĕ, anteā
prey, praeda, -ae, f.
Priam, Priămus, -i, m.
price, prĕtium, -i, n.; *at a great,
small price, &c., see* Par. 284
pride, sŭperbia, -ae, f.
priest, priestess, săcerdōs, -ōtis, c.
prison, carcer, -ĕris, m.
prisoner, captīvus, -i, m.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um
prize, praemium, -i, n.
proceed, see prŏgrĕdior, -gressus, 3,
   dep.
proclaim, prōnuntio, 1; ēdīco,
   -dixi, -dictum, 3
proconsul, prŏconsul, -ŭlis, m.
procure, păro, 1
prodigal, prŏdĭgus, -a, -um
produce, părio, pĕpĕri, partum, 3
profit, quaestus, -ūs, m.
profuse, see prodigal
promise, prōmissum, -i, n.; *to make
   many, large, false, &c., promises*,
   multa, magna, falsa, &c., prō-
   mittere; *promise, to*, pollĭceor,
   -cĭtus, 2, dep.; prōmitto, -mīsi,
   -missum, 3; *I p. to come*, p.
   me ventūrum esse (280); *I pro-
   mise (in marriage)*, spondeo,
   spŏpondi, sponsum, 2
prone, prōnus, -a, -um
property, rēs, rei, f.; bŏna, -ōrum,
   n. pl.
prophet, vātēs, -is, m.
propitious, prŏpĭtius, -a, -um
propose, (a law) rŏgo, 1   [3
proscribe, proscrībo, -psi, -ptum,
prosperity, rēs sĕcundae
prosperous, (of winds, &c.) sĕcun-
   dus, -a, -um; *a prosperous city*,
   urbs florentissima
prosperously, fēlīcĭter; *very pros-
   perously*, fēlīcissĭmē
protection, praesīdium, -i, n.
protest, to, rĕclāmo, 1
proud, sŭperbus, -a, -um
prove, dēmonstro, 1

provided that, dum mŏdo, *or* dum-
   mŏdo *(all g. subj.)*
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
provisions, commeātus, -ūs, m.
provoke, lăcesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3
prudence, prudentia, -ae, f.
prudent, prūdens, -tis
public, publĭcus, -a, -um
Publius, Publius, -i, m.
pull, trăho, -xi, -ctum, 3
punish, castīgo, 1; pūnio, -īvi *or*
   -ii, ītum, 4; *punishment*, sup-
   plĭcium, -i. n.; poena, -ae, f.
pure, pūrus, -a, -um
purple, purpŭreus, -a, -um
purpose, to, habēre in animo
pursue, sĕquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
push down, dētrūdo, -si, -sum, 3
put, pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3; *put
   over*, praefĭcio, -fēci, -fectum,
   3 *(g. dat.)*; *put to death*, inter-
   fĭcere, morte affĭcĕre; *put to
   flight*, fŭgo, 1; in fŭgam verto,
   see verto
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -i, m.

Quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, m.
quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.; vīs, vim,
   vī, f.   [n.
quarters, winter, hīberna, -ōrum,
queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
quench (thirst), restinguo, -stinxi,
   -stinctum, 3
question, to, interrŏgo, 1; rŏgo, 1
quick, cĕler, -ĕris, -e; *quickly*, cĕ-
   lĕrĭter; *very quickly*, cĕlerrĭmē;
   quickness, cĕlĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.
quiet, tranquillus, -a, -um; quiētus,
   -a, -um
quite, omnīno
Quirinus, Quirīnus, -i, m.

Race, gĕnus, ĕris, n.
rage, īra, -ae, f.; fŭror, -ōris, m.;
   rage, to, saevio, -ii, -ītum, 4
rain, imber, -bris, m.; plŭvia,
   -ae, f.

raise, tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, 3

rampart, vallum, -i, n.

rank, ordo, -ĭnis, m.

rapacious, răpāx, -ācis   [-ĭs, -e

rapid, răpĭdus, -a, -um; cĕler,

rapidity, cĕlĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.

rare, rārus, -a, -um

rashly, tĕmĕrē

rashness, tĕmĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.

rate, to value at a very high rate,
   permagni aestĭmāre

rather, pŏtius; *rather slow, quick,*
   &c., tardior, cĕlĕrior; (Par. 65)

ravage, vasto, 1

raven, corvus, -i, m.

raw, crūdus, -a, -um

ray, rădius, -i, m.

reach, attingo, -tĭgi, -tactum, 3 (*g.
   acc.*); pervĕnio, -vēni, -ventum,
   4 (*foll. by* ad)

read, lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3

readily, libenter

ready, părātus, -a, -um; *ready to
fight*, ad pugnandum; *I am
ready to die*, nōn rĕcūso mŏri

real, vērus, -a, -um

reality, vērĭtās, -ātis, f.

really, vērē

reap, mĕto, messui, messum, 3

rear, ălo, ălui, altum, 3

reason (cause), causa, -ae, f.; *by
reason of*, ŏb, propter (*both g.
acc.*)

rebuke, increpo, -ui, -ĭtum, 1

recall, rĕvŏco, 1

receive, accĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum,
   3 [*not* rĕcĭpio]

recent, rĕcens, -tis; nŏvus, -a,
   -um

recently, nūper

reckon, nŭmĕro, 1

recline, (at meals) discumbo, -cŭ-
   bui, -cŭbitum, 3   [3

recognise, agnosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum,

recollect, rĕcordor, rĕcordātus, 1,
   dep.; mĕmĭni, *see* Appendix II.,
   p. 215

recollection, mĕmŏria, -ae, f.

recover, rĕcŭpĕro, 1; recĭpio, -cēpi,
   -ceptum, 3

recount, narro, 1

refrain (oneself) from, abstĭneo,
   -ui, -tentum, 2; *I abstained
from food*, cibo mē abstĭnēbam

refer, rĕfĕro, rettŭli, rēlātum (238);
   *I referred the subject of the host-
ages to the senate*, de obsĭdĭbus
ad Patres rettŭli

refuge, perfŭgium, -i, n.

refuse, rĕcūso, 1; *g. acc.; or inf.;
or foll. by* quīn *with subjunctive*

regard, have regard to, respĭcio,
   -spexi, -spectum, 3 (*g. acc.*)

region, rĕgio, -ōnis, f.

regret, dēsīdĕrium, -i, n.; *regret,
to*, dēsīdĕro, 1

Regulus, Rĕgŭlus, -i,

reign, regnum, -i, n.; *during his
reign*, eo regnante or rĕge (197);
reign, to, regno, 1 (*intr.*); impĕro
   (*g. dat.*)

rein, hăbēna, -ae, f.

reinforcement, subsĭdium, -i, n.

reject, rĕjĭcio, rējēci, rējectum, 3

rejoice, gaudeo, gāvīsus, 2, dep.

relate, narro, 1; *horrible to relate !*
   nĕfās dictu !

relation, prŏpinquus, -i, m.

*relieve, the city was relieved from
the siege*, obsĭdĭōne urbs lĕvā-
ta est (279)

religion, rĕlĭgio, -ōnis, f.

relying, frētus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) :

remain, măneo, -mansi, -nsum, 2;
   remain over, sŭpersum, -fui, -esse

remaining, rĕlĭquus, -a, -um

remarkable, insignis, -e; *to a r.
degree*, ūnĭcē

remedy, rĕmĕdium, -i, n.

remember, (1) rĕcordor, -ātus, 1,
   dep.; rĕminiscor, -i (*g. acc.,
but sometimes gen.*); (2) mĕmĭni
   (*def.*), *see* p. 215

remembrance, mĕmŏria, -ae, f.

remind, admŏneo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2

remove, āmŏveo, -mŏvi, -mōtum, 2

remorse, dŏlor, -ōris. m.; poenĭtentia, -ae, f.

render, reddo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

renew, rĕnŏvo, 1

renown, fāma, -ae, f.

renowned, clārus, -a, -um

repair, rĕfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3

repeat, ĭtero, 1

repel, rĕpello, -pulsum, reppŭli, 3

repent, poenĭtet, -uit, 2, impers. (see Par. 219 and foll.)

repentance, poenĭtentia, -ae, f.

reply, responsum, -i, n.; *reply, to*, respondeo, -di, -sum, 2

report, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.; *report*, nuntio, 1; *it is reported that Tullius said*, fertur Tullius dixisse

repose, quies, -ētis, f.

republic, rēspublĭca, reipublĭcae, f.

repulse, prŏpulso, 1

reputation, fāma, -ae, f.   [*dat.*]

resist, rĕsisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3 (*g.*)

resolve, constĭtuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

resources, ŏpes, -um, f.

response, responsum, -i, n.

rest, quies, -ētis, f.; *rest, the*, [cēter] -ĕra, -ĕrum, *mostly pl.*; (*residue*) rĕlĭquus, -a, -um; *rest, to*, quiesco, -evi, -ētum, 3

restore, reddo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3; restĭtuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

restrain, coerceo, 2

result, ēventus, -ūs, m.

retain, rĕtĭneo, -ui, -tentum, 2

retake, rĕcĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3

retire, rĕcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3; *the soldiers retire*, milĭtes sē rĕcĭpiunt

retreat, rĕceptus, -ūs, m.; *retreat, to*, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3

return, rĕdĭtus, -ūs, m.; *return, to*, rĕdeo, -ii, -ĭtum, 4; rĕvertor, -versus, 3, dep.; *to return thanks*, grātĭas ăgĕre

reveal, pătĕfăcio, -fēci, -factum, 3

revenge, ultio, -ōnis, f.; *revenge, to*, ulciscor, ultus, 3, dep.

revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, n.

reverence, rĕvĕrentia, -ae, f.

reverence, reverence, vĕnĕror, -atus, 1, dep.; vĕreor, -ĭtus, 2, dep.

revolt, sĕdĭtio, -ōnis, f.; *revolt, to*, dēfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3

reward, praemium, -i, n.; mercēs, -ēdis, f.

Rhodes (island), Rhŏdus, -i, f. (265)

rich, dīves, -ĭtis, *reg. comp.* (*not* ditior, ditissimus, *except in poetry*)

riches, dīvĭtiae, -arum, f.; ŏpes, -um, f.

ride, ĕquĭto, 1; vĕhor, vectus, 3

rider, ĕques, -ĭtis, m.

ridiculous, rĭdĭcŭlus, -a, -um

right, rectus, -a, -um; *right, jūs*, jūris, n.; fās, indel.

right-hand, dexter, -tra, -trum, (*noun*) dextra *or* dextĕra, -ae, f.

rightly, jūre (Par. 182)

ring, ānŭlus, -i, m.

ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um

rise (*from bed*), surgo, surrexi, -rectum, 3; ŏrĭor, ortus, 4 dep.

risk, pĕrīcŭlum, -i, n.

rite, rītus, -ūs, m.

rival, aemŭlus, -a, -um (*used as a n.*); *he had many rivals*, multos sĭbi aemŭlos hăbŭit

rivalry, aemŭlātio, -ōnis, f.

river, flūmen, -ĭnis, n.; amnis, -is, m.; flūvius, -i, m.

road, via, -ae, f.; ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, n.

rob, spŏlio, 1 (*acc. of pers., abl. of thing*)

robber, latro, -ōnis, m.

rock, scŏpŭlus, -i, m.; rūpēs, -is, f.

roll, volvo, -vi, volūtum, 3 (*trans.*); *the stone is rolling*, lăpis volvĭtur

Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um

Romulus, Rŏmŭlus, -i, m.

roof, tectum, -i, n.

rool, rădīx, -īcis, f.

rope, fūnis, -is, m.

rose, rŏsa, -ae, f.

rough, asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum

round, rŏtundus, -a, -um; tĕrĕs, -ĕtis

round (prep.), circum (g. acc.)

rouse, excito, 1

rout, fūgo, 1; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3

royal, rēgālis, -e; rēgius, -a, -um

rude, rŭdis, -e; incultus, -a, um

rugged, asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum

ruin (destruction), exĭtium, -i, n.

rule, to, rĕgo, -xi, -ctum (g. acc.) ; impĕro, 1 (g. dat.)

rule, impĕrium, -i, n.

rumour, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.

run, curro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3

run up, accurro, -curri, -cursum, 3

run away, aufŭgio, -fūgi, 3

running, cursus, -ūs, m.

rush, impĕtus, -ūs, m.

rush, to, rŭo, -ui, 3   [3

rush forth, ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,

rustic, rustĭcus, -a, -um

Sabine, Săbīnus, -a, -um

sacred, săcer, -cra, -crum

sacrifice, săcrĭfĭcium, -i, n.

sacrifice, to, sacrĭfĭco, 1

sad, tristis, -e

safe, tūtūs, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um; incŏlŭmis, -e

safely, tūto

safety, sălūs, -ūtis, f.

sagacious, săgax, -ācis

sail, a, vēlum, -i, n.

sail, to, nāvĭgo, 1

sailor, nauta, -ae, m.

sake, for the, causā (adverbial abl. foll. by gen. of gerundive)

salt, sal, sălis, m.

salutation, sălūtātio, -ōnis, f.

salute, sălūto, 1

same, īdem, ĕădem, īdem (103)

Samos, Sămos, -i, f.

Samnites, Samnĭtes, -ium, m.

sand, ărēna, -ae, f.

sate, satiate, sătio, 1; expleo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2

satisfy, sătisfăcio, -fēci, -factum, 3 (g. dat.)

savage, saevŭs, -a, -um; fĕrus, -a, -um

savageness, fĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.

save (i.e. preserve), servo, 1

say, dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3; *say...not,* nĕgo, 1; *do you say it is not so?* nĕgasnĕ ita esse? *I say I cannot come,* nĕgo mē venīre posse; *said he, I say (used parenthetically)* inquit, inquam; *see page* 315; *it is said that Balbus lies,* dīcĭtur Balbus mentīri (Par. 177).

saying, dictum, -i, -n

scanty, exĭguus, -a, -um

scarcely, vix

scarcity, inŏpia, -ae, f.

scatter, spargo, -rsi, -rsum, 3; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3

scent, ŏdor, -ōris, m.

science, scientia, -ae, f.

Scipio, Scīpio, -ōnis, m.

scorch, adūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3; torreo, -ui, tostum, 2

scorn, aspernor, 1, *dep.*; sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3

scourge, to, virgis caedĕre, lit. *to strike with rods;* (virga, -ae, f.)

scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.

sculptor, sculptor, -ōris, m.

sculpture, sculptūra, -ae, f.

Scythian, Scўthăa, -ae, m.

sea, mǎre, -is, n.; pĕlăgus, -i, -n. *(adj.)* mārīnus, -a, -um; nāvālis, -e

search, explōre, 1; quaero, -sīvi, -sĭtum, 3

season, tempus, -ōris, n.; tempestās, -ātis, f.

seasonable, opportūnus, -a, -um

seat, sēdēs, -is, f.

second (*in ordinary numeration*), sĕcundus, -a, -um ; (*a, or the second, where only two are contemplated*), alter, -ĕra, -ĕrum ; *a second time*, ĭtĕrum ; *a friend is a second self*, ămīcus est alter ĕgo

secret, sēcrētus, -a, -um

secretary, scrība, -ae, m.

secretly, clam

secure, sēcūrus, -a, -um ; see *safe*

security, see *safety*

sedition, sēdītĭo, -ōnis, f.

see, vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2 ; *to see to this being done*, cūrāre hōc făcĭendum

seed, sēmen, -ĭnis, n.

seek, quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3 ; (*peace*) pĕto, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 3

seem, vĭdeor, vīsus, 2 dep.

seize, occŭpo, 1 ; corrĭpio, -rĭpui, -reptum, 3

seldom, rāro

self, ipsĕ, -a, -um, (105, 308) ; -sē (94, 218, 305–8)

sell, vendo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

seller, vendĭtor, -ōris, m.

senate, sĕnātus, -ūs, m. ; *also* Patres, -rum ; *it was referred to the s.*, ad Patres rĕlātum est

senate-house, cūrĭa, -ae, f.

senator, sĕnātor, -ōris, m.

send, mitto, mīsi, missum, 3 (*to*, ăd)

send away, dīmitto, mīsi, missum, 3

send for, arcesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3 [3

send on, praemitto, -mīsi, -missum,

sentinel, vĭgil, -ĭlis, m.

separate, sĕpăro, 1

serious, grăvis, -e

serpent, serpens, -tis, c.

servant (*slave*), servus, -i, m. ; (*attendant*) mĭnister, -ri, m.

serve, servio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4

(*g. dat.*): *to s.* (*as a soldier*), stīpendium mĕrēre

service, (*benefit*), bĕnĕfĭcium, -i, n.; *to perform military service*, stīpendium mĕrēre

servile, servīlis, -e

servitude, servītium, -i, n. ; (*but in Cicero*) servītūs, -ūtis, f.

set, (*of the sun*) occĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum, 3 ; *set out*, prŏfĭciscor, -fectus, 3, dep. ("*for*" *after this v. must be rendered* ad ; *but see* Par. 219) ; *set an example*, exemplum praebēre ; *set on fire*, incendo, -cendi, -censum, 3

setting, occāsus, -ūs, m.

seven, septem, indecl. ; *see* Par. 81

several, plūres, -a, (72)

severe, grăvis, -e ; *severely*, grăvĭter

severity, sĕvĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.

shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.

shady, umbrōsus, -a, -um

shake, quătio, quassum, 3; *I shake off sleep*, somnum excŭtio, -cussi, -cussum, 3

shame, pŭdor, -oris, m.

shameful, turpis, -e

shameless, impŭdens, -tis

shamelessness, impŭdentia, -ae, f.

shape, forma, -ae, f.

share, pars, -tis, f.

share, to, dīvĭdo, -si, -sum, 3

sharp, ăcūtus, -a, -um ; ăcer, acris, acre

sharpen, ăcuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

shave, rādo, -si, -sum, 3

she, see *he*

shear, tondeo, tŏtondi, tonsum, 2

sheep, ŏvis, -is, f.

shepherd, pastor, -ōris, m.

shield, scūtum, -i, n.; clipĕus, -i, m.

shine, lūceo, -xi, 2 ; (*of a meadow*) nĭteo, -ui, 2   [ga

ship, nāvis, -is, f. ; (*of war*) n. lon-

shipwreck, naufrăgium, -i, n.

shirt, tŭnĭca, -ae, f.

shock, impĕtus, -ūs, m.

shore, lītus, -ōris, n.; ōra, -ae, f.

short, brĕvis, -e; *for a short time*
paulisper

shoulder, (h)ŭmĕrus, -i, m.

shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.

shout, to, clāmo, 1

show, to, monstro, 1

shower, imber, -bris, m.

shrub, frŭtex, -ĭcis, m.

shun, fŭgio, fūgi, 3; vīto, 1

shut, shut in, claudo, -si, -sum, 3

Sicily, Sĭcĭlia, -ae, f.

sick, sickly, aeger, -gra, -grum;
infirmus, -a, -um

side, lātus, -ōris, n.; *on this side*,
citrā, cis (*g. acc.*); *on one side…
on the other side*, hinc…illinc;
sides, on all, passim; *sides, from
all*, undĭque

sight, vīsus, -ūs, m.; conspectus,
-ūs, m.; *in the sight of the
people*, pălam pŏpŭlo

sign, signal, signum, -i, n.

silence, silentium, -i, n.

silent, sĭlens, -tis; tăcĭtus, -a, -um;
silently, tăcĭtē

silent, to be, tăceo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2;
sĭleo, -ŭi, 2

silver, argentum, -i, n.; (*adj.*)
argenteus, -a, -um

simple, simplex, -ĭcis

sin, peccātum, -i, n.; scĕlus, -ĕris, n.

sin, to, pecco, 1

since, quŏniam (*with indic.*); cum
(*with subj.*); *since this is so*, quae
cum ĭtă sint (151)

sing, canto, 1; cāno, cĕcĭni, can-
tum, 3

single, ūnus, -a, -um

sink, mergo, -rsi, -rsum, 3 (*trans.*);
mergor (*intrans.*)

sister, sŏror, -ōris, f.

sit, sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, 3

sit down, consīdo, -sēdi, -sessum, 3

six, sixty, &c. See Par. 81

size, mangĭtūdo, -ĭnis, f.

skilful, skilled, pĕrītus, -a, -um

skill, pĕrītia, -ae, f.

skin, cŭtis, -is, f.; pellis, -is, f.

sky, caelum, -i, n.

slander, mălĕdīco, -xi, -ctum, 3 (*g.
dat.*)

slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.

slave, servus, -i, m.; *to be a slave*,
servīro

slavery, servĭtūs, -ūtis, f.

slay, interfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;
occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, 3

sleep, somnus, -i, m.   [4

sleep, to, dormio, -ivi or -ii, -ītum,

slender, grăcĭlis, -e (60); tĕnuis, -e

slight, lĕvis, -e

slip, lābor, lap-sus, 3 dep.

slip down, dēlābor, -lapsus, 3, dep.

sloth, ignāvia, -ae, f.

slow, tardus, -a, -um

slowly, tardē

slumber, somnus, -i, m

small, parvus, -a, -um

smear, oblĭno, -lēvi, -lĭtum, 3

smell, ŏdor, -ōris, m.

smile, rīdeo, -si, -sum, 2

snake, cŏlŭber, -bri, m. (*rare*);
anguis, -is, m.

snare, insĭdiae, -ārum, f.

snatch, răpio, -ŭi, -ptum, 3; *snatch
from*, ērĭpio, -rĭpui, -eptum, *g.
dat. of pers.* (192)   [3

snatch away, abrĭpio, -ŭi, -reptum,

snow, nix, nĭvis, f.

so, (*with adj.*) tam; *so good*, tam
bŏnus; ĭtă; *and so*, i.e. there-
upon, ĭtăque; (*in this way*) sīc
(*to such an extent*) tam

so great, large, tantus, -a, -um

so many, tŏt, indcl.

so much (*money, &c.*), tantum
(pĕcūniae, &c.)

Socrates, Sŏcrătēs, -is, m.

soft, mollis, -e

soften, mollio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4

soil, sŏlum, -i, n.; hŭmus, -i, f.

soldier, mīlēs, -ĭtis, m.

sole, ūnus, -a, -um; ūnĭcus, -a, -um

some, nonnullus, -a, -um ; some...
 others, älii...alii ; there is some-
 thing after death, est äliquid
 post mortem ; I fear something
 has happened, vĕreor nĕ quid
 acciderit ; some poet says, pöeta
 quidam dicit ; there is some (i.e.
 something of) art in writing, est
 äliquid artis in scribendo ; there
 are (some) who say, sunt qui
 dicant
sometimes, interdum, aliquando
somewhat (with adj.) see Par. 65
son, fīlius, -i, m. ; listen, my son,
 audi, mi fili (13)
son-in-law, gĕner, -ĕri, m.
song, carmen, -ĭnis, n.; cantus, -ūs,
 m.
soon, mox
soothsayer, hăruspex, -icis, m.
sorrow, dŏlor, -ōris, m.
sort, gĕnus, -ĕris, n.
soul, ănĭma, -ae, f.
sound, a, sŏnus, -i, m ; sŏnĭtus, -ūs,
 m.
sound, to, sŏno, -ui, -ĭtum, 1 ; the
 trumpet sounds, tūba cănit
sour, ăcerbus, -a, -um
source, fons, -ntis, m.
sow, sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3.
space, spătium, -i, n.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.
spare, parco, pĕperci, parsum, 3
 (g. dat.)
Sparta, Sparta, -ae, f.
speak, dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; lŏquor,
 -cūtus, 3 dep.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.
spectacle, spectācŭlum, -i, n.
spectre, spectrum, -i, n.   [-ōnis, f.
speech, ōrātio, -ōnis, f. ; contio,
speed, cĕlĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.; with
 speed, speedily, cĕlĕrĭter
spend, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sump-
 tum, 3   [m.
spirit, spīrĭtus, -ūs, m.; ănĭmus, -i,
splendid, splendĭdus, -a, -um

splendour, splendor, -ōris, m.
spoil, spŏlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl.
 of thing)
spoils, spŏlia, -ōrum, n.
sport, lūdus, -i, m.
spot, lŏcus, -i, m.; plur. lŏca
spring, vēr, vēris, n.
spring forward, prōsĭlio, -sĭlui,
 -sultum, 4
spur, calcar, -āris, n. (39)
spurn, sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3
spy, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
squander, dissĭpo, 1.
stab, confōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3
stag, cervus, -i, m.
stand, sto, stĕti, statum, 1
stand up, consurgo, -surrexi, 3
standard, signum, -i, n.
star, stella, -ae, f. ; sīdus, -ĕris, n.
state, cīvĭtās, -ātis, f. ; respublica,
 reipublicae, f.
station, to, lŏco, 1
statue, stătua, -ae, f.
stay, măneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2 ; mŏror,
 -ātus, 1 dep.
steadily, constant   [-ōcis
stern, sĕvērus, -a, -um ; atrox,
sternness, sĕvĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.
stick, băcŭlus, -i, m.
still (i. e. yet), adhūc
stir, mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2
stomach, venter, -tris, m.
stone, lăpis, -ĭdis, m.; saxum, -i,
stop, consisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3
stop, (trans.) mŏror, 1, dep.
storm, prŏcella, -ae, f. ; tempestās,
 -ātis, f.
storm, to, expugno, 1
story, fābŭla, -ae, f.
straight, rectus, -a, -um
strange, mīrus, -a, -um
stranger, hospĕs, -ĭtis, m.; advĕna,
 -ae, m.
stratagem, dŏlus, -i, m.
stream, flūmen, -ĭnis, n. ; rīvus, -i,
 m.

street, vīcus, -i, m.

strength, vīres, -ium, f. pl.

strengthen, firmo, 1

stretch out, extendo, -di, -sum 3

strew, sterno, strāvi, strātum, 3

strike, *strike down*, caedo, cĕcĭdi, caesum, 3 ; *having been struck by lightning*, fulmino ictus (-a, -um)

strive, (i e. *endeavour*) nītor, nīsus or nixus, 3, dep. (*with* ut *and* subjunctive*); (i.e. *fight*) certo, 1 ; *we strive for mastery with the Roman people*, de impĕrio cum pŏpŭlo Rōmāno armis certāmus (*constr. with inf., and with dat. for* cum, *is mostly poetical*)

strong, vălĭdus, -a, -um

struggle, certāmen, -ĭnis, n.

struggle, to, luctor, 1 dep.

study, stŭdium, -i, n.

study, to, stŭdeo, -ui, 2 (*g. dat.*)

stuff, to, farcio, farsi, fartum, 4

stupid, stultus, -a, -um

subdue, *subjugate*, sŭbĭgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3

subtle, callĭdus, -a, -um

subtract, dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3 (*foll. by* de; *or dat. of pers., acc. of thing*)

succeed, I succeed, i.e. *I prosper*, rēs mĭhi bĕnē succēdit, or rem bĕnē gĕro. N.B. *not, in this sense*, succēdo, -si, -ssum, 3, *which is only used for* "*take the place of*," *and g. dat.; fresh men succeeded the wearied*, integri dē-fătĭgātis successērunt

success, victōria, -ae, f. ; *they returned without s.*, rē infectā rĕ-diērunt

successfully, fēlĭcĭter; *more successfully*, fēlĭcius

succumb, succumbo, succŭbui, suc-cŭbĭtum, 3 (*g. dat.*)

such, tālis, -e

sudden, sŭbĭtus, -a, -um

suddenly, rĕpentē, sŭbĭto, stătim

Suevi, Suēvi, -ōrum, m.

suffer, pătior, passus, 3 dep.

sufficient, sătis, *indel.*; īdōneus, -a, -um; *sufficiently good*, sătis bŏnus

suited for, *suitable*, aptus, -a, -um, īdōneus, -a, -um (*with dat. or* ad ; aptus, *with persons, dat.*)

sum of money, pĕcūnia, -ae, f.

summer, aestas, -ātis, f.

summit, culmen, ĭnis, n.

summon, vŏco, 1 ; convŏco,

sun, sōl, sōlis, m.

sunrise, lux, lūcis, f.; sōlis ortus

sunset, sōlis occāsus

sup, cēno, 1

superstition, sŭperstĭtĭo, -ōnis, f.

supper, cēna, -ae, f.

suppliant, supplex, -ĭcis

supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m. ; *we are hindered from getting: s.*, prōhĭbēmur commeātu

support (*nourish*), nūtrĭo, -īvi, -ītum, 4 ; sustĭneo, -ui, -tentum. 2 ; sustento, 1

suppose, pŭto, 1

supreme, suprēmus, -a, -um ; summus, -a, -um

sure, certus, -a, -um

surname, cognōmen, -ĭnis, n.

surrender, trā lo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3 ; *also* (*but most frequ. of s. persons*) dēdo, dēdĭdi, dēdĭtum, 3

surround, circumdo, -dĕdi, -dătum, dăro (*acc. and abl. or acc. and dat.; see Ex. LXII.*)   [*dat.*]

survive, sŭpersum, -fui, -esse (*g. dat.*)

suspicion, suspĭcĭo, -ōnis, f.

sustain, sustĭneo, 2 ; (*nourish*), nūtrio, -īvi, -ītum, 4

swallow, hĭrundo, -ĭnis, f.

swan, cycnus, -i, m.

swear, jūro, 1 ; *I swear to come*, j. me ventūrum esse ; *I s. to obey a law*, j. in lēgem.

sweat, sŭdor, -ōris, m.

sweet, dulcis, -e ; suāvis, -e
swift, cĕler, -is, -e
swiftly, celĕrĭter
swiftness, celĕrĭtās, -ātis, f.
swim, to, no, nāvi, nātum, 1
sword, glădius, -i, m. ; *with fire and sword,* ferro atque igni
Syracuse, Sўrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl.
Syria, Sўria, -ae, f.

Table, mēnsa, -ae, f.
tail, cauda, -ae, f.
take, căpio, cēpi, captum, 3 ; *take away,* adĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3 ; aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum, auferre; *take by storm,* expugno, 1 ; *take care of,* cūro, 1 (*g. acc.*); *take care to,* cūrā ut ; *take place,* see *happen*
talk, lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3 dep.
talkative, lŏquāx, -ācis   [-um
tall, prōcērus, -ā, -um ; altus, -a,
tame, mansuētus, -a, -um ; *to tame,* dŏmo, -ui, -ĭtum, 1
Tarquin, Tarquīnius, -i, m.
task, ŏpus, -ĕris, n.
taste, gusto, 1
tasteful, ēlĕgans, -ntis ; *tastefully,* ēlĕganter
Tatius, Tātius, -i, m.
Taurus, mount, Taurus, -i, m.
tax, trĭbūtum, -i, n. ; vectīgal, -ālis, n.
teach, dŏceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 (*g. two acc.*) See Par. 312
teacher, măgister, -tri, m.
tear, lăcrima, -ae, f.
tear, to, scindo, scĭdi, scissum, 3 ; *tear away,* āvello, -velli, -vulsum, 3 ; *tear out,* ēvollo, -volli, -vulsum, 3 ; *to tear away from one's embrace,* āvellĕre de-amplexu
tell, dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *dat. & acc.*
temerity, tĕmĕrĭtas, -ātis, f.
temper, ănĭmus, -i, m.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f. ; prōcella, -ae, f.

temple, templum, -i, n. ; aedes, -is f.
ten, dĕcem, *indecl.* ; (*distr.*) dēnus -a, -um ; *see* Par. 314
tender, tĕner, -ĕra, ĕrum (61)
tent, tentōrium, -i, n.
tenth, dĕcĭmus, -a, -um
terminate, finio, 4
terrible, dīrus, -a, -um
terrify, terreo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2
territories, fīnes, -ium, m.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
Thames, Tămĕsis, -is, m.
than, (62, 63) quam
thanks, grātiae, -ārum, f. ; *I return t.,* grātias ăgo
that (*dem. pron.*), illĕ, -a, -ud ; ĭs, ĕa, ĭd ; *that of yours,* istĕ, -a, -ud (*if used with adj. and nouns the position of* illĕ, ĭs, istŏ *is like that of* hic ; *see* "*this*")
that (*rel. pron.*) qui ; *that* (*nom. or abl.*) . . . *not,* quīn (145, 300) ; *there was no one that did not hate you,* nēmo ĕrat quīn tē ōdisset
that (*conj.*) ut ; *that not,* nē (131) ; (*with comp.*) quo (303) ; *that they might the more easily go,* quo făcĭlius ĭrent. N.B. *Unless* "*that*" *denotes purpose or consequence, it must not be rendered by* ut
theatre, theātrum, -i, n.
Theban, Thēbānus, -ī, m.
Thebes, Thēbae, -ārum, f.
theft, furtum, -i, n.
their, eōrum, eārum, eōrum ; (*own*) suus, -a, -um
Themistocles, Thĕmistŏclēs, -is, m.
then, tum ; tunc ; deinde ; *see* tum, tunc *in* L. Vocab.
thence, indĕ
there, ĭbi, illīc ; *often not trans. in Lat., e.g. there are some who say* sunt qui dīcant   [Vocab.
therefore, ĭgĭtur, ĭtăquĕ ; *see* Lat.
Thermopylae, Thermŏpȳlae, -ārum, f.

Thetis, Thĕtis, -ĭdis, f.

thick, (*of garments*) crassus, -a, um ; densus, -a, -um

thicket, dūmētum, -i, n.

thief, fūr, -is, m.

thin, măcer, -cra, -crum ; tenuis, -e

thing, rēs, rei, f.

think, pŭto, 1 ; existĭmo, 1 ; cōgĭto, 1 ; reor, rătus, rēri ; *thinking that the enemy were at hand*, rătus hostes ădesse ; *I thought to myself*, mēcum cōgĭtābam

third, tertius, -a, -um

thirst, sĭtis, -is, f. acc. -im, abl. -i ; *to die of thirst*, sĭtī mŏri

thirteen, trēdĕcim, indecl.

thirty, trĭgintā, indecl.

this, hic, haec, hōc (*if used with Adj. and Noun, mostly comes between the two ; this sad calamity*, tristis haec cālămĭtās ; *or else* tam, *"so" is inserted*, haec tam tristis c. ; *this great army*, hic tantus exercĭtus). N.B. *the same rule applies to the pron. adj. generally*, ille, iste, meus, tuus, &c.

thither, eo, illūc

thou, tū, see p. 45

though, quamvis (g. subj.) ; quamquam (g. ind.), see Par. 323

thousand, see Par. 80

threat, minna, -ae, f.

threaten, mĭnor, 1, dep. (g. acc. of thing and dat. of person) ; *I threaten you with death*, mĭnor tĭbī mortem

three, trēs, tria (78) ; *three hundred*, trēcenti, -ae, -a ; *three hundred apiece*, trēcēni, -ae, -a (314) ; *three times*, *thrice*, ter ; *three days*, trĭdŭum, -i, n. ; *three years*, triennium, -i, n.

thrifty, parcus, -a, -um

throat, guttur, -ūris, n.

throne, sŏlium, -i, n.

through, pĕr (g. acc.)

throw, conjĭcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3

thrush, turdus, -i, m.

thumb, pollex, -ĭcis, m.

thunder, to, tŏno, -ui, -ĭtum, 1

thunderbolt, fulmen, -ĭnis, n.

thus, sīc, ĭtā

thy, tuus, -a, -um

Tiber, Tibĕris, -is, m.

tide, aestus, -ūs, m.

tiger, tigris, -is *or* -ĭdis, c.

till, dōnec, dum, quoad ; *to till*, cŏlo, -ui, cultum, 3

time, tempus, -ŏris, n. ; *a second time*, ĭtĕrum ; *by this time*, jam ; *four times*, see "*four*"

timely, opportūnus, -a, -um •

timid, tĭmĭdus, -a, -um

Titus, Tĭtus, -i, m.

to, in, ăd (g. acc.). N.B. (1) "*to*" *before a verb is never to be rend. by the Lat. inf. unless the inf. is the subj. or obj. of another verb*; (2) *nor by the supine except after a verb of motion*; (3) *it is rendered by the subjunctive when meaning* "*in order to*," *and also after verbs of asking, &c.* (143) ; (4) *see also* ăd *and gerundive* (186)

to-day, hŏdiē

together, sĭmul, ūna ; *having conversed*, inter sēsē collŏcūti

toil, lăbor, -ōris, m.

token, indĭcium, -i, n. ; *pledge*, pignus, -ōris, n.   •

tolerate, pătior, passus, 3 dep.

tomb, sĕpulcrum, -i, n. ; tŭmŭlus, -i, m.

to-morrow, crās

tongue, lingua, -ae, f.

too, too much, (*adv.*) nĭmis, nĭmium ; *too little*, părum (*adv.* used also as a noun) ; *he has too little strength*, părum vīrium hăbet ; *this task is too difficult for you to accomplish*, hōc ŏpus diffĭcilius est quam quod (*or ut*

hŏc) perfĭcĭas; *see also Par.* 64, 149

tooth, dens, -tis, m.

top, vertex, -ĭcis, m.; *the top of the mountain,* mons summus

torch, taeda, -ae, f.; fax, fācis, f.

turn, lacer, -ĕra, -ĕrum

torture, crŭciātŭs, -ūs, m.

touch, tango, tetĭgi, tactum, 3

towards, versus (*of places*); ergā (*of conduct towards persons*); ad (*all g. acc.*), *see Par.* 183

tower, turris, -is, f.

town, oppĭdum, -i, n.

trace, vestīgium -i, n.

train, exerceo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2; (*educate*) ērŭdio, -ivi, -ĭtum, 4

traitor, prodĭtor, -ōris, m.

tranquil, tranquillus, -a, -um

tranquillity, tranquillĭtas, -ātis, f.

transact, ago, ēgi, actum, 3

transfer, transport, transfĕro, -tŭ'i, -lātum, -ferre

travel, ĭter facĕre

traveller, viātor, -ōris; m.

treacherous, perfĭdus, -a, -um; treacherously, per dŏlum

treachery, perfĭdia, -ae, f.; dŏlus, -i, m.

treason, (*military*) prŏdĭtio, -ōnis, f.; (*civil*) mājestas, -ātis, f.

treasure, thēsaurus, -i, m.

treasury, aerārium, -i, n.

treaty, foedus, -ĕris, n.

tree, arbor, -ōris, f.

tremble, trĕmo, -ui, 3; (*from top to toe*) contrĕmo, -ui, 3

tribe, trĭbus, -ūs, f.

tribunal, trĭbūnal, -ālis, n.

tribune, trĭbūnus, -i, m.

tribuneship, trĭbūnātus, -ūs, m.

tribute, trĭbūtum, -i, n.

trick, dŏlus, -i, m.

trifles, nūgae, -ārum, f. pl.

triumph, triumphus, -i, m.; *to triumph,* triumpho, 1

Trojan, Trojānus, -i, m.

troop (*of horse*), turma, -ae, f.

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f.

trophy, trŏpaeum, -i, n.

trouble, ŏpĕra, -ae, f.; *to trouble,* turbo, 1

troublesome, mŏlestus, -a, -um

Troy, Troja, -ae, f.

true, vērus, -a, -um; *truly, i.e. truthfully,* vērē

trumpet, tūba, -ae, f.

trunk, truncus, -i, m.;

trust, to, crēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3 (*dat.*); confĭdo, -fĭsus sum, 3 (*dat of pers., abl. of thing*); *trusting in the nature of their position,* natūrā lŏci confĭsi; *trust,* fĭdes, ⁄ei, f.

trusty, fĭdēlis, -e; fĭdus, -a, -um

truth, (*abstract*) vērĭtās, -ātis, f.; (*what is true, fact*) vērum, -i, n.; *if you will have the truth,* si vērum audīre vīs; *you have spoken the truth,* vēra dixisti

try, cōnor, 1, dep. (*with inf.*); *make proof of,* tento, 1; *we have tried this danger,* tĕntāvĭmus hoc pĕrīculum

Tullius, Tullius, -i, m. (⁀8)

Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.

Tulliola, Tulliola, -ae, f., *i.e. the little Tullia* (*a child's name*)

Tullus, Tullus, -i, m.

tumult, tŭmultus, -ūs, m.

turn, verto, -ti, -sum, 3; *he turned to* (*in speaking*), se convertit ad; *the enemy turned their backs, i.e. fled,* terga dĕdērunt; *turn out,* ēvĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *in turn,* invĭcem

twelve, see Par. 81; distrib. 314

twenty, twentieth, see Pars. 81, 314

twice, bis

twist, torqueo, -si, -tum, 2

two, duo, -ae, -o (78, 314); *two hundred,* dŭcenti, -ae, -a; *two days,* bĭduum, -i, n.

tyrant, tўrannus, -i, n.

Ugliness, dēformĭtas, -ātis, f.

ugly, turpis, -e

Ulysses, Ŭlysses, -is, m.

unable, I am, nĕquĕo, -quīvi, 4 ; *imperf.* nequībam ; *see L.* Vocab.

unaccustomed, insŏlĭtus, -a, -um

unarmed, ĭnermis, -e

uncertain, ĭncertus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)

uncultivated, incultus, -a, -um

under, sŭb, Par. 180 (*g. abl. or acc.*) ; *under Caesar (as general),* Caesăre dŭce (197)

undergo, sŭbĕo, -īvi or -ĭi, 4

understand, intellĕgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3

undertake, suscĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 ; *to undertake politics,* căpessĕre rem-publĭcam

undeserving, indignus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)

unequal, impăr, -păris

unfair, ĭnīquus, -a, -um

unfortunate, infēlix, -īcis

unfriendly, ĭnĭmīcus, -a, -um

ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um

unhappy, infēlix, -īcis

unity, concordia, -ae, f.

universal, ŭnĭversus, -a, -um

unjust, injustus, -a, -um

unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um

unlearned, indoctus, -a, -um

unless, nĭsĭ (*same construction as sī, see* Par. 125, 295)

unlike, dissĭmĭlis, -e

unlucky, infēlix, -īcis ; infaustus, -a, um   [*gen.*)

unmindful, immĕmor, -ŏris, (*g.*

unpleasant, ingrātus, -a, -um

unseasonable, ĭnopportūnus, -a, -um

unsuccessfully, infēlīcĭter

until, dum ; dōnĕc ; quoad ; *not until,* nōn antĕquam ; *he did not answer until I twice questioned him,* nōn antĕ respondit quam bĭs eum interrŏgāvi

unwarlike, imbellis, -e

unwilling, I am u. to come, nōlo (nōlui, nolle, 234) vĕnīre ; *she came unwillingly,* invīta (-a, -um) vēnit. N.B. *This adj. agrees with its noun, but is only used adverbially ;* invītus est *is not Latin*   [*abl.*)

unworthy, indignus, -a, -um (*g.*

uphold, sustĭneo, -ui, -tentum, 2

upon, sŭper (180)

uprightness, prŏbĭtas, -ātis, f

up to, tĕnus (178)

urge, urgeo, ursi, 2

us, see Par. 90, 93

use, to, ūtor, usus, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*)

used, he, they, used to, &c. (*turn by imperf. indic. or by* sŏleo, sŏlĭtus, 2, *dep.*)

useful, ūtĭlis, -e

useless, ĭnūtĭlis, e

usual, sŏlĭtus, -a, -um

usually, fĕrē, plērumquĕ

utter, ēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3

utterly, omnīno ; *utterly destroy,* dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 (*for other verbs used with "utterly," see the verbs themselves*)

Vain, vānus, -a, -um ; ĭnānis, -e

vainly, in vain, frustrā ; nēquĭquam

valley, vallis, -is, f.

valour, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

value, prĕtium, -i, n. ; *to estimate at a high value,* magni aestĭmāre ; *to value,* aestĭmo, 1 (283, 284)

valuable, prĕtiōsus, -a, -um

vanish, ēvānesco, ēvānui, 3

vanquish, vinco, vīci, victum, 3

variety, vărĭĕtas, -ātis, f.

various, varying, vărius, -a, -um

vast, ingens, -tis

venerate (worship), vĕnĕror, 1, dep.

venom, vīrus, -i, n.

venture, audeo, ausus, 2, dep.

Venus, Vĕnus, -ĕris, f.

terse, versus, -ūs, m.

very, ipse, -a, -um ; *your very life*, vīta tua ipsa ; *very small*, parvūlus, -a, -um ; *very great*, *very many*, &c., permagnus, permulti, &c.

vessel, nāvis, -is, f. ; nāvĭgium, -i, n.

Vesta, Vesta, -ae, f.

vice, vītium, -i, n.

vicious, prāvus, -a, -um

victim, victima, -ae, f.

victor, victor, -ōris, m.

victorious, victor, -ōris, m. ; victrīx, -īcis, f.

victory, victōria, -ae, f.

vigour, vĭgor, -ōris, m. ; vīres, -ium, f.

village, vīcus, -i, m.

villain, scĕlestus, -a, -um

vine, vītis, -is, f.

vineyard, vīnĕa, -ae, f.

violate, vĭŏlo, 1

violence, vīs, acc. vim, *abl.* vī, f.; *by v.*, per vim, *or* vī

violent, vĭŏlentus, -a, -um

violently, vĭŏlenter, *or* vī

Virgil, Vergĭlius, -i, m.

virgin, virgo, -ĭnis, f.

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

virtuous, prŏbus, -a, -um

vision, vīsus, -ūs, m. ; *dream*, somnium, -i, n.

visit, vīso, -si, 3 ; *visit (with punishment)*, afficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

void, expers, -tis

vomit forth, ēvŏmo, -ui, -ĭtum, 3 ; *(against any one, in* with *acc.)*

vow, vōtum, -i, n. ; *vow, to*, vŏveo, vōvi, vōtum, 2

Vulcan, Vulcānus, -i, m.

vulture, vultur, -ŭris, m.

Wage, gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3 ; *I wage war*, bellum gĕro

wait, mănĕo, -nsi, -nsum, 2 ; *wait for*, expecto, 1

walk, ambŭlo, 1

wall, mūrus, -i, m.; *town walls*, moenia, -ium, n. pl.

wander, erro, 1 ; văgor, pălor, 1, dep.

wandering, error, -ōris, m.

want, ĭnōpia, -ae, f.

wanting, to be, dēsum, -fui, -esse

war, bellum, -i, n.; *in war and in peace*, dŏmi bellīque, *or (more commonly)* mīlitiaeque (265) ; *a ship of war*, nāvis longa

warlike, bellĭcōsus, -a, -um

warm, cālĭdus, -a, -um ; *warm, to grow*, cālesco, 3

warmth, cālor, -ōris, m.

warn, mŏneo, -ui, -ĭtum, 2 (143)

wash, lăvo, lāvi, lōtum, 1

waste, lay waste, vasto, 1 ; *to waste time*, tempus tĕrĕre, -trīvi, -trītum, 3; *waste (adj.)*, a w. *district*, rēgio inculta

watch, vĭgĭlia, -ae, f.; *watch, to*, vĭgĭlo, 1

water, ăqua, -ae, f.; *water, to*, rīgo, 1 ; *a river waters this valley*, amnis hanc vallem rĭgat

wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.

way, via, -ae, f.; ĭter, itĭnĕris, n.; manner, mŏdus, -i, m.; *in what way ?* quōmŏdo ?

we, see page 45

weak, infirmus, -a, -um

weaken, mĭnuo, -ui, ūtum, 3

weakness, dēbĭlĭtās, -ātis, f.

wealth, dīvĭtiae, -ārum, f.; ŏpes, -um, f.

wealthy, dīves, -ĭtis

weapon, tēlum, -i, n.

weary, fessus, -a, -um ; ₁*I am weary of*, taedet mē (*g. gen.*) Par. 222 and foll.

weave, texo, -ui, -xtum, 3

web, tēla, -ae, f.

weep, fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2

weight, pondus, -ĕris, n.

weighty, grăvis, -e

well, a. pŭteus, -i, m.; (*adv.*) bĕnĕ; *well, to be*, vălĕo, -ui, 2; *well known, it is*, constat, 1, impers.

west, occĭdens, -tis, m.

wet, mădĭdus, -a, -um

whale, bālaena, -ae, f.

what? quĭd? (*that which*) quod; *what was good for one was bad for another*, quod ălii prŏfuit, ălii obfuit; *what deed?* see Par. 111

what (*in order of number*)? quŏtus, -a, -um? *what o'clock?* quŏta hōra?

whatever, quisquis, quīcumquĕ; *w. he said, was false*, quodcumquĕ dixit, falsum ĕrat; (*oft. used partitively*) *whatever arms we had, were given up to the enemy*, quidquĭd (*or* quodcumquĕ) armōrum hăbuimus, hostĭbus trădĭtum est

when, (1) cum,[1] ŭbi; (2) (*interrogative*), quando? (*also used dependently*); *tell me when you will come*, dīc mĭhĭ quando ventūrus sīs

whence, undĕ   [ŭbi?

where, quā, ŭbi; (*interrogative*)

whether, conj. (1) (*in dep. quest.*) num, nōnnĕ (135); *whether...or*, (a) utrum...ăn, (b) -nĕ...ăn (171); *I do not know w.*, nescio ăn (302)

whether, conj. (2) (*in alternative suppositions*), *whether...or* (a) sīve...sīve, (b) seu...seu; *whether this is true or false, I shall go to Rome*, ĕquidem, sīve haec vēra sunt, sīve falsa, Rōmam ībo

whether (*archaic pron.*) *whether of the two?* ŭter? utra? utrum?

which, qui, quae, quod; (*of the two*) ŭter, utra, utrum, see Par. 85

while, dum (272). *foll. by indic.*

white, candĭdus, -a, -um

whither, quō; *whither in the world?* quonam terrārum?

who, qui, quae, quod; *T. was the first who did this*, T. prīmus hōc fēcit; (*interrogative*) quĭs, quĭd?

whole, tōtus, -a, -um (85); *the whole of the valley*, vallis tōta

why, cūr?

wicked, in███nus, -a, -um

wickedness, ██lus, -ĕris, n.

wide, lātus, -█████m

wife, uxor, -ōris, f.

wild, fĕrus, -a, -um; *w. beast*, fĕra, -ae, f.; *wild boar*, ăper, -pri, m.

will, vŏluntas, -ātis, f.

willing, to be, vŏlo, vŏlui, velle

willingly, lĭbenter

wind, ventus, -i, m.

wine, vīnum, -i, n.

wing, āla, -ae, f.; *of an corn█*, cornū, -ūs, n.

winter, hiemps, -ĕmis, f.; █████r *quarters*, hĭberna, -ōrum██

wisdom, săpientia, -ae, f.: (*ne███ry*) *as distinct from "valour,"* cōnsĭlium, -i, n.

wise, săpiens, -tis

wish, vŏluntas, -ātis, f.; stŭdium, -i, n.; *wish, to, or wish for*, vŏlo, velle, vŏlui; pp. 128, 129

with, cum (*g. abl.*); (*in-the-house-of*) ăpŭd (178)

withdraw (*trans.*), dētrăho, -traxi, -tractum, 3; (*intrans.*) recēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3

---

[1] The form quum, which is still erroneously retained in some modern editions of classical authors, has no authority. It is "of the rarest possible occurrence even in late MSS." and was long ago described by an eminent grammarian as "dead and buried."

within, intrā (g. acc.); (adv.) in-
tus; w. three days, tribus hīs
diēbus (263a)
without, sine (g. abl.); (outside),
extrā (g. acc.), (adv.) extrā;
without accomplishing anything,
rē infectā; without the know-
ledge of, clam (g. abl.)
withstand, rĕsi-to, -stīti, -stītum,
3 (g. dat.)
witness, testis, -is, m.; witness, call
to, testor, 1, dep.
witty, lĕpĭdus, -a, -um
woe! vae! (interjection)
wolf, lŭpus, -i, m.
woman, mŭlier, -ĕris f.: fēmina,
-ae, f.
womanish, mŭliebr -e
wonder, wonder at, mīror, 1, dep.
wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um
wont, to be, sŏleo, sŏlĭtus, 2; (also
rend. by imperf. indic.) the land
was wont to be laid waste, ăger
vastābātur
wood, a, silva, -ae, f.; wood,
mātĕries, ēi, f.
w   ĭgneus, -a, -um
        ina, -ae, f.
w   erbum, -i, n.; to keep one's
w   fidem praestāre; to bring
v   rēnuntiāre
wo   ŏpus, -ĕris, n.
workman, făber, -ri, m.
world, where, whither, &c., in the
world? ŭbi, quonam, &c., terrā-
rum? the world,(terrārum) orbis,
-is, m.; N.B. mundus, -i, m.
means "universe" incl. the stars;
the Campanian country is the
most beautiful in the world, ăger
Campānus orbis (gen.) terrārum
pulcherrimus est
worm, vermis, -is, m.
worn out, confectus, -a, -um
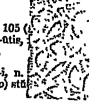worse, pŭjor, -ōris (68)
worship, cōlo, -ui, -cultum, 3
worst, pessimus, -a, -um (69)

worth, to be, văleo, -ui, 2
worthless (of men), nēquam, indecl.;
more w., most w., see Par. 68
worthy, dignus, -a, -um (g. abl.);
the worthy Tullius, T., vir
optĭmus; worthy, to deem, dig-
nor, 1, dep. (g. abl.)
would, he would not (i.e. wished
not to) come, nōluit venīre; he
would (i.e. he was determined to)
come, vŏluit venīre
would that, ŭtĭnam (g. pres. subj.
of possible, imperf. subj. of im-
possible wishes; see Par.
295)
wound, vulnus, -ĕris, n.; wound,
to, vulnĕro, 1
wrath, īra, -ae, f.
wreck, naufrăgium, -i, n.
wreath, sertum, -i, n.
wrest, to, extorqueo, -torsi, -tortum,
2 (dat. of pers. or abl. with a)
wretched, mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum
write, scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, 3
writer, scriptor, -ōris, m.
wrong, a, iniūria, -ae, f.

Xenophon, Xĕnŏphon, -phontis,
m.
Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, m.

Year, annus, -i, m.
yearly, every year, quŏtannīs
yesterday, hĕri; yesterday night,
nox hesterna
yet, as yet, ădhūc; nevertheless,
tămen (at the beginning of a
clause, or after an emphatic word);
not yet, nōndum
yield, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 (g.dat.)
yoke, iŭgum, -i, n; to send under
the yoke, sub jŭgum mittĕre
you, vōs; see page 45
young (man), jŭvĕnis, -is, -m.; ădŭ-
lescens, -tis, m.; (boys), pŭeri

parvŭli; *young (ones)*, pulli, -ōrum, m. ; '*the young*' may be *transl.* jūniōres or pŭĕri

younger, jūnior, -iōris (69) ; *young-est*, mĭnĭmus nātu

your, vester, -tra, -trum

yourself, see Par. 105 (...) *youth*, iŭvēntūs, -ātis, (...) juvĕnis, -is, m.

Zeal, stŭdĭum, -i, n. cum (*or* summo) stŭ(...)

NOTE ON se, suus, &c.

Sē, suus are used (not eum, eius) only when the Pronoun (1) refers to the Principal Subject ; (2) is in a Subordinate Clause. Unless *both* these conditions are satisfied, sē, suus must not be used.

I. In the following examples condition (1) is satisfied, but (2) is not : (*a*) *T. thanks me, for I helped him*, T. grātiās mĭhi ăgit, nam ei subvēni ; (*b*) *T. loves me, and I forgive him*, T. mē ămat, ŭt ei ignosco ; (*c*) *T. and his brother came*, T. et frāter eius vēnērunt.

II. In the following, (2) is satisfied, but (1) is not : (*a*) *I know that he rejoices* ; Scio eum gaudēre ; (*b*) *I said that his brother had come*, Dixi frātrem eius vēnisse.

III. In the following, *both* conditions are satisfied : (*a*) *He begs me to pardon him* (i.e. *himself*), Ōrat ŭt sĭbi ignoscam ; (*b*) *He asks whether you saw his brother*, Quaerit num frātrem suum vīdĕris.